

Manual for FOMA® D704i

'07.8



Easy Search/Contents/
Precautions

Before Using the Handset

Voice/Videophone Calls

Phonebook

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

Mail

i-appli

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

Watching TV

Full Browser

Data Display/Edit/Management

Music Playback

Other Convenient Functions

Character Entry

Network Services

Data Communication

Appendix/External Devices/
Troubleshooting

Index/Quick Manual

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for selecting the FOMA D704i.

Carefully read this manual and other manuals delivered with devices such as the battery pack, before using your FOMA D704i, and consult the corresponding manuals while using the phone so that you are able to use it correctly and effectively. If you are unclear as to any point indicated in any of these manuals, contact the DoCoMo Information Center that is listed on the back of this manual.

Your FOMA D704i is a valuable asset. Handle it with care and it will be your trusted partner for years to come.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA terminal is cordless so you may not be able to use it in certain locations where signals cannot penetrate, such as in tunnels, underground, in some buildings or outdoors if the signal is weak or you are outside the service area. You also may not be able to use your FOMA terminal on the upper floors of some highrise building, even though there is nothing around you that interferes with the signal. Please note that your call may be disconnected even when the signal is strong (when the signal strength indication shows 3 bars) and you are not moving.
- When using the FOMA terminal in public, busy or quiet places, be careful not to disturb others.
- Since the FOMA terminal relies on radio transmission, it is theoretically possible for third parties to intercept a call; however, because the W-CDMA system automatically employs a secrecy function for all calls, a third party will pick up nothing but signal noise.
- Since the FOMA terminal operates by the wireless transmission of voices converted to digital signals, if you are in a location where the signal is weak, the original voice may not be accurately reproduced from the received digital signal, therefore, the voice you hear may differ from the original sound of the speaker's voice.
- DoCoMo asks that you keep a separate record (e.g. written copy) of all information you store in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss that occurs should the contents of the FOMA terminal's memory be lost or altered.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K.,
RSA Security Japan Ltd., Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal can be used in the FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

For first time user of the FOMA terminal

If this is your first FOMA terminal, read this manual in the following order. You can understand the preparations for using the FOMA terminal and its basic operations.

1. Read "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS". ➡P12
2. Install the battery pack and charge it. ➡P35, P36
3. Turn the power on, make initial settings, and confirm your phone number. ➡P40, P42
4. Check the functions of keys on the terminal. ➡P24
5. Check the meaning of icons displayed on the screen. ➡P26
6. Learn how to use the menus. ➡P29
7. Learn how to make and receive calls. ➡P45, P58

The latest information about this manual can be downloaded from the DoCoMo website.

● User's Manual Download

(<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>)

Note: The URL and site contents are subject to change without prior notice.

How to use and refer to this manual

You can look for functions or operation procedures that you want to know using various searching ways.

Search on Index

P438

Search for a function name or service name.

▶ See the next page for details.

Use Easy Search

P4

Search for frequently-used or useful functions using easy-to-understand words.

▶ See the next page for details.

Use Front Cover Indexes

Front Cover

Search by turning over the pages on this manual using the front cover indexes.

▶ See the next page for details.

Use Contents

P6

Refer to the contents classified into chapters on an objective basis.

Refer to Features and Functions

P8

Search for the features or new functions of D704i.

Use Menu List

P384

Search using the menu of D704i.

Use Quick Manual

P444

Quick Manual describes how to operate frequently-used functions. Use it by separating from this instruction manual.

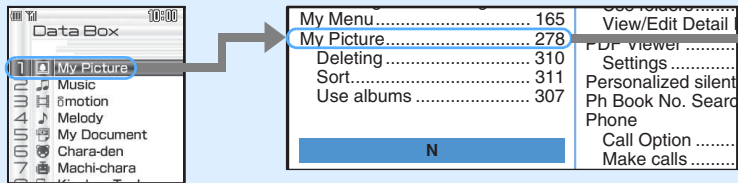
- In the manual for FOMA D704i, the FOMA D704i is usually referred to as “FOMA terminal”.
- This manual explains functions performed with a microSD memory card. A microSD memory card is required separately.
For microSD memory card ◀P295
- In this manual, “Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli supporting the IC card function” is described as “Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli”.
- The design of screen displays has been initialized according to the color of the FOMA terminal from the combinations preset in the FOMA terminal (Style Theme). ◀P117
In this manual, the procedure is explained mainly in case that Style Theme is set to *ClearLine*.
- In this manual, the words and phrases displayed on the screen are written in italic characters.
- Some screens do not support the bilingual function and items or keys may be displayed in Japanese.
In this manual, these Japanese words are written by both in Japanese and English only for the first time in a chapter or a section.
- Unauthorized copying of a part or all of the contents of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

How to use and refer to this manual

Shown below is an example when you search for the page where “My Picture” is described.

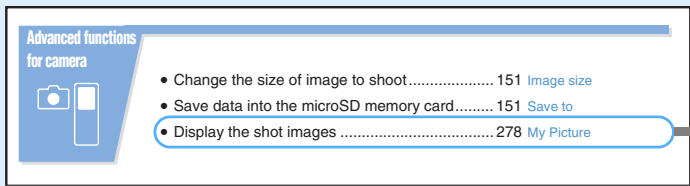
Searching on Index

Use the index if you have already known a function or service name.



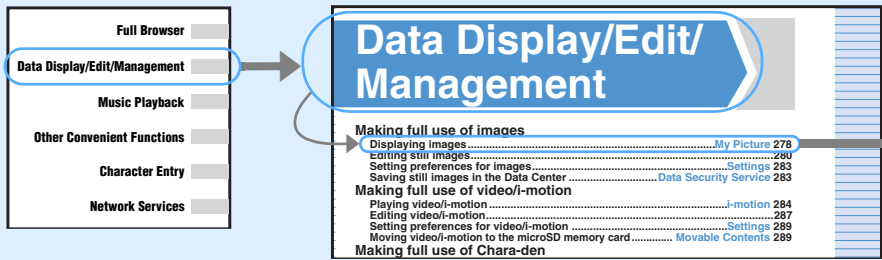
Using Easy Search

You can easily search for frequently-used or useful functions.



Using Front Cover Indexes

You can find a target page by proceeding from the front cover to the cover of a chapter (the first page of the chapter) and the page where a function is described.



- The screens and illustrations provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may be different from the actual products.
- In this manual, the keys are simplified.

Actual key	Description in this manual

- The typestyle of key characters is different depending on the color of the terminal. (Example: ,)

- In this manual, the operation procedures are described as follows:

Description	Meaning
Enter the terminal security code	Press on the standby display and then press . Continuously, enter the terminal security code and press .

Easy Search

Use this Easy Search to search for a function using easy-to-understand words.

Useful functions for phone calls



- Notify/not notify your phone number..... 42 [Caller ID Notification](#)
- Put the current call on hold..... 46 [On-hold](#)
- Switch to videophone call during voice call 48 [Switch to videophone](#)
- Adjust the volume of the other party's voice..... 61 [Listen Volume](#)

When unable to answer an incoming call



- Put the incoming call on hold..... 62 [Response and Hold](#)
- Inform the caller that you should not use the phone 64 [Public mode \(Driving mode\)](#)
..... 65 [Public mode \(power off\)](#)
- Record caller's messages 66 [Answer Machine](#)

How to change melodies or lighting patterns



- Adjust the volume of ring alerts 62 [Ring Alert Volume](#)
- Use a personal ring alert for each caller..... 80 [Alert by Contact](#)
- Use your favorite ring alerts..... 98 [Sound Setting](#)
- Mute the sound heard when pressing keypad..... 101 [Keypad Sound](#)
- Use the vibrator for incoming calls 103 [Vibrator Setting](#)
- Turn Silent Mode on 105 [Silent Mode](#)
- Customize the incoming lighting color and pattern 120 [Light Alert Setting](#)

How to change the screen displays



- Learn the meaning of icons on the screen 26 [Reading display](#)
- Change the menu display format..... 29 [Selecting menu](#)
- Customize the standby display (wallpaper) 106 [Standby Display Setting](#)
- Show a calendar on the standby display 109 [Calendar](#)
- Change the size of characters..... 122 [Font Size Setting](#)

Advanced functions for mail



- Send your original Deco-mail 192 [Deco-mail](#)
- Send images with mail..... 195 [Attachment](#)
- Sort and save mail automatically 216 [Sort Criteria](#)

Advanced functions for camera



- Change the size of image to shoot 151 [Image size](#)
- Save data into the microSD memory card..... 151 [Save to](#)
- Display the shot images 278 [My Picture](#)

Settings for your phone safety



- Keep your phonebook data secret..... 92 [Secret Attribute](#)
- Lock your phone remotely when it is lost, etc.... 131 [Omakase Lock](#)*1
- Reject calls without caller ID..... 139 [Anonymous Caller](#)
- Reject callers not registered in the phonebook... 141 [Reject Unregistered Caller](#)
- Save the phonebook and other data to prevent data loss 141 [Data Security Service](#)*2

*1 Locking with Omakase Lock is charged.

*2 This is a pay service and requires a subscription.

Advanced functions for TV



- Watch TV..... 259 [Activate 1Seg](#)
- Schedule TV programs viewing..... 263 [Booking Program List](#)
- Change the settings of image and sound 266 [1Seg Setting](#)

Other useful functions



- Increase the life of the battery 114 [Display Light Setting](#)
- Read a QR code or barcode 158 [Bar Code Reader](#)
- Use the microSD memory card 295 [microSD memory card](#)
- Send/receive data via infrared communication....311 [Infrared communication](#)
- Listen to music 326 [Playing music](#)
- Use your phone as an alarm clock..... 338 [Alarm Clock](#)
- Use your phone as a calculator..... 354 [Calculator](#)
- Update software 423 [Software Update](#)
- Update the security 427 [Virus Scan Function](#)

Contents

Before using your FOMA terminal	Inside front cover
For first time user of the FOMA terminal ...	Inside front cover
How to use and refer to this manual	1
Easy Search	4
Features and functions of FOMA D704i	8
Making full use of D704i	10
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions).....	12
Handling instructions	18
About intellectual property rights	20
Basic package and optional accessories.....	22

Before Using the Handset

23

Names and functions of parts Reading the display Selecting the menu
Using the UIM (FOMA card) Attaching/removing the battery pack Charging
Power ON/OFF Select Language Date and Time Setting Caller ID Notification
Own Number etc.

Voice/Videophone Calls

43

Making calls Redial/Received Calls Chaku-moji WORLD CALL Receiving calls
Any Key Answer Listen Volume Ring Alert Volume Response and Hold
Public mode (Driving mode/power off) Answer Machine Using Chara-den
Videophone Settings etc.

Phonebook

77

Phonebook New Entry Group Setting Phonebook Search Edit Phonebook
Delete Phonebook Secret Attribute Quick Dial etc.

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

95

Sound Setting Adjust Volume Vibrator Setting Silent Mode Standby Display Setting
Call Image Mail Image Display Light Setting Menu Setting Style Theme
Kisekai tool Machi-chara Setting Light Alert Setting Indicator Light
Clock Display Format etc.

Security Settings

125

Security code Change Security Code PIN code All Lock Omakase Lock
Self Mode PIM Lock Keypad Dial Lock Privacy Mode Setting Key Lock
Secret Mode Data Security Service etc.

Camera

143

Still Camera Movie Camera Settings during shooting Bar Code Reader etc.

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

161

What's i-mode? Displaying sites Change i-mode Password Internet Connection
Bookmark Screen Memo Downloading various data i-mode Setting Message R/F
Operating certificates i-motion Downloading i-motion i-Channel etc.

Mail

187

Composing and sending i-mode Mail Deco-mail Attachment Receiving i-mode Mail
Check i-mode Message Display/Play/Save Attachment Using mail box Mail Setting
Composing and sending chat mail Composing and sending SMS etc.

i-αppli	229
i-αppli Downloading Starting i-αppli i-αppli Standby Display etc.	
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa	245
Osaifu-Keitai iC transfer service Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli ToruCa Obtaining ToruCa Displaying ToruCa IC Card Lock etc.	
Watching TV	255
TV Channel Setting Activate 1Seg Program Guide Booking Program List etc.	
Full Browser	269
Full Browser Browser Setting	
Data Display/Edit/Management	277
Displaying/editing images Playing/editing video/i-motion Chara-den Machi-chara Playing melodies microSD memory card Infrared communication iC Communication Sound Recorder PDF Viewer Document Viewer etc.	
Music Playback	325
Music Player Saving music data etc.	
Other Convenient Functions	335
Multiaccess Multitask Edit by Slide Auto Power ON/OFF Timer Alarm Clock Scheduler Custom Menu Speed Menu Own Number Voice Memo/Video Memo Call Duration/Call Cost Calculator Notepad Electronic dictionaries Earphone/Microphone with Switch Reset Delete All Data etc.	
Character Entry	361
Entering characters Input Method Setting 5-touch Input Method Save Phrase Copy Character KUTEN Code Input Save Word Downloaded Dictionary Slot Input Method	
Network Services	371
Voice Mail Call Waiting Call Forwarding Nuisance Call Blocking Caller ID Request Dual Network English Guidance Remote Control Multi Number etc.	
Data Communication	379
Data communication AT command etc.	
Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting	383
Menu list Data set by default List of character assignments Options and related devices Troubleshooting Error Message Warranty and After-Sales Service Software Update Virus Scan Function Main specification etc.	
Index/Quick Manual	437
Index Quick Manual	

Features and functions of FOMA D704i

FOMA is the name of a set of services provided by DoCoMo based on W-CDMA, one of the global standards for the third generation mobile communication system (IMT-2000).

It's amazing because it's i-mode!

i-mode is an online service used with i-mode terminals. This service allows you to access i-mode sites (programs) or i-mode compatible websites for a variety of useful information and also allows you to exchange i-mode Mail.

i-mode Mail/Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictogram

In addition to the message text, up to 10 files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF data, etc.) or up to 2 Mbytes of files can be attached to a mail. ●P195
Deco-mail and Deco-mail pictograms allow you to change the character color, size and background color of the message. You can enjoy composing and sending expressive mails. ●P192

Mega i-appli/i-appli DX

●P230

You can download i-appli from sites to enjoy various games or to automatically update stock prices and weather information on your FOMA terminal. This FOMA terminal supports large volume mega i-appli, such as high-definition 3D games and full-length RPG games.
i-appli DX enhances the use of i-appli by referring to the information stored in the i-mode terminal such as phonebook data and mails.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

Downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli enables you to charge electronic money from sites to the IC card of your FOMA terminal or check the balance and usage history. The i-appli for the DoCoMo's credit service "DCMX" is preinstalled, which makes the FOMA terminal more convenient as "Osaifu-Keitai" in daily life. In addition, iC transfer service is supported so that you can easily move the data in the IC card to a new FOMA terminal when you change your mobile phone model. ●P246

ToruCa is an electronic card obtained through a reader/writer or from a site, and can be easily exchanged using mail or infrared communication. ●P247

Chaku-Uta Full®

●P327

Chaku-Uta Full® allows you to download and obtain an entire full-length song from a music-distribution site and play or set as the ring alert. ●P330, P331
• "Chaku-Uta Full" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Wide array of network services

- Voice Mail Service (charged)*1 ●P372
- Call Forwarding Service (free of charge)*1 ●P374
- SMS (Short Message) (free of charge) ●P225
- Call Waiting Service (charged)*1 ●P373
- Dual Network Service (charged)*1 ●P375

*1 A separate subscription is required.

Useful functions

Auto brightness

The FOMA terminal has the light sensor to adjust automatically the brightness of the display or turn on/off the key lighting according to the ambient brightness. ●P114, P266

Lighting

●P120

The Enter key at the center of the Easy Selector Plus lights up in various patterns when a call arrives, the Easy Selector Plus is operated, etc.

Built-in camera

●P144

You can shoot a still image of up to 960 x 1280 (SXGA). In addition to a maximum 10x zoom, various modes are available for shooting including macro, framed shooting and continuous shooting.

- Effective pixels: Approx. 1.3 M (Maximum recorded pixels: Approx. 1.2 M)

Bar Code Reader

●P158

JAN codes or QR codes can be scanned with the built-in camera. Using scan results, you can perform a variety of operations such as registering phonebook entries, connecting to sites and sending mail.

Usable mail functions

- You can set whether to notify you of a new incoming mail by a ticker. ➡P113
- While the mail reception result screen or ticker is displayed, you can check a new mail just by sliding open the FOMA terminal (Display New Mail). ➡P218
- You can block other people from peeping your mail messages by a simple key operation (Only View). ➡P220
- The characters can be converted efficiently with ATOK and APOT (AI presumption conversion) provided.

Document Viewer

➡P323

Word, Excel and PowerPoint files can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

Kisekai tool

➡P118

You can set the standby display, menu icons, ring alerts, etc. collectively according to a theme. Kisekai tool of your favorite character can be downloaded from sites. ➡P172

Machi-chara

➡P119

A moving animated character can be displayed on the standby display, etc. You can download Machi-chara from corresponding sites. ➡P173

Support for microSD memory card

- A microSD memory card enables you to back up data in your FOMA terminal such as images, melodies, phonebook data and mails. ➡P295
- By connecting your FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable (optional), the microSD memory card in your FOMA terminal can be used as an external memory of the PC. ➡P305

Infrared/iC communication

- You can exchange data with other FOMA terminals via infrared or iC communication. ➡P311, P316
- You can also operate devices that support TV infrared remote control from the FOMA terminal. ➡P315

Speed Menu

➡P349

Use your voice to quickly start functions such as 1Seg, Music Player, Full Browser and the camera.

Electronic dictionaries

➡P356

"Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary", "G-Mobile English-Japanese Dictionary" and "G-Mobile Japanese-English Dictionary" are preloaded.

Security settings

Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)

➡P131

When your FOMA terminal is lost, you can request DoCoMo to lock the lost terminal. You can also request unlocking of the terminal. For contact information, refer to the back of this manual.

- Locking with Omakase Lock is charged*1.
*1 Charge is free if you make a request for locking at the same time as application for service suspension or during service suspension.
- Note that the FOMA terminal is locked when a request is made by the subscriber even if the subscriber is not the user of the FOMA terminal.

Data Security Service

You can back up the phonebook data, still images and mails stored in the FOMA terminal to the Data Center. When your FOMA terminal is lost or damaged, you can restore the backup data to a new FOMA terminal. In addition, you can edit and manage the backup data in the Data Center from a PC, and save the edited data to your FOMA terminal. ➡P141

For important notes on using Data Security Service and detail information about how to use the service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-model]". For contact information, refer to the back of this manual.

- Data Security Service is a pay service and requires a subscription.

Making full use of D704i

A variety of functions of D704i visual communications are explained here.

Videophone

You can see the image of the other party while talking over the phone. As your image, a Chara-den image appears on the screen of the other party's terminal. You can also send an image of the surrounding scene by switching to the camera image.

Your terminal



© Disney

Other party's terminal



Other party's terminal

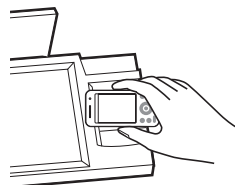


Talk while seeing the other party's image. ➡P45, P58
A Chara-den image is displayed on the other party's terminal. You can switch the image to send between Chara-den and still image. ➡P74

Image of your surroundings is displayed. ➡P70

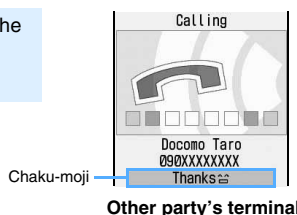
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

- Downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli enables you to charge electronic money from sites to the IC card of your FOMA terminal or check the balance and usage history. The i-appli for the DoCoMo's credit service "DCMX" is preinstalled, which makes the FOMA terminal more convenient as "Osaifu-Keitai" in daily life. In addition, iC transfer service is supported so that you can easily move the data in the IC card to a new FOMA terminal when you change the mobile phone model. ➡P246
- You can use ToruCa by obtaining it through a reader/writer, from sites or from QR codes. ToruCa is an electronic card that you can obtain through Osaifu-Keitai. It can be used as a flyer, restaurant card, coupon, etc. ToruCa can also be exchanged using mail, infrared communication, iC communication or the microSD memory card. ➡P247



Chaku-moji

When you call someone, you can have a message be displayed on the incoming screen of his or her terminal. You can use this Chaku-moji message to notify the called party of the purpose of your call. ➡P51

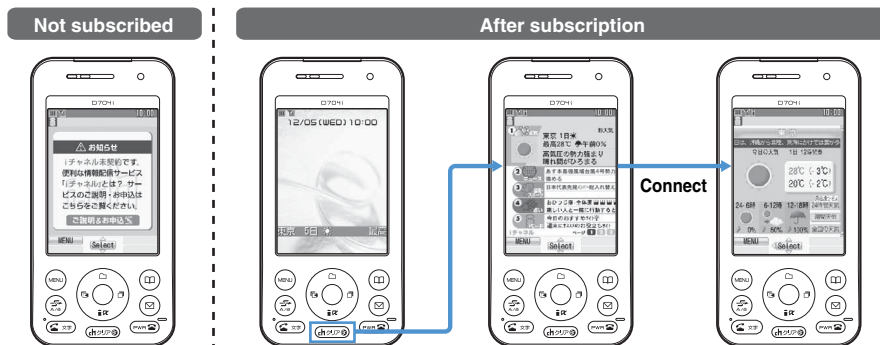


Other party's terminal

i-Channel

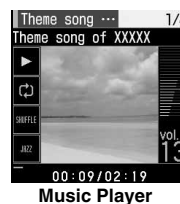
You can receive graphical information such as news and weather information. You can also get rich, detailed information by selecting a desired channel in the channel list. ●P183

* i-Channel is a pay service and requires a subscription.



Music Player

Music Player supports Chaku-Uta Full® that allows downloading of an entire full-length song. It also supports Windows Media Audio (WMA) that enables you to obtain music from CDs and various music-distribution sites. Downloaded music can be played on Music Player. ●P326



TV

You can watch 1Seg (terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service for mobile terminals). The screen is switched between horizontal and vertical displays each time you open and close the FOMA terminal. You can also save a scene of a TV program as still image, schedule TV programs or use data broadcast.

Horizontal screen



Vertical screen



SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)

- Read the following SAFETY PRECAUTIONS to ensure that the phone is used correctly. Also, store this manual in a convenient location for future reference.
- It is essential that these precautions be observed to prevent injury to the user and third parties as well as damage to property.
- **The following symbols are used to indicate the degree of danger or damage that may result from failing to follow the specified precautions.**



DANGER

Indicates an imminently hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.



WARNING

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.



CAUTION

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in injury or property damage.

- **The following symbols are used to highlight instructions that are very important and that must be strictly followed.**



This indicates the action is prohibited.



This indicates disassembly is prohibited.



This indicates that handling with wet hands is prohibited.



This indicates the part must not be exposed to water.



This indicates the action must be performed in accordance with the directions.



This indicates you must remove the plug from the power outlet.

- **SAFETY PRECAUTIONS is separated into 6 categories.**

Handling the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and the UIM (general information) P13
Handling the FOMA terminal P14
Handling the battery pack P15
Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/Desktop Holder/In-Car Holder) P16
Handling the UIM (FOMA card).....P17
Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices.....P17

DANGER



Use only DoCoMo-certified battery packs and adapters (and chargers) with the FOMA terminal.

Use of non-specified items could cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, rupture, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery Pack D07

Desktop Holder D14

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02

FOMA DC Adapter 01/02

FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01

FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use

- For additional items related to the compatible products, contact the nearest DoCoMo Shop.



Do not attempt to disassemble or remodel. In addition, do not attempt to solder.

Attempting to do so will lead to an accident, such as a fire, injury, or electrical shock and damage the equipment. Doing so may also cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite.



Do not use or leave in a high-temperature place such as near fire, in direct sunlight or in a sun-heated car.

Otherwise, the equipment will get deformed or troubled. The battery pack may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and a reduction in performance and life may result. Sometimes, the casing will partly get heated, resulting in an extremely high temperature to get you burnt.



Do not expose to water.

The equipment may overheat, cause electric shock, fire, damage or injury if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the equipment in locations where it could get wet.



WARNING



Be sure to turn off the FOMA terminal before entering a place such as a gas station that is subject to flammable gases. Do not charge in such a place. Charging could cause fire.

When using Osaifu-Keitai inside a gas station, make sure to turn off the FOMA terminal in advance. (If IC Card Lock is set, cancel the lock and then turn the power off.)



Do not place the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter (and charger) or UIM in the microwave oven, high-pressure cooker or other cooking appliances.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and could damage the circuitry of the FOMA terminal and adapter (and charger), causing overheat, smoke or fire.



Do not expose to strong shocks by dropping or throwing.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and damage the equipment, resulting in fire.



Do not let the recharging terminal and external device terminal touch any conductive material, such as a piece of metal or lead. Also do not put any conductive material into the recharging terminal and external device terminal.

The battery can short-circuit, causing fire and damage.



If there is anything wrong (such as strange odor, heat generation, color change, deformation, or the like) during use, battery charge or storage, you should take the following steps immediately.

- 1. Remove the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**
- 2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.**
- 3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.**

Continuing to use the equipment without taking these steps will cause it to overheat, rupture, or ignite or cause the battery pack to leak.

CAUTION



When a child uses the FOMA terminal, first be sure an experienced adult teaches proper usage methods and techniques. Observe the child to determine that they are using the FOMA terminal correctly.

Failure to do so could result in injury.



Do not place on an unstable or tilted surface.

Doing so could cause the equipment to slide off, possibly causing personal injury or damaging the equipment.



Keep out of the reach of small children.

The components can be accidentally swallowed, resulting in injury.



Do not store in locations subject to high temperature, humidity or excessive dust.

Doing so could damage the equipment.



Be especially careful when you use the FOMA terminal connected to an adapter (and charger) continuously for a prolonged period.

The temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (and charger) may become high when using i-appli, videophone or 1Seg while charging for a long period of time.

If you touch the part with a high temperature directly for a long period of time, redness, itchiness, rash, etc. may arise in your skin depending on your constitution or condition.

Handling the FOMA terminal

WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, hospital or other location where use of mobile phones is prohibited.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of electronic equipment. If the automatic power on function is used, cancel the setting and turn the power off. Observe any regulations posted in medical facilities. If you have done prohibition acts such as using the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, you may be punished as stipulated by law.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of electronic equipment that relies on high-precision control or faint signals.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of such electronic equipment.

- Examples: hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled equipment. Users of such medical equipments should check with the electronic equipment or device manufacturer with respect to the effect of electromagnetic interference.



Do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast or inner pocket if you are carrying or using electronic medical equipment.

The FOMA terminal could cause any medical equipment in its vicinity to malfunction.



People with weak hearts should take care with respect to the setting of the incoming vibrator and ring volume.

The FOMA terminal may affect hearts.



Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving.

From November 1, 2004, using mobile phones while driving a vehicle is set as the object of penal regulations. Even if you use the handsfree device, park in a safe place before using the phone. Use Public mode or Voice Mail Service while driving.



Do not aim the infrared port at eyes and attempt to transmit.

Eyes could be affected. Aiming at other infrared devices and transmitting could cause other devices to malfunction.



When you talk under handsfree settings (with the speakerphone function), be sure to keep a distance between the FOMA terminal and your ear.

Failure to do so could cause the hearing loss.



Do not place the FOMA terminal in an area over an air bag or in an air bag deployment area such as on a dashboard in a vehicle.

If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may hit you and injury and damage to itself could result.



If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, retract the antenna, turn the power off immediately, and move to a safe location.

Use of the phone in such a situation could expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



CAUTION



Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by the antenna or strap.

Doing so could cause injury to yourself or a third party or damage the phone.



Do not use the FOMA terminal in crowded places.

The antenna may hit a third party and injury could result.



Do not use the FOMA terminal with the damaged antenna.

Touching the damaged antenna may hurt skin.



Rarely, some FOMA terminal users may develop itching, skin irritation or eczema. If such a condition occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and seek medical attention.

Metal is used in the following components:

Part		Material	Surface treatment
Metal part of TV antenna	Upper/center part	Brass	Chrome plating
	Lower part	Stainless steel	—



Do not allow water or other liquids, pieces of metal or other foreign material to enter into the UIM slot and microSD memory card slot of the FOMA terminal.

Doing so could cause fire, electric shock, or damage to the phone.



Use in certain makes of vehicles may affect onboard electronic equipment.

Continued use under such conditions could cause unsafe driving. Do not use the FOMA terminal in such a case.



Do not bring magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data stored on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, and floppy disks may be corrupted or lost.



When you close the FOMA terminal, take care not to get your fingers, palm or the strap caught between the display and the keypad.

Injury or damage to the phone could result.



When you watch 1Seg, watch in a bright place keeping an appropriate distance from the display.

Failure to do so could damage your eyesight.



Use the FeliCa reader/writer function in Japan.

The FeliCa reader/writer function of the FOMA terminal is compliant with the Japanese radio communication standard. If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.

Handling the battery pack

- Check the battery type indicated on the battery pack label.

Indication	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium ion battery



DANGER



If electrolyte from the battery pack gets in your eyes, do not rub; instead, rinse immediately with copious amounts of clean water and seek medical attention.

Doing so could cause the loss of vision.



Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not attach metallic materials such as wire to the port. Do not carry or store the battery pack together with a necklace or other metallic items.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not pierce the battery pack with nails, hammer on it or step on it.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



When you attach the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, never attempt to forcefully insert, because it should slide in easily and fit correctly. Check the direction of the battery pack and try again.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



WARNING



Should any electrolyte from the battery pack come into contact with your skin or clothing, immediately stop using the battery and rinse with clean water thoroughly.

Failure to do so could cause skin injuries.



Stop charging if it is not possible to fully charge the battery pack within the specified time.

Failure to do so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



If the battery pack leaks or emits strange odors, immediately stop using it, and always keep away from sources of fire.

Failure to do so could cause the battery liquid to catch fire, and the battery pack itself to rupture.



CAUTION



Do not dispose of the battery pack with other regular household waste.

Failure to properly dispose of the battery pack in an environmentally sensitive manner could cause the battery pack to catch fire and damage the environment. Use adhesive tape to cover the terminal of battery pack when it is no longer used and bring it to a DoCoMo Shop after the insulation. Alternatively, you can also dispose of the battery pack in accordance with local regulations.

Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/Desktop Holder/In-Car Holder)



WARNING



Use care not to short circuit the recharging terminal when the adapter (and charger) is connected to a wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the recharging terminal with your hands or fingers, or some other part of the body.

Doing so could cause fire, equipment failure, electric shock or other injury.



Do not touch the adapter (and charger) cord or wall outlet with wet hands.

Doing so could cause electric shock.



Do not use the AC adapter and Desktop Holder in bathrooms or other potentially high humidity locations.

Doing so could cause electric shock.



When the adapter (and charger) is not to be used for a prolonged period, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

Failure to do so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.



Never use the adapter (and charger) when it has a damaged power cord.

Failure to do so could result in electric shock, overheat or fire.



If the adapter (and charger) or holder is exposed to water or other liquid, immediately disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so could result in electric shock, smoke or fire.



When connected to a wall outlet, make sure that the AC adapter does not come into contact with metallic straps or other metal objects and the plug is properly seated.

Failure to do so could result in electric shock, short circuit, or fire.



Use the designated power source and correct voltage.

Use of incorrect voltage could cause fire or equipment failure. When using the FOMA terminal overseas, use the AC adapter that can be used overseas.

AC adapter: 100 V AC

DC adapter: 12 V DC, 24 V DC (specific for negative ground vehicle)

AC adapter for overseas use: 100 V to 240 V AC

(Always connect to the outlet for internal household use.)



Use only the specified fuse for the DC adapter.

Use of an unspecified fuse could cause fire or equipment failure. Check the instruction manual for details of the correct fuse to use.



The DC adapter is for use with negative ground vehicles. Do not use it with positive ground vehicles.

Doing so could result in fire.



Be sure the power plug is free of dust.

Failure to do so could cause the equipment to catch fire.



During charging, place the adapter (and charger) and Desktop Holder in a stable location. Do not cover or wrap the adapter (and charger) and Desktop Holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.

Using the equipment under such conditions could cause the FOMA terminal to be detached from the holder, or cause a heat buildup that leads to fire or equipment failure.



Do not touch the FOMA terminal and the adapter (and charger) when hearing thunder.

Contact with the FOMA terminal and adapter could cause you lightning strikes or electric shock.



CAUTION



Disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket before beginning any maintenance.

Failure to do so could cause electric shock.



Disconnect the adapter (and charger) from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket by pulling the power plug, not the adapter (and charger) cord or the power cord.

Pulling the cord could damage the cord, resulting in electric shock or fire.



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord.

Doing so could cause electric shock or fire.

Handling the UIM (FOMA card)



CAUTION



Be careful of the cut surface when removing the UIM (the IC).

Failure to do so could cause injury to hand and fingers.

Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices

The information given below conforms to the guidelines set forth by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.



WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal on packed trains or in crowded places as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



When inside a medical institution, always remember the following guidelines:

- Never take the FOMA terminal inside an operating room, intensive care unit (ICU) or coronary care unit (CCU).
- Always turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Even in the lobby and other areas, always turn off the FOMA terminal when electronic medical equipment is nearby.
- Follow the directives of the medical institution. There may be specific regulations as to items that are prohibited or use of which is restricted.
- If you are using the automatic power on function, cancel the setting and turn off the power.



If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, keep your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from it.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



If you are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators outside the confines of a medical institution for treatment at home, be sure to check with the manufacturer about possible adverse effects caused by electromagnetic interference.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of electronic medical equipment.

Handling instructions

General

- Do not get the components wet.
The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and UIM are not waterproof. Avoid using the components in a bathroom or other high humidity areas or locations exposed to rain. If you carry the components, sweat could cause internal corrosion that leads to equipment failure. As a result of investigation, if component failure is found to be water-related, repair is not covered by the warranty and may not be able to be performed. In such a case, should it be found to be possible to repair the unit, you will be billed for all repairs.
- Clean the components with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).
 - The FOMA terminal display may have a special coating on it so that the color LCD provides a clear view. Rubbing the display strongly with a dry cloth for cleaning could damage the display. Handle with care and clean the display with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth). Also note that leaving the display with dirt or moisture attached could cause spots or remove the coating on it.
 - Using alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergents could cause the printed text to fade or disappear, or the equipment to become discolored.
- Occasionally clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab.
Dirty terminals could cause intermittent contact that could interrupt the flow of power to the unit. Such a situation also causes insufficient charging. Use a dry cloth or cotton swab to clean the terminals.
- Do not place the components near an air conditioner vent.
Sudden changes in temperature could cause condensation, leading to corrosion inside the components and equipment failure.
- Do not place the FOMA terminal in locations where it could be exposed to excessive pressure. Do not place it in a bag together with many other things or in your pocket when you sit down as this could exert pressure on the LCD or damage the internal boards, resulting in equipment failure. Damage arising from such causes is not covered by the warranty.
- Carefully read the instruction manuals supplied with the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and Desktop Holder before use.

FOMA terminal

- Avoid extremely high or low temperatures.
Use in an environment with a temperature of 5 to 35 °C and relative humidity of 45 to 85 %.
- If the FOMA terminal is used near a radio, television or general subscriber phone, it could affect such equipment. Use the phone as far away from such equipment as possible.
- With regard to data stored in the FOMA terminal, keep it separately in a memo, etc. so as not to permanently lose important data.
NTT DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of stored data.
- Do not put the FOMA terminal in your back pocket and sit on it. Avoid putting the phone in the bottom of a bag, etc. where it is subject to excessive pressure.
Damage may result.
- Do not close the FOMA terminal with the strap held inside.
Malfunction or damage may result.
- It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm during using or recharging. You can continue to use it while warm.
- Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight.
Elements may be discolored or baked.

Battery pack

- The battery pack will gradually wear out.
Battery life depends on how you use the battery pack; it is time to replace it when the usage time is very short even though you fully charge it. The specified battery pack can be purchased separately.
- Recharge the battery pack in locations where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C.
- When using for the first time or after a long period of non-use, be sure to fully charge the battery pack before use.
- The time of use provided by the battery pack depends on the ambient conditions and the condition of the battery pack itself.
- Depending on usage, the battery pack may swell as it nears the end of its life, but this will not cause a problem.
- Do not expose to the direct sunlight and high temperature. Please keep your battery in an airy and cool place.
When you do not use your phone for a long period of time, remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal with the battery used up, put into the packing plastic bag or other container, and keep it.
- Giving strong shocks such as dropping may deform or damage the battery pack. If there is anything wrong with the battery pack, bring the battery pack to a repair office.

Adapter (and charger)

- Recharge the battery pack in a location where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C.
- Do not recharge in the following locations:
 - Locations that are subject to high humidity, dust or excessive vibration
 - Near general subscriber phones, TVs or radios
- It is normal for the adapter (and charger) to become warm during recharging. You can continue charging with a warm adapter.
- When the battery pack is recharged using the DC adapter, always keep the car engine running. Failure to do so could cause the car battery to run down more quickly than normal.
- When an outlet with falling prevention mechanism is used, check the instruction manual for the outlet before use.
- Do not expose to the strong shock and deform the recharging terminal.
Giving the strong shock on an adapter can cause damage.

UIM (FOMA card)

- Do not use excessive force when attaching or removing the UIM.
- The UIM becomes warm during use. This is normal and not a cause for concern.
- Note that any card failures resulting from inserting the UIM in an IC card reader/writer not designated by NTT DoCoMo are the responsibility of the customer.
- Make sure that the ICs are kept clean.
- Clean the UIM with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).
- It is recommended that users maintain data stored on the UIM in some other form.
If the data should be erased, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- The UIMs that are no longer used should be returned to a DoCoMo Shop for environmental protection.
- Avoid extremely high or low temperature.
- Take care not to damage, touch, or short-circuit the ICs to prevent them from losing their data or from malfunctioning.
- Take care not to drop the UIM or give shock to the UIM to prevent it from malfunctioning.
- Do not bend the UIM and place heavy stuff on it to avoid a failure.
- Do not insert the UIM with a label or sticker attached in the FOMA terminal to prevent it from malfunctioning.

Camera

If you should use the FOMA terminal to make a public nuisance, you might be punished under the laws and bylaws such as Japan's nuisance prevention ordinance.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

FeliCa reader/writer

- The FeliCa reader/writer function of the FOMA terminal uses faint radio waves that do not require a radio station license.
- The FeliCa reader/writer operates at a frequency of 13.56 MHz. If you use any other reader/writer in the vicinity, keep a distance from it. Also, make sure that there is no other wireless station that uses the same frequency band.

Precautions

- Never use the modified FOMA terminal. Using the modified terminal will be an infringement of the Radio Law.
The FOMA terminal is certified to conform to the technical regulations for specified radio equipment specified in the Radio Law, and has the Technical Conformity Mark  affixed to it in inscription stickers of the terminal to prove it.
If you take out screws and modify the inside of the FOMA terminal, the technical regulations conformity certification will be invalid.
If you use the terminal of which the technical regulations conformity certification cannot be verified, it will be an infringement of the Radio Law.

About intellectual property rights

Copyrights and portrait rights

Except in cases where reproduction and quoting for private use is sanctioned under copyright laws, the reproduction, alteration and public transmission of such content as text, images, music or software for which another party owns the copyrights, whether accomplished by using this product to photograph or record that content or by downloading it from Internet websites, is prohibited without the permission of the owner.

Taking photographs or recordings of such events as performances and exhibitions may be prohibited even for purposes of private use.

In addition, if you use this product to take another person's photograph without their permission, or display such a photograph without their permission on an Internet website and make that content public to an indeterminate number of people, you may be in violation of portrait rights.

Trademarks

Company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

- FOMA, mova, i-motion, i-mode, i-αppli, i-shot, DoPa, mopera, mopera U, WORLD CALL, WORLD WING, Short Mail, Chaku-motion, Deco-mail, V-live, Charaden, i-αppli DX, Dual Network, ToruCa, DCMX, visualnet, i-Channel, iD, FirstPass, sigmarion, Security Scan, musea, Public mode, IMCS, OFFICEED, the FOMA logo, the i-mode logo, the i-αppli logo, the DCMX logo, and the iD logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- McAfee® is a registered trademark or trademark of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.



- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.

JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- The microSD logo is a trademark. 
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Media®, Windows Vista™ and PowerPoint® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- "ATOK" and "APOT" (Advanced Prediction Optimization Technology) are registered trademarks of Justsystem Corporation.
- "Privacy Mode" is a registered trademark of FUJITSU Limited.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- TOEIC is a registered trademark of Educational Testing Service(ETS).
- In addition to the above, company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Other rights and responsibilities

- Contains Flash® Lite™ and Reader® technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated
Copyright© 1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved.
Adobe, Flash, Flash Lite and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- NetFront of ACCESS CO., LTD is installed in this product to provide Internet functionality.
NetFront DTV Profile Wireless Edition of ACCESS CO., LTD is installed in this product to provide BML browser for data broadcast.
Media: of ACCESS CO., LTD is installed in this product to provide functionality of broadcast contents startup.
Copyright© 1996-2007 ACCESS CO., LTD.

ACCESS, NetFront and Media: are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- F e l i c a is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
F e l i c a is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual/AVC Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases:
 - Recording videos that conform to MPEG-4 Visual/AVC Standard
 - Playing videos that conform to MPEG-4 Visual/AVC Standard recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos obtained from the provider licensed from MPEG LA

For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in the US.

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,490,165	5,101,501
5,511,073	5,267,261	5,568,483
5,414,796	5,659,569	5,056,109
5,506,865	5,228,054	5,544,196
5,337,338	5,657,420	5,710,784
5,778,338		

- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™
Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION.

• symbian

This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software Ltd.
'Symbian', 'Symbian OS' and other associated Symbian marks are all trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd. ©1998-2007 Symbian Software Ltd.
All rights reserved.

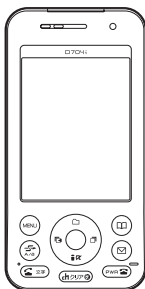
- Microsoft® Excel and Microsoft® Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the United States. In this manual, they are referred to as Excel and Word.

- Word, Excel and PowerPoint file display technologies are powered by Pícsel Technologies Ltd. 
- Pícsel, Pícsel File Viewer and the Pícsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pícsel Technologies Ltd.
- "Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary", "G-Mobile English-Japanese Dictionary" and "G-Mobile Japanese-English Dictionary" are copyrighted works of TAISHUKAN Publishing Co., Ltd.
- In this manual, each OS (Japanese version) is written for short as follows:
 - Windows 2000 is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
 - Windows XP is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
 - Windows Vista is the abbreviation for Windows Vista™ (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise or Ultimate).
- Content owners use Windows Media digital rights management technology (WMDRM) to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the software's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. Revocation does not affect unprotected content. When you download licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade WMDRM to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade. This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

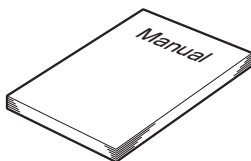
Basic package and optional accessories

Basic package

FOMA D704i
(including the written
warranty and the Back
Cover D19)

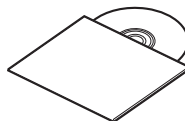


Instruction manual
(this book)



Quick Manual ◀P444

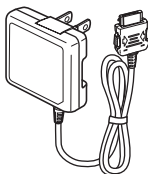
CD-ROM for FOMA
D704i



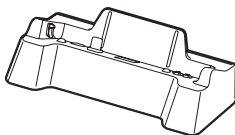
The PDF version of "Manual for
Data Communication" and "Kuten
Code List" is contained.

Optional accessories

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
(including the written
warranty and the instruction
manual)



Desktop Holder D14
(including the instruction
manual)



Battery Pack D07
(including the
instruction manual)

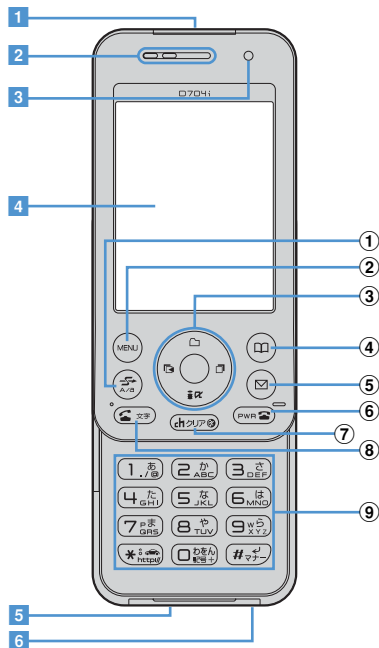


• Other optional accessories ◀P409

Before Using the Handset

Names and functions of parts	24
Reading the display	26
Selecting the menu	29
Using the UIM (FOMA card)	33
Attaching/removing the battery pack	35
Charging the FOMA terminal	36
Checking the remaining battery level	Battery Level 39
Turning the power on/off	Power ON/OFF 40
Switching to English display	Select Language 40
Setting the date and time	Date and Time Setting 41
Notifying your phone number to the other party	Caller ID Notification 42
Checking your own phone number	Own Number 42

Names and functions of parts



1 Infrared data port ◀P311

Used to exchange data via infrared communication.

2 Earpiece

The other party's voice comes out of here.

3 Light sensor

Used to automatically adjust the brightness of the display or turn on/off the key light according to the ambient brightness. ◀P114, P266

4 Display ◀P26

5 External connection terminals ◀P38, P306

Used to connect various optional accessories.

6 Microphone

Picks up your voice.

7 FeliCa mark

The mark means that an IC card chip is mounted. Use the IC card functions by placing the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer. Also, perform iC communication between 2 terminals by holding the FeliCa marks over each other. The IC card cannot be detached.

8 Speaker

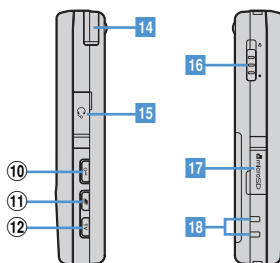
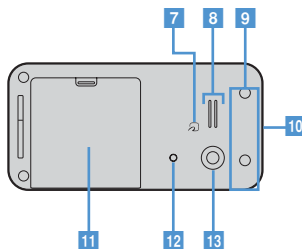
Ring alert, 1Seg sound and the other party's voice when the speakerphone is used come out of here.

9 FOMA antenna (built-in)

The antenna is embedded here. Do not cover this part with your fingers during a call.

10 Strap opening

11 Back cover



For ①, ② and the following numbers in the above figure, see the description in “Function of keys”. ◀P25

12 Camera indicator

Lights or flashes when shooting with the camera.

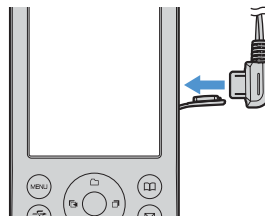
13 Camera ◀P70, P144

Used to shoot people and landscape or send these images during a videophone call.

14 TV antenna ◀P257

15 Earphone/microphone jack

Used to connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional).



• Using the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 (optional) allows you to use an existing earphone/microphone.

16 Macro mode switch ◀P153

Used to switch between standard mode and macro mode when shooting with the camera.

17 microSD memory card slot ◀P299

18 Battery charging terminals

Used to charge the battery of the FOMA terminal in the Desktop Holder (optional).

Functions of keys

You can perform the following operations by pressing keys. (●: press shortly, ■: hold down for over a second)

① Speed Menu/Start videophone/Scroll/Lower left soft key

- Displays Speed Menu.
- Makes/answers videophone calls.
- Scrolls by screen while viewing a mail or site.
- Switches between upper/lower cases when entering characters.
- Performs the operation shown in the lower left of the guide row.
- Displays Speed Menu (when calling by voice).

② **Menu/Upper left soft/Silent Mode key**

- Displays the main menu.
- Performs the operation shown in the upper left of the guide row.
- Sets/cancels Silent Mode.

③ Easy Selector Plus

 Enter key

- Performs the selected operation.
- Activates Focus Mode.
- Starts i-appli set for One-key Shortcut.

Ⓢ Data Box/ ↑ key

- Displays the Data Box menu.
- Adjusts the volume.
- Moves the cursor upward.
- Activates Still Camera.

Ⓢ i-mode/i-α ppli/ ↓ key

- Displays the i-mode menu.
- Adjusts the volume.
- Moves the cursor downward.
- Displays the *i-appli* folder list.

⏮ Received Calls/⏮ (previous) key

- Displays the received call history.
- Switches between pages.
- Moves the cursor leftward.
- Activates/cancels Privacy Mode when Privacy Mode Setting is set.

Ⓢ Redial/→ (next) key

- Displays the real data.
- Switches between pages.
- Moves the cursor rightward.
- Sets/cancels IC Card Lock.

④ Phonebook/Scheduler/Upper right soft key

- Displays the phonebook.
- Performs the operation shown in the upper right of the guide row.
- Displays schedules.

⑤ Mail/Scroll/Lower right soft key

- Displays the Mail menu.
- Scrolls by screen while viewing a mail or site.
- Performs the operation shown in the lower right of the guide row.
- Performs Check i-mode Message.

⑥ Power/End key

- Ends calls or functions in operation.
- Holds incoming calls.
- Cancels Secret Mode.

- Shows/hides the custom standby display.
- Turns the power on/off (when pressed for over 2 seconds).

⑦ **クリア** i-Channel/Clear key

- Displays the channel list.
- Starts i-appli on the i-appli standby display.
- Deletes characters.
- Returns to the previous screen.
- Sets/cancels Self Mode.

⑧ Start voice call/Speakerphone/Character key

- Makes/answers voice calls.
- Turns on/off the speakerphone.
- Switches input modes when entering characters.
- Mutes sound while viewing 1Seg.
- Sets/cancels the sound mode while viewing 1Seg.

⑨ Dial keys

(0) to (9)

- Enters phone numbers and text.
- Select menu items.
- Enters “+” (when entering a phone number: ).

 ***/Public mode (Driving mode) key**

- Enters “*”.
- Sets/cancels Public mode (Driving mode).
- Enters “P” (when entering a phone number).

#/Silent Mode/Line-feed key

- Enters “#”.
- Inserts a line feed when entering characters.
- Sets/cancels Silent Mode.
- Enters “T” (when entering a phone number).

⑩ Keylock switch P136

- Sets/cancels Key Lock.

11 **TASK key**

- Switches functions and operations during Multiaccess and Multitask.

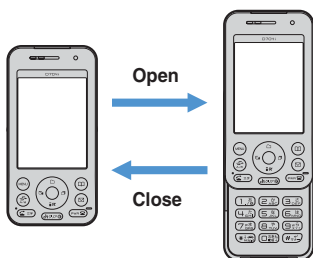
⑫ TV/Answer Machine/Shutter key

- Displays the Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu.
- Releases the shutter of the camera.
- Stops ring alerts and alarms.
- Records still image while viewing 1Seg.
- Activates 1Seg viewing.
- Turns on/off the zoom-in on the horizontal screen of 1Seg.
- Activates Quick Record Message.
- Switches between normal display and anti-peeping display (Only View) on the mail view screen.

- ⑤ explained in ③ lights or flashes when a call or mail is received, the FOMA terminal is opened/ closed, while shooting with the camera, etc. The lighting pattern and color can be set (P120). Also, it flashes when there is new information (P121) and lights in red during battery charging.
- For ⑨, the typestyle of key characters is different depending on the color of the FOMA terminal.

Opening/closing the FOMA terminal

To open the FOMA terminal, slide the front face (with the display) upward. To close it, slide the front face downward.



- Operations such as accessing the reply mail screen or the edit schedule or note screen are made easily by opening the FOMA terminal. ◀P337
- You can set the FOMA terminal to display new mails when you open the terminal while the mail reception result screen or ticker is displayed. ◀P218
- The FOMA terminal allows you to make calls without opening it. You can also answer an incoming call by opening the FOMA terminal, and end or put on hold the call by closing it. ◀P61

Reading the display

The description of icons displayed at the top or the bottom of the display is shown below:

Date, day of the week and time
12/05 (WED) 10:00

Received i-Channel information ◀P185

- 1 : Battery level icon ◀P39
- 2 : Signal level icon ◀P40
- : Out of service area ◀P40
- : Self Mode is set ◀P132
- : During data transfer ◀P295, P311
- : DoCoMo keitai datalink in progress ◀P382
- 3 : In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection) ◀P162
- : In i-mode communication (during packet communication) ◀P176, P200
- 4 : During infrared communication ◀P311
- *1 : Infrared remote control function being used ◀P315
- : Key Lock is set (in gray when Key Lock is temporarily released) ◀P136
- : Total call cost exceeds the limit ◀P353
- 5 : Speakerphone function on ◀P47
- *1 : Connecting to handsfree compatible device ◀P57

- 6 : i-mode Mail and Message R/F storage space is full in the Center*2 ◀P201, P177
- : i-mode Mail or Message R/F storage space is full in the Center
- : Unreceived i-mode Mail and Message R/F exist in the Center
- : Unreceived i-mode Mail or Message R/F exists in the Center
- 7 Status of unread mail and unread Message R/F
- *1 ◀P200, P226, P176
- : Unread i-mode Mail and SMS make the storage space full and SMS also makes the storage space full on UIM
- : Unread i-mode Mail and SMS make the storage space full
- : SMS storage space is full on UIM
- : Unread i-mode Mail and SMS exist
- : Unread i-mode Mail exists
- : Unread SMS exists
- (blue/red): Unread Message R exists/makes the storage space full*3
- (green/red): Unread Message F exists/makes the storage space full*3
- 8 Status of i-appli and i-appli DX ◀P108, P233, P241
- : i-appli running
- : i-appli standby display on
- : Starting i-appli from the i-appli standby display
- : i-appli DX running

- : i-appli DX standby display on
- : Starting i-appli from the i-appli DX standby display
- 9 : SSL page being displayed or i-appli downloaded from SSL pages being in use or in SSL communication P163
- *1 : SSL/TLS page being displayed P270
- : Auto-send failure mail exists P200
- : Auto-send mail exists P199
- 10 : Secret Mode is set P138
- 11 : i-appli Auto Start failed P241
- 12 : In OFFICEED service area P378
- 13 : Focus mode icon P32
- 14 : General silent mode is set P105
- : Personalized silent mode is set P105
- 15 : Call alert volume is set to *silent* P102
- : Vibrator for incoming voice call is set P103
- : Call alert volume is set to *silent* and vibrator for incoming voice call is set
- 16 : Public mode (Driving mode) is set P64
- 17 : Answer Machine is set P66
- : Recorded message storage space is full P66
- 18 : PIM Lock is set P132
- 19 : Connecting to external device via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) P76, P306
- 20 : Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode P32
- 21 Status of USB Memory Setting and microSD memory card P305
 - : The communication mode is set with microSD memory card inserted
 - (dark blue/gray): The microSD mode is set with/without microSD memory card inserted
 - (dark blue/gray): The MTP mode is set with/without microSD memory card inserted
- 22 : Reading the UIM P40
- *1 : IC Card Lock is set P252
- 23 : Keypad Dial Lock is set P133
- 24 : Alarm Clock is set P338
- : Schedule alarm is set P263, P342
- : Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set simultaneously
- 25 : Software Update reserved P425
- *1 (succeeded/failed): Result of auto-update of the latest pattern definition P427

*1 The current highest priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in the order of priority from the top.

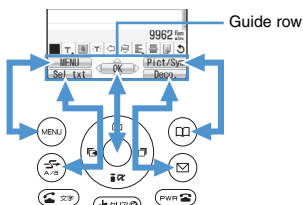
*2 Displayed also when the storage space for either of i-mode Mail or Message R/F is full and unreceived mail or message exists.

*3 Displayed overlapped on the icon indicating presence of unread i-mode Mail or SMS.

Reading the guide row

Operations that can be executed by pressing , , , and are displayed in the guide row.

Example Guide row for the mail message entry screen

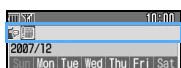


The correspondence between the display positions and the keys is as shown in the figure. In this manual, the operations displayed in the guide row are explained using the corresponding keys (). The operations displayed in the guide row differ depending on the screen.

- on the guide row corresponds to of the Easy Selector Plus (it may be different depending on the function, i-mode site or website in use).

Reading the task bar

The icon of the function (task) in progress appears on the task bar (up to 9 icons). You can confirm functions being used and running. In addition, when receiving a mail or message, the reception result ticker appears.



Task bar

- : Voice call
- : Videophone
- : Switching voice/videophone call
- : Ending call
- : Adjusting volume using Multitask
- : Phonebook
- : Received Calls
- : Redial
- : Answer Machine/Voice Memo
- : Own Number
- : Mail
- : Receiving i-mode Mail/Message R/F
- : Receiving SMS
- : Chat Mail
- : Message R/F
- : Sent Msg. Log
- : Received Msg. Log
- : Check i-mode Message/SMS
- : i-mode/i-Channel
- : i-mode Bookmark/Internet Connection/Screen Memo/i-mode Shortcut

- : i-appli
- : ToruCa
- : Full Browser
- : My Picture
- : i-motion
- : Melody
- : My Document (PDF Viewer)
- : Others (Document Viewer)
- : Chara-den
- : Machi-chara
- : Kisekai tool
- : Still Camera
- : Movie Camera
- : Sound Recorder
- : Bar Code Reader
- : Music Player
- : Viewing 1Seg
- : Timer
- : Setting Alarm Clock/alarm clock sounding
- : Scheduler/Booking Program List
- : Schedule alarm sounding
- : Notepad
- : Calculator
- : Dictionaries

- : Videophone call through external device
- : Data exchanging through external device
- (dark blue/gray): Accessing/waiting for access to the microSD memory card
- : 64K data communication
- : Originating/communicating/sending/receiving packet via USB
- (dark blue/gray): Setting/holding each function
- : Software Update activated
- : Software Update notified
- : Update Definition activated/version display
- : Setting each network service
- : Accessing Data Center
- : Displaying communication log with Data Center

Reading the list screen



- 1 The number of the currently displayed page and the total number of pages (when a list extends over multiple pages)
- 2 : Indicates that other selectable items exist above and below the highlighted item.
 - Press to move the cursor.
 - If you press on the last item of the page, the next page appears, and if you press on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.
- : Indicates that selectable items exist over multiple pages.
 - Press to switch between pages.
 - You cannot switch between pages on the icon selection screen, etc.

INFORMATION

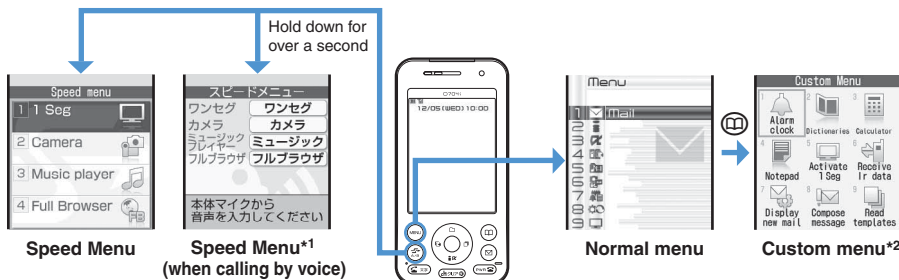
- Note that the following cases may occur due to the characteristics of liquid crystal display (LCD) and they are not defects in the FOMA terminal.
 - The FOMA terminal display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit.
 - When the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal with the power turned on, residual images may remain for some time. Remove the battery pack with the power turned off.
 - When a screen has been displayed for a certain time, if you change it to another screen by performing some operations, residual images of the previous screen may remain.

Selecting the menu

There are three types of the menu: normal menu, custom menu and Speed Menu.

The normal menu is a standard menu that appears when you press . The custom menu is your original menu created by adding menu items.

Speed Menu can be displayed by pressing . Use Speed Menu to quickly start feature functions.



*1 Can only be displayed in the Japanese display. Switch to the Japanese display in advance.

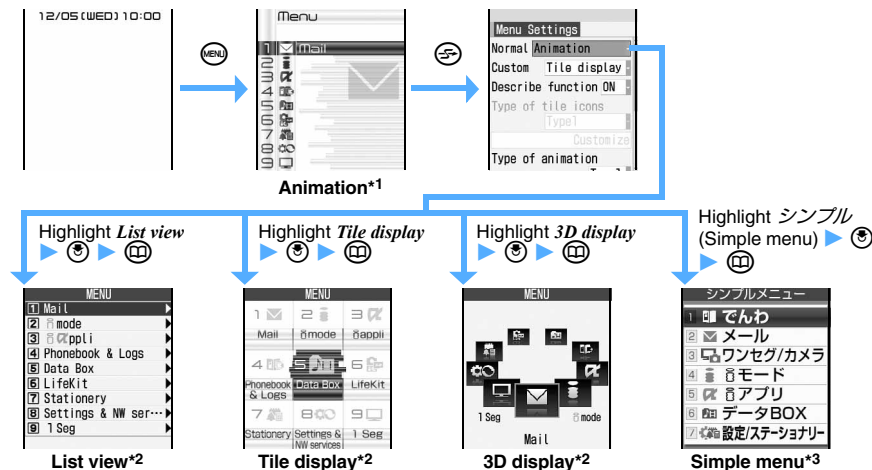
*2 Can be displayed by pressing if **Default MENU** of Menu Setting is set to **Custom**.

Menu display format

You can select a display format for the normal menu and the custom menu.

For the normal menu, you can set the simple menu that is limited to frequently used functions.

Example Changing the display format for the normal menu



*1 The screen is an example of the normal menu displayed when Style Theme is set to **ClearLine**. **Animation** of the normal menu is set by default.

*2 Can also be set for the custom menu (Menu Setting .

*3 Can only be set in the Japanese display. Switch to the Japanese display before setting the simple menu.

Selecting functions from the menu

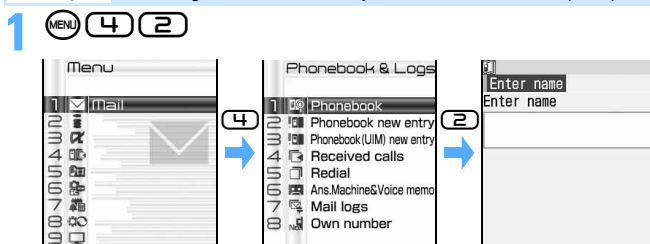
Select menu items by the dial keys (Shortcut operations). Also, use the Easy Selector Plus to select menu items.

- In this manual, the operation procedure is explained mainly in shortcut operations using the normal menu (except simple menu).
- When any lock function is set or the UIM is not inserted, some functions are disabled. The disabled functions are indicated by  or their menus are dimmed. However, if the menu display format is set to *Animation*, a message appears when menu items for the disable functions are selected.

Selecting menu items with the dial keys (Shortcut operations)

Each menu item has a number (item number) and can be selected by pressing the corresponding key. In the 3D display menu, use the same item numbers as the tile display, list view or animation menu.

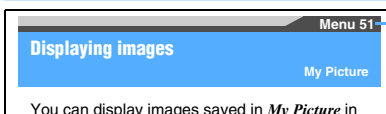
Example Executing *Phonebook new entry* from the normal menu (except simple menu)



When several shortcuts are available

When there are multiple shortcut operations available in the normal menu (except simple menu), the shortcut operations other than described in the operating procedure are shown at the far right of the title in the body text.

Example Displaying *My Picture* in Data Box



Press  to show the menu, then press   to open *My Picture* of Data Box.

-  means pressing , and  means pressing .

Selecting menu items with the Easy Selector Plus

Example Executing *Phonebook new entry* from the normal menu (*Type1* of animation menu)

1  ► **Highlight Phonebook & Logs** ► 

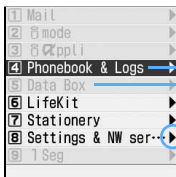


- To return to the previous screen: 
- To return to the standby display: 
- Highlighting the desired menu item in other than the animation menu shows the description of the item's function.
- In case of the animation menu,  in the guide row does not appear.

Phonebook & Logs is highlighted

2 Highlight *Phonebook new entry* ➤ 🗄️

■ Selecting menu items (List view)



- Menu item that has been highlighted
- Menu item that cannot be selected (dimmed)
- Lower-level menu exists.

Highlight a menu item and press 🗄️ or 🗄️➡️.

- To return to the menu of previous level: 🗄️➡️ or

🗄️➡️

■ Selecting menu items (Tile display)

Highlight a menu item and press 🗄️.

- To return to the previous menu: 🗄️➡️

■ Selecting menu items (3D display)

Bring the desired item to the front of the icon ring and press 🗄️.

- Press 🗄️➡️ to move the icon at the rear to the front.

Displaying description of menu items (Describe function)

Highlight a menu item in other than the animation menu. After a brief interval, description of the item's function appears.

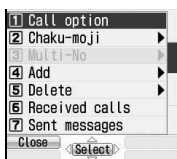
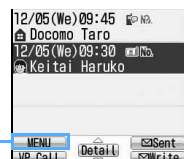
- The function description appears briefly then disappears.
- You can set the FOMA terminal not to display the function description. ➡️P115

Selecting functions from the submenu

When **MENU** is displayed at the upper left of the guide row, you can use the submenu to perform various operations.

Example Displaying the Redial submenu

1 🗄️ in the redial list ➤ Highlight a submenu item ➤ 🗄️ or 🗄️➡️



- Selecting items in the submenu is the same as in the list view menu.

- To close the submenu: 🗄️

Shows that a submenu exists.

Setting items on the screen

Selecting an item from the pulldown menu

1 Highlight an item ➤ 🗄️ to display the pulldown menu ➤ 🗄️➡️ to highlight an item ➤ 🗄️

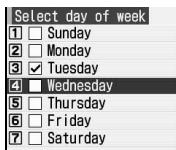


Pull-down menu

- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

Selecting an item from the check box

1 Highlight a check box



The check box changes from ☐ to ☒, and is selected.

- Select the selected item to cancel the selection. The check box changes from ☒ to ☐.
- Depending on the function, you can select/cancel all items by pressing .
- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

Selecting *Yes* or *No* on the confirmation screen

1 Highlight *Yes* or *No*



- For some functions, items other than *Yes* or *No* may appear.

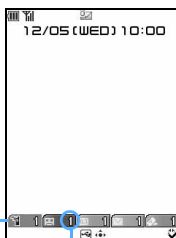
Displaying information quickly

Focus Mode

When the icons such as  1 or  1 are displayed on the standby display, you can quickly display the information.

1 Highlight an icon such as 1 or 1

The screen corresponding to the selected icon appears.



The number of stored items is indicated at the right of each icon.

In Focus Mode, the color of the highlighted icon changes.

1 **Missed call exists:**

The received call list appears, letting you check the received date and time, the caller information, etc.

1 **Unplayed recorded message exists:**

The recorded message list appears, letting you play the recorded messages.

1 **Voice mail message exists:**

The confirmation screen for playing voice mail messages appears, letting you play the messages.

1 **Unread received mail exists:**

The received mail folder list appears, letting you check unread mail.

1 **Unread ToruCa exists:**

The ToruCa list appears, letting you check unread ToruCa.

- To cancel Focus Mode:  or 
- You can also perform the same operation when the following icons appear:
 -  /  (succeeded/failed): Auto-update result of the latest pattern definition exists 
 -  : Being connected to external device via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) 

INFORMATION

- When you highlight an icon and hold down  for over a second, the icon temporarily disappears from the screen. It reappears when new information is stored or the number of stored items changes by viewing information, etc. For the icon indicating voice mail messages, however, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to clear the icon. Select *Yes* to clear it temporarily.

Using the UIM (FOMA card)

The UIM (FOMA card) is a card in which your phone number and other information are recorded. Insert the UIM into the FOMA terminal to use it.

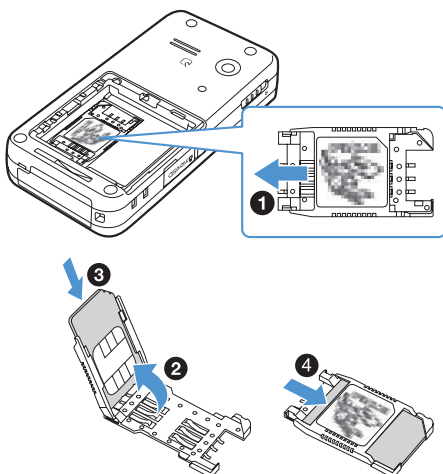
- For details on handling the UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

Inserting/removing the UIM

Use your FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted. If the UIM is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, first insert it.

- Turn the power off and remove the back cover and the battery pack before inserting or removing the UIM.
For attaching/removing the back cover and battery pack ➡ P35
- Insert or remove the UIM with the FOMA terminal closed using both hands.

Inserting the card



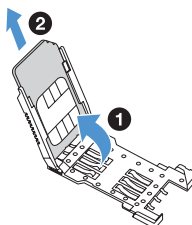
- 1 Slide the lid of the UIM case in the direction of the arrow.**

This will unlock the lid.

- 2 Open the lid of the UIM case.**
- 3 Insert the UIM fully in the slot inside the lid in the direction of the arrow shown in the figure.**
- 4 Close the lid of the UIM case and slide the lid in the direction opposite to that shown in Step 1 until it clicks and is locked in place.**

- If you cannot close the lid of the UIM case successfully, slide the UIM a little in the direction opposite to the insert position.

Removing the card



- 1 Open the lid of the UIM case.**
 - Follow Step 1 to 2 in "Inserting the card".
- 2 Pull out the UIM.**

INFORMATION

- Insert or remove the UIM carefully as forcing it may damage the card.
- Carefully handle the removed UIM so that it does not become lost.

UIM security codes

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes are used for the UIM.

Both codes are set to "0000" at the time of subscription to the FOMA service. You can change this to any code (4 to 8 digits). ☛P128

UIM operation restriction function

The FOMA terminal is provided with the UIM operation restriction function for protecting your data and files.

- When the data or files downloaded from sites or the data attached to mail are saved in the FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted, the UIM operation restriction is automatically set to these data or files.
- If the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from the FOMA terminal, the data or files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be displayed, played, copied or moved to the microSD memory card or exchanged by infrared or iC communication.
- The data which is subject to the restriction is as follows:
 - File attached to i-mode Mail (excluding ToruCa)
 - Image inserted in Deco-mail or signature
 - i-αppli (including the i-αppli standby display)
 - Image (including animation and Flash movie)
 - Machi-chara
 - Melody
 - Word/Excel/PowerPoint file
 - Recorded message of videophone call
 - Mail template containing data which is subject to the operation restriction
 - Video memo
 - Image of ToruCa (details)
 - Screen memo
 - Message R/F
 - Data compatible with Movable Contents
 - i-motion
 - Chara-den
 - Chaku-Uta®/Chaku-Uta Full®
 - PDF data
 - Kisekai tool
 - Image downloaded from the Data Center

"Chaku-Uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

- For i-αppli with the UIM operation restriction set, if the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from the FOMA terminal, you can only delete or protect such i-αppli.

INFORMATION

- When the data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the standby display, call image or ring alert, if the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from the FOMA terminal, the image and sound settings return to the default. In this case, the image and sound that are actually displayed and generated may differ from the settings. Inserting the UIM that was used when the data was downloaded cancels the operation restriction and restores the original settings. (Note that the setting of Random Display Image may be canceled if the data was used for it.)
- The UIM operation restriction is not set to the data obtained via infrared or iC communication, the microSD memory card or DoCoMo keitai datalink, or to the still images or videos taken with the built-in camera.
- When the UIM is inserted in other i-Channel compatible terminals, the i-Channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display. After that, if the information is updated automatically or if you press **(2UP)** on the standby display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and then displayed as ticker on the standby display.
- When the UIM is not inserted, the i-Channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.

Settings saved into the UIM

The following settings are saved into the UIM. If the UIM is replaced, the settings of the new UIM become effective.

- My phone number
- DoCoMo certificate and user certificate set in Manage Certificate
- SMS Setting (except *SMS report request*)
- Select Language
- The PIN1/PIN2 code of the UIM and PIN1 Code ON/OFF

Functional differences between the UIM types

Note the following functional differences between the UIM (blue) and the UIM (green/white) when used in the FOMA terminal:

Item	UIM (blue)	UIM (green/white)	Page
Number of digits of a phone number that can be registered in the UIM phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P81
Certificate Download for using FirstPass	Unavailable	Available	P180
WORLD WING service	Unavailable	Available	P35
Service Dialing Number	Unavailable	Available	P376

WORLD WING

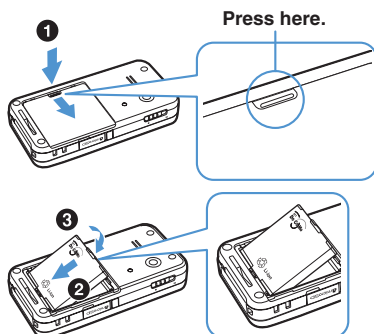
WORLD WING is the DoCoMo international roaming service for FOMA that allows you to make and receive calls with the same mobile phone number overseas by inserting the UIM (green/white) in a FOMA terminal compatible with WORLD WING or in a W-CDMA or GSM mobile phone for overseas use.

- If you subscribed to the FOMA service on and after September 1, 2005, no subscription is required to use WORLD WING. However, if you requested not to subscribe to it at the time of subscription to the FOMA service or have canceled the subscription, a subscription is required.
- If you subscribed to the FOMA service on and before August 31, 2005 but have not subscribed to WORLD WING, a subscription is required.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.
- If you lose the UIM (green/white) or have it stolen overseas, contact DoCoMo immediately to have the card suspended. For contact information, refer to "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual. Note that any call or communication charges incurred after the UIM is stolen will be borne by the customer.

Attaching/removing the battery pack

- Turn the power off before attaching or removing the battery pack. Also, attach or remove it with the FOMA terminal closed using both hands.
- Be careful not to touch the camera lens.
- Use the specified Battery Pack D07.

Attaching the battery pack



① Remove the back cover.

While pressing the top of the back cover with your thumb, slide it in the direction of the arrow until it is removed.

② With the surface with the DoCoMo logo and the recycle mark facing up, insert the battery pack into the FOMA terminal at the angle as shown in the figure.

Do not force the battery pack into the FOMA terminal. Doing so could damage the body connector or battery pack terminals.

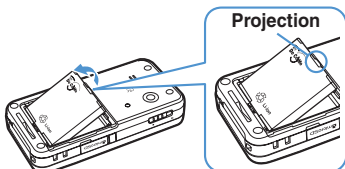
③ Push the battery pack in.



- ④ Place the back cover plate so that it can slide about 2 mm on the FOMA terminal.
- ⑤ Slide the back cover in the direction of the arrow while pushing its center with your thumb so that the FOMA terminal and the back cover do not gap.

Failure to follow the correct procedure could damage the back cover.

Removing the battery pack



- ① Remove the back cover.
- ② Lift the projection of the battery pack using your finger and remove it.

INFORMATION

- The FOMA terminal display uses an active LCD. Due to the characteristics of active LCD, residual images or crossbar may remain for a while when the battery pack is attached or removed. This is not a fault of the FOMA terminal.
- When you remove the battery pack, reservation of software update may be canceled. If you set *Auto time adjust* to *OFF* and enter the date and time manually in Date and Time Setting, the set date and time may be cleared when you remove the battery pack.
- When you remove the battery pack, i-appli which uses the date and time information set on the standby display may not run correctly. In that case, set the date and time again.

Charging the FOMA terminal

When the battery level is low, charge the battery.

- The battery level icon shows how much charge remains in the battery. ➡P39

Battery pack life

■ The battery pack is a consumable part

Each time it is charged, it will accept slightly less charge than the previous time.

■ When the battery charge lasts only half as long as when it was new

The end of battery pack life is approaching. Replace it with a new one immediately. Depending on usage, the battery pack may swell as it nears the end of its life, but this will not cause a problem.

■ If you use i-appli, videophone or 1Seg for a long time during charging

The battery pack life may be shortened.

■ The FOMA terminal uses a lithium ion battery containing valuable materials that should be recycled

To protect the environment, return used batteries to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, NTT DoCoMo agent or recycling center.

■ Take the following precautions when recycling batteries

- Attach a piece of adhesive tape on the terminals of used battery packs.
- Do not disassemble or modify battery packs.



Charging

The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether the FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power on.

■ When charging is started

The Enter key lights in red.

When the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon blinks.

Status	Icon ()	Enter key lighting	Meaning
Charging	Blinks	Lights in red	Charging normally
Charged	Lights	Goes off	Charging completed normally

- The default battery level icon differs depending on the color of the FOMA terminal. Even if you change the battery level icon using Kisekai tool,  appears during charging.
- If the Enter key does not light in red at the start of charging or it blinks in red, charging is unsuccessful. When the temperature of the FOMA terminal is high, the battery may not be charged. Stop any function in progress and confirm that the temperature is low before charging again. If the battery pack still cannot be charged even after charging again, contact “Repairs” on the back of this manual.

■ When charging is completed with the power on

The charge alert sounds and the battery level icon lights.

■ When the battery is fully charged

Connecting the FOMA terminal to the AC adapter or DC adapter may not start charging.

■ Precautions

- If you talk on the phone or use communication, i-mode or i-appli for a long time while charging the battery, charging will take longer. The battery may not be charged temporarily by temperature rise.
- Insert or remove the connector straight to/from the FOMA terminal.
- Insert or remove the connector to/from the FOMA terminal slowly and firmly without forcing it. When removing it, be sure to press the release buttons on both sides of the connector and pull it out. Forcibly pulling the connector could cause equipment failure.
- For details, refer to the manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
- The FOMA AC Adapter 01 supports 100 V AC only. The FOMA AC Adapter 02 supports 100 V to 240 V AC.
- The FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use supports 100 V to 240 V AC, but its adapter plug is for 100 V AC (domestic specifications).

Do not charge for longer than 1 day with the power on

The FOMA terminal uses power after charging is completed until the terminal is unplugged from the adapter. In such a case, the AC adapter or DC adapter charges again but if the FOMA terminal is removed in the middle of charging, the following could occur:

- Low battery level
- Message appears indicating that the battery runs down
- The FOMA terminal is operational for a short time

Charging time and operation time on full charge (estimates)

Charging time	Continuous call time*1	Continuous standby time*2	1Seg viewing time*5
Approx. 140 minutes	During a voice call: Approx. 180 minutes During a videophone call: Approx. 110 minutes	While standing still*3: Approx. 600 hours While moving*4: Approx. 420 hours	Economy mode: Approx. 330 minutes Normal mode: Approx. 300 minutes

*1 Estimated call time of the FOMA terminal when it can send and receive signals normally.

- *2 Estimated operation time of the FOMA terminal when it is closed and able to receive signals normally. The call time and standby time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication) time and standby time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call (communication) time and standby time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail or by starting downloaded i-appli or the i-appli standby display.
- *3 Average operation time of the FOMA terminal when it is standing still, closed and able to receive signals normally.
- *4 Average operation time of the FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the service area when it is closed and able to receive signals normally.
- *5 Estimated viewing time on the FOMA terminal with a stereo earphone connected to it.

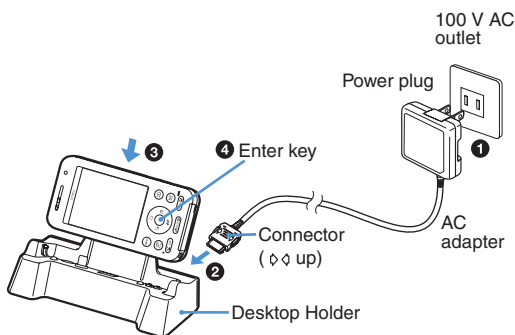
■ Precautions

Alternatively, if you use data communication, Multiaccess, Still/Movie Camera or FM Radio, play video/ i-motion or music or watch 1Seg, the call (communication) time and standby time will be reduced.

How to charge

Use the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional) and Desktop Holder D14 (optional) to charge the battery. You can also charge using only the AC adapter.

- The battery pack can only be charged when it is attached to the FOMA terminal.
- For details, refer to the manuals for the AC adapter and the Desktop Holder.

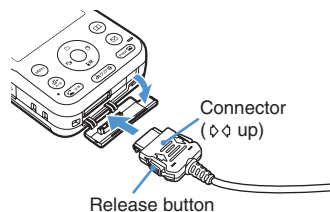


- 1 Insert the power plug of the AC adapter into a 100 V AC outlet.**
- 2 Insert the AC adapter connector in the Desktop Holder until it clicks.**
- 3 Along with the Desktop Holder, insert the FOMA terminal at the angle as shown in the figure in the direction of the arrow.**
- 4 Check that charging starts.**

Check that the Enter key lights in red. When charging is completed, remove the FOMA terminal from the Desktop Holder by tilting it to the front while holding the Desktop Holder by hand.

- When inserting the FOMA terminal into the Desktop Holder, be careful not to put a strap in the holder.
- When the FOMA terminal is not inserted firmly or it leans, the battery is not charged normally. Insert the FOMA terminal until it clicks.
- Insert the FOMA terminal into the Desktop Holder in the direction as shown in the above figure. If you insert in a wrong direction, the battery cannot be charged.
- When you push the projection of the Desktop Holder, the charging terminals protrude. Do not push the projection unless you charge the FOMA terminal. Do not touch the charging terminals with your hands, fingers or some other part of the body when the Desktop Holder is connected to a wall outlet.

Charging the battery with the AC adapter alone



Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal, and insert the AC adapter connector in until it clicks.

- When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and close the terminal cap.
- You can charge the battery with the FOMA terminal either closed or open.

Charging in a car

Use the FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional) to charge the battery in a car. It can be used in negative ground cars (both 12 V and 24 V).

- For details, refer to the DC adapter manual.

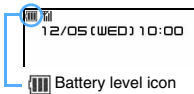
INFORMATION

- If you charge the FOMA terminal with the car engine off, the car battery may be discharged. Charge the battery when the car engine is running.
- When not charging, remove the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket.
- The DC adapter fuses (2A) are consumable items. New fuses are available at automotive supply stores.

Checking the remaining battery level

Battery Level

The display indicates an estimate of the remaining battery in 3 levels.



Battery level icon

- ▢ (Level 3): Amply charged.
- ▢ (Level 2): Charging decreased.
- ▢ (Level 1): Almost empty. Charge the battery.

- The default battery level icon differs depending on the color of the FOMA terminal.

Checking the remaining battery level by sound and display

1



(Level 3)



Sounds 3 times.

(Level 2)



Sounds twice.

(Level 1)



Sounds once.

The remaining battery level is displayed. The confirmation sound rings by the sound set in Keypad Sound.

When the battery almost runs down

A message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing , or , but after a period of time, it reappears and the low battery alert sounds. At this time, all the icons on the top of the screen blink and after about 1 minute, the power turns off automatically. Charging the battery stops the low battery alert. To stop it immediately, press .

- During a call, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and the message appears. When about 20 seconds elapse after the low battery alert is heard from the earpiece, the call is cut off. Then, after about 1 minute, the power turns off automatically.

Setting the low battery alert not to sound

Low Battery Alert

Default ON

1



INFORMATION

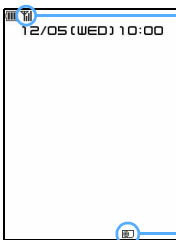
- When the battery almost runs down during a call, even if **OFF** is set, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece.

- When the FOMA terminal is turned on for the first time, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to perform Software Update. ➡P423

Turning the power on

1 (for over 2 seconds)

The wake-up screen appears and then the standby display. The wake-up screen may take some time to appear.



Standby display

 Received signal level (Signal level icon)

 is indicated while reading the UIM and disappears when reading is completed.

Icon					
Received signal level	Strong  Weak				Outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach

- The default signal level icon differs depending on the color of the FOMA terminal.
- If the date and time have not been set, a message appears indicating that. When the FOMA terminal receives the time information and the time is automatically corrected, the message disappears. Press  to set the date and time manually.
- If no UIM is inserted, a message appears indicating that insertion of the UIM is required. Turn the power off, insert the UIM and then turn the power back on.

Turning the power off

1 (for over 2 seconds)

INFORMATION

- When you turn on the FOMA terminal after replacing the UIM (except when Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is set), entry of the 4 to 8-digit terminal security code is required. After entering the correct terminal security code, the standby display appears. If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned off (but can be turned on again).
- When you turn on the FOMA terminal, the PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen appears depending on the setting (➡P128, P353). Enter the PIN1 code or PIN2 code.
- When *Normal use of Display light time* in Display Light Setting is set to other than *Always*, if you do not press any keys for about 90 seconds, the screen display disappears. ➡P114

Switching to English display

Select Language

Default Japanese

1  8 2 7 2  1 or 2

INFORMATION

- This setting is saved in the UIM.

The time setting can be performed in two ways: obtaining the time information from the DoCoMo network to automatically adjust the time setting of the FOMA terminal, or manually entering the current time to the terminal.

Default Auto time adjust: ON Offset: +, 00h00m

1 (MENU) 8 6 1 1 ▶ Set each item ▶ (OK)



- When you set *Auto time adjust* to *ON*, *Offset* can be set. To enter the date and time manually, set *Auto time adjust* to *OFF*.

Auto time adjust :

Set whether to automatically correct the time.

Offset : Specify the amount of time advance (+) or delay (-) so that your terminal's clock advances from or delays to the time obtained for a given length of time.

Date, Time : Enter the date and time.

- The date can be set from January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2050.
- The entered number can also be increased or decreased with (↻). You can also reenter the number after highlighting it with (↻).

When the automatic time correction is set

The automatic time correction takes place when the UIM is inserted and you turn the power on in a location where radio waves reach.

- The automatic time correction sometimes causes a time error of several seconds. In addition, it may fail to correct the time depending on the signal condition.
- If the time information is received while i-appli is running, the time may not be corrected depending on the i-appli.
- Even when *Auto time adjust* is set to *ON*, the time may not be corrected for a while. To enable the automatic time correction, turn the power off and then on.
- When no UIM is inserted or the FOMA terminal is out of the service area, the automatic time correction is not performed even if you turn the power off and then on.

INFORMATION

- You cannot use the following functions when the date and time are not set:
 - Auto Power ON/OFF
 - i-appli Auto Start
 - Software Update
 - Scheduler (including data transfer and display of schedule data)
 - Downloading and playing i-motion with replay restriction set
 - Flash movie which uses the date and time setting
 - Random Display Image (when *Change image* is set to other than *Open slide*)
 - Downloading Chaku-Uta Full® and playing WMA files for which replay restriction is set for copyright protection
 - Alarm Clock
 - i-appli DX
 - Update Definition
 - Activate 1Seg
 - TV link
 - Booking Program List
 - Machi-chara
- If the date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded for the following functions and "----/--/--" or "-----" is displayed. A number to segmentalize (segmental number) may be appended.
 - Redial/Received Calls
 - Date and time of still image/video shot with the camera
 - Date and time of sent mail/unsent mail
 - Date and time of sound recorded with Sound Recorder
 - Date and time in the file name of data scanned by Bar Code Reader
 - Answer Machine/Voice Memo
 - Notepad
 - Sent Msg. Log
 - Date and time of the last reset of call duration/call cost

- Date and time of downloaded i-appli (detail information)
- Saved date and time of downloaded data and file
- File name of created mail template (saved date and time)
- Date and time of received ToruCa

- If you set *Auto time adjust* to **OFF** and enter the date and time manually, when you remove the battery pack or leave the battery discharged for an extended period, the set date and time may be cleared. In that case, set the date and time again.

Notifying your phone number to the other party

Caller ID Notification

Set the FOMA terminal to send your phone number (caller ID) to be displayed on the other party's phone every time you make a call.

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone can display caller ID.
- For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

1      

- To check the current setting:       ► *Yes*

2 Enter the network security code ► 

- To hide the caller ID: 

INFORMATION

- You can use several methods to set the caller ID notification. When setting and operating multiple caller ID notification methods at the same time, the caller ID is notified in the following priority. However, the caller ID notification setting shown on the display may differ from the actual setting.
 - ① Caller ID notification set in Call Option when making a call ◀P54
 - ② Setting by adding "186" or "184" before the other party's phone number ◀P53
 - ③ Caller ID Setting of the phonebook ◀P91
 - ④ Caller ID Notification setting
- If you hear a guidance requesting your caller ID when you make a call, call again after setting to send caller ID.

Menu 48

Checking your own phone number

Own Number

Check your phone number (*My phone number*), name, mail address, etc.

Default My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded

1  

- Setting and checking your i-mode Mail address ◀P188

- Checking your phone number during a call:  

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making voice/videophone calls

Videophone	44
Making voice/videophone calls	45
Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)	Send DTMF 47
Switching between a voice call and videophone call	48
Using Redial/Received Calls	Redial/Received Calls 49
Setting Chaku-moji	Chaku-moji 51
Showing/hiding your caller ID for each call	186/184 Call 53
Making calls by setting the conditions	Call Option 54
Using international calls	WORLD CALL 54
Setting prefix numbers added to phone number	Prefix Dialing 56
Making a call by specifying a sub-address	Sub Address 56
Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of interrupted call	Reconnect Alarm 57
Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality	Noise Reduction 57
Talking without using hands in a car	In-car Handsfree 57

Receiving voice/videophone calls

Receiving voice/videophone calls	58
Switching a received call between a voice call and videophone call	60
Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call	Any Key Answer 60
Setting to start talking by opening the FOMA terminal	Open Answer 61
Setting to disconnect/continue/hold a call by closing the FOMA terminal	Close Setting 61
Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice during a call	Listen Volume 61
Adjusting the volume of ring alert while receiving a call	Ring Alert Volume 62
Setting the priority screen for incoming calls during a call or packet communication	Priority Comm Mode 62

When you can or could not answer a voice/videophone call

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away	Response and Hold 62
Setting the response hold guidance	Status Message 63
Setting the on-hold tone	On-hold Tone 63
Using Public mode (Driving mode)	Public mode (Driving mode) 64
Using Public mode (power off)	Public mode (power off) 65
Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call	Answer Machine 66
Using Chara-den	69
Setting images being sent to the other party	70
Customizing the screen settings during a videophone call	72
Changing the videophone settings	Videophone Settings 73
Setting of switching between a voice call and videophone call	Notify Switchable Mode 75
Setting how incoming videophone calls are handled during i-mode	Data Session Arrival Act 75
Using the videophone by connecting to an external device	External Device 76

Videophone

The videophone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's videophone. Because this FOMA terminal is not equipped with a camera on the front, it sends a Chara-den image or an image taken by a built-in camera on the back to the other party. A still image can also be sent.

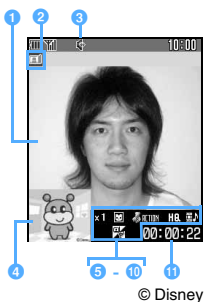
- Chara-den  P290
- A videophone call is transmitted only at 64 kbps.

Specifications for the DoCoMo videophone comply with "3G-324M*1 that has been standardized by the international standard 3GPP*2". Note that the connection with videophones of different specifications cannot be established.

*1 3G-324M...An international standard for the 3rd generation mobile videophone

*2 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)...Area standardization organization established to develop the standard technology specification for the third generation mobile communication system (IMT-2000)

Screen display during a videophone call



© Disney

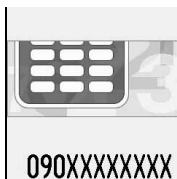
1	Main screen	The other party's image is displayed by default.
2	Videophone icon	 : Using videophone
3	Speakerphone function	 : On No icon: Off
4	Sub screen	Your image is displayed by default.
5	Zoom	 to  : Normal to 4 times
6	Status	 : Sending Chara-den  : Sending the camera-off image  : Sending your camera image  : Sending a frame  : Sending a still image  : On-hold  : On Response and Hold  : Recording a message  : Recording a video memo
7	Action mode	 ACTION: Action  PARTS: Action of parts
	Scene mode/effect	 : Full auto, etc. For icons of other modes/effects  P71
8	Quality of outgoing image	No icon: Normal  : Motion speed preferred  : Image quality preferred
9	Sending and receiving status of sound/image	 : Sending and receiving sound  : Sending and receiving image  : Sending and receiving sound/image
	Speakerphone/earpiece volume	 1 to  10: Adjusting speakerphone/earpiece volume
10	Videophone and voice call switching	No icon: Switching is not available.  : Switching is available.*1
12	Call duration	Displayed in the HH:MM:SS format

*1 Displayed only on the caller's terminal.

Making voice/videophone calls

Because this FOMA terminal is not equipped with a camera on the front, you cannot send your image through the camera while talking. By default, Chara-den is sent to the other party during a videophone call. You can also send an image through the camera on the back or a substitute image set in advance.

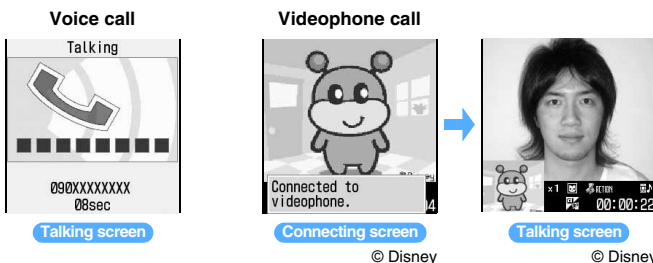
1 Enter the phone number



- When calling general subscriber phones, always include the area code, even from the same city.
- Up to 80 digits can be entered. However, only 24 digits are displayed.
- To correct the phone number: **2UP**
- To return to the standby display: **2UP** (for over a second)

2 (voice call) or (videophone call)

You will hear a dial tone. You can start talking when the call is answered.



- If the other party is busy, you will hear a busy signal. For a videophone call, the message **Busy**, or **Connection failed**, appears. Press  to end the call and call again later. You can call again quickly using Redial.
- If the other party's mobile phone or PHS is turned off or is in an area where radio waves are hard to reach, a guidance informs that the connection is unavailable.
- Charging begins when **Connected to videophone** appears.
- The other party's voice comes out of the speaker during a videophone call (Speakerphone function).
- The following operations are available during a voice call:
 - To display received calls: 
 - To display redials: 
 - To start the phonebook: 

3 to end the call

INFORMATION

[Common]

- If you hear a guidance requesting your caller ID when making a call, call again after setting the FOMA terminal to send caller ID. 

- When you have subscribed to the Multi Number service, you can call after selecting a registered multi-number. 

[Voice call]

- You can also make a voice call in order of Step 2 and Step 1. A voice call will be made automatically about 5 seconds after you have pressed  and entered the phone number.

[Videophone call]

- If a videophone call is not connected, one of the following messages appears on the screen and then the standby display reappears. Note that the displayed message may not reflect the status of the other party's terminal correctly, depending on the type of the terminal or the network service used by the other party.

Message	Description
<i>Busy.</i>	The other party is busy.*1
<i>Redial using voice call.</i>	This message appears when the other party has activated Call Forwarding Service with the forwarding destination set to a terminal incompatible with videophone.
<i>Upper limit exceeded. Connection failed.</i>	This message appears when the limit is exceeded for a billing plan with a charge limit (such as Type limit and Family Wide limit).
<i>Connection failed.</i>	Set Caller ID Notification to <i>Notify</i> and dial again. • The message may also appear in cases other than the above.
<i>Out of service area/power off.</i>	The other party is outside the service area or the other party's terminal is turned off.
<i>Busy with packet transmission.</i>	The other party is in packet communication.
<i>Set Caller ID to ON.</i>	This message appears in case of connecting without notifying the caller ID (when accessing to V-live or visualnet).
<i>Check number, then redial.</i>	You dialed the phone number not used.
<i>Make call from i-mode web page.</i>	This message appears when using V-live. Access to the IP site via i-mode then make a videophone call on the site screen.

*1 The message may also appear when the other party is in packet communication, depending on his or her terminal.

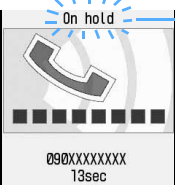
- If a videophone call failed to be connected while *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, the call is automatically redialed as a voice call. If redialing as voice call occurs, voice call charges apply.
- When there is an incoming call while dialing a videophone call or redialing, the dialing may be interrupted and the ring alert may sound.
- Even if sending/receiving sound or image is aborted and  (sound only) or  (image only) appears during a videophone call, the call may be continued.
- Please note that digital communication charges apply to videophone calls instead of voice call charges even if the substitute image or Chara-den is used.

Putting calls on hold while talking

On-hold

Putting the call on hold while talking makes your voice unheard to the other party. Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 during a call



Voice call on hold

Flashes



Videophone call on hold

The call is put on hold and a guidance (on-hold tone) is heard. For videophone calls, the on-hold image appears on the other party's terminal.

On-hold image

- To resume a voice call on hold, press  or .
- To resume a videophone call on hold, press . The image that has been sent before the hold reappears.

Using the speakerphone function

You can make a call with the other party's voice heard through the speaker.

Example Making a voice call

1 Enter the phone number (for over a second)

-  appears at the top of the display while the speakerphone function is on.
- The same operation is possible from the phonebook list, redial list, received call list, recorded message list and voice memo list.

■ Making a videophone call: Enter the phone number

- When *Speakerphone* is set to **OFF** in Videophone Settings or Silent Mode is active, hold down  for over a second.

■ Turning on/off the speakerphone during a call: or

- While dialing or calling, press  to turn on/off the speakerphone.

■ Adjusting the speakerphone volume: during a call to adjust the volume

- During a videophone call, press  to adjust the speakerphone volume.
- The setting is retained even after the call is ended, and is also reflected to the volume of playback sound for recorded videophone call messages.

INFORMATION

- When the speakerphone function is turned on, the volume may suddenly increase and damage your ears. Use it with the FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- If a call is hard to hear because of the noise around you or the other party, turn off the speakerphone function.
- Talk to the FOMA terminal within about 30 cm.
- The speakerphone function can be used even when Silent Mode is on.

Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)

Send DTMF

- You can input tone signals (DTMF) during a videophone call while sending Chara-den () , the camera image () or the camera-off image () .

Example During a videophone call

1 during a videophone call Press dial keys

The entered number appears on the screen and the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted.

- To cancel transmitting tone signals (DTMF): 
- The tone signals (DTMF) can be transmitted by pressing dial keys without pressing   while the camera image or the camera-off image is being sent.
- When the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted, the set frame and still image are canceled.
- Because tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted using dial keys, you cannot use dial keys to make actions while sending Chara-den.

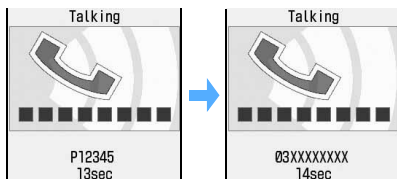
■ Transmitting tone signals (DTMF) during a voice call: Press dial keys during a voice call

Entering pause “P” or timed pause “T”

The pause and timed pause are available only for voice calls.

Example Calling “03XXXXXXXXP12345” (P=Entered pause)

When you press  after the call is connected, the number after the pause (P) is sent.



■ Entering a pause “P”: while entering the phone number (for over a second)

A pause (P) is used for operating the answering system at home, reserving tickets, etc. At the point the pause (P) is entered, the dialed digits are separated and tone signals (DTMF) are sent.

- You cannot make a call if a pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

■ Entering a timed pause “T”: while entering the phone number (for over a second)

A timed pause (T) is used to dial an external number followed by an extension number. Enter a timed pause (T) between the external and extension numbers. The extension number will be called a certain number of seconds after the external number.

- Timed pauses can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause is followed by a second interval.
- You cannot make a call if a timed pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

INFORMATION

- Tone signals (DTMF) may not be received depending on the receiving device.
- You cannot make a call to another party by putting the current call on hold and entering a pause (P) or timed pause (T).

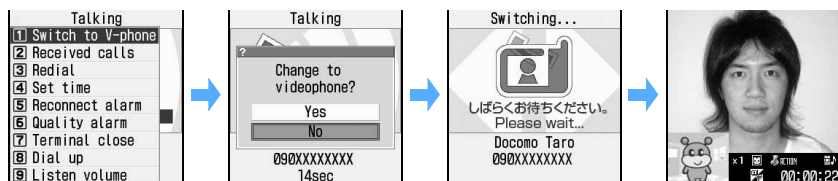
Switching between a voice call and videophone call

You can switch between a voice call and a videophone call by operating from the submenu during a call when the other party's terminal can also switch the call. Switching can be performed only from the calling terminal.

- This operation is available between the terminals that support switching between a voice call and videophone call.
- To switch the call, the other party needs to set **Indication ON** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ◀P75
- Because this FOMA terminal is not equipped with a camera on the front, you cannot send your image through the camera while talking. By default, Chara-den is sent to the other party during a videophone call. You can also send an image through the camera on the back or a substitute image set in advance.

Example Switching a voice call to a videophone call

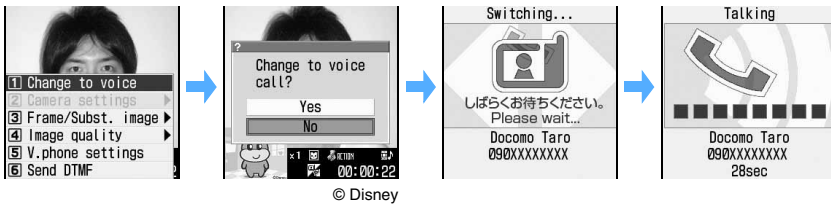
1  **1** during a voice call ▶ Yes



© Disney

- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is heard during switching.
- Select *No* to return to the voice call talking screen.
- If *Speakerphone* is set to *ON* in Videophone Settings, the speakerphone is turned on when the call is switched to a videophone call.

■ Switching a videophone call to a voice call: (MENU) 1 during a videophone call ▶ Yes



INFORMATION

- When you are in packet communication, disconnect the packet communication and switch to a videophone call.
- When the other party is in packet communication, the call cannot be switched to a videophone call.
- During a voice call using Call Waiting Service, you cannot switch the call to a videophone call.
- It takes about 5 seconds to switch. It may take longer depending on signal conditions.
- Depending on signal conditions, a voice call and videophone call may not be switched and the call may be disconnected.
- The speakerphone function is turned off when a videophone call is switched to a voice call.
- The settings (such as selecting the frame) made during a videophone call are canceled when a videophone call is switched to a voice call.
- According to the call duration of a voice call and videophone call, the call charges are added up, respectively.
- The call is not charged while *Switching...* is displayed.

Menu 45 / Menu 44

Using Redial/Received Calls

Redial/Received Calls

The FOMA terminal records voice calls and videophone calls that you made in Redial and those you received in Received Calls. With Received Calls, you can also check unanswered calls (missed calls) and recorded messages.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded in each log, respectively. When the number exceeds 30, calls are deleted starting with the oldest one.

Example Making a call using Redial

1 (voice call) ▶ Highlight a party in the redial list



- To make a call using Received Calls: (voice call) ▶ Highlight a party in the received call list
- To display the details screen: Select a call

2 (voice call) or (videophone call)

- To make a call with the same call type as the highlighted call: (voice call) on the details screen
- If you use a received call with Chaku-moji to make a call, the Chaku-moji is not attached when dialing.

Operating on the redial/received call list

You can also perform the following operations such as phonebook registration from the details screen.

■ Registering an entry in the phonebook:

- ① Highlight a call ► 4 1
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry: 4 2
- ② 1 or 2 ► Register the name or mail address ◀P79, P81
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry: 1 or 2 ► Select the party ► Edit the data ◀P88

■ Deleting redials/received calls:

- You cannot delete multiple calls at once on the details screen.
- ① Highlight a call ► 5 1
 - To delete multiple calls: 5 2 ► Select calls ►
 - To delete all: 5 3
 - ② Yes

■ Composing SMS: Highlight a call ► (for over a second)

The SMS composition screen appears with the phone number of the highlighted call specified as the address.

- If the phone number is registered in the phonebook together with a mail address, pressing displays the i-mode Mail composition screen for the registered mail address. When multiple mail addresses are registered, select a mail address. If no mail address is registered, the SMS composition screen appears with the phone number specified as the address.

■ Setting whether to display the image on the details screen: 8 on the details screen ►

- 1 - 3
- For details ◀P88

■ Other operations available on the list screen

- To switch between the redial list and received call list: 6
- To switch to the sent message log: in the redial list
- To switch to the received message log: in the received call list

INFORMATION

- If you switch between a voice call and videophone call while talking, the call type (voice/videophone call) at the time you dialed/received is recorded in the call log.
- When a voice call and videophone call are made to the same number, only the most recent call is recorded as a redial for each caller ID preference: show, hide or no setting.
- Calls received from callers using dial-in services in such as office may display different numbers from the caller's dial-in number.
- Selecting a multi-number registered for Multi Number ◀P377

Unanswered voice/videophone calls (Missed calls)

1 is indicated and the call is recorded as a received call. ◀P32

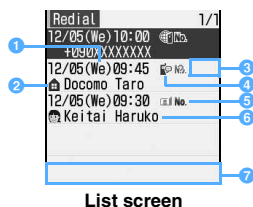
- When there is a missed call from an unknown phone number, the ringing time enables you to check whether the call is a malicious call (One-Ring Call, etc.) made for the sole purpose of leaving a received call record.

INFORMATION

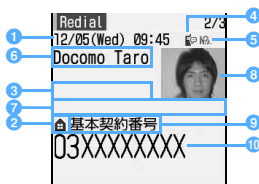
- Press 8 1 in the received call list to display all calls including the missed calls of which ringing times are shorter than the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting. To hide such short ringing calls, press 8 2.
- If only missed calls of which ringing times are shorter than the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting are recorded as received calls, pressing on the standby display shows a confirmation screen asking whether to display hidden missed calls.

Reading the redial/received call list screen

Example For Redial



List screen



Details screen

1	Date and time	Calling/receiving date and time
2	Icon	Icon registered in the phonebook*1
3	Ringing time *2	Displayed for missed call only
4	Call type	/ (domestic/overseas): Voice call / (domestic/overseas): Videophone call / (domestic/overseas): 64K data communication (for received call only)
5	Caller ID notification *3	No. : Notify/Show caller ID : Not notify/Hide caller ID
	Call status (with Chaku-moji/without Chaku-moji)	/ : Answered / : Missed call (checked) / : Missed call (unchecked) / : Recorded message / : Recorded message (deleted)
6	Other party information	Phone number (list screen only), name*4 or reason for no caller ID (received call only)
7	Chaku-moji	Displayed for received call with Chaku-moji attached
8	Image	Image registered in the phonebook*5
9	Name of multi-number	Displayed when you have subscribed to the Multi Number service*6 (the name of the basic number or additional number by which the call was made/received)
10	Phone number	Not displayed for received call without caller ID

*1 Displayed when registered in the phonebook (not displayed during PIM Lock or while not in Secret Mode for a phonebook entry with Secret Attribute).

*2 99+ appears on the list screen if the ringing time is 100 or more seconds.

*3 Displayed when caller ID notification is set in Call Option or Caller ID Setting of the phonebook.

*4 Displayed when registered in the phonebook (while not in Secret Mode, the phonebook entry with Secret Attribute displays the phone number on the list screen and nothing on the details screen).

*5 Displayed according to the setting of View Preference, when registered in the phonebook.

*6 For redial, displayed when the multi-number has been specified in Call Option.

Setting Chaku-moji

Chaku-moji

When you make a voice or videophone call, you can set a message (Chaku-moji) to be displayed on the incoming screen of the other party's terminal. This allows the other party to know the purpose of your call in advance.



Chaku-moji appears on the incoming screen of the other party's terminal. When the call is answered, the Chaku-moji is cleared.

- Supported models: 902iS series, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, 903i series, 904i series, 702iS series (except N702iS, M702iS and M702iG), 703i series, 704i series, 601i series (except L601i) and D800iDS
- Senders are charged, but receivers are not charged.
- Received Chaku-moji is recorded in the received call history.
- When All Lock or PIM Lock is active, you can receive an incoming call with Chaku-moji attached but the Chaku-moji does not appear on the incoming screen. When you cancel the lock, you can check the Chaku-moji message in the received call history.

Editing and setting for Chaku-moji

Creating a Chaku-moji message

- Up to 10 messages can be registered.

1     



2 **<New message>**



■ **Editing a registered message: Select a Chaku-moji message**

■ **Using the history of sent messages:**   ► **Select a Chaku-moji message**

■ **Deleting:**

① **Highlight a Chaku-moji message** ►  

- To delete all:  

② *Yes*

3 **Enter a message (up to 10 one-byte or two-byte characters)**

- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols, and pictograms (except Deco-mail pictograms) can be entered.

4 

- When you have edited a registered Chaku-moji message, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to register it. Select *Yes* to overwrite.

Making the Chaku-moji reception setting Message Display Setting

Default Only with Caller ID

1      ►  - 

Display all : Displays all Chaku-moji.

Hide all : Hides Chaku-moji.

Only from stored No. : Displays Chaku-moji only from a party registered in the phonebook.

Only with Caller ID : Displays Chaku-moji only from a party with the caller ID.

Making a call by attaching Chaku-moji

- Up to 10 messages can be recorded in the history of sent messages. When the number of recorded messages exceeds 10, the oldest message is deleted.

1 **Enter the phone number** ►  

2 Select a Chaku-moji message

- **Creating a message:** (1) ➤ **Create a Chaku-moji message**
 - Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Creating a Chaku-moji message”. ➡P52
- **Selecting a registered message:** (2) ➤ **Select a Chaku-moji message**
- **Selecting from the history of sent messages:** (3) ➤ **Select a Chaku-moji message**

3 (MENU)

- When the Chaku-moji is received by the other party's terminal, *Transmission completed* appears and transmission fee is charged.
- When the Chaku-moji is sent to an incompatible terminal or is not received due to Message Display Setting of the other party's terminal, *Transmission failed* appears and transmission fee is not charged.

INFORMATION

- If the receiver's terminal is in one of the following cases, Chaku-moji is not received and not recorded in the received call history. In addition, the transmission result does not appear on the sender's screen. In this case, transmission fee is not charged.
 - Outside the service area or turned off
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - When the response time of Answer Machine is set to 0 seconds, etc.
- Even when Chaku-moji is received, the transmission result may not appear on the sender's screen depending on signal conditions. In this case, the sender is charged for the transmission.
- When a call with Chaku-moji is received within the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting, the Chaku-moji is displayed and is recorded in the received call history. In this case, the sender is charged for the transmission.
- You cannot send Chaku-moji to a party overseas.

Showing/hiding your caller ID for each call

186/184 Call

Prefix a specific number to the beginning of the phone number when you make a call.

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone can display caller ID.

Showing your caller ID

- 1 (1) (8) (6) ➤ **Enter the phone number** ➤ (voice call) or (videophone call)

Hiding your caller ID

- 1 (1) (8) (4) ➤ **Enter the phone number** ➤ (voice call) or (videophone call)

INFORMATION

- For an international call, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the phone company that handles a call even if “186” is added.
- When you make a call by adding “186” or “184” to the other party's phone number, the phone number with “186” or “184” added is recorded in the redial data.
- Caller ID notification priority ➡P42

You can set the dialing conditions each time you make a voice or videophone call.

1 Enter the phone number

■ **Making an international call:** Enter the country code ▶ area code (city code) ▶ phone number

- For an international call, if the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero when dialing it (however, you must not omit the zero for general subscriber phones in Italy).

2 Set each item

Chaku-moji : Create or select the Chaku-moji message to be sent to the other party. ◀P52

Multi-No : Select the number to be notified to the other party from the basic number or additional numbers. ◀P377

Call type : Select *Voice call* or *V.phone*.

Caller ID : Set whether to show/hide caller ID.
• Caller ID notification priority ◀P42

Prefix : Select the number to be appended (Prefix ◀P56) before the phone number.

Intn'l prefix : Select the international access code set in Int'l Call Assist.

3

A call is made by the settings.

- When you select *V.phone* in **Call type**, press  to select Chara-den to be displayed during a videophone call.
- When you have set **Prefix** or **Intn'l prefix** to other than *Unspecified*, press  and select *Yes*. Press  and select *No, use original* to cancel other settings than the setting of Chaku-moji and call type and make a call.

INFORMATION

- In the redial list, received call list, recorded message list, voice memo list, details screen of Own Number or member list for schedule, press  and select **Call option**.
- In the FOMA terminal phonebook list/details screen or the UIM phonebook list/details screen, highlight a phone number, press  and select **Mail/Call option** → **Call option**.
- For an international call, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the phone company that handles a call even when *Notify* is selected for **Caller ID**.

Using international calls

WORLD CALL

DoCoMo international call service “WORLD CALL”

- The international call service “WORLD CALL” is available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
- Calling procedure:

      ▶    ▶ Enter the country code ▶ area code (city code) ▶ phone number ▶ 

- The above phone number can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero when dialing it (however, you must not omit the zero for general subscriber phones in Italy).

- You can call phones in about 240 countries and regions around the world.

- WORLD CALL charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
- No subscription fee or monthly fee is required.
 - You were subscribed to WORLD CALL as a standard service at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (unless you request not to subscribe to it).
- Changes in international call dialing procedure
 MY LINE service is not applicable to mobile phone communications, including WORLD CALL service. However, along with the introduction of MY LINE service, the dialing procedure for international calls using a mobile phone was changed. Consequently, the previous dialing procedure (without prefix "010") no longer be used.
- Contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for details.
 - To use international call services other than the DoCoMo service, contact each carrier for details.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.

"International videophone" calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by dialing as described above in the videophone mode.

- For the countries and overseas carriers you can connect to, visit the DoCoMo International Services website.
- The image of the other party displayed on the FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other end of the international videophone line.

Setting for international calls

Int'l Call Assist

You can set whether to make an international call by replacing "+" which was entered at the beginning of a phone number with the international access code set in this setting.

Default Intn'l prefix: ON (Name: World Call, Intn'l prefix No.: 009130010)

Setting the auto-switch function

- 1 ► *Intn'l prefix field*
- 2 ► **International access code field** ► **Select the code** ►
 - To cancel: ►

Registering the international access code (International prefix)

You can register up to 3 international access codes to be added at the beginning of the phone number for making international calls.

- 1
- 2 **<Not recorded>**
 - **Setting the international access code to replace "+": Highlight an item** ►
 - ✓ is displayed indicating the set code.
 - **Deleting: Highlight an item** ► ► *Yes*
- 3 **Name field** ► **Enter a name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)**
- 4 **Intn'l prefix No. field** ► **Enter a code (up to 10 digits)** ►

Using “+” to make an international call

When you enter “+” at the beginning of a phone number for dialing, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to replace “+” with the international access code according to Int'l Call Assist.

- If you make a call by entering “+” before the country code of Japan “81”, the international access code does not replace it.
- This operation is valid when *Intn'l prefix* of Int'l Call Assist is set to **ON**.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Enter the country code ▶ area code (city code) ▶ phone number ▶

- Hold down  for over a second to enter “+”.
- If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero when dialing it (however, you must not omit the zero for general subscriber phones in Italy).

2 Yes

- Select **No**, *use original* to dial the phone number without replacing “+”.

Setting prefix numbers added to phone number

Prefix Dialing

By registering the number (prefix) such as an international access code, “184” or “186” to add to the beginning of the phone number in advance, you can add a prefix after entering the phone number to make a call easily.

☛P54

Default 009130010

1

2 Prefix1 to 3 field ▶ Enter a number ▶

- Up to 3 numbers in total and up to 10 digits for each number can be entered.
- Do not include a pause or timed pause in the number (prefix). If you set a prefix containing a pause or timed pause, you cannot add the prefix when making a call.

Making a call by specifying a sub-address

Sub Address

Specify a sub-address to call a specific phone or communication device.

- This setting is also used to select the contents in a video delivery service “V-live”.

Enabling use of a sub-address

Default ON

1 ▶ or

Making a call by specifying a sub-address

1 Enter the phone number ▶ ▶ Enter the sub-address

- You can also enter “✕” at the beginning of the phone number to connect to V-live or other numbers.

2 (voice call) or (videophone call)

- The sub-address needs to be set on the other party's phone or communication device.

INFORMATION

- Even when Sub Address is set to *ON*, if “*” is entered after entering a pause, timed pause or “#”, it is not recognized as a sub-address delimiter and sent as tone signals (DTMF) containing “*”.

Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of interrupted call

Reconnect Alarm

Set an alarm to be heard at the time of reconnecting a voice call or videophone call that was interrupted due to poor signal conditions in a tunnel or behind a building, etc. when signal conditions improve.

- The other party hears no sound while signals are disrupted.
- The time until the call is reconnected depends on line usage or signal conditions. The approximate time is a maximum of 10 seconds.
- Note that the call is charged for the time until the call is reconnected (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be cut off before the alarm sounds depending on line usage or signal conditions.

Default High alarm

1       ►  - 

Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality

Noise Reduction

By suppressing ambient noises during a call, the other party can hear your voice clearly and you can also hear the other party's voice clearly.

- It is recommended that this function usually be set to *ON*.

Default ON

1      ►  or 

Talking without using hands in a car

In-car Handsfree

You can make and receive voice calls from a handsfree compatible device such as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) and car navigation system by connecting it to the FOMA terminal via USB.

- For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the instruction manual of each handsfree device. Note that the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

INFORMATION

- If the setting is made to play sounds from a handsfree device, the ring alert sounds from a handsfree device regardless of the Silent Mode setting or the ring alert settings on the FOMA terminal.
- When a videophone call is made or received with a handsfree device, a substitute image is sent to the other party.
- The operation during incoming calls when Answer Machine is set follows the Answer Machine settings.
- If the setting is made to play sounds from a handsfree device, the call continues even if the FOMA terminal is closed, regardless of Close Setting.

Receiving voice/videophone calls

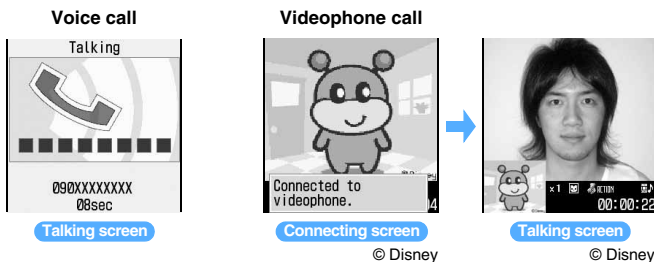
Because this FOMA terminal is not equipped with a camera on the front, you cannot send your image through the camera while talking. By default, Chara-den is sent to the other party during a videophone call. You can also send an image through the camera on the back or a substitute image set in advance.

1 A call arrives

The ring alert sounds, the display light turns on and the Enter key lights or flashes.

2

The call duration is displayed.



- You can also answer a voice call by pressing  -  or  as well as  (Any Key Answer). ➔P60
- You can also answer a videophone call by pressing .
- The other party's voice comes out of the speaker during a videophone call (Speakerphone function).
- For a videophone call, the substitute image may be displayed depending on the other party's settings.
- Even when Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, *Default image* in the substitute image setting is sent to the other party.

3 to end the call

Display information

The caller's information such as phone number, name, image and video/i-motion will be displayed on the screen according to the caller ID setting and your FOMA terminal settings. You can set the FOMA terminal not to display the name or phone number. ➔P113

■ When the caller notifies caller ID



If the caller's phone number is not registered in your phonebook, the phone number is displayed. Also, the image set in Call Alert, Videophone Alert or other settings is displayed.

- Priority of incoming images ➔P112



If the caller's phone number is already registered in your phonebook, the name and phone number are displayed. When Contact Image is set to **ON**, the image or video/i-motion set in the phonebook is also displayed. P113

- Received Chaku-moji is recorded in the received call history.

■ When the caller does not notify caller ID

The reason why no caller ID is sent is displayed.



Reason for no caller ID	Description
<i>Anonymous</i>	The caller selected not to send the caller ID.
<i>Payphone</i>	The call was made from a payphone, etc.
<i>Unavailable</i>	The call was made from a party who cannot send caller ID, such as a call from overseas or from a general subscriber phone via forwarding service (however, caller ID may be displayed depending on the phone company that handles a call).

Operations available from the submenu while receiving a call

If you set *Arrival call act* to *Answer*, the same operations are available from the submenu when there is another incoming voice call during a voice call.

Submenu item	Description
[1] <i>Call Rejection</i>	Disconnects the call (the caller is not charged for the call).
[2] <i>Voice Mail (V-phone answerphone)*1</i>	Connects the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
[3] <i>Call Forwarding*2</i>	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Valid when you have subscribed to Voice Mail Service.

*2 Valid when you have subscribed to Call Forwarding Service and have set the forwarding phone number.

When you hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) during a voice call

If you subscribe to Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service or Call Forwarding Service, you will hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) when you receive another incoming voice call during a voice call and can perform the following operations:

Service	Operation
Voice Mail Service*1	Connects the second call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Waiting Service	Puts the current call on hold and answers the second call.
Call Forwarding Service*1	Forwards the second call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Available from the submenu when *Arrival call act* is set to *Answer*.

- If Call Waiting Service is not subscribed, you cannot answer the call even if you hear the call waiting ring tone.

INFORMATION

- When a call forwarded from a FOMA terminal arrives, the phone number from which it was forwarded is displayed if it is not registered in the phonebook. If it is registered, the name is displayed. However, the phone number or name may not be displayed depending on the forwarding source.
- Even if video/i-motion is set as the incoming image in the phonebook or in Call Alert, it is not played and the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed when there is an incoming voice call during a voice call.
- When you receive an international call, a plus sign (+) appears at the beginning of the caller ID.
- For calls received from callers not registered in the phonebook, you can set to reject calls (P141) or not to start immediately the ring alert and vibrator ringer action (P140).
- Call rejection can be set for some parties registered in the phonebook. P138

- Even if Call Forwarding Service is activated, an incoming videophone call is not connected if the forwarding destination phone does not comply with the 3G-324M. Before setting a forwarding destination, be sure to check the specifications of the destination phone.

Switching a received call between a voice call and videophone call

- The switching operation can be performed from the calling terminal but not from the called terminal.
- To receive a request for switching the call, set *Indication ON* of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ➡P75

Example Switching a received voice call to a videophone call

1 Receive the request for switching to a videophone call during a voice call



The call is switched to a videophone call and the camera-off image is sent to the other party.

- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is heard during switching.

■ Switching a received videophone call to a voice call: Receive the request for switching to a voice call during a videophone call



Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call

Any Key Answer

You can answer a call by pressing **[0]** - **[9]**, **[*]** or **#[** as well as **[END]**.

- This function is available for voice calls only. However, it is unavailable when receiving a call while talking.

Default ON

1 **[MENU]** **[8]** **[4]** **[3]** ➡ **[1]** or **[2]**

Setting to start talking by opening the FOMA terminal

Open Answer

- This function is available for voice calls only (available even while Key Lock is on).

Default OFF

1  8 4 6 4 ► 1 or 2

Setting to disconnect/continue/hold a call by closing the FOMA terminal

Close Setting

- This function does not operate during 64K data communication or packet communication.

Default Continue

1  8 4 7 2 ► 1 - 3

End the call : Ends the call.

Continue : Continues the call.

On hold : Puts the call on hold. The other party hears a guidance (on-hold tone).

INFORMATION

- When you close the FOMA terminal during a call using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) or a handsfree device (available in market), the call continues regardless of this setting if the settings are made to play sounds from the connected device. Even if you remove the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) or handsfree device with the FOMA terminal closed, the call will continue.
- When you close the FOMA terminal while recording a message, the recording continues regardless of this setting.
- This setting applies when you close the FOMA terminal while recording a talking voice memo or video memo. When *On hold* or *End the call* is set, the data recorded up to the point when the call is held or disconnected are saved.

Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice during a call

Listen Volume

- The volume of the other party's voice can be adjusted from level 1 (lowest volume) to level 6 (highest volume).
- The volume changed while talking is retained even after the call is ended or the power is turned off.

Default Level 4

1  during a call ►  to adjust the volume

The volume is set automatically by pressing  or waiting for a while after you stop key operations.

- To turn up the volume:  or 
- To turn down the volume:  or 
- During a videophone call, press  to adjust the volume.

INFORMATION

- For adjusting the earpiece volume in standby and for sound settings affected by Listen Volume ➡ P102

Adjusting the volume of ring alert while receiving a call

Ring Alert Volume

- The volume can be adjusted in 7 levels, from *silent* to level 1 to level 6 (the volume of Movie ringtone can also be adjusted in 7 levels).
- The ring volume changed while receiving a call is reset to the original volume when a call is ended.

Default Level 4

1 while receiving a call ▶ to adjust the volume

The volume is set automatically by pressing or waiting for a while after you stop key operations.

- To turn up the volume: or
- To turn down the volume: or

INFORMATION

- To stop the ring alert and vibrator: while receiving a call
- While receiving a call, the ring volume cannot be set to *STEPTONE* (the volume changes in the order of *silent* → level 1 → ... → level 6 about every 3 seconds).
- For adjusting the ring alert volume in standby and for sound settings affected by Ring Alert Volume P102

Setting the priority screen for incoming calls during a call or packet communication

Priority Comm Mode

Set the priority of the screen to be displayed when you receive a packet communication through a connected PC during a voice call or you receive a voice call during i-mode.

- When there is incoming an i-mode mail or Message R/F during a voice call, the voice call talking screen appears by priority regardless of this setting.
- The screen switching caused by this function does not interrupt the call or packet communication.

Default No Set Up

1 [MENU] [8] [4] [6] [1] ▶ [1] - [3]

No Set Up : Displays the screen for the latest incoming call or communication without setting the priority.

Voice call : Displays the voice call talking screen by priority.

Packet : Displays the packet communication screen during a voice call, and the i-mode communication screen during i-mode.

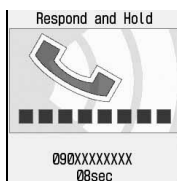
- Press to display the *Switch Task* menu then answer an incoming call.

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away

Response and Hold

- Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 while receiving a call



Incoming voice call on hold



Incoming videophone call on hold

The incoming call is put on hold (Response and Hold). The other party hears the response hold guidance.

For videophone calls, the response hold image appears on your and the other party's terminals.

- If is pressed or the other party hangs up during Response and Hold, the call is disconnected.

2 when you are ready to answer the call

- Press  or  to answer a videophone call and send the substitute image () to the other party.

INFORMATION

- When you have subscribed to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can use the service by pressing  and selecting *Voice Mail (V-phone answerphone)* or *Call Forwarding* while receiving a call.

Setting the response hold guidance

Status Message

You can record your own voice as response hold guidance.

- One guidance can be recorded for up to 10 seconds.
- While a voice call or videophone call is on hold waiting for a response, the guidance set by this function is played.

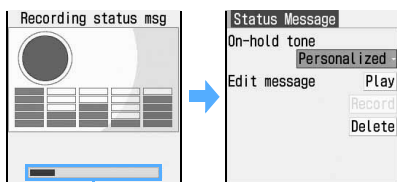
Default **Standard**

Example Setting a recorded guidance

1       ▶ **On-hold tone field**

2 
 • To reset to the default guidance:  ▶ Go to Step 4

3 **Record in Edit message field** ▶ **Speak a response hold guidance after a tone (beep)**



Indication of the allowable recording time

Recording will start after a message appears.

- An end tone (beep) sounds in about 10 seconds from the start of recording.
- To stop the recording: 
- To check the recorded guidance: **Play**
- To record again, select **Delete**, select **Yes** and record after deleting the recorded guidance.

4

INFORMATION

- If you delete the recorded guidance, the default guidance (*Standard*) is restored.
- If *Standard* is set, the guidance "I cannot answer the phone right now. Please wait or call again later (in Japanese)" is sent to the other party waiting for a response.

Setting the on-hold tone

On-hold Tone

- While a voice call or videophone call is during On-hold, the melody set by this function is played.

Default 保留音・ボイス(On-hold tone, voice)

1       ▶  or 
 • To play a melody: Highlight a melody ▶ 

Public mode is an automatic answering service considering etiquette in highly public places. When Public mode is activated and a call is received, a guidance is played and informs the caller that the called party is driving or in an area (train, bus, movie theater, etc.) where use of the mobile phone should be refrained from and cannot answer the call. Then the call is disconnected.

- Public mode can be activated/canceled only in standby (including when 圏外 (outside service area) is displayed on the screen).
- Even in Public mode you can make calls as usual.
- This function is not available during data communication.

Activating Public mode (Driving mode)

1 (for over a second)

Public mode is activated and  appears on the standby display.

When a call is received, a guidance is played saying “The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cellphone should not be used. Please try again later”.

- When Silent Mode is activated at the same time, Public mode takes precedence.

■ Canceling:  (for over a second)

■ When Public mode (Driving mode) is activated

No ring alert plays when your FOMA terminal receives a call.  1 appears on the standby display and the call is recorded in the received call history.

The caller hears a guidance informing that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained from and the call is then ended.

■ Operation when receiving calls in Public mode (Driving mode) with network service activated

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
Voice Mail Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.*1	The call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center without the Public mode video guidance.
Call Forwarding Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then forwarded to the specified destination.*1 Whether the caller hears the guidance or not depends on the setting for Call Forwarding Service. When the guidance is on, the Public mode guidance is played. When the guidance is off, no guidance is played.	The call is forwarded to the specified destination without the Public mode video guidance. If the destination party uses the phone not compatible with videophone, the call is disconnected.
Call Waiting Service	The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then disconnected.	The caller sees the Public mode video guidance and the call is then disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller hears a guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller sees a video guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.
Caller ID Request Service	• The caller who does not notify the caller ID hears a guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who notifies the caller ID hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then disconnected.	• The caller who does not notify the caller ID sees a video guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who notifies the caller ID sees the Public mode video guidance and the call is then disconnected.

*1 If the ringing time is set to 0 seconds, the Public mode guidance is not played.

INFORMATION

- In Public mode, the following sounds are disabled. In addition, the vibrator does not operate or the Enter key does not light or flash for incoming calls and mails.
 - Ring alert
 - Alarm clock
 - Schedule alarm
 - Timer alarm
 - i-appli sound
 - Charge alert
 - Low battery alert
- Alarm for Call Cost Limit (Even if **Alert** for Call Cost Limit is set to **ON** and an alarm is set, a message is not displayed.)
- Even in Public mode, the following sounds are played:
 - Keypad sound
 - Shutter sound
 - Slide sound
 - 1Seg sound
 - 1Seg sound effects
 - Music Player sound
- In Public mode, neither the i-Channel ticker nor Chaku-moji appears on the standby display.
- Even if a mail or Message R/F is received, the receiving screen and reception result screen do not appear. But, when Check i-mode Message is performed, these screens appear.
- Making emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) in Public mode cancels Public mode. However, it is not canceled when emergency calls are made using videophone.

Using Public mode (power off)

Public mode (power off)

Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service considering etiquettes in highly public places. When Public mode (power off) is set and then a call is received with the FOMA terminal switched off, a guidance is played and informs the caller that the called party is in an area (hospital, airplane, priority seat area on a train, etc) where the phone should be turned off and cannot answer the call. Then the call is disconnected.

Activating Public mode (power off)

1

Public mode (power off) is set. There will be no change on the standby display.

When you subsequently turn the power off, Public mode (power off) is activated.

In Public mode (power off) if a call is received with the FOMA terminal off, a guidance is played saying "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later".

■ **Canceling:**

■ **Checking the setting:**

■ When Public mode (power off) is activated

The setting is retained until Public mode (power off) is canceled by dialing "✕ 25250". The setting is not canceled by turning the power on.

The Public mode (power off) guidance is played even in locations outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. The caller hears a guidance informing that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off and the call is then ended.

■ Operation when receiving calls in Public mode (power off) with network service activated

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
Voice Mail Service	The caller hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.*1	The call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center without the Public mode (power off) video guidance.

Receiving a call while Answer Machine is set

1 A call arrives

After the ring alert sounds according to Response Time Setting, the greeting message screen appears.

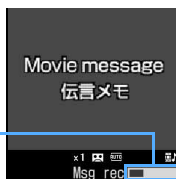
- When the greeting message is set to *Preinstalled*, the caller hears the guidance "I cannot answer the phone right now, please leave your name and message after the beep (in Japanese)". Set *Personalized* to play a recorded guidance.

2 Recording the caller's message starts



Recording a voice call message

Indication of the allowable recording time



Recording a videophone call message

- A beep announces the caller the start and end of the recording. And when about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps sound to indicate that the end of recording is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected

 appears on the standby display.

INFORMATION

- When the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area, Answer Machine does not operate. Use Voice Mail Service (pay service).
- Answer Machine does not operate and the ring alert keeps sounding when 4 messages have already been recorded. If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated, each service starts its operation.
- Public mode (Driving mode) takes precedence over Answer Machine. In Public mode (Driving mode), Answer Machine does not operate.
- The recording may be disrupted or the image may be distorted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Another call received while playing the greeting or recording a message is rejected and playing or recording continues. If Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting Service is subscribed, the rejected incoming call is recorded in the received call history.
- You can answer a call even while playing the greeting or recording a message. Press  to answer a voice call. Press  or  to answer a videophone call and send the substitute image. If the message is being recorded at this time, the contents before answering the call will not be recorded.

Menu 4613

Setting the response time until the greeting starts

Response Time Setting

Default 13 Sec.

1 Enter the response time (0 to 120 seconds)

- To increase or decrease the time: 

INFORMATION

- When Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service and this function are set simultaneously, the priority depends on the ringing time set for each service and function. To give priority to Answer Machine, the response time for this function should be set shorter than the ringing times set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service. Note that Answer Machine may not be given priority depending on the signal conditions. In this case, answer a call with Quick Record Message.
- The delayed time of Auto Answer and the response time of Answer Machine cannot be set to the same time period.

Setting the greeting message

Greeting Message Setting

You can record your own voice as greeting message.

- One message can be recorded for up to 10 seconds.

Default Preinstalled

Example Setting a recorded greeting

1 ► **Greeting message field**

2

- To reset to the default greeting: ► Go to Step 4

3 **Record in Edit message field ► Speak a greeting message after a tone (beep)**

- The operation procedure is the same as when recording the response hold guidance. ◀P63

4

INFORMATION

- If you delete the recorded greeting, the default greeting is restored.

Playing recorded messages

You can play or delete recorded messages from the list.

- Unplayed recorded messages, if any, can be played quickly from the standby display. ◀P32

1



On the recorded message list screen, the recording date and time and the caller's phone number appear.

1 Status icon

/ (unplayed/played): Voice call message

/ (unplayed/played): Videophone call message

2 International call

3 Phone number/Name (when registered in the phonebook)/Reason for no caller ID

4 Recording date and time of highlighted message

5 Phone number/Reason for no caller ID

6 Name of multi-number (when the Multi Number service is subscribed)

2 Select a recorded message to play



Indication of the playing time

Playing a voice call message

- During playback, the following operations are available:

- ⏮ : Adjust volume ⏸ : Stop
- 📞 : Speakerphone on/off (for voice call messages only)

■ Deleting:

- ① **Highlight a recorded message** ▶ **MENU** **2** **1**
 - To delete all: **MENU** **2** **2**
- ② **Yes**

■ Registering an entry in the phonebook:

- ① **Highlight a recorded message** ▶ **MENU** **4**
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry: **MENU** **5**
- ② **1** or **2** ▶ **Register the name or address** ▶ **P79, P81**
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry: **1** or **2** ▶ Select the party ▶ Edit the data ▶ **P88**

- **Making a call: Highlight a recorded message** ▶ **📞** (voice call) or **📞** (videophone call)

3 Yes or No

Using Chara-den

You can select a Chara-den image to be sent during a videophone call.

1 **MENU** **3** **2** **1** during a call ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a Chara-den image**



Chara-den
© Disney

- If you press dial keys while sending Chara-den as the substitute image, the character performs the action corresponding to the key pressed. The following operations can also be performed:

- 0** : Cancel action
- *** : Display the action list
 - Selecting an action moves the character.
- *** (for over a second): Switch action modes (Action/Action of parts)

INFORMATION

- Some Chara-den images have either one of full actions or parts actions or have no actions at all.

Setting images being sent to the other party

You can change the image being sent to the other party or apply special effects to it during a videophone call.

Switching the outgoing images

1 during a call



- Each press switches the image between the substitute image ( or ) and the camera image (). [P74](#)
- Even when Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, **Default image** in the substitute image setting is sent to the other party. [P74](#)
- To shoot an object from a very short distance while sending the camera image, switch to the macro mode. [P153](#)

Setting the quality of outgoing and incoming images

- Setting *Prefer motion spd* makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image.
- Setting *Prefer img qual* makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.

Default Normal

1 during a call ▶ or ▶ -

Setting a frame on the outgoing images

Frame

The frame can be set while sending the camera image.

- Only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 or smaller can be selected. As for downloaded frames, only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 can be selected.

1 during a call ▶ Select a frame



- To cancel sending the frame:  while sending a frame
- Frames set by default [P394](#)

Applying special effects to outgoing images

Scene Mode/Effect

You can apply the following effects to outgoing images. This setting is available only while sending the camera image.

Item	Icon	Item	Icon	Item	Icon	Item	Icon
Full auto		Twilight		Letter		Mono tone (green)	
Adjust backlight		Surf&Snow		Whiten		Mono tone (blue)	
Spot photometry		Sport		Suntan		Monochrome	
Scenery		Pet		Soft touch		Sepia	
Night		Gourmet		Mono tone (red)			

- For details P154

Default Full auto

1 (MENU) 2 1 during a call ▶ 1 - 9



Current effect applied

Adjusting the brightness/color density/flicker of outgoing images

Camera Setting

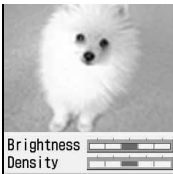
You can adjust the brightness and color density in 5 levels. Also, you may be able to control the flicker of images, if it occurs, by making settings according to the power supply frequency in your area.

- This setting is available only while the camera image is being sent.
- The brightness and color density may not be changed depending on the settings of Scene Mode/Effect.
- This setting is retained even after the call is finished.

Default Brightness: level 3 Density: level 3 Flicker adjustment: Auto

1 (MENU) 2 during a call ▶ Select an item

■ Adjusting brightness and color density:



① 2 ▶ Highlight Brightness slider ▶

② 3 to highlight Density slider ▶

- The camera image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting.
- If you do nothing on the terminal for some time after changing the slider's position, the settings are not changed and the talking screen reappears.

■ Adjusting flicker: 3 ▶ 1 - 3

INFORMATION

- The flicker adjustment settings for the camera and Bar Code Reader will reflect changes in this setting. P157, P159

Sending the still image/camera-off image

Send a still image or the image displayed as *Camera off* (camera-off image).

- This setting is not available while a frame is being sent. ⚡P70
- Only the still image that is 176 x 144 or smaller and is permitted to output from the FOMA terminal can be set.

1 during a call ▶ Select an item

■ Sending the camera-off image:

- When the camera-off image is set, the substitute image set in Videophone Image Setting is sent.
However, if Chara-den is set as the substitute image, the default image (camera-off image) is sent.

■ Sending a still image:



① ▶ Select a folder

② Select a still image

- To view a still image: Highlight a still image ▶ 
- To send the previous image:  while sending a still image

Switching display magnifications

Zoom

- This setting is available only while the camera image is being sent.

Default normal ()

1 during a call

- Each press of  switches the magnification of image as follows. Press  to switch in the reverse order.

Normal () → 2 times () → 4 times ()

Customizing the screen settings during a videophone call

- The settings are retained even after the call is finished.

Switching between the main screen and sub screen

Default Main screen image: other party's image Sub screen image: your image

1 during a call

- Each press switches the images on the main screen and sub screen by turns.

Main screen: other party's image	↔	Main screen: your image
Sub screen: your image		Sub screen: other party's image

Changing the main screen size

Default large

1 during a call (for over a second)

- Each press switches the screen size in the following order: large → standard → small → large → ...

Default Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Display light: Always on(normal)

1 during a call ▶ Set each item ▶

- For setting each item (*Display setting*, *Sub screen*, *Screen size* and *Display light*), see “Changing the videophone settings”. ➡P73

Changing the videophone settings

Videophone Settings

Set the operation to be performed when a videophone call is not connected, the screen to be displayed during a videophone call, etc.

- The setting of *Auto redial as voice* ensures access to the other party. By setting this function to *ON*, a dialed videophone call will be automatically redialed as voice call if the other party's terminal does not support the videophone function or cannot receive the videophone call while using the mova service through Dual Network Service. Redialing does not occur, however, if you call an ISDN synchronized 64K or PIAFS access point, or an ISDN videophone incompatible with 3G-324M (as of July 2007), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that some calls may require the call charge.

Default Auto redial as voice: OFF Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Visual preference: Normal Display light: Always on(normal) Speakerphone: ON

1 ▶ Set each item ▶

- Auto redial as voice** : Sets whether to redial as voice call automatically when a videophone call is not connected.
- Display setting** : Specifies whether to display either your image or the other party's image or both images during a videophone call.
- Sub screen** : Specifies whether to display your image or the other party's image on the sub screen during a videophone call.
- Screen size** : Sets the main screen view size.
- Visual preference** : Sets the quality of image sent from the other party.
- Display light** : Sets the display light during a videophone call.
 - When *Terminal settings* is set, the setting of *Display light time (Normal use)* in Display Light Setting (➡P114) applies.
- Speakerphone** : Specifies whether to turn on the speakerphone function automatically once a videophone call is connected.

INFORMATION

- Even when *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, redialing may not be performed depending on the situation of the other party or the network.
- When *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, if you make a videophone call during a packet communication with a PC connected, the call is redialed as voice call without connecting to the videophone. During a voice call or 64K data communication, the call is not connected to the videophone and redialing is not performed, either.
- If redialing as voice call occurs with *Auto redial as voice* set to *ON*, voice call charges apply instead of digital communication charges.
- When you talk by videophone while the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected, the voice sounds from the connected earphone/microphone regardless of the setting of *Speakerphone*.
- If a videophone call is made to emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118) from the FOMA terminal while *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, the call is automatically switched to a voice call.

Setting the substitute and on-hold images to be displayed during a videophone call

Videophone Image Setting

Change the images to be sent to the other party during a videophone call such as the substitute image, answer machine image, response hold image, on-hold image and video memo image.

- You cannot set the following images:
 - Still image with a size larger than 176 x 144
 - Still image in the format other than JPEG and GIF
 - Animation and created animation
 - Image not permitted to output from the FOMA terminal

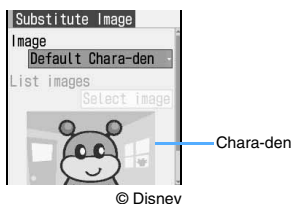
Setting the substitute image

Default Default Chara-den

Example Setting the default Chara-den

1

2 **Image field**



Default Chara-den (Dimo) is set.

- **Setting the default still image:**

Default image (camera-off image) is set.

- **Setting other Chara-den:**
 - List images field** **Select a folder**
 - Select a Chara-den image**
 - To display Chara-den: Highlight a Chara-den image

■ Setting other still images:

- List images field** **Select a folder**
- Select a still image**
 - To display a still image: Highlight a still image
 - The selected image with the text message on it appears on the other party's terminal.

INFORMATION

- If the Chara-den set as the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to *Default Chara-den*. If the still image or the default Chara-den is deleted, the substitute image is reset to *Default image*.

Changing the answer machine/response hold/on-hold/video memo images

Default Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default

Example Setting the default image

1 -

2 Image field ▶ 1 ▶



In case of the answer machine image

Default is set.

■ Setting other still images:

① 2 ▶ List images field ▶ Select a folder

② Select a still image

- To display a still image: Highlight a still image ▶
- The selected image with the text message on it appears on the other party's terminal.

Setting of switching between a voice call and videophone call

Notify Switchable Mode

Set whether to notify the other party's terminal that your terminal can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

- You cannot change the setting during a voice call or videophone call.
- This setting cannot be made outside the service area. Operate the terminal in locations with good signal condition.

Time of subscription Indication ON

1

(MENU) 8 5 1 7 1

■ Deactivating: (MENU) 8 5 1 7 2

■ Checking the current setting: (MENU) 8 5 1 7 3

2 Yes

Setting how incoming videophone calls are handled during i-mode

Data Session Arrival Act

Videophone calls can be received during i-mode packet communication.

Default V.phone priority

1

(MENU) 8 5 1 4 ▶ 1 - 4

V.phone priority : Receives a videophone call. When the call is answered, the current packet communication is disconnected.

Packet DL priority : Rejects an incoming videophone call and continues the packet communication.

V.phone answerphone : Connects an incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail Service Center.

Call forwarding : Forwards an incoming videophone call to the forwarding phone number.

INFORMATION

- Without subscription to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the action of **Packet DL priority** always takes place even if you set **V.phone answerphone** or **Call forwarding**.
- If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the ringing time for each service is set to 0 seconds, either service starts its operation, regardless of this setting. Incoming calls are not recorded in the received call history.

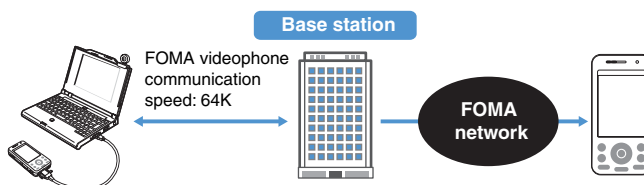
By connecting the FOMA terminal to an external device such as PC by the FOMA USB Cable (optional), you can make and receive videophone calls from the external device.

To use this function, install a videophone application in a dedicated external device or a PC, and prepare devices such as an earphone/microphone or USB-compatible Web camera (available in market).

- This function is not available when the FOMA terminal is not connected to an external device.
- Refer to the instruction manual of external devices for hardware/software requirements or setting and operating instructions of videophone applications.
- The application called “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005 (DoCoMo videophone software 2005)” that is compatible with this function is available on the DoCoMo videophone software website. Visit the site below and download it (visit the support website for details of the environment for usage on PC):

<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (in Japanese only)

Default Terminal



1 (MENU) (8) (5) (1) (6) (1) or (2)

INFORMATION

- A videophone call cannot be made from an external device during a voice call.
- When Call Waiting Service is subscribed, if a videophone call is received through an external device during a voice call, it is recorded as a missed call in the received call history. The same applies when a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication is received during a videophone call using an external device.

Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by the FOMA terminal	78
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook	
..... Phonebook New Entry	79
Registering entries into the UIM phonebook	
..... UIM Phonebook New Entry	81
Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions	Group Setting 82
Making calls from the phonebook	Phonebook Search 83
Editing phonebook entries	Edit Phonebook 88
Copying phonebook entries	90
Deleting phonebook entries	Delete Phonebook 90
Saving (restoring/updating) the phonebook data to the Data Center	
..... Data Security Service	91
Setting functions for phonebook entries	91
Protecting the secret phonebook entries	Secret Attribute 92
Checking the number of registered phonebook entries	
..... Check No. of Items	93
Using simple dialing to make calls	Quick Dial 93
Using Data Security Service	Data Security Service 93

Phonebooks supported by the FOMA terminal

FOMA D704i supports the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook.

- The items that can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook are as follows:

○: Available ×: Not available

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
The number of entries	Up to 700*1	Up to 50
Entry items		
Phonebook No.	○	×
Name/reading	Up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters for a name and up to 32 one-byte characters for a reading can be set.	Up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for a name and up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters for a reading can be set.
Image/video	1 item per person	×
Group	Entries can be classified into 30 groups and グループなし (No group).	Entries can be classified into 10 groups and グループなし.
Phone number/icon	Up to 5 phone numbers per person, 2,105 in total*1 can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one phone number can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Mail address/icon	Up to 5 mail addresses per person, 2,105 in total*1 can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one mail address can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Other settings*2	○	×

*1 The number of items that can be registered in the phonebook may be decreased depending on the type of data registered.

*2 The following settings are available: Birthday, note, postal code/address, company name, job title and URL

- Even if you set your UIM to other FOMA terminals, the phonebook data in the UIM can be used.

Name displays

If a call is made/received to/from a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, the name and the phone number registered in the phonebook appear on the screen while dialing, calling, talking or receiving a call.

In addition, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed in the redial data, received call history, recorded messages, senders of received mail, addresses of sent/unsent mail, custom menu's person, etc. It is also displayed when you enter the phone number or mail address without searching the phonebook.

- When phonebook entries of different names with the same phone number or mail address are registered in both phonebooks, the name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- In case some different names are registered for the same phone number or mail address in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the name registered first is displayed.
- When a mail is received, if the mail address including the @ and the following domain name exactly matches a mail address registered in the phonebook, the settings of the phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. Note that in case i-mode terminal is used by sender, even when the mail address is registered in the phonebook without the domain name "@docomo.ne.jp", the settings of the phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. When the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", register in the phonebook without "@docomo.ne.jp".
- When SMS is received and the phone number exactly matches a phone number registered in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook take precedence.
- When a mail arrives from the other party saved in the phonebook, the reception result ticker shows the name registered in the phonebook. However, if the mail comes from the party with Secret Attribute setting in a mode other than Secret Mode, the mail address is shown on the ticker instead of the name.

- Maximum number of items that can be registered ➡P78
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of all the information you register in the phonebook.
If you have a PC, you can use the DoCoMo keitai datalink and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to send data to the PC. Also, if you have subscribed to Data Security Service (charged), you can save the data to the Data Center.
- The phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal can be backed up to a microSD memory card. ➡P299
- Registered data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Please be informed that if you copy the data registered in the FOMA terminal to a new terminal at a DoCoMo Shop when switching to a new model, etc., the specifications of some new models may not allow copying of the data.

1

- You can perform the same operation by pressing   in the phonebook list.

2 Enter the name (up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters) ▶

Enter name
Enter name
Docomo Taro

- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3 Set each item ▶

New entry	1/2
No. 000	
Docomo Taro	
DocomoTaro	
[Select/Shoot image]	
グループなし	
[Phone number]	
[Mail address]	
[Birthday]	

Phonebook No., name and reading

- When a phonebook No. already registered is specified, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite the data. Select *New entry* not to overwrite and specify a new phonebook No.

Phonebook No. : The lowest available phonebook No. is assigned automatically.

■ **Changing the phonebook No.:** Phonebook No. field ▶ Enter a number (0 to 699)

- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

Name : Check the name.

■ **Correcting the name:** Name field ▶ Correct the name ▶ 

Reading : Check the reading.

■ **Correcting the reading:** Reading field ▶ Correct the reading (up to 32 one-byte characters)

- If you correct a name, the reading of the name will not be corrected automatically.

Select/Shoot image : Set an image or a video/i-motion file that is displayed when a call is made/received or the phonebook data is checked.

Select *Select/Shoot image* field and perform the following operation:

- **Setting an image:** (1) ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image**
 - If an image with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 is selected, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the reduced image. If you select *Yes* and set the image, the image of which size is reduced to 96 x 72 (phonebook) or smaller is set/saved.
 - When a call is made/received or the phonebook data is checked, the playing image is displayed for animation and the first frame is displayed for created animation.
- **Shooting a still image to set with the camera:** (2) ▶ **Shoot a still image** ▶ (⊕)
 - The size of the still image is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) automatically.
- **Setting video/i-motion:** (3) ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a video/i-motion file**
 - You can set video/i-motion with only images.
 - To play and check a video/i-motion file when selecting ◀P99
 - When a call is made, the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed.
- **Recording a video to set with the camera:** (4) ▶ **Shoot a video** ▶ (⊕)
 - The size of the video is set to 176 x 144 (QCIF) automatically. Sounds are not recorded.
- **Deleting an image or a video/i-motion file:** (5)



Group

: Select a group. *グループなし* (No group) is set by default.
Group Setting ▶P82

- **Adding the groups: The group field** ▶ (✉) ▶ **Enter the name of the group (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** ▶ (Ⓜ)
- Other than *グループなし*, up to 30 groups can be registered.



Phone number

: Enter the phone number including the area code (up to 26 digits) and select an icon.
• Up to 5 phone numbers per person can be registered. Saving the first phone number displays items to be added.
• Pause (P), timed pause (T), “ + ”, “ # ” and sub-address delimiter (※) can be registered.



Mail address

: Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered. Select an icon.
• Up to 5 addresses per person can be registered. Saving the first mail address displays items to be added.
• When the other party has registered a secret code ▶P91



Birthday

: Set *Set birthday* to *ON* and enter the birthday in the *Birthday* field.



Note

: Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.



PostalCode/Address

: Up to 7 digits can be entered for postal code. And up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered for address.



Company name

: Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.



Job title

: Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.



URL

: Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.

INFORMATION

- A phone number saved in the phonebook with preceding “184” or “186” does not allow sending of SMS even if it is selected as the address.

Setting the incoming actions for each phonebook entry

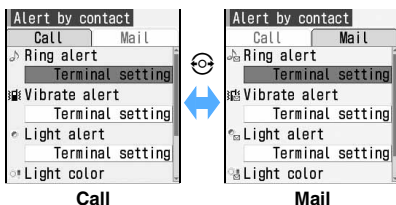
Alert by Contact

1

Search the phonebook ▶ **Highlight a party** ▶ (MENU) (3) (2)

- Searching methods of the phonebook ▶P83

2 to display the setting screen ▶ Set each item ▶



-  /  **Ring alert** : Set *Movie ringtone*, *Melody* or *Music* to select a ring alert. Setting music data P99
 - Video/i-motion and music data can be set as ring alert if the ring alert setting of the detail information is *Available*.
 - To operate as set in the setting for Sound Setting, select *Terminal setting*.
-  /  **Vibrate alert** : Select *Select* to set the vibrator for incoming calls/emails.
 - To operate as set in the setting for Vibrator Setting, select *Terminal setting*.
-  /  **Light alert** : Select *Select* to set the lighting pattern of the Enter key for incoming calls/emails.
 - To operate as set in Light Alert Setting, select *Terminal setting*.
-  **Light color** : Select *Select* to set the color of the Enter key for incoming calls/emails.
 - To operate as set in Light Color Setting, select *Terminal setting*.
-  **Substitute image (Only the screen for calls can be set)** :
 - Select *Select* to set Chara-den (P290) displayed during a call.
 - To operate as set in Videophone Image Setting, select *Terminal setting*.

Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

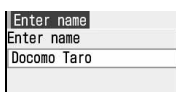
UIM Phonebook New Entry

- Maximum number of items that can be registered P78

1

- You can perform the same operation by pressing   in the UIM phonebook list.

2 Enter the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶



- When both one-byte and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3 Set each item ▶



— Name and reading

Name : Check the name.

■ **Correcting the name: The name field ▶ Correct the name ▶ **

Reading

: Check the reading.

■ Correcting the reading: The reading field ▶ Correct the reading (up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)

- Two-byte katakana and one-byte alphanumeric characters can be used to enter the reading.
- When both one-byte and two-byte characters are used, up to 12 characters can be registered.
- If you correct a name, the reading of the name will not be corrected automatically.



Group

: Select a group from グループなし or 10 groups. グループなし is set by default.



Phone number

: Enter the phone number including the area code. You can enter up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits depending on the UIM type). ➡P35

- Pause (P), “+”, “#” and sub-address delimiter (✕) can be registered. Timed pause (T) can be entered but cannot be registered.



Mail address

: Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions

Group Setting

You can change the group name of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook and set the ring alert by group in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- For グループなし, the group name cannot be changed nor deleted and the incoming/outgoing action cannot be set.

Creating groups or editing group names

- Other than グループなし, up to 30 groups can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1

(MENU) 4 1 2

- For the UIM phonebook: (MENU) 4 1 2 (H)

2

(MENU) 2 ▶ Enter the group name ▶ (H)

- You can enter up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- You cannot add or delete a group name in the UIM phonebook.

■ Changing the name of the group: Highlight the group ▶ (MENU) 4 ▶ Edit the name of the group ▶ (H)

- For the UIM phonebook: Highlight a group ▶ (MENU) 2 ▶ Edit the name of the group ▶ (H)

You can enter up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the UIM phonebook. Note that when both one-byte and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.

■ Changing the order of groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook: (MENU) ▶ 6 or 7

Setting incoming/outgoing actions of the group in the FOMA terminal phonebook

Alert/Image by Group

1

(MENU) 4 1 2 ▶ Highlight a group ▶ (MENU) 5

2 to display the setting screen ▶ Set each item ▶

- For setting call images, follow Step 3 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”. P79
For setting ring alert, incoming vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color for incoming calls/mails, follow Step 2 of “Setting the incoming actions for each phonebook entry”. P81
- When video/i-motion with image is set for the ring alert on the setting screen for calls, the call image is set to *Sync ring alert*. Note that when changing call images while the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set to ring alert, *Select image or Shoot still image* can be selected.

INFORMATION

- The priority of incoming/outgoing actions
 - Ring alert P100
 - Incoming image P112
 - Vibrator P104
 - Lighting P121
 - Outgoing image P111

Deleting the group in the FOMA terminal phonebook

If you delete a group, all the phonebook entries registered in the group are also deleted.

- The phonebook entries with Secret Attribute are also deleted.
- When you select *グループなし*, only the phonebook entries are deleted.

1 ▶ Highlight a group ▶ ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Menu 41

Making calls from the phonebook

Phonebook Search

Default Show all names

- The phonebook data can be called by specifying the following search methods.
 - Show All Names
 - Group Search
 - Name Search
 - Ranking Search*1
 - Ph Book No. Search*1
 - Number Search
 - Secrecy Search*1

*1 Cannot be used in the UIM phonebook.

- Column Search can also be performed. P86
- You can specify the searching method displayed by pressing  on the standby display. P87
- You can also change the searching method by pressing  and selecting *Search criteria* from the phonebook list.
- In the searching method also available in the UIM phonebook, each press of  switches the FOMA terminal phonebook list and the UIM phonebook list.
- The UIM phonebook list indicates  in front of each entry name.

Example Showing all names

1



By default, the phonebook list is displayed by showing all names (Japanese syllabary order). When the searching method has been specified, the phonebook list is displayed by the specified method.

Icon set for the first phone number

Number of phone numbers and mail addresses registered in the highlighted entry

The first phone number registered in the highlighted entry (The part that cannot be displayed will be omitted.)

2 Highlight a party ▶

- If multiple phone numbers are registered for a selected party, select a phone number. (This step also applies to making a videophone call.)
- To make a videophone call: Highlight a party ▶ 
- When you operate on the details screen, highlight a phone number and press ,  or 
- You can also perform the same operation on the user information screen. The first phone number will be called.

■ Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a party ▶

- If multiple mail addresses are registered for a selected party, select an address.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ▶ P191
- On the details screen, highlight a mail address and press  or .
- You can also operate in the same way on the user information screen. The mail address registered first is set as the address.
- Operation is available in case the mail address is registered.

■ Composing SMS: Highlight a party ▶ (for over a second)

- If multiple phone numbers are registered for a selected party, select a number.
- Composing and sending SMS ▶ P225
- On the details screen, highlight a phone number and press .
- You can also operate in the same way on the user information screen. The phone number registered first is set as the address.
- Operation is available in case the phone number is registered.

■ Displaying sites: Highlight a party ▶ ▶ Yes

- Pressing  instead of selecting Yes displays the sites in Full Browser.
- On the details screen, highlight a URL and press .

■ Sending mail with the phonebook data attached: Highlight a party ▶

- You can also perform the same operation from the details screen.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ▶ P191

■ Searching for mails sent/received to/from a party and displaying the list (Mail Search): Highlight a party ▶ ▶ or

- To read received/sent mail ▶ P207
- To return to the phonebook list:  or  
- To search from the UIM phonebook: Highlight a party ▶    ▶  or 

Displaying the phonebook data in order of Japanese syllabary

Show All Names

The phonebook data is displayed in the order of Japanese syllabary as shown below:

Line あ (a) → line か (ka) → line さ (sa) → … → 他 (others) including alphabets, numbers, readings which start with blank, symbols and no reading.

1 ▶ to select the line

- Pressing , ,  or  instead of  displays the line to which the key is assigned. For example, pressing  displays line あ. To display other than Japanese syllabary, press  or .

Searching by group

Group Search

- Phonebook entries registered without specifying group are saved under グループなし.

1 [MENU] 4 1 2 ▶ Select a group



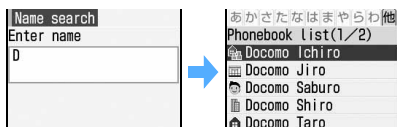
- The entries in the same group are displayed in the following order:
 1. Japanese syllabary order
 2. Alphabetical order
 3. Numbers
 4. Entries starting with blank
 5. Symbols
 6. No reading

Searching by name

Name Search

Enter a name to search for the entries that start with the first character of the entered name.

1 [MENU] 4 1 3 ▶ Enter a name ▶ [Name]



- You can search for the entry by entering the first part of the name. Also, even if you enter nothing, entries are searched.

Searching by the call or mail frequency rank

Ranking Search

The phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook can be sorted by the number of calls that took place (Call frequency rank) or by the number of i-mode Mail sent or received (Mail frequency rank).

- The total number of calls and mails are displayed up to 9,999.
- Counting is also available in case a phone number or mail address registered in the phonebook is entered directly.

Example Displaying call frequency rank

1 [MENU] 4 1 4 1



- The total number of calls is the number of calls made up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the call made or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

■ Displaying mail frequency rank: [MENU] 4 1 4 2

- The total number of mails is the number of mails sent or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the i-mode Mail sent or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

INFORMATION

- When the total number of calls/mails is the same for multiple entries, the entries are displayed in the following order:
 1. Japanese syllabary order
 2. Alphabetical order
 3. Numbers
 4. Entries starting with blank
 5. Symbols
 6. No reading

Resetting the number of calls/mails

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ [MENU] 9 3 ▶ Yes

- The total number of calls, date and time of the last call, total number of mails, and date and time of the last mail for each phonebook entry are reset.

■ Checking the number of calls/mails: Search the phonebook ▶ Select a party ▶ Select a phone number or mail address ▶ [Name]

Searching by phonebook No.

Ph Book No. Search

Enter a phonebook No. to search for the entry of that phonebook No. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 ➔ Enter a phonebook No. ➔

Ph book No. search

Enter phonebook No.

5

Phonebook list(1/2)

- 000 Docomo Taro
- 001 Docomo Ichiro
- 002 Docomo Jiro
- 003 Docomo Saburo
- 004 Docomo Shiro
- 005 Keitai Haruko
- 006 Keitai Natsuko

Icon set for the first phone number

Phonebook No.

The party with the specified phonebook No.

- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

Searching by phone number

Number Search

Enter only a part of phone number to search for the phone numbers that contain it. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 ➔ Enter a part of phone number ➔

Phone No. search

Enter phone No.

03

Phone No. search

Phonebook list(1/1)

- 000 Docomo Taro
- 003 Docomo Saburo
- 004 Docomo Shiro
- 007 Keitai Akiko
- 008 Keitai Fuyuko

Icon set for the first phone number

Phonebook No. (only for the FOMA terminal phonebook)

INFORMATION

- When multiple phonebook entries match the conditions of Number Search, the entries in the FOMA terminal phonebook are displayed in the order of the phonebook No. The entries in the UIM phonebook are displayed in the following order:
 1. Japanese syllabary order
 2. Alphabetical order
 3. Numbers
 4. Entries starting with blank
 5. Symbols
 6. No reading

Searching by Column Search quickly

Search for the phonebook data by the characters assigned to to and (あ to ら and わ).

- The previously used phonebook (the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook) is searched.

Example Searching for “ドコモ太郎 (Docomo Taro)”

1 on the standby display

The phonebook list with readings starting with a kana character in the line た (ta) is displayed.

- On the search result screen, pressing to , , or switches lines.

Specifying the searching method

The searching method displayed by pressing  on the standby display can be specified.

- The searching method for the UIM phonebook cannot be specified.

Default [Show all names](#)

1 ► Highlight the searching method ►

- A check mark (✓) is attached to the specified searching method.
- The Secrecy Search cannot be specified.

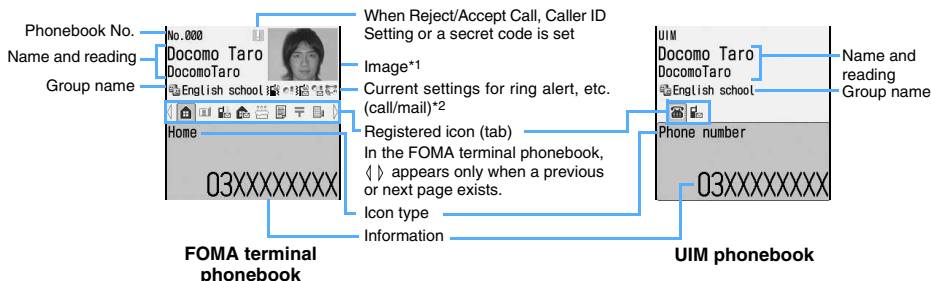
INFORMATION

- If the UIM phonebook was searched previously, pressing  enables to search the UIM phonebook by the specified searching method. However, when the method unavailable for the UIM phonebook is specified, the phonebook list of the UIM phonebook (Japanese syllabary order) appears.

Checking phonebook details

1 Search the phonebook ► Select a party

The details screen appears.



 /  : Ring alert

 /  : Incoming lighting pattern

 : Videophone substitute image (Only calls)

 /  : Incoming vibrator

 /  : Incoming lighting color

 /  : Incoming ring alert/vibrator

 /  : Incoming lighting pattern/color

*1 The registered image is displayed according to the setting of View Preference.

*2 When the setting such as ring alert is made in Alert by Contact, a colored icon is displayed.

2 Display the registered details by

- At each press of , the display of registered details switches.
- To display the details screen for the previous/next phonebook entry: 

■ Checking the number of calls/mails: Highlight the phone number or mail address by ►

The accumulated data screen appears.

- When you reset the accumulated data, press  on the accumulated data screen and select **Yes**.

■ Checking the user information:

The user information screen appears.

- The image/phonebook No.(only for the FOMA terminal phonebook), name, reading, group name, first phone number (icon type, phone number), first mail address (icon type, mail address) registered in the phonebook are displayed.

INFORMATION

- On the details screen, the following operations can be performed as with the phonebook list.
 - Set incoming actions
 - Edit phonebook entries
 - Change the order of the phone numbers, mail addresses, and phonebook Nos.
 - Copy phonebook entries ◀P90
 - Set whether to show/hide caller ID
 - Set Secret Attribute
 - Set Reject/Accept Call
 - Search for a mail ▶P84
 - Copy registered information ▶P89
 - Delete phonebook entries
 - Set a secret code
 - Check the number of registered items ▶P93
 - Compose a mail

Setting whether to display an image on the details screen View Preference

Set whether to display an image on the phonebook details screen. The settings are also reflected to all phonebook data.

Default Show saved image

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Select a party ▶ ▶ -

Show with image : Displays the images.

Show only name : Displays the names. Images are not displayed.

Show saved image: Images are displayed only when the images are registered. If an image is not registered, the name is displayed.

INFORMATION

- When a name is too long, the entire name may not be displayed.
- The setting of this function is also reflected to the same settings for Own Number (▶P350), Redial, Received Calls (▶P50), and Sent/Received Msg. Log (▶P215).

Editing phonebook entries

Edit Phonebook

Editing the saved phonebook entries

Example Editing the data of the FOMA terminal phonebook

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶

- For the UIM phonebook: Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶  

2 Edit the phonebook entry ▶

- For details:
Follow Step 3 of "Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook". ▶P79
Or, follow Step 3 of "Registering entries into the UIM phonebook". ▶P81

3 Overwrite or New entry

- For *Overwrite*, the old phonebook entry is discarded. For *New entry*, the existing phonebook entry remains, and the edited entry is registered newly.
- When you register a new entry to the FOMA terminal phonebook without changing the phonebook No., the lowest available phonebook No. is assigned automatically and displayed on the phonebook No. entry screen. Change the number if necessary, and operate from Step 2 again.

INFORMATION

- The data may not be overwritten if "X" is included in the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook. In that case, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to make a new entry. Select *Yes* to register as a new entry.
- When multiple phone numbers and mail addresses are registered, if a phone number or mail address other than the last one is deleted, the followings items are moved up and registered.

Copying a registered item

You can copy and paste a registered item into the entry field on the mail composition screen or the phonebook registration screen.

- The copy remains until the power is turned off. You can paste it any number of times while the power is on.
- Only the last copy can remain. Copying a new item overwrites the previous copy.

Example Copying the data of the FOMA Terminal phonebook

- 1 **Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶**   ▶  -  ▶ **Display the character entry screen ▶ Paste the copied text**



- For the UIM phonebook: Search the UIM phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶   ▶  -  ▶ Display the character entry screen ▶ Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

- Selecting *Phone number* or *Mail address* copies the first number or address. To copy the second or subsequent phone number or mail address, highlight the phone number or mail address to copy on the details screen.

Changing the order of phone numbers, mail addresses and phonebook Nos.

When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook data, the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses can be changed. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for 2 phonebook entries can be switched with each other.

- 1 **Search the phonebook ▶ Change the order**

- **Changing the order of phone numbers: Highlight a party ▶**     ▶ **Select a phone number to register at the top of the list**



The positions of the selected phone number and the first phone number are replaced with each other.

- **Changing the order of mail addresses: Highlight a party ▶**     ▶ **Select a mail address to register at the top of the list.**

The positions of the selected mail address and the first mail address are replaced with each other.

- **Changing the phonebook Nos: Highlight a party ▶**     ▶ **Select the entry to replace the phonebook No. with**

Phonebook Nos. corresponding to the selected parties are replaced with each other.

Copying phonebook entries

Copy phonebook entries between the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook.

- If the group in the phonebook data to copy has the same name as the group in the target phonebook, the data is copied to that group.

Example Copying entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook

1 Search the phonebook ▶ 7 1 ▶ Select a party ▶



■ Items copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook

Name	Up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters. Up to 10 characters when one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed or when one-byte katakana is used.
Reading	Up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters. Up to 12 characters when one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed or when one-byte katakana is used. One-byte katakana is changed to two-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the first registered phone number up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits depending on the UIM types) ➡ P35. If a timed pause (T) is registered, only the timed pause (T) is deleted. For all icons,  is set.
Mail address	Copies the first registered mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters).  is set for all icons.

- Note that if the number of characters exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be saved in the UIM phonebook, the exceeding part is deleted.

■ Items copied from the UIM phonebook to the FOMA terminal phonebook

Name	The registered contents are copied as it is.
Reading	Two-byte katakana is changed to one-byte katakana.
Phone number	For the icon,  is set.
Mail address	For the icon,  is set.

INFORMATION

- On the UIM phonebook list, press  and select *Copy to phone*.

Deleting phonebook entries

Delete Phonebook

- When you delete all, the created groups are all deleted.
- When you delete all, all the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute are deleted, even if Secret Mode is not set.
- The UIM phonebook cannot be all deleted.

Example Deleting the data of the FOMA terminal phonebook

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ 4 1

■ Deleting all: Search the phonebook ▶  4 2 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

■ Deleting an entry in the UIM phonebook: Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶  4

Saving (restoring/updating) the phonebook data to the Data Center

Data Security Service

You can save the FOMA terminal phonebook data to the Data Center using Data Security Service.

- For details about saving the phonebook data ➡P93

1 Search the phonebook ➡ ➡ Yes ➡ Enter the terminal security code

The FOMA terminal is connected to the Data Center and starts updating the data. When updating is completed, the result appears.

- The result screen disappears in about 5 seconds and returns to the standby display. Press  to return to the standby display immediately.

Setting functions for phonebook entries

You can set whether to show or hide the caller ID for each phone number in the phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, a secret code can be set for each mail address.

- The function described here cannot be set in the UIM phonebook.

Setting whether to show/hide caller ID for each phone number

Caller ID Setting

Default No setting

1 Search the phonebook ➡ Highlight a party ➡ ➡ Enter the terminal security code ➡ Select a phone number ➡ -

INFORMATION

- When *No setting* is set, the terminal operates according to the setting of Caller ID Notification.
- For the entry set to show the caller ID,  is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the phonebook data details screen.
- The priority of the way of notifying caller ID. ➡P42

Setting a secret code for the mail address

Secret Code Setting

When the other party has registered a secret code for its mail address (mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp), if you set the secret code in the phonebook data, the secret code is automatically added to i-mode Mail composed by searching the phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook ➡ Highlight a party ➡ ➡ Enter the terminal security code ➡ Select a mail address

2 Enter the 4-digit secret code

- To cancel Secret Code Setting:  for over a second to clear ➡ 

INFORMATION

- If a mail address is saved in the phonebook as “mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp”, you cannot reply to the mail from that party.
- For the entry with a secret code set,  is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the phonebook data details screen.
- The set secret code is not displayed on the phonebook data details screen or the address set when composing i-mode Mail. You can check a secret code by following Step 1 mentioned above.

Protecting the secret phonebook entries

Secret Attribute

The phonebook entry is set as the data having a secret attribute that is called only when you enter the terminal security code.

Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook entry

- You cannot set Secret Attribute for the entries in the UIM phonebook.
- To set Secret Attribute, perform the setting operation in Secret Mode.

1 Set Secret Mode

2 Search the phonebook on the standby display ► Highlight a party ►



-  flashes when Secret Attribute is set.
- To cancel, repeat the same procedure.

INFORMATION

- The phonebook entry with Secret Attribute cannot be edited or searched unless Secret Mode is set. In addition, Quick Dial or Quick Mail is also disabled.
- When Secret Mode is not set, the registered names and images or video/i-motion of the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set are not displayed in the incoming screen, redial data, received call history, recorded messages, talking voice memos, mail reception result screen, received mail list and other screens. In addition, the ring alert or vibrator set for the phonebook data is not operated.
- If the phonebook entry is registered and edited while Secret Mode is on, Secret Attribute is set for the phonebook entry.

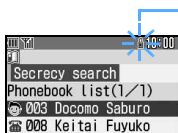
Searching the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set

Secrecy Search

- You can search only the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.

1 Set Secret Mode

2 on the standby display



- The subsequent steps are the same as for the normal searching method.
 P83
- Flashes to show that Secret Attribute is set for the entry.

INFORMATION

- When the search other than Secrecy Search is performed in Secret Mode, the phonebook data with and without Secret Attribute set are both searched.

Checking the number of registered phonebook entries

Check No. of Items

You can display the number of registered phonebook entries or phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set in the phonebook.

- The number of data for which Secret Attribute is set can be displayed only when Secret Mode is on.

1 Search the phonebook

INFORMATION

- The number of registered items includes the one for which Secret Attribute is set.

Using simple dialing to make calls

Quick Dial

Phone calls can be made by simple operation to the parties with the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first phone number in the phonebook data is the number to be dialed.

Example Calling the phone number with phonebook No.2

1 Enter the phonebook No. (in this case) (voice call) or (videophone call)

- Enter the phonebook No. without prefixing it with zero (0). If you enter a leading zero, the call is not made.

Using Data Security Service

Data Security Service

Data Security Service enables you to save the phonebook data of your FOMA terminal to the Data Center. If you change the terminal to a new one because of loss or damage by water, the phonebook data can be restored to the new FOMA terminal from the data saved in the Data Center. You can also edit the data saved at the Data Center with PC and reflect the changes to the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Data Security Service is a pay service and requires a subscription. For more information, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- The UIM phonebook cannot be saved.

Saving/updating/restoring the phonebook data

1 ▶ Yes ▶ Enter the terminal security code

The FOMA terminal is connected to the Data Center and starts updating the data. When updating is completed, the result screen appears.

- The result disappears in about 5 seconds and returns to the menu screen. Press  to return to the menu screen immediately.

INFORMATION

- The operations for incoming calls while connecting to the Data Center are as follows:
 - Even in the case of the incoming call from the other party registered in the phonebook, the name and image of the other party are not displayed, and only the phone number is displayed. In addition, the ring alert or vibrator set in the phonebook data does not operate and follows the setting of the FOMA terminal.
 - Reject Call, Reject Unregistered Caller and Mute Ring Time Setting do not operate.
 - Chaku-moji cannot be received.
- By setting of Data Security Service, you can update the FOMA terminal phonebook from the Data Center. However, when you are executing other functions, automatic update does not operate.
- Restoring the data may not restore the order of the phonebook groups you registered previously.
- If you have not yet subscribed to Data Security Service, a screen appears to inform you of that effect.

Checking the communication log

You can check the log of communicating with the Data Center.

- Up to 30 accesses are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.

1 ▶ Select the log

Specifying whether to send images saved in the phonebook

Specify whether to send images saved in the phonebook to the Data Center.

Default OFF

1 ▶ Contact image sending ▶ or ▶

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Setting the operations for incoming calls/mails, etc.	96

Sound Setting

Changing the FOMA terminal sound	Sound Setting 98
Adjusting the volume of ring alerts and other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal	Adjust Volume 102
Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms	Vibrator Setting 103
Setting the alert sound for charging	Charge Alert 104
Setting the alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off	Quality Alarm 104
Making the sounds from the FOMA terminal silent	Silent Mode 105
Customizing Silent Mode	Customize Silent Mode 105

Displays/Lights Settings

Changing the standby display	Standby Display Setting 106
Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls	Call Image 111
Changing images for incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval	Mail Image 113
Displaying the other party's phone number and name when receiving a call	Receive Display 113
Setting the light for the display and keys	Display Light Setting 114
Changing the display color	Color Scheme 115
Setting the menu display format or menu design	Menu Setting 115
Changing the battery level icon	Battery Icon 117
Changing the icon for received signal level	Signal Level Icon 117
Coordinating according to the color of the FOMA terminal	Style Theme 117
Using Kisekae tool	Kisekae tool 118
Setting Machi-chara	Machi-chara Setting 119
Setting the lighting pattern and color for incoming calls/mails, etc.	Light Alert Setting 120
Flashing the Enter key when receiving new information	Indicator Light 121
Changing the font size	Font Size Setting 122
Setting the clock display	Clock Display Format 123

Setting the operations for incoming calls/mails, etc.

Setting the operations for incoming calls

Call Alert/Videophone Alert

Default Ring alert: Melody/Vivaldim (Call Alert), Melody/電話・メロディA (Phone, melody A) (Videophone Alert)
Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: Flash/Blue

Example Setting the operations for an incoming voice call

1     

■ Setting the operations for an incoming videophone call:     

2 Set each item

Ring alert : Sets the ring alert for incoming calls.

- When any of *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is selected, set the ring alert. Setting music data 
- When the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for *Movie ringtone*, *Show image* is set to *Sync ring alert*.

Show image : Sets the image displayed for incoming calls.

- When *Standard image* is selected, the default image is set.
- When *Select image* or *i-motion* is selected, set an image.

Vibrate alert : Sets the vibration for incoming calls.

Light alert : Sets the lighting pattern and color of the Enter key when receiving calls.

- When you set the lighting pattern to *Sync melody*, the lighting color cannot be set.

• When Kisekai tool is set 

• Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting 

Menu 191

Setting the operations for incoming mails

Mail Alert

Set the operations for incoming i-mode Mail or SMS.

Default Ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディA (Mail, melody A) Light alert: Glimmer/Green
Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10

1   

2 Set each item

Ring alert : Sets the ring alert for incoming i-mode Mail or SMS.

- When any of *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is selected, set the ring alert. Setting music data 
- When Kisekai tool is set 
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting 

Light alert : Sets the lighting pattern and the color of the Enter key when receiving mails.

- When you set the lighting pattern to *Sync melody*, the lighting color cannot be set.

Vibrate alert : Sets the vibration for incoming mails.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the sound duration of ring alert (1 to 30 seconds).

Setting the operations for incoming chat mails

Chat Mail Alert

Set the operations for incoming chat mails when Chat Mail has not been started.

Default Alert setting: [Customize](#) Ring alert: [Melody/メール・メロディB \(Mail, melody B\)](#)
 Light alert: [Glimmer/Green](#) Vibrate alert: [OFF](#) Ring time (sec): [10](#)

1 ► Set each item ►

- Alert setting** : Specifies whether to set the operations for incoming chat mails or follow the settings for Mail Alert.
- When *Customize* is set, the following items can be set:
- Ring alert** : Sets the ring alert for incoming chat mails.
- When any of *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is selected, set the ring alert. Setting music data P99
 - When *Kisekai* tool is set P119
 - Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting P99
- Light alert** : Sets the lighting pattern and the color of the Enter key when receiving mails.
- When you set the lighting pattern to *Sync melody*, the lighting color cannot be set.
- Vibrate alert** : Sets the vibration for incoming mails.
- Ring time (sec)** : Sets the sound duration of ring alert (1 to 30 seconds).

Setting the operations for incoming Message R/Fs

Message Alert

Default Ring alert: [Melody/メール・メロディC \(Mail, melody C\)](#) Light alert: [Glimmer/Green](#)
 Vibrate alert: [OFF](#) Ring time (sec): [10](#)

Example Setting the operations for an incoming Message R

1

■ Setting the operations for an incoming Message F:

2 Set each item ►

- For each item, follow Step 2 of “Setting the operations for incoming mails”. P96

Setting the operations for obtaining ToruCa

ToruCa Alert

Set the operations when obtaining ToruCa from the reader/writer.

Default Light alert: [ON](#) Light color: [Blue](#) Receive alert volume: [Level4](#)

1 ► Set each item ►

- Light alert** : Specifies whether to make the Enter key flash when obtaining ToruCa.
- Light color** : Sets the lighting color of the Enter key.
- Receive alert volume** : Sets the volume of the sound to be played when obtaining ToruCa.
- Adjusting the volume P102

INFORMATION

[General information]

- The settings of each function are also reflected to the settings of Sound Setting (P98), Incoming Call or Videophone Receiving of Call Image (P112), Vibrator Setting (P103), Light Alert Setting (P120) and Adjust Volume (P102).

[Call Alert/Videophone Alert]

- Setting a created animation for *Show image* displays the first frame.
- When the video/i-motion with sound only (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) or music data is set for *Ring alert*, if *Show image* is reset to the video/i-motion with image only or Flash movie, the ring alert is reset to the default setting. The melody can be changed afterward.
- Some video/i-motion files may not be set for *Show image*. Also, the video/i-motion with sound cannot be set.

[Mail Alert]

- When mail is received from a sender with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the phonebook settings take precedence. P80

[Chat Mail Alert]

- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the setting of Chat Mail Alert applies only when the last received mail is chat mail.

Changing the FOMA terminal sound

Sound Setting

Set the sound to announce the reception of call, mail, Message R/F, etc. In addition, the alarm clock sound, schedule reminder and the various operation sound can be set.

- To set other sounds, see the following:
 - Charge alert P104
 - Response hold guidance P63
 - On-hold tone P63
 - Quality alarm P104
 - Reconnect alarm P57
 - Low battery alert P39

Setting ring alerts for calls, mails, messages, etc.

Call Ring Alert / Mail/Msg Ring Alert

- If video/i-motion is set as a ring alert, an image and sound are played for incoming calls or mails (Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) and Chaku-Uta®).

Default

Call ring alert: Melody/Vivaldism V.phone ring alert: Melody/電話・メロディA(Phone, melody A)
Mail ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディA (Mail, melody A) Chat M ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディB (Mail, melody B) Msg.R ring alert, Msg.F ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディC(Mail, melody C)

Example

Setting a call ring alert

1

MENU 8 1 1 1 ▶ 1 or 2

- Setting a ring alert for Anonymous Caller: MENU 8 1 1 1 ▶ 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID". P139

- Setting a ring alert for mails/messages: MENU 8 1 1 2 ▶ 1 - 4

2

Set each item ▶

Call Ring Alert	
Phone	Melody
	Vivaldism

- When *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is selected, set the ring alert. Setting music data P99
- When Kisekae tool is set P119
- If the chat mail ring alert is set to *Sync msg alert*, the setting for the mail ring alert is used.

Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file

- Highlight a melody in the melody list and press  to play it (Viewing the list  P294). The following operations can be performed during playing:
 - Adjust the volume*1: 
 - Return to the melody list: 
 - Play the previous/next melody: 
 - Select a melody: 
- Highlight a video/i-motion file in the video/i-motion list and press  to play it (Viewing the list  P285). Press  to check the detail information. The following operations can be performed during playing:
 - Adjust the volume*1: 
 - Stop (return to the video/i-motion list):  or 
 - Rewind and play: 
 - Pause/play: 
 - Wind forward and play: 

*1 The sound volume for playing depends on Settings of melody or i-motion. Adjusting the volume is also reflected to Settings of melody or i-motion ( P294, P289). It is not linked to the ring alert volume.

Setting music data

There are two procedures for setting music data as a ring alert: full song ring tone and point ring tone. Full song ring tone sets the whole music data. Point ring tone sets the predetermined part of the music data.

- WMA file music, music data with replay restriction set and music data downloaded partially cannot be set.
- The full song ring tone and point ring tone may not be set depending on the music data, and only one of them may be set. You can check whether the full song ring tone or point ring tone can be set or not by referring to the detail information.  P332

① **Music** ▶ **Select a folder**

- When the folder list is not displayed even if *Music* is selected, select the melody field.

② **Set music data**

- When setting music data in the microSD memory card, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to move to the FOMA terminal. If *Yes* is selected, the music data is moved to the FOMA terminal. If *No* is selected, it cannot be set.
- To check the detail information: Highlight the music data ▶ 

■ **Setting the full song ring tone: Select the music data**

■ **Setting the point ring tone: Highlight the music data ▶ ▶ Select a playback portion**

■ **Playing and checking:**

- To play the whole music data: Highlight music data in the music data list ▶ 
- To play a playback portion of the point ring tone: Highlight the playback portion in the list ▶ 
- Viewing the music data list  P329
- The following operations can be performed during playing:
 - Adjust the volume*1: 
 - Stop (return to the music data list/the playback portion list): 
 - Wind forward:  (for over a second)
 - Pause/play: 
 - Rewind:  (for over a second)

*1 The sound volume for playing depends on Settings of Music Player. Adjusting the volume is also reflected to Settings of Music Player. It is not linked to the ring alert volume.

List of melodies which can be set as the ring alert, etc.

The following melodies are provided in the **Preinstalled** folder of **Melody** by default.

- Melody names that are too long to be shown on the display are partially omitted.

Title (composer in [])	Title (composer in [])	Title (composer in [])
パターン1～5 (Pattern 1 to 5)	アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice)	森のくまさん (The Bear) [American folk song]
電話・メロディA～C (Phone, melody A to C)	スライド・オープン音1～3 (Slide opening sounds 1 to 3)	凱旋行進曲 (Triumphal March) [VERDI GIUSEPPE]
電話・黒電話 (Phone, phone retro)	スライド・クローズ音1～3 (Slide closing sounds 1 to 3)	ツァラトゥストラはかく語りき (Also Sprach Zarathustra) [STRAUSS RICHARD]
電話・女性ボイス (Phone, female voice)	保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)	ジムノペディ第1番 (1 ere Gymnopedie) [SATIE ERIK ALFREDI LE]
メール・メロディA～C (Mail, melody A to C)	<i>Vivaldism</i>	<i>SKY</i>
メール・女性ボイス (Mail, female voice)	交響曲第25番ト短調K. 183より 第1楽章 (The first from Symphony No.25 in G minor)	<i>Lower</i>
メール・英語ボイス (Mail, English voice)	[MOZART WOLFGANG AMADEUS]	
アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)	火星 (The Planets, Mars) [HOLST GUSTAV]	
アラーム・アナログ時計 (Alarm, analog clock)	おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ (Parade of the wooden soldiers) [JESSEL LEON]	

- The composers are described in accordance with the JASRAC website.

The operation for incoming calls/mails

■ Priority of ring alerts

Ring alerts set in multiple functions sound by priority given below:

- ① Incoming setting of Multi Number
- ② Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ④ Sound Setting

- When the other party did not notify the caller ID except for the case of ①, the ring alert for voice calls sounds as set in Anonymous Caller. The ring alert for videophone calls sounds as set in Sound Setting. However, the incoming setting in Anonymous Caller is set to **Call Rejection**, all the incoming calls with no caller ID are rejected.
- If the sound or image set in Anonymous Caller is deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the generated sound or displayed image may be different from the settings.

■ Types of video/i-motion set as *Movie ringtone* and the incoming image

Video/i-motion set	Displayed incoming image
Only sound *1	• When the ring alert is changed from the video/i-motion with image to the video/i-motion with only sound, melody or music data, the standard image is displayed. • When the video/i-motion with only image or Flash movie is set for the incoming image, if the video/i-motion with only sound or music data is set for the ring alert, the standard image is displayed. However, the incoming image for a voice/videophone call can be changed to another image (except for Flash movie) from the standard image in Call Alert or Videophone Alert.*2
Sound and image	The image of the set video/i-motion is displayed as the incoming image.*3

*1 i-motion without image such as singer's vocals

*2 Even if the animation (except for the standard image) is set, the image does not move and the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.

*3 It is also same as when the incoming images are set in the functions with high priorities such as Phonebook.
Priority of incoming images ●P112

INFORMATION

- The following video/i-motion or music data cannot be set for the ring alert:
 - The video/i-motion with only image
 - The video/i-motion for which *Ring alert* of detail information (P308) is set to *Unavailable*
 - Music data for which *Full song ring tone* and *Point ring tone* of detail information (P332) are set to *Unavailable*
- When music data is set for the ring alert and animation (except for the standard image) is set for the incoming screen, the animation does not move and the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.
- The settings of this function are also reflected to the following settings:
 - Call Alert, Videophone Alert P96
 - Mail Alert P96
 - Chat Mail Alert P97
 - Message Alert P97
- Setting to sound the ring alert only from the earphone when connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) P358

Setting the alarm clock sound or schedule reminder

Alarm Clock Sound/Schedule Reminder

Set the sound to be generated when *Alarm clock sound* or *Schedule reminder* is set to *Terminal setting* in Alarm Clock or Scheduler.

Default Alarm clock: Melody/アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)
 Alarm on time: Melody/アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice)
 Alarm in advance: Melody/パターン4 (Pattern 4)

1 ▶ or ▶ **Set each item** ▶

- If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set, the video/i-motion image is displayed.
- Setting music data P99
- When Kisekai tool is set P119

Setting the sound generated when pressing keys

Keypad Sound

- When the keypad sound is changed, the confirmation sound for displaying the battery level is also changed.
- The keypad sound is not generated when pressing the following keys:
 -
 -

Default Keypad sound1

1 ▶ -

INFORMATION

- When *OFF* is set, the following sounds are not generated:
 - The confirmation sound generated when the battery level is indicated
 - The alert tone indicating the end of infrared communication, iC communication and data transmission
- In the following cases, the sound is not generated even if the sound is set to other than *OFF*:
 - In Silent Mode (Note that the sound is generated in the personalized silent mode when the keypad sound of Customize Silent Mode is set to other than *OFF*.)
 - During Key Lock (In case is pressed when nothing is displayed on the screen, the sound is heard.)
 - While i-appli is running (The sound is heard in case of switching the screen or displaying another screen during Multitask.)
 - During video recording
 - During recording with Sound Recorder
 - During voiceprint authentication/recording the voice for authentication
 - During voice recognition of Speed Menu

Setting the shutter sound

Shutter Sound

- When *Movie camera sound* is changed, the shutter sound of Sound Recorder is also changed.

Default Shutter sound, Movie camera sound: Shutter sound1

1 (MENU) (8) (1) (1) (4) ▶ (2) or (3) ▶ (1) - (5)

INFORMATION

- The settings of this function are also reflected to the settings of Still Image Setting and Recording Setting. ➡P151

Setting the sound generated when opening/closing the FOMA terminal

Slide Sound

Default Open slide: Melody/スライド・オープン音1(Slide opening sound1)
Close slide: Melody/スライド・クロース音1(Slide closing sound1)

1 (MENU) (8) (1) (1) (4) (4) ▶ **Set each item** ▶ (M)

Open slide : Sets the sound generated when opening the FOMA terminal.

Close slide : Sets the sound generated when closing the FOMA terminal.

- When *Melody* is selected, set the slide sound.

INFORMATION

- If you open/close the FOMA terminal quickly, the slide sound may not be heard. During the following operations, the slide sound may not also be heard even when opening/closing the FOMA terminal:
 - While dialing
 - While receiving
 - While talking
 - While alarm clock/alarm is sounding
 - While video/i-motion is playing
 - While shooting video
 - While playing recorded messages/voice memos/video memos
 - While i-appli is activated
 - While the alarm for Call Cost Limit is sounding
 - While recording talking voice memos
 - While calling
 - During Response and Hold
 - During Silent Mode
 - While melody is playing
 - While music data is playing
 - While recording Chara-den
 - While the greeting message is playing
 - While recording with Sound Recorder
 - While recording messages
 - While recording video memos
- The volume of the slide sound cannot be changed.

Adjusting the volume of ring alerts and other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal

Adjust Volume

Adjust the volume of ring alerts for call and mail, alarm clock, schedule alarm, etc.

- The volume can be adjusted in 7 levels, from *silent* to level 1 to level 6 (the volume of Movie ringtone can also be adjusted in 7 levels). You can also set *STEPTONE* (the volume changes into *silent* → level 1 → ... → level 6 every about 3 seconds).
- *Listen volume* cannot be set to *silent*.
- *Listen volume*, *i-appli effect sound* and *ToruCa receive alert* cannot be set to *STEPTONE*.

Default Level 4 (all)

1 (MENU) (8) (1) (2)

2 (1) - (6)

- When *Alarm volume* is selected, press (1) or (2) again.

3 to adjust the volume

- To set to **STEPTONE**:  or  when the volume is level 6
- To set to **silent**:  or  when the volume is level 1

■ The sound of which the volume is changed by each setting

Setting	Sounds to be changed
Call alert volume	• Ring alerts for voice calls or videophone calls • Alarm for Call Cost Limit • Confirmation sound when indicating the battery level • Alarm sound of Timer • Sound when playing melodies attached to mail or Message R/F
Mail/Msg alert vol.	Ring alerts for mails, chat mails and Message R/Fs
Listen volume	• Sound from earpiece during a voice call or videophone call • Keypad sound • Playback sound of voice call messages • Playback sound of voice memos • Sound effects for pasting stamps to the image and pasting texts
Alarm clock sound	Alarm clock sound played when the volume is set to Terminal setting in Alarm Clock
Schedule reminder	Alarm sound for schedule
i-appli effect sound	Effect sound for i-appli
ToruCa receive alert	Sound that plays when obtaining ToruCa

INFORMATION

-  is indicated on the standby display when **Call alert volume** is set to **silent**. If the vibrator for incoming voice calls is set at the same time,  is indicated.
- The setting for **ToruCa receive alert** is also reflected to ToruCa Alert. ➡P97

Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms

Vibrator Setting

- When the vibrator is set to **Terminal setting** in Alarm Clock, **Alarm clock** of Vibrator Setting will be valid.
- Note that if the FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. with Vibrator Setting on, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.

Default **Call vibrate alert, V.phone vibrate alert, Mail vibrate alert, Chat M vibrate alert, Msg.R vibrate alert, Msg.F vibrate alert, Alarm clock, Schedule reminder: OFF i-appli effect: ON**

Example Setting the operations of vibrator for incoming calls

1        or 

- **Setting the operation for incoming mails/messages:**        - 
- If **Alert setting** is set to **Same:Mail setting** in Chat Mail Alert, **Chat M vibrate alert** cannot be set.
- **Setting the operation while an alarm is sounding:**        or 
- **Setting the operation while using i-appli:**     

2  - 

- To set the operation while using i-appli:  or 
- If you set to **Pattern A**, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 0.5 second vibration → about 0.5 second pause → about 0.5 second vibration → about 1.5 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to **Pattern B**, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 1 second vibration → about 2 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to **Pattern C**, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 0.25 second vibration → about 0.25 second pause (repeated)

- If you set to *Sync melody*, the terminal vibrates along with the melody set as ring alert, etc. Note that it may not vibrate depending on melodies. In addition, vibration may not synchronize with the theme.
- When *Call vibrate alert* is set,  (when the call alert volume is set to *silent*, ) is indicated on the standby display.

Priority of vibrator

When the vibrator is set in multiple functions, the vibrator operates by priority given below:

- ① Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Vibrator Setting

INFORMATION

- The vibrator does not operate when another call is received during a call.
- Even when *OFF* is set, the vibrator may operate while some Flash movies are being played.
- Even if *Sync melody* is highlighted on the selection screen for the pattern, the vibrator does not operate.
- The vibration for Timer conforms to the setting for incoming calls.
- The settings of this function are also reflected to the following settings:
 - Call Alert, Videophone Alert  P96
 - Mail Alert  P96
 - Chat Mail Alert  P97
 - Message Alert  P97
 - Vibrate Effect for i-appli  P235

Setting the alert sound for charging

Charge Alert

Set whether to play the alert sound for the start and completion of charging.

Default ON

1  8 1 1 5 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- Even if *ON* is set, the charge alert sound does not play in the following cases:
 - In Silent Mode
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - During a voice call
 - During a videophone call
 - During 64K data communication
 - During i-mode communication
 - During packet communication

Setting the alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off

Quality Alarm

When signal conditions for voice calls deteriorate, an alarm sounds just before the call is cut off on the way.

- If signal conditions deteriorate suddenly, the call may be cut off before the alarm sounds.

Default High alarm

1  8 1 1 6 3 ▶ 1 - 3

Making the sounds from the FOMA terminal silent

Silent Mode

Disable the sounds from the FOMA terminal in order to prevent disturbance to the people around you by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound.

Default not set

1 (for over a second) or (for over a second)

The silent mode specified in Customize Silent Mode is set and  (in the general silent mode) or  (in the personalized silent mode) is indicated on the standby display.

- To cancel, repeat the same procedure.

When the general silent mode is set

Incoming calls or mails are notified with vibrator by muting sounds heard from the FOMA terminal such as ring alert, keypad sound and alarm. Microphone is sensitized so that a call can be made in a small voice.

- In the following cases, the vibrator operates in **Pattern A**:
 - When receiving calls or mails
 - When the time specified in Timer has passed
 - When the date and time set in Scheduler arrives
- When the time set in Alarm Clock arrives, the vibrator operates as set in Alarm Clock.
- Melodies are not played automatically even if the sent/received mail or Message R/F is displayed with **Auto play** set for Attachment Auto-play.
- When playing a melody or music data*1, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to play it. When **Yes** is selected, the melody or music data is played.
- When playing the video/i-motion with sound, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to play the sound. When **Yes** is selected, the sound is played. When playing the video/i-motion with image, if **No** is selected, only the image is played.
- A confirmation screen appears asking whether to output the sound when viewing 1Seg*1. Select **Yes** to output the sound. Select **No** to play only the image.

*1 Only when output from the speaker

INFORMATION

- Even in Silent Mode, the shutter sound is generated (except when recording Chara-den).
- In the general silent mode, even if Call Cost Limit is set to **ON** and the notification by alarm is set, only a message is displayed. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the call alert volume set in Customize Silent Mode.

Customizing Silent Mode

Customize Silent Mode

The setting for Silent Mode can be changed (Customize Silent Mode). Which mode is set can be selected from the general silent mode and the personalized silent mode.

Default General

1

2

- Pressing  sets the general silent mode and the previous screen reappears.

3 Set each item

- Vibrate alert** : Sets whether to operate the vibrator for incoming calls or mails, etc.
- When **ON** is set, an incoming call or mail is informed by vibration according to Vibrator Setting (P103). Note that when **OFF** is set in Vibrator Setting, the vibrator operates in **Pattern A**.
- Keypad sound** : Sets the keypad sound.
- Call alert volume** : Sets the ring volume for incoming calls.
- Mail alert volume** : Sets the ring volume for incoming mails.
- ToruCa alert volume** : Sets the volume of the sound that is generated when obtaining ToruCa from the reader/writer.
- Low Battery Alert** : Sets whether to sound an alarm when the battery starts to run out.
- Alarm sound** : Sets whether to sound the alarm clock and timer alarm.
- When **ON** is set, the alarm clock sounds according to the setting of Alarm Clock and the timer alarm sounds by アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody) at the volume set in **Call alert volume** of this function.
- Schedule sound** : Sets whether to sound a schedule alarm.
- When **ON** is set, it sounds according to the setting of the schedule and the volume of schedule reminder.
- i-appli sound** : Sets whether to generate the i-appli sound.
- When **ON** is set, it sounds according to the volume set in **i-appli effect sound**.
- Sensitize microphone** : Sets whether to sensitize the microphone.

Changing the standby display

Standby Display Setting

You can change the standby display to your favorite image.

- If you set video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-appli for the standby display when **Show ticker** in i-Channel Ticker is set to **Yes**, displaying in ticker is canceled. After that, if you set other than the video/i-motion, Chara-den and i-appli standby display, **Show ticker** in i-Channel Ticker is reset to **Yes**. P185
- Setting the clock display P123

Setting images, video/i-motion or Chara-den as the standby display

- Images, i-motion and Chara-den set by default P391, P394

Default use Style Theme setting

1       ,  or 



- When Kisekae tool is set P119

2 Select a folder Select an image, a video/i-motion file or a Chara-den image

- To check the image, highlight the image in the image list and press . The following operations can be performed on the image display screen:
 - Display the previous/next image:  • Return to the image list:  • Select an image: 
- To check Chara-den, highlight the Chara-den image in the Chara-den list and press . The following operations can be performed on the Chara-den display screen:
 - Switch between **Action** and **Action of Parts**: 
 - Display the action list:  • Switch between large size display and same size display: 
 - Return to the Chara-den list:  or 

- Playing and checking a video/i-motion file when selecting P99
- The image or video/i-motion saved in the microSD memory card cannot be selected. Select it after moving or copying it to the FOMA terminal.

■ Setting the action of Chara-den:

- ① **Highlight a Chara-den image in the Chara-den list** **Stand-by field** -
 - Set the action for missed call or unread mail in the same way.
 - When *Action* or *Action of Parts* is selected, select an action from the action list.
 - When *Input* is selected, enter the number corresponding to the action.
 - When *OFF* is set, the preset action is played and another action cannot be set.
- ② **Interval (sec) field** -
 - When *OFF* is set, the selected action of Chara-den is played only once.
- ③

3 Yes

- If the selected image, video/i-motion or Chara-den can be zoomed, displaying at the same size or large size can be selected on the confirmation screen. Select *Yes(Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *Yes(Large size)* to enlarge the image to the screen size.
- If the i-appli standby display is set, a confirmation screen subsequently appears asking whether to cancel it.

Playing the video/i-motion, animation or Chara-den set as the standby display

- The following operations are available for video/i-motion:
 - Play: /Open the FOMA terminal
 - Stop: /Close the FOMA terminal/
 - Adjust the volume:
- The following operations are available for animation, created animation or Flash movie:
 - Play: Open the FOMA terminal/Return to the standby display/Turn the power on
 - Pause/replay:
 - Stop: Close the FOMA terminal
- The following operations are available for Chara-den:
 - Play (when the interval for the action is set, the action is played repeatedly at the set interval): /Open the FOMA terminal
 - Stop: /Close the FOMA terminal/
- Even while Key Lock is set, you can play by opening the FOMA terminal.

INFORMATION

- While All Lock, PIM Lock (when the data which is subject to PIM Lock is set for the standby display) or Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is on, the set standby image is canceled and the image set by default is displayed temporarily. The set standby image reappears when lock is canceled. However, if the data in the *Preinstalled* folder is set, the set data is displayed even when PIM Lock is on.
- The setting may not be available depending on the image.
- The video/i-motion with restriction of the number of replay or replay period set or the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as singer's vocals) cannot be set for the standby display. In addition, some video/i-motion may not be set for the standby display.
- Still image recorded by 1Seg viewing cannot be set for the standby display.
- When the standby display appears, the set Flash movie or animation starts playing and stops after a certain period of time.
- If an animation is set in large size display, the display may be distorted.
- Even if links are set in tickers of the video/i-motion set as the standby display, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are not available from the standby display.
- When *Show ticker* in i-Channel Ticker is set to *Yes*, playing of the animation, created animation or Flash movie, which is set for the standby display, stops after about 5 seconds, and the i-Channel ticker is displayed. However, when playing is performed by , the i-Channel ticker is displayed after playing has completed.
- When the action of Chara-den is set for multiple items, the action is played by priority given below:
 - ① Action set for *Missed call* or *Unread message*
 - ② Action set for *Stand-by*
 - When both action for missed calls and action for unread mail are set and there are both missed calls and unread mail, the action set for each item is played repeatedly by turns.

Images can be displayed in a random order on the standby display every fixed time or each time you open the FOMA terminal.



- When Kisekai tool is set P119

2 Set each item

Folder: Selects a folder in which the images are saved from the folders in *My Picture*.

- The folder with no image which can be displayed cannot be selected.

Change image:

Sets the timing when the images are switched.

- When *Every 15 seconds* is set, images are switched every 15 seconds after returning to the standby display.
- When any of *Every minute*, *Every 15 minutes* or *Every hour* is set, the images are switched according to the clock time. (For example, when *Every minute* is set, the images are switched per minute at 0 seconds.)
- When *Every day* is set, the images are switched at 00:00 a.m. every day.
- When *Open slide* is set, the images are switched each time you open the FOMA terminal.



- If the i-appli standby display is set, a confirmation screen subsequently appears asking whether to cancel it.

INFORMATION

- The following images cannot be displayed:
 - Created animation
 - Animation
 - Flash movie
- In case the power is turned off, the image is not switched.
- Even if the still image currently displayed on the standby display is moved to another folder or a created animation is composed using the image, that image is displayed until it switches to the next image. After that, it is not displayed.
- When there is no still image that can be displayed as the result of deleting the selected folder, moving or deleting still images in the folder or composing a created animation, the default image is displayed on the standby display and Random Display Image is canceled (if the still image is moved or the created animation is composed, the image is displayed until it switches to the next image).
- Even when *Change image* is set to *Open slide*, if you repeat opening/closing the FOMA terminal quickly, the image may not be switched.

Setting the i-appli standby display

- The i-appli standby display can be set simultaneously with other standby display settings including the custom standby display. When they are set simultaneously, the i-appli standby display is displayed by priority.



The list of i-appli available for the i-appli standby display appears.

2 Select i-appli **Yes**

The i-appli standby display is set on the standby display and or is indicated.

INFORMATION

- While PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (with *Authorized access* set for *i-appli*) is on, the *i-appli* standby display is not displayed but a standby image set previously is displayed. Note that while PIM Lock is on, the default standby display is displayed when the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set. While All Lock or Omakase Lock is on, the default standby display appears.
- Operating the *i-appli* standby display ➡ P241

Customizing the standby display

Info/Calendar Layout

Set the information area on the standby display (Custom standby display) and press to switch displaying/ not displaying it.

- The set information is displayed superimposed on the image when the image is set on the standby display. When the *i-appli* standby display is set on the standby display, the information is not displayed.
- Set i-motion* or *Set Chara-den image* of *Stand-by display* cannot be set simultaneously.

Default Pattern 1 Set Area1: not registered

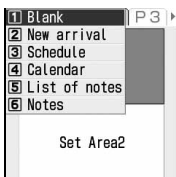
1

2

- Pressing cancels the setting and the previous screen returns.
- When Kisekai tool is set ➡ P119

3 to switch patterns

4 Select an area ▶ -



- If the pattern including multiple areas is selected, repeat Step 4.
- The calendar cannot be set in an area smaller than half of the screen (e.g. *Set Area1* of *Pattern 3*).

■ Setting to display new information: Select an area ▶ ▶ Select information type ▶



■ Setting to display notes:

① Select an area ▶

② Select a note

- Highlight a note and press to display the content of the note. Press to return to the note list. You can also press on the notepad view screen to set.

■ Resetting the displayed items in all the areas: ▶ Yes

5 ▶ Yes

- If the *i-appli* standby display is set, a confirmation screen subsequently appears asking whether to cancel it.

INFORMATION

- If you change the setting for Style Theme, the custom standby display is not displayed, but the setting is saved. If you operate in order of Step 1, Step 2 and Step 5, the custom standby display set before is displayed.

Checking information on the custom standby display

1 

The highlighted area is surrounded by the cursor frame.

- In case the information on the custom standby display is not shown, display by pressing  repeatedly on the standby display and press .

2  to move the cursor frame and select an area

INFORMATION

- An image and a custom standby display can be set simultaneously, but if an animation, created animation or Flash movie is set, press  after the playback is stopped or paused to display the information of the custom standby display.

Displayed information

The custom standby display and various information appear as follows:

- The numbers of information and lines displayed differ depending on the area size.
- For the date and time of each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for the other days.

■ New arrival



The items set in *New arrival* are listed starting with the most recent item.

Unread messages :

The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the received mail folder list.

MessageR / *MessageF* :

The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the Message R/F list.

 *Missed calls* : The date and time of incoming call and the phone number of the other party (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the received call list.

Recorded messages :

The date and time of recording and the phone number of the other party (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the recorded message list.

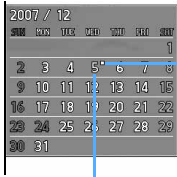
■ Schedule



The scheduled entries with the start time not passed are displayed in the order of the date and time. Select this area to display the details of the first schedule (including booked program schedule).

- The icon, the date and time and the beginning of the contents (the program name for a TV program schedule) are displayed.
- In case of the date-straddled long-term schedule,  is indicated instead of the registered icon. The start date or start time (when it is before the start time on the current day) is displayed after the icon. The date-straddled long-term schedule is displayed until the end date and time has elapsed.
- If any all day schedule is set on the current day, *AllDay* is displayed instead of the start date and time.

Calendar



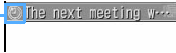
The current day is displayed in yellow.

Dot

The current calendar is displayed. Select this area to display the calendar screen of Scheduler.

- The days-off and holidays are displayed in red, and Saturdays are displayed in blue. The days-off and holidays follow Day Off Setting or Holiday Setting for Scheduler. Note that when Privacy Mode is on (with *Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on, the day set as day-off in Day Off Setting is not displayed in red and reset to the default display.
- When a schedule is set, a dot is displayed on the upper right of the date. Note that when all the schedules have Secret Attribute, the dot is displayed only when Secret Mode is on. In addition, it is not displayed when Privacy Mode (with *Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on.

List of notes

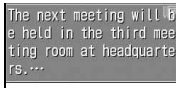


Status icon

The first part of the contents in order registered in Notepad is displayed. Select this area to display the list of notes.

- Only the note which is to be displayed in List by Status is displayed.
- Status icon ◀P355

Notes



The content of the set note is displayed. Select the area to display the details of note.

Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls

Call Image

Menu 8411 / Menu 8511

Changing images to be displayed for outgoing calls

Outgoing Call/Videophone Dialing

Set images to be displayed for outgoing voice/videophone calls.

Default Default (all)

1 (MENU) (8) (2) (3) (2) ▶ (1) or (3)

2 Display image field ▶ (1) or (2) ▶ (M)

- When *Default* is selected, the default image is set.
- When *Select image* is selected, set an image.
- When Kisekai tool is set ▶P119

Priority of outgoing images

When the outgoing images are set in multiple functions, the images are displayed by priority given below:

- ① The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook (available when Contact Image is set to *ON*)
- ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Call Image (Outgoing Call/Videophone Dialing)

INFORMATION

- Setting a created animation displays the first frame.
- Still image recorded by 1Seg viewing cannot be set.

Set images to be displayed for incoming voice/videophone calls.

- Setting the image for an incoming voice call with no caller ID ◀P139

Default Standard image (all)

1 (MENU) (8) (2) (3) (2) ▶ (2) or (4)

2 Show image field ▶ (1) - (3) ▶ (M)

- When *Standard image* is selected, the default image is set.
- When *Select image* or *i-motion* is selected, set an image.
- When Kisekai tool is set ◀P119
- If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for the ring alert, *Sync ring alert* is set.
- Playing and checking a video/i-motion file when selecting ◀P99

Priority of incoming images

When the incoming images are set in multiple functions, the image is displayed by priority given below. However, even if the incoming image is set, when the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for the ring alert, the video/i-motion image for the ring alert is displayed.

- ① Incoming setting of Multi Number
- ② The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook*1
- ③ Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ④ Call Image (Incoming Call/Videophone Receiving)

*1 Available when Contact Image is set to *ON*.

- When the other party did not notify the caller ID, the incoming image for voice calls conforms to the setting of Anonymous Caller. The incoming image for videophone calls conforms to the setting of Call Image (Videophone Receiving) or Sound Setting. However, the incoming operation in Anonymous Caller is set to *Call Rejection*, all the incoming calls with no caller ID are rejected.
- If the sound or image set in Anonymous Caller is deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the generated sound or displayed image may be different from the settings.

INFORMATION

- If a created animation is set, the first frame is displayed.
- When the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) is set for the ring alert, if *Show image* is reset to the video/i-motion with only image or Flash movie, the ring alert sounds by *Vivaldism* for voice call or by 電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A) for videophone call. The melody can be changed.
- Some video/i-motion may not be set to *Show image*. And the video/i-motion with sound cannot be set, either.
- Still image recorded by 1Seg viewing cannot be set.
- The settings of this function are reflected to the settings for Call Alert and Videophone Alert. ◀P96

Displaying images saved in the phonebook when making/receiving calls

Contact Image

When a voice/videophone call from/to the other party registered in the phonebook is received/made, the portrait image saved in the phonebook can be displayed.

Default ON

1 (MENU) (8) (2) (3) (2) (5) ► (1) or (2)

Changing images for incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval

Mail Image

The image for incoming/outgoing i-mode mails, the image while receiving or the image of the reception result screen can be set. In addition, the image for performing Check i-mode Message or Check SMS can be set.

Default Default (all)

1 (MENU) (8) (2) (3) (3) ► (1) - (4)

2 Set an image

- For setting the mail reception result screen, follow Step 2 in "Changing images to be displayed for incoming calls". ➡P112

For setting other than the above, follow Step 2 in "Changing images to be displayed for outgoing calls".

➡P111

Displaying the other party's phone number and name when receiving a call

Receive Display

Set whether to display the phone number and name when a voice/videophone call is received and set the font size for the name.

In addition, set whether to display the reception result as ticker on the task bar when i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F is received.

- Name displays ➡P78

Default Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display

1 (MENU) (8) (2) (3) (4) ► Set each item ► (M)

Caller's phone number :

Sets whether to display the phone number when a call is received.

Caller's name : Sets whether to display the name in the normal size, in the small size or not to display the name when a call is received.

Receive mail/message :

Sets whether to display the reception result as ticker on the task bar when i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F is received.

Setting the lighting time

Lighting makes the display brighter.

Default Normal use: 10 sec AC adapter connected, i-mode session: Terminal setting
Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion: Always on
i-appli: Terminal setting

1 -

2 -

- For setting items other than *Normal use*, press or . When *Terminal setting* is set, the lighting time set for *Normal use* is used.
- When *Always* or *Always on* is set, the display is always lighted with the brightness set in *Backlight settings*. However, it is lighted by *High* when AC adapter is connected.
- When *i-appli* is set to *Software*, the display is lighted in accordance with the i-appli software.

Setting lighting of the keys

Set whether to light the keys.

- The Easy Selector Plus does not light.

Default AUTO

1 -

- If *AUTO* is set, the keys light/light off according to ambient brightness when pressing the key.
- If *ON* is set, the keys light/light off in conjunction with the display light.

Setting the display light

Set the brightness for lighting the display.

Default AUTO(Normal)

1 **Set each item**

AUTO Brightness: Sets whether to adjust the brightness of the display automatically.

- When *AUTO(Normal)* is set, the display light is adjusted automatically with the brightness to *Low* or *Normal* according to ambient brightness.
- When *AUTO(High)* is set, the display light is adjusted automatically with the brightness to *Low*, *Normal* or *High* according to ambient brightness.
- When *OFF* is set, set the brightness.

Brightness: Sets the brightness when not adjusting the brightness automatically.

INFORMATION

- When *Normal use of Display light time* is set to other than *Always*, if you do not press any keys for about 90 seconds, the display disappears and the FOMA terminal goes into a power saving mode. If there is any key operation*1 or an incoming call, the display reappears. However, the FOMA terminal does not go into a power saving mode in the following cases:

- During a videophone call
- While displaying the shooting screen of the camera or while shooting
- While viewing 1Seg
- While charging with *AC adapter connected of Display light time* set to *Always on*
- While executing the function with *Display light time* set to *Always on*

*1 Even if is pressed, the display does not appear. In addition, except for during a call, a number, etc. is not entered even when pressing keys.

- Even if *i-appli* is set to **Terminal setting**, the setting may not be applied for some *i-appli* applications.
- Even if the light for keys or display light is set to be switched automatically, they do not operate normally and the flicker may be caused in the following cases:
 - When the illumination sensor is scratched or a foreign substance adheres to the sensor
 - When the illumination sensor is covered or is in the shadow
 - When ambient brightness is not stabilized
 - When the direction of the illumination sensor to the light source such as lighting equipment or sunlight is changed suddenly
- Even if the light for keys or display light is set to be switched automatically, they may not operate normally because the brightness is not detected properly depending on the light source.
- Setting the light for the display while viewing 1Seg ●P266
- The settings in **Display light time** of this function are also reflected to the settings of Display Light for i-mode (●P176), Still Image Setting (●P151), Recording Setting (●P151), Settings for i-motion (●P289) and Display Light for i-appli (●P235).

Changing the display color

Color Scheme

The color of each part of the screen such as the background or characters is changed.

Default use Style Theme setting



- You can select a color from 24 colors. The color names are for information purpose only.

Setting the menu display format or menu design

Menu 8221

Menu Setting

The menu display format or the icon design can be changed. It can also be set to the simple menu limited only to the often used functions. In the simple menu, characters are also displayed in large size.

- The designs of tile icons and animation set by default for the normal menu ●P391

Default Normal: Animation Custom: Tile display Describe function: ON
 Type of animation: use Style Theme setting Icon display effect: OFF
 Default MENU: Normal Active shortcut: Custom



- When **Default MENU** is set to **Custom**, press **(MENU)** on the standby display and press **(MENU)** **8**.

2 Set each item

- Normal** : Sets the display format for the normal menu.
- To set the simple menu, select シンプル (Simple menu)*.
 - When Kisekai tool is set ●P119
- Custom** : Sets the display format for the custom menu.
- Describe function** : Sets whether to display the description of function.
- Type of tile icons** : Sets the design of tile icons for the normal menu.
- It can be set only when **Normal** is set to **Tile display**.
 - The design of the first level menu can be set.
 - **Customized 1** or **Customized 2** is set when changing the menu icons or background images and creating the original menu design.
- Type of animation** : Sets the design of animation for the normal menu.
- It can be set only when **Normal** is set to **Animation**.
- Icon display effect** : Sets whether to magnify the tile icons or 3D icons when selecting them.

- Default MENU** : Sets whether to display the normal menu or the custom menu when pressing  on the standby display.
- Active shortcut** : Sets the shortcut operation procedure for the custom menu.
- **Normal**: The same item numbers as the normal menu can be used for shortcut operations.
 - **Custom**: The item numbers for the positions of the respective functions on the custom menu can be used for shortcut operations.
- * Can only be set in the Japanese display. Switch to the Japanese display before setting the simple menu.

When the simple menu is set

- The menu numbers differ. Menu list of the simple menu ◀P390
- During calling or talking, you can see how to adjust the volume of other party's voice.
- Enter a phone number to see the operation to be performed subsequently.
- On the standby display, enter a phonebook No. (1 to 9) to see the registered name and phone number. Key operations for making a voice call/videophone call are also shown. During a voice call, you can also press , select **ダイヤル入力** (Dial) and enter a phonebook number to see the same information.
- The characters in the redials, received calls, phonebook list/group list, mail view screen, sent message log, received message log, site screen, screen memo screen, message text entry screen and character entry screen (full-screen entry) are displayed in large font.
- The font size cannot be changed.

INFORMATION

- You cannot switch the FOMA terminal to the simple menu when English display is set in Select Language. Also, when you choose the simple menu, the setting for Select Language is not available.
- Even if you set the simple menu, when you insert the UIM for which English display is specified as language, the setting is canceled.

Creating the original menu design

Two kinds of the design of the menu screen can be created by changing the icons or background images of the normal menu.

- When the image size exceeds 96 x 96 for icons and 240 x 240 for background images, they are reduced to be displayed.

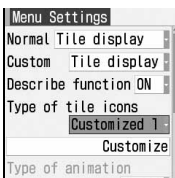
1



- When **Default MENU** is set to **Custom**, press  on the standby display and press  **8**.

2

Normal field ▶ **2** ▶ **Type of tile icons field** ▶ **6** or **7** ▶ **Customize**



3

Select a function ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image**

- **Canceling a menu icon: Highlight an icon** ▶  **1** ▶ **Yes**
 - To cancel all:  **2** ▶ **Yes**

4

 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image**

- **Canceling a background image:**  **4** ▶ **Yes**

5



INFORMATION

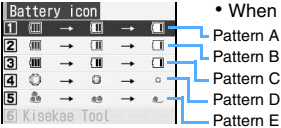
- Created animations, Flash movie or images in the *Item* folder cannot be set. If an animation is set, the first frame is displayed.
- The setting for *Customized 1* or *Customized 2* of *Type of tile icons* cannot be changed while PIM Lock is on.

Changing the battery level icon

Battery Icon

Default use Style Theme setting

1 



• When Kisekai tool is set  P119

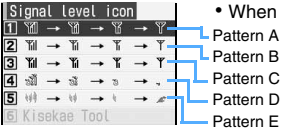
Pattern A
Pattern B
Pattern C
Pattern D
Pattern E

Changing the icon for received signal level

Signal Level Icon

Default use Style Theme setting

1 



• When Kisekai tool is set  P119

Pattern A
Pattern B
Pattern C
Pattern D
Pattern E

Coordinating according to the color of the FOMA terminal

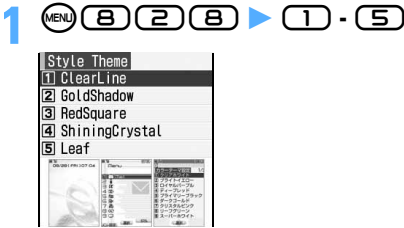
Style Theme

The standby display, the battery icon, the signal level icon, the clock display, the color scheme and the menu design are coordinated in total by the color of the FOMA terminal. They can also be changed to the style corresponding to the other colors.

Functions and items to be coordinated		Style Theme				
		<i>ClearLine</i>	<i>GoldShadow</i>	<i>RedSquare</i>	<i>ShiningCrystal</i>	<i>Leaf</i>
Standby display		<i>Clear line</i>	<i>Gold shadow</i>	<i>Red square</i>	<i>Shining crystal</i>	<i>Leaf</i>
Battery Icon		Pattern A	Pattern B	Pattern C	Pattern D	Pattern E
Signal Level Icon		Pattern A	Pattern B	Pattern C	Pattern D	Pattern E
Clock Display Format	<i>Style</i>	<i>ON/Digital 1</i>	<i>ON/Digital 2</i>	<i>ON/Digital 3</i>	<i>ON/Analog 1</i>	<i>ON/Digital 4</i>
	<i>Clock layout</i>	<i>Top</i>	<i>Center</i>	<i>Center</i>	<i>Top</i>	<i>Center</i>
Color Scheme		<i>ClearWhite</i>	<i>DarkGold</i>	<i>DeepRed</i>	<i>CrystalPink</i>	<i>LeafGreen</i>
Type of animation of Menu Setting		<i>Type1</i>	<i>Type2</i>	<i>Type3</i>	<i>Type4</i>	<i>Type5</i>

• The default settings are as follows:

Body color of the FOMA terminal	White	Brown	Red	Pink
Style Theme	ClearLine	GoldShadow	RedSquare	ShiningCrystal



INFORMATION

- Even if *Time format* and *Day* of Clock Display Format, and *Normal* of Menu Setting are set, if you set this setting, the settings return to the default state.

Menu 58

Using Kisekai tool

Kisekai tool

If Kisekai tool is set, the ring alert, standby display, menu icon, etc are changed collectively.

- The function to be changed differs depending on Kisekai tool to be set. The function which is not included in the Kisekai tool you set continues the current setting.
- ドットドッグ(Dot dog) is registered by default. ●P394

Default not set



2 Highlight a Kisekai tool ▶ Yes

- When you highlight Kisekai tool whose data is downloaded partly and press (F), (M) and (E), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the remaining data. Select *Yes* to download it.
- When more than 1 Kisekai tools are set, the data of the last set Kisekai tool is set for overlapping functions.

■ Displaying the preview screen: Highlight a Kisekai tool ▶ (M)

■ Checking the contents set by Kisekai tool:

① Select a Kisekai tool

The setting list screen appears.

② Select the item to be set

An image is displayed or a melody, etc is played.

- If *Color theme* is selected, the display appears in the color to be set.
- Available operations while playing i-motion ●P99
- While playing a melody, (V) to adjust the volume.

■ Changing the display name: Highlight a Kisekai tool ▶ (MENU) 1 ▶ Enter a display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶ (M)

■ Deleting Kisekai tool:

① Highlight a Kisekai tool ▶ (MENU) 2

② 1 ▶ Yes

- To delete all the items: (2) ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

■ Displaying the detail information: Highlight a Kisekai tool ▶ (MENU) 3

■ Resetting the setting: (⌂) ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ *Reset all* or *Reset menu*

- If *Reset all* is selected, all the functions changed by Kisekae tool return to the default setting.
- If *Reset menu* is selected, only animation menu, menu icon (with focus) and menu icon (without focus) return to the default setting.

■ Screen, ring alert, etc changed by Kisekae tool

• Standby display	• Animation menu	• Menu icon (with focus)
• Menu icon (without focus)	• Outgoing screen for voice call	• Incoming screen for voice call
• Outgoing screen for videophone call	• Incoming screen for videophone call	
• Mail sending screen	• Mail receiving screen	• Mail reception result screen
• Screen for Check new message	• Battery icon	• Antenna icon
• Ring alert for voice call	• Ring alert for videophone	• Mail ring alert
• Chat mail ring alert	• Message R ring alert	• Message F ring alert
• Alarm clock sound	• Color Scheme	

When Kisekae tool is set

The function changed by Kisekae tool is set to *Kisekae Tool*. However, the setting for Color Scheme is set by Kisekae tool.

If the setting of each function is changed individually, *Kisekae Tool* cannot be selected. To return to *Kisekae Tool*, set Kisekae tool again. However, if you change the setting to *OFF*, *Sync msg alert* or *Set i-appli in Image/i-appli*, *Kisekae Tool* can be selected.

INFORMATION

- You can also set by pressing (⌂) on the preview screen or contents list screen.
- When there is the data which cannot be displayed and played in Kisekae tool, even if Kisekae tool is set, only the data is not set.
- When the current Kisekae tool is deleted, all the functions changed by the Kisekae tool return to the default state.
- Depending on the animation menu of Kisekae tool, the operation when pressing (⌂) or (⌂) on the standby display may differ from usual, or shortcut operations in the menu may not be available.
- When Kisekae tool set by default is deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, "My D-Style". ➡P391

Setting Machi-chara

Machi-chara Setting

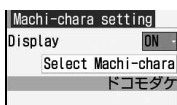
If Machi-chara is set, a character is displayed on the standby display, site display screen, etc.

- The action of Machi-chara or the position to display Machi-chara changes with the situation of the FOMA terminal or Machi-chara.
- The list of Machi-chara registered by default ➡P394

Default ON/ドコモダケ (docomodake)

1 (MENU) (8) (2) (9)

2 Display field ▶ (1)



- To cancel the setting: Display field ▶ (2) ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Select Machi-chara ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a Machi-chara image

4 (⌂)

When Machi-chara is set

- When Machi-chara is set, it is displayed on the following screens:
 - Standby display*1
 - Site display screen*2
 - Menu (when displaying tile icons)
- *1 The display range of Machi-chara becomes narrow when *Show ticker* in i-Channel Ticker is set to *Yes*.
- *2 Machi-chara is displayed when the display lights up and there is no key operation for about 30 seconds while  is blinking.
- In the following cases, Machi-chara is not displayed:
 - While displaying the standby display when i-motion, Chara-den, i-appli or Flash movie is set on the standby display
 - When the information area or the icon for Focus Mode is selected while displaying the custom standby display
 - When Flash movie is displayed on the site display screen
 - When the description of functions of the menu is displayed
 - When the date and time is not set

INFORMATION

- Highlighting a Machi-chara in the Machi-chara list of Data Box and pressing  can also set Machi-chara.

Setting the lighting pattern and color for incoming calls/mails, etc.

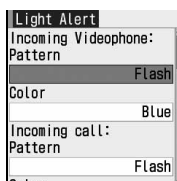
Light Alert Setting

- When the lighting pattern or lighting color is set to *Terminal setting* in Alarm Clock, the setting for *Alarm clock* in this function will be valid.

Default

Incoming Videophone, Incoming call: Flash/Blue
 Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail: Glimmer/Green
 ToruCa receive: ON/Blue During call: OFF IC card: ON/Blue Alarm clock, Schedule: Flash/Blue-Green-Red
 Play melody: Sync melody Open slide, Close slide: Glimmer/Blue-Green Easy selector plus: ON

1     ►  -  ► Set the lighting ► 



- Setting for incoming videophone call, incoming call, incoming mail, incoming Message R, incoming Message F, incoming chat mail, during a call, alarm clock, schedule alarm, playing melody, opening slide or closing slide:

① **Pattern field** ►  - 

- *Sync melody* cannot be set for *During call*.

- When *Sync melody* is set, the lighting color cannot be set. The Enter key lights/flashes in *Rainbow*.

② **Color field** ►  - 

- Setting for ToruCa reception or IC card access:

① **Light field** ►  or 

② **Color field** ►  - 

- Setting the Easy Selector Plus:

When *Light of Easy selector plus* is set to *ON*, each time you press the Easy Selector Plus, it lights in the color of this order; red → green → blue → all the colors.

① **Light field** ►  or 

Priority of lighting

In case the lighting is set in multiple functions, the Enter key lights/flashes by priority given below:

- ① Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Light Alert Setting

INFORMATION

- When *Sync melody* is highlighted on the selection screen for the lighting pattern, the Enter key flashes.
- When *Alert setting* is set to *Same:Mail setting* in Chat Mail Alert, *Incoming Chat Mail* cannot be set.
- When *Sync melody* is set for the lighting pattern, the Enter key may not light/flash depending on the melodies.
- Even when *IC card* is set to *ON*, the Enter key may not light while Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is activated.
- Even when *IC card* is set to *ON*, if the power is turned off, the Enter key does not light.
- When *IC card* is set to *ON*, the Enter key flashes when holding up the FeliCa mark to the reader/writer. The Enter key also flashes when the FeliCa mark is held over the reader/writer in which Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is not registered.
- Even when *Easy selector plus* is set to *ON*, except during talking or charging, lighting by rotating the Easy Selector Plus is unavailable while the Enter key is lighting/flashing.
- The setting of this function is reflected to the following settings:
 - Call Alert, Videophone Alert ➡P96
 - Mail Alert ➡P96
 - Chat Mail Alert ➡P97
 - Message Alert ➡P97
 - ToruCa Alert ➡P97
 - Settings for melody ➡P294

Flashing the Enter key when receiving new information

Indicator Light

The Enter key flashes when there is new information such as missed calls, unread mails, unread Message R/Fs, etc.

Default ON



INFORMATION

- Even when *ON* is set, the Enter key does not flash in the following cases:
 - While receiving a call
 - While talking
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - During All Lock
 - While activating the camera/Sound Recorder
 - While the Enter key is lighting (excluding the cases where the Enter key is lighting when opening/closing the FOMA terminal, operating the Easy Selector Plus or charging)
- When *ON* is set, if about 6 hours have passed since the last arrival of new information or if 1, 1 or 1 on the standby display is cleared, the Enter key stops flashing even if the information has not been confirmed.
- When *ON* is set, the Enter key flashes at about 6 second intervals in the lighting color set in each of the following settings. It does not conform to the setting of Alert by Contact or Alert/Image by Group. If new information has been confirmed, flashing stops.
 - Missed calls (voice call/videophone call/recorded message): *Incoming call* in Light Alert Setting
 - Unread messages (mail/chat mail/SMS): *Incoming Mail* in Light Alert Setting
 - Unread messages (Message R/Message F): *Incoming Message R/Incoming Message F* in Light Alert Setting
- When *ON* is set and there are multiple newly arrived information, the Enter key flashes in the color according to the following priority.
 - ① Missed calls (voice call/videophone call/recorded message)
 - ② Unread messages (mail/chat mail/SMS)
 - ③ Unread messages (Message R)
 - ④ Unread messages (Message F)

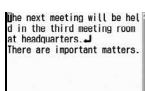
Changing the font size

Font Size Setting

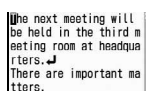
The font size on the character entry screen (for notes, etc.), the mail view screen or the site display screen can be changed (among 5 options or 3 options).



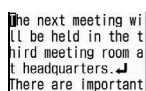
Minimum: 12 dots



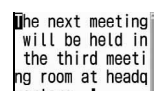
Small: 16 dots



Standard: 20 dots



Large: 24 dots

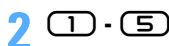


Maximum: 28 dots

Default Standard (all)



- Changing the setting of *All listed* also alters the settings of *i-mode view*, *Mail view* and *Text input*.



- To set the font size for *i-mode view* or *Mail view*, press any of 1 - 5.

INFORMATION

- The font size during in-line entry cannot be changed.
- The font size of Deco-mail pictogram is not changed.
- The size of some characters may not change depending on the display screen of sites, screen memos or Full Browser.
- When the setting of *All listed* is changed to *Maximum* or *Minimum*, the setting of *i-mode view* or *Mail view* becomes *Large* or *Small* for each.
- The font size can be changed from the mail view screen as well. The setting is reflected to *Mail view* of this setting.
- When the setting of *Text input* is changed, the font size of predictive conversion options displayed when entering characters and the font size on the mail composition screen are also changed. However, if *Text input* is set to *Maximum* or *Minimum*, the font size on the mail composition screen becomes *Large* or *Small* for each.

Setting the clock display

Clock Display Format

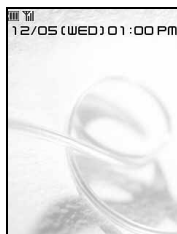
Set whether to display the clock on the standby display. The clock design, the time display format (24 hour format/12 hour format), the clock display position and the language used to display the day of the week can also be set.

Default use Style Theme setting for Style Time format: 24 hour
use Style Theme setting for Clock layout Day: English

■ The example of setting



Displaying *Analog 1*
at the center



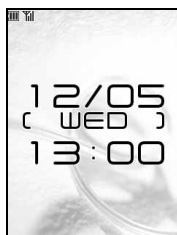
Displaying *Digital 1*
by 12 hour format
at the top



Displaying *Digital 2*
by 12 hour format
at the bottom



Displaying *Digital 3*
by 24 hour format
at the top



Displaying *Digital 4*
by 24 hour format
at the center



Displaying *Digital 5*
by 24 hour format at
the bottom

1 (MENU) 8 6 1 4 ▶ Set each item ▶ (□)

Style : Sets whether to display the clock.

- When *ON* is set, select the design.

Time format : Specifies 24 hour format or 12 hour format to display the clock.

Clock layout : Sets the position to display the clock.

- When *Digital 5* is set, the clock is displayed at the top/center/bottom of the screen of the FOMA terminal turned sideways.

Day : Specifies whether to display a day of the week in Japanese or English.

- When *Terminal settings* is set, the display follows the setting for Select Language.

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, the digital clock (the fixed design) is displayed on the upper part of the display regardless of the setting for *Style* or *Clock layout*:
 - When video/i-motion or Chara-den is displayed on the standby display
 - When the i-appli standby display is displayed
- While All Lock or Omakase Lock is on, the clock is displayed on the upper part of the display regardless of the setting of this function. However, when *Digital 5* is set, the clock is displayed at the upper part of the display of the FOMA terminal turned sideways.
- On the screen other than the standby display, the time is displayed at the upper right of the display. The time display format (24 hour format/12 hour format) follows the setting of this function.

Security Settings

Security code

Security codes	126
Changing the terminal security code	Change Security Code 127
Setting the PIN code	128
Unblocking the PIN lock	129

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Various lock functions	129
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal	All Lock 130
Using Omakase Lock	Omakase Lock 131
Preventing making/receiving calls	Self Mode 132
Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule	PIM Lock 132
Prohibiting keypad dial	Keypad Dial Lock 133
Preventing unauthorized use of functions such as the phonebook or mails	Privacy Mode Setting 134
Preventing key errors	Key Lock 136
Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set	Secret Mode 138

Restricting outgoing/incoming or sending/receiving actions

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers	Reject/Accept Call 138
Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID	Anonymous Caller 139
Delaying the ringer action for calls from the party not registered in the phonebook	Mute Ring Time Setting 140
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook	Reject Unregistered Caller 141

Other “Security settings”

Using Data Security Service	Data Security Service 141
Other “Security settings”	142

Security codes

Some FOMA terminal functions for convenient use require the entry of security codes. There are security codes such as the network security code for use in network services and the password for i-mode in addition to the terminal security code for various terminal functions. Fully use your FOMA terminal by choosing the security code to suit your needs.

- The entered terminal security code, network security code and i-mode password are masked with “*”.

Precautions for security codes

- As for the security code to set, please avoid the number intelligible for others, such as “a birth date”, “a part of phone number”, “an address number or a room number”, “1111” or “1234”. In addition, be sure to keep a separate note of the set security code not to forget.
- Please be careful never to reveal your security code to others. If your security code is known and misused by others, DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for the damages.
- DoCoMo will never ask your security code.
- Please note that, if you forget the security codes, you need to bring a document (such as a driver’s license) for identifying that you are a subscriber, your FOMA terminal and the UIM to a DoCoMo Shop.

For details, contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.

Terminal security code

The default terminal security code is “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice. ☛P127

- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is automatically turned off.

Network security code

Network security code is the arbitrary 4-digit code that is set at subscription to the FOMA service for various procedures for the DoCoMo e-site and usage of network services. You can optionally change the code.

If you have “DoCoMo ID/Password” for “My DoCoMo” which is the total support site for PC, you can perform the change procedure for a new network security code from a PC.

From i-mode, you can change the code by yourself accessing [各種手続き](#) (Procedures) in DoCoMo e-site.

- Please refer to the back of this manual for “My DoCoMo” and “DoCoMo e-site”.

i-mode password

A 4-digit “i-mode password” is required to store/delete sites in My Menu or apply to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay services (in addition, there may be passwords required by individual information service providers).

The default i-mode password is “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice.

When changing from i-mode, select *iMenu* → *English iMenu* → *Options* → *Change i-mode Password*.

PIN1 code/PIN2 code

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes can be set for the UIM. Both codes are set to “0000” at the subscription and can be changed to a code of your own choice. ➡P128

The PIN1 code is the 4 to 8-digit security code entered to confirm the user every time the UIM is inserted to the FOMA terminal or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on to protect your FOMA terminal from unauthorized use by the third party. Entering the PIN1 code enables making or receiving calls and the FOMA terminal operations.

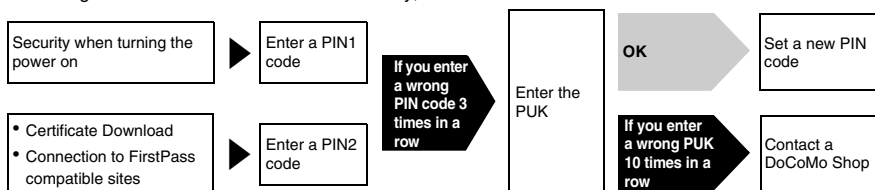
The PIN2 code is the 4 to 8-digit security code required when resetting the total calls cost, or using a user certificate or requesting the issue of it.

- The settings of the PIN1/PIN2 codes and PIN1 Code ON/OFF are recorded in the UIM. When using the current UIM in the FOMA terminal you newly purchased, the PIN1/PIN2 codes that you set previously can be used likewise.

PUK (PIN Unlocking Key)

The PUK is an 8-digit number for canceling the state where the PIN1 code or PIN2 code is locked. You cannot change it.

- If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, the UIM is locked.



Changing the terminal security code

Change Security Code

- Enter the 4 to 8-digit number for the terminal security code.

Default 0000

1 ➡ Enter the current terminal security code

2 New security code field ➡ Enter a new terminal security code

Change security code
New security code
New security code-check

3 New security code-check field ➡ Enter the same terminal security code as entered in Step 2 ➡

Setting the PIN code

- Enter the 4 to 8-digit number for the PIN1/PIN2 code.

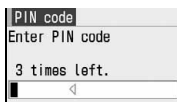
Setting to require entry of the PIN1 code when turning the power on

PIN1 Code ON/OFF

Time of subscription OFF

1        or 

2 Enter the PIN1 code



- The PIN1 code is set to “0000” at the time of subscription.
- If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Cancel the PIN1 code. To cancel the lock, see “Unlocking the PIN lock”. ➤P129
- The PIN1 code entry screen appears only when you change the current setting.

When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to ON

When the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on, the PIN1 code entry screen appears. After entering the correct PIN1 code, the standby display appears.

- The operations of the FOMA terminal are unavailable unless a correct PIN1 code is entered.
- If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Unlock the PIN1 code. To cancel the lock, see “Unlocking the PIN lock”. ➤P129

Changing the PIN1/PIN2 code

Change PIN1/PIN2 Code

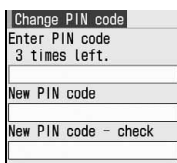
- To change the PIN1 code, set PIN1 Code ON/OFF to ON.

Time of subscription PIN code, PIN2 code: 0000

Example Changing the PIN1 code

1     
■ Changing the PIN2 code:     

2 Enter the terminal security code ➤ Enter the current PIN1 code



3 New PIN code field ➤ Enter a new PIN1 code

4 New PIN code - check field ➤ Enter the same PIN1 code as entered in Step 3 ➤

- If the current PIN1 code is entered incorrectly 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Unlock the PIN1 code. To cancel the lock, see “Unlocking the PIN lock”. ➤P129

- Even if a wrong PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively and the PIN2 code is locked, making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail is available, but if a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively and the PIN1 code is locked, those operations become unavailable.

Unblocking the PIN lock

If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN code entry screen, the PIN code is locked. In that case, cancel the lock and set a new PIN code.

- Please be notified that, if you forget the PUK or the PIN codes are locked completely, you need to bring the FOMA terminal, the UIM in use, and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

Example Unblocking the PIN1 code's lock

1  **on the confirmation screen after the PIN code is locked**

2 **Enter the 8-digit PUK**

PUK
Enter PUK 10 times left.
New PIN code
New PIN code - check

3 **New PIN code field** ▶ **Enter a new PIN1 code**

4 **New PIN code - check field** ▶ **Enter the same PIN1 code as entered in Step 3** ▶ 

The PIN lock is canceled and a new PIN1 code is set.

Various lock functions

A variety of lock functions are available to prevent unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others or to keep your private information and the phonebook entries confidential. You can select the function to suit your needs.

- You can set multiple lock functions at the same time.
- The settings of lock functions other than Key Lock and Secret Mode are retained even if the power is turned off.
- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) even when the lock functions other than Omakase Lock and Key Lock are set.

Lock function	Description	Page
All Lock	Disables the operations other than turning the power on/off and receiving a voice call to prevent unauthorized use by others.	P130
Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)	Prevents unauthorized use by others in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen.	P131
Self Mode	Disables using all the functions that require communications such as making/receiving calls, communication in i-mode, sending/receiving mail and the infrared communication/iC communication.	P132

Lock function	Description	Page
PIM Lock	Disables using the private information functions such as Phonebook, Own Number and Scheduler and prevents the display of and tampering with private information.	P132
Keypad Dial Lock	Disables pressing dial keys to make calls.	P133
Privacy Mode Setting	Disables displaying the phonebook, mail, My Picture, etc. and prevents unauthorized viewing by others.	P134
Key Lock	Disables the key operations to prevent key errors.	P136
Secret Mode	When you set Secret Attribute for the phonebook or schedule data, the data is displayed only when the terminal security code is entered and Secret Mode is set.	P138
IC Card Lock	Disables the IC card function.	P252
IC Lock (power-off)	Disables the IC card function when turning off your FOMA terminal.	P254

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal

All Lock

To make emergency calls (110,119 or 118) when All Lock is on, enter the emergency call number on the standby display and press . At this time, the emergency call number is displayed as “ * ” in the entry field of the terminal security code.

- Even when All Lock is set, IC Card Lock is not set. To set both IC Card Lock and All Lock, set All Lock after setting IC Card Lock.
Setting IC Card Lock P252
- Even if All Lock is set, the UIM and the microSD memory card are not locked.

Default not set

1 ➡ Enter the terminal security code

All locked. is displayed.

■ **Canceling: Enter the terminal security code on the standby display**

When All Lock is on

- Only the following functions are available:
 - Canceling All Lock
 - Receiving a call*1
 - Obtaining ToruCa from the reader/writer
 - Turning the power on/off and Auto Power ON/OFF
 - Emergency calls
 - Receiving i-mode Mail, Message R/F and SMS*2
- *1 The name and image of the party registered in the phonebook are not displayed, but only the phone number is displayed. In addition, the incoming image and the ring alert for incoming calls return to the default state. Chaku-moji can be received, but it is not displayed on the incoming screen. If All Lock is canceled, Chaku-moji is displayed in the received call history.
- *2 The receiving screen and the reception result screen are not displayed. In addition, the reception operation such as sounding ring alert is not performed and reception is not informed.
- When All Lock is on, the default image appears even if the standby display is set. Besides, Machi-chara is not displayed.
- When All Lock is on, the alarm clock or schedule does not operate even when the specified date and time arrives.
- When the videophone call is received during All Lock, it is rejected and the caller hears busy signals, but unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in the received call history.
- When All Lock is on, the Enter key does not flash even if Indicator Light is set to ON and there is a newly-arrived information.

- When All Lock is on, the i-Channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.
- When All Lock is on, using Data Security Service does not allow you to save/update/restore the data from the FOMA terminal.

INFORMATION

- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively when canceling All Lock, the power is automatically turned off.

Using Omakase Lock

Omakase Lock

This is a service that you can lock your FOMA terminal using remote control by informing DoCoMo or by operating from My DoCoMo in case it is lost or stolen. Your important private information and Osaifu-Keitai are protected. The lock can be canceled by phone call from you.

- Omakase Lock is a service to lock your FOMA terminal in which the UIM you have subscribed to is inserted.
- Omakase Lock is a pay service. Application is free if made at the same time as application for service suspension or during service suspension.

Setting/canceling Omakase Lock

 **0120-524-360 Office hours: for 24 hours**

- Omakase Lock can be set/canceled on the My DoCoMo website from a PC.

- For details of usage/charge of Omakase Lock, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Service]" or contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

When Omakase Lock is set

Omakase Lock active. is displayed and Omakase Lock is set.

- While Omakase Lock is on, all the key operations are disabled except for receiving voice/videophone calls and turning the power on/off. Using functions including the IC card function are disabled.
- A voice/videophone call can be received, but the name or image of the other party registered in the phonebook is not displayed and only the phone number appears. In addition, the incoming image and ring alert for incoming calls return to the default setting and the substitute image for a videophone call is set to **Default image** (camera-off image). Canceling Omakase Lock returns to the former status.
- When Omakase Lock is on, Chaku-moji can be received, but it is not displayed on the incoming screen. When Omakase Lock is canceled, it is displayed in the received call history.
- The mail received during Omakase Lock is stored in the Mail Center.
- The operation of turning the power on/off is available, but the lock setting is not canceled, even though the power is turned off.
- Note that the UIM and microSD memory card are not locked.

INFORMATION

- Even if other functions are activated, those functions are ended and Omakase Lock is set. When there is data during editing, the function may be ended without saving the data.
- Even if other lock functions are used, Omakase Lock can be set.
- When your FOMA terminal is outside the service area, turned off or during Self Mode, the lock is not set.
- Omakase Lock is not set when you are subscribing to Dual Network Service and using the mova service.
- Omakase Lock is a service which locks the FOMA terminal by the offer of the FOMA card subscriber. The lock is set when an offer is made by the subscriber even if the subscriber is not the user of the FOMA terminal.
- Canceling the lock is available only when the UIM of the same phone number as the time of setting the lock is inserted. When the lock cannot be canceled, contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Preventing making/receiving calls

Self Mode

Disable all the functions that require communications such as making or receiving calls, communication in i-mode or sending/receiving mails. Also, infrared communication/iC communication, infrared remote control, packet communication/64K data communication with PC connected and obtaining ToruCa from the reader/writer are disabled.

Default OFF

1 (for over a second) ▶ Yes

Self Mode is set and  is indicated on the standby display.

- To cancel, repeat the same procedure.
- When you use shortcut operations:  or  ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- Note that if emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) are dialed in Self Mode, Self Mode is canceled.
- If you receive a call when Self Mode is on, a guidance is played for the caller that radio waves are hard to reach or the power of your terminal is turned off. You can use Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.
- i-mode Mail or Message R/F sent during Self Mode are stored at the i-mode Center and SMS are stored at the SMS Center. To receive messages, cancel Self Mode and perform Check i-mode Message or Check SMS.

Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule

PIM Lock

PIM Lock prevents the display of and tampering with private information.

- This function cannot be set when Reject Unregistered Caller is set to *ON*.

Default OFF

1 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ or

When PIM Lock is set,  is indicated on the standby display.

When PIM Lock is on

- When the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set for the standby display or the ring alert, the default setting is applied while PIM Lock is on (In case *Normal* is set to *Kisekai Tool* in Menu Setting, *Tile display* is applied). The setting you made is restored when PIM Lock is canceled. However, when data saved in the *Preinstalled* folder is set, the set standby display or ring alert is used even if PIM Lock is on.
- The following operations (the whole operation or part of the setting or function) become unavailable. However, the UIM and the microSD memory card are not locked.

• Mail*1/Chat Mail*1/SMS*1/Message R/F*1	• Check i-mode Message	• i-mode/Full Browser
• i-Channel*2	• i-appli	• Phonebook*3
• Answer Machine*4/Voice Memo (Video Memo)	• Data Box (<i>My Picture</i> , <i>Melody</i> , etc.)	
• Data transfer via infrared communication/iC communication		
• Bar Code Reader/Camera/Sound Recorder/Music Player		
• ToruCa	• IC card list	• microSD
• Data Security Service	• Scheduler	• Notepad
• Call Ring Alert, Mail/Msg Ring Alert/Alarm sound/Slide Sound		• Alarm Clock
• Standby Display Setting	• i-Channel Ticker	• Anonymous Caller
• Mail Image	• Call Image(except for Contact Image)	
• Virus Scan Function	• Videophone Image Setting*5	• Machi-chara Setting*6
	• Outgoing Call/Videophone Dialing	

- Call Alert/Videophone Alert
- Headset Key Control (Calling by the headset switch)
- Reset
- Number Setting/Incoming settings for Multi Number
- Speed Menu
- Reject/Accept Call
- Software Update
- Tone/Vibration Message Notification*7
- Own Number
- 1Seg
- Call Cost Limit
- Chaku-moji*8
- Delete All Data
- Menu Setting

*1 Messages can be received automatically, but the receiving screen and the reception result screen are not displayed. In addition, the operation of receiving such as sounding the ring alert is not executed and the reception is not notified. The mail cannot be composed by using Sent/Received Msg. Log.

*2 The ticker is not also displayed on the standby display.

*3 Only the phone number and the mail address are displayed on the screen for incoming/outgoing calls instead of the name and image of the caller registered in the phonebook.

*4  and an icon for a recorded message which has not been played are not indicated on the standby display even when Answer Machine is set.

*5 **Default image** (camera-off image) appears as the substitute image, the response hold image or the on-hold image.

*6 Machi-chara is not displayed.

*7 The notification such as by alert tone is not made even when the alert tone is set to sound.

*8 Can be received, but it is not displayed on the incoming screen. When PIM Lock is canceled, it is displayed in the received call list.

Prohibiting keypad dial

Keypad Dial Lock

Disable making a call by dialing a phone number (Keypad dial).

- You can make a call using the phonebook.

Default OFF

1      ► **Enter the terminal security code** ►  or 

When Keypad Dial Lock is set,  is indicated on the standby display.

Unavailable operations when Keypad Dial Lock is on

- Dialing from the received call history or redial data*1
- Editing, adding and deleting the phonebook data, and Group Setting
- Editing and resetting Own Number data
- Transferring the phonebook data or Own Number to/from the external devices
- Sending mails, chat mails or SMS (including sending from the sent/received message log)*2
- Reading mail template from the mail composition screen
- Composing mail on the template list/view screen*3
- Using network services by the dial key operation
- 64K data communication with PC connected

*1 You can make calls to the party registered in the phonebook from redial data.

*2 Mail can be sent to the party registered in the phonebook.

*3 Composing mail is available from the template if the mail address entered in the address field of the template is registered in the phonebook.

Setting the Privacy Mode operation

Set whether to enter the terminal security code when using the phonebook, mail or My Picture while Privacy Mode is on. Also, you can set Privacy Mode to manually start or to automatically start when no operation has taken place in a certain period of time.

- To enable Privacy Mode Setting, you need to start Privacy Mode.

Default Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My Picture, i-motion, Schedule, i-appli: Show all Auto start: OFF

1    

2 Enter the terminal security code ► Set each item ► ►

- In case *Authorized access* is set, when using the following functions in Privacy Mode, it is required to enter the terminal security code.

Phonebook & Logs :

- Sets for using the phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages or voice memos.
- Displaying the setting of Sort Criteria also requires entry of the terminal security code.

Mail : Sets for using mails or Sent/Received Msg. Log.

- Searching mail from the phonebook or schedule, displaying the setting for Sort Criteria, activating Chat Mail, and downloading, upgrading or deleting Message i-appli also require entry of the terminal security code.
- If *Hide secret fldrs* is set, entry of the terminal security code is required to display the setting for Sort Criteria or activate Chat Mail.
- Setting *Hide secret fldrs* hides the folders with the privacy set to *ON*. In addition, if you receive a mail from the party set to be sorted to the folder, the reception result screen is not displayed and the reception operation such as sounding of ring alert is not performed. The reception result is not also displayed in the area for new information of the custom standby display and on the sent/received message log.

My Picture : Sets for using My Picture.

i-motion : Sets for using i-motion.

Schedule : Sets for using Scheduler.

i-appli : Sets for using i-appli.

- When you select the mail folder for Message i-appli or download i-appli, entry of the terminal security code is also required.

Auto start : Sets the time period until Privacy Mode is started automatically, if no operation is performed while displaying the standby display.

INFORMATION

- If all items except *Auto start* are set to *Show all*, Privacy Mode is not activated. In addition, when Privacy Mode has been activated, it is canceled automatically.

Starting Privacy Mode

1 (for over a second)

- When *Auto start* is set to other than *OFF* in Privacy Mode Setting, if no operation has taken place in a certain period of time while displaying the standby display, Privacy Mode starts automatically.

■ Canceling:  (for over a second) ► Enter the terminal security code

Temporary release during Privacy Mode

In the following cases, Privacy Mode is released temporarily and all data set not to be displayed appear. Temporary release continues until the standby display is returned.

- In Privacy Mode (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), when you hold down **[SUP]** for over a second on the folder list screen of received/sent/unsent mail, the mail list screen, the destination folder selection screen, the list screen of the received/sent message log or the deleting screen for selected items, and enter the terminal security code
- In Privacy Mode (with *My Picture* set to *Authorized access*), when you hold down **[SUP]** for over a second on the pictogram D list screen when entering the message text or editing signature and enter the terminal security code
- In case the terminal security code is entered when you use functions set to *Authorized access* in Privacy Mode

INFORMATION

- When Privacy Mode is on, some restrictions apply in case *Authorized access* is set for the following items:

Item	Restriction
<i>Phonebook & Logs</i>	• The name and image of the other party registered in the phonebook are not displayed on the screen for incoming/outgoing calls/emails, and only the phone number or mail address is displayed. • The ring alert, vibrator or the videophone substitute image set in the phonebook data does not operate. They operate according to the settings for the FOMA terminal. • The lists of missed calls and recorded messages are not displayed in the area for new information of the custom standby display. • The person cannot be selected in the select menu. • Even if the phonebook No. of Headset Key Control is set, calling by the headset switch cannot be made.
<i>Mail</i>	The list of unread messages is not displayed in the area for new information of the custom standby display.
<i>My Picture/i-motion</i>	[General informaion] • When the data other than the data registered by default is set for the ring alert or image in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the setting is disabled. • When an image or video/i-motion is set or Random Display Image is set on the standby display, the images in <i>My Picture</i> or video/i-motion in <i>i-motion</i> are displayed even if Privacy Mode is on. [My Picture] • When <i>Image</i> of Scheduler is set to <i>Yes</i> and the data other than the data registered by default is set, the setting is disabled. • In still image shooting or video recording, shooting using a frame cannot be performed. • Even if you display the list of pictogram D when entering the message text or editing the signature, the data other than the data registered by default is not displayed (except for being displayed from the decoration selection screen for mail). • Even if entries in the FOMA terminal phonebook are copied/backed up to the microSD memory card, the still images set in the FOMA terminal phonebook are not copied or backed up. [i-motion] • When the data other than the <i>Preinstalled</i> folder data is set for the alarm clock sound or schedule sound, the setting is disabled. • Editing tickers directly after recording video cannot be performed.
<i>Schedule</i>	• Even if the set date and time arrive, the schedule alarm does not sound. • The area for schedule of the custom standby display is not displayed. • The day set as day-off in Day Off Setting of schedule in the calendar of the custom standby display is not displayed in red and reset to the default display. In addition, the dot indicating that the schedule is registered is not displayed.

- If you execute Delete All Data or delete all the data while Privacy Mode is on, the data which is not displayed is also deleted.
- Depending on the setting of Privacy Mode, if you use mail or schedule (including scheduling 1Seg viewing) from i-appi in Privacy Mode or save the data to *My Picture*, a message may appear indicating that the specified function cannot be performed.

- If you try to perform the settings which use the data set as *Authorized access* and enter the terminal security code in Privacy Mode, a message appear indicating that the items set not to be displayed in Privacy Mode Setting are reflected when Privacy Mode is canceled depending on the setting.

Preventing key errors

Key Lock

- Disable the key operations and prevent wrong operations while you carry the terminal around by putting it into a bag, etc.
- Key Lock can be set/canceled even when the screen other than the standby display is displayed. However, the setting is unavailable until the standby display appears after turning on the power.

Default

not set

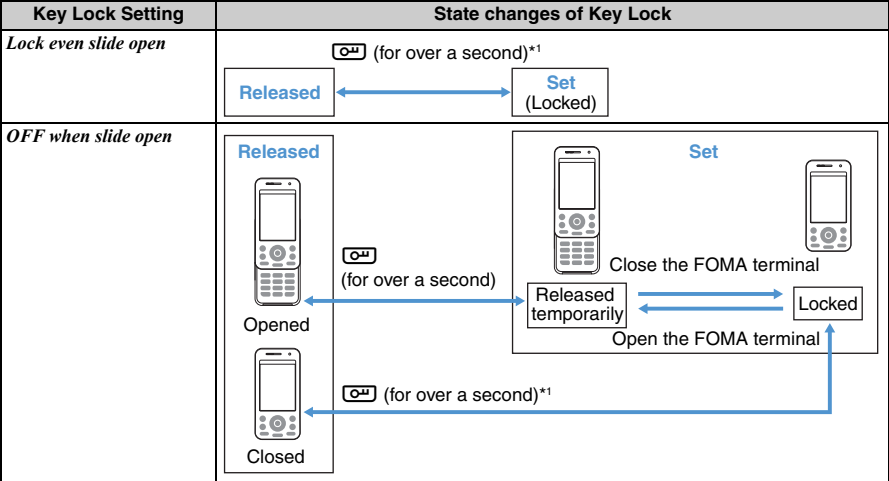
1

(for over a second)

- Key Lock is set.
- To cancel, repeat the same procedure. Even when the FOMA terminal is closed, you can cancel the setting.

■

State changes of Key Lock



*1 When the time set by Key Lock Timer has passed while displaying the standby display, Key Lock is set.

- When Key Lock is set, the standby display disappears. However, the screen is still displayed and is indicated on the upper part of the display in the following cases:
 - When the shooting/recording screen of the camera is displayed or during shooting
 - During 1Seg viewing
 - When *Display light time* of Display Light Setting is set as follows:
 - When *Normal use* is set to *Always*
 - When executing functions for which *Always on* is set
 - When charging the battery in case *AC adapter connected* is set to *Always on*
- When Key Lock is released temporarily, (in gray) is indicated on the upper part of the display.
- During a call, Key Lock is set in the state of temporary release. When a call is ended, Key Lock is set.
- When the display disappears while Key Lock is on, pressing , opening the FOMA terminal or receiving calls lights the display. or (in gray) is indicated on the upper part of the display.

INFORMATION

- When the power is turned off by Auto Power OFF while Key Lock is on or is released temporarily, Key Lock is canceled. It is also the same as when the power is manually turned off during temporary release.
- Even while Key Lock is on, the following key operations can be performed. And, if an incoming call is answered or the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine, Key Lock is released temporarily and the key operations can be performed. When the call is ended, Key Lock is set again.
 - Canceling Key Lock
 - When there is a voice call, receiving the call by  or opening the FOMA terminal (only when Open Answer is set to ON), putting the call on hold by , handling the call by Answer Machine by holding down  for over a second and stopping the ring alert by 
 - When there is a videophone call, receiving the call by  or , putting the call on hold by , handling the call by Answer Machine by holding down  for over a second and stopping the ring alert by 
 - Stopping the alarm sound, etc.
 - Holding down a switch of the equipment such as the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) for over a second to make a voice call or receive a voice/videophone call.

Setting Key Lock automatically

Key Lock Timer

Key Lock can be set to be active automatically when the preset time (10 seconds to 5 minutes) has elapsed on the standby display.

- In case Key Lock Setting is set to **OFF when slide open**, the setting is valid only when the FOMA terminal is closed.

Default OFF

1      

2 **Key lock timer field** ▶ 

- To cancel: **Key lock timer field** ▶  ▶ Go to Step 4

3 **Timer field** ▶  - 

4 

Setting the operation of Key Lock when opening the FOMA terminal

Key Lock Setting

Set whether to release Key Lock temporarily when opening the FOMA terminal.

Default OFF when slide open

1       ▶  or 

INFORMATION

- When **OFF when slide open** is set, if you change the setting to **Lock even slide open** while releasing Key Lock temporarily, Key Lock is set. Closing the FOMA terminal or pressing any key except  turns off the display.

If Secret Mode is set, the phonebook data or the schedule data with Secret Attribute set can be displayed. When you set/cancel Secret Attribute, you need to set Secret Mode on.

Default not set

1 ► Enter the terminal security code

Secret Mode is set and  is indicated on the upper part of the display.

■ Canceling: on the standby display

- Also, press     on the standby display to cancel it.

INFORMATION

- If an animation, created animation or Flash movie is set on the standby display while Secret Mode is on, the first frame is displayed. If you press , Secret Mode is canceled and the animation, created animation or Flash movie is played.
- When a call/mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set, the ring alert, the incoming vibrator and the incoming lighting set in the phonebook data are used only when Secret Mode is on.

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers

Reject/Accept Call

Reject/Accept Call is set for each phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook, and the setting is enabled by Reject/Accept Call. However, Reject Call and Accept Call cannot be enabled at the same time.

- Combination with Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous Caller is recommended when used.
- The default settings are as follows:

Accept Call/Reject Call for each phone number	No settings
Reject/Accept Call	Cancel settings

Accepting only the incoming calls from the specified phone numbers

1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight a party ►

2 Enter the terminal security code ► Select a phone number

3

Accept Call is set for the phone number.  is indicated on the upper part of the details screen of the phonebook data.

- To cancel: 
- To set to multiple phone numbers, repeat Step 1 to 3.

4 on the standby display ► Enter the terminal security code

5

The setting of Accept Call for each phone number is enabled and only incoming calls from all the phone numbers with Accept Call set are accepted.

- To cancel: 

Rejecting the incoming calls from the specified phone numbers

Even if there is an incoming call from the set phone number, the call is disconnected without activating the ring alert and the caller hears busy signals.

1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight a party ►    

2 Enter the terminal security code ► Select a phone number

3 

Reject Call is set for the phone number.  is indicated on the upper part of the details screen of the phonebook data.

- To cancel: 
- To set to multiple phone numbers, repeat Step 1 to 3.

4      on the standby display ► Enter the terminal security code

5 

The setting of Reject Call for each phone number is enabled and all the incoming calls from the phone numbers with Reject Call set are rejected.

- To cancel: 

INFORMATION

- Reject/Accept Call cannot be set for the phone numbers registered in the UIM phonebook.
- This function is activated only when the other party notifies the caller ID. If a call with no caller ID is received from a party that you set Reject Call to, the FOMA terminal operates according to Anonymous Caller regardless of the setting for Reject/Accept Call.
- The rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- If the ringing time is set to 0 seconds for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the call is not recorded in the received call history.
- If the phone number with Reject/Accept Call set is changed or deleted, the setting is canceled. In that case, set Reject/Accept Call for the phone number changed or registered again.
- In case there is no phonebook data with *Accept call* set, when selecting *Accept call* of Reject/Accept Call, a message appears indicating that all the calls are rejected. When selecting *Yes*, all the calls are set to be rejected.
- i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.

Menu 81113 / Menu 82326

Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID

Anonymous Caller

The operation for an incoming voice call with no caller ID can be set for each reason for no caller ID.

- For the ring alert and incoming image in case there is an incoming voice call without caller ID, this function's setting is given priority over the setting of Call Alert.
 - When there is an incoming videophone call without caller ID, it operates as set in Videophone Alert.
- However, when the incoming operation of this setting is set to *Call Rejection*, incoming calls are rejected.

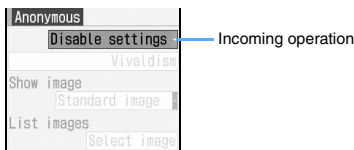
Default Disable settings (all)

1     ► Enter the terminal security code

2  - 

- Repeat Step 2 to 3 for every reason for no caller ID.
- The reason for no caller ID ► P59

3 Set each item



Incoming operation :

Sets the operation for an incoming call with no caller ID.

- When **Disable settings** is set, the ring alert set in Call Alert sounds.
- Setting **Call Rejection** rejects an incoming call.
- Setting **Ring alert off** makes the ring alert to be silent.
- When selecting any of **Melody**, **Movie ringtone** or **Music**, set the ring alert.
Setting music data 
- When **Disable settings** or **Call Rejection** is set, **Show image** cannot be set. When a video/i-motion with sound and image is set for **Movie ringtone**, **Show image** is set to **Sync ring alert**.

Show image : Sets an image displayed for an incoming call with no caller ID.

- When **Standard image** is selected, the default image is set.
- When **Select image** or **i-motion** is selected, set an image.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting 

INFORMATION

- When **Call Rejection** has been set, the rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- **Standard image** may be set for **Show image** when the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as singer's vocals) is set for **Movie ringtone** of the incoming operation or when the music data is set for **Music**. Note that the image can be changed to another image (except for Flash movie) by selecting **Select image** in the **Show image** field.
- When Reject Unregistered Caller is set and a call with no caller ID is received, the setting of Reject Unregistered Caller takes precedence over this function.

Delaying the ringer action for calls from the party not registered in the phonebook

Mute Ring Time Setting

- The function is effective to nuisance calls such as "One-Ring Call".
- This function cannot be set when Reject Unregistered Caller is set to **ON**.

Default OFF

1 ➔ Set each item ➔

Delayed ring alert : Specifies whether to enable this setting.

Delay time (sec) : Sets the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing (between 1 to 99 seconds).

Missed call : Sets whether to display a missed call which ends in less than the time set in **Delay time** in the received call history.

When Mute Ring Time Setting is on

When there is an incoming call from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook, the call will be notified only on the display for the set time period. After the set time has elapsed, normal ringer action will start.

- Even before the set time passes, answering an incoming call or replying by Answer Machine can be performed.
- This function also operates in the following cases:
 - When a call with no caller ID is received even if the party is registered in the phonebook, or while PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (with **Authorized access** set for **Phonebook & Logs**).

- While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party registered in the phonebook entry with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

- The following functions and services are operated regardless of this function's settings:
 - Public mode (Driving mode) • Answer Machine • Voice Mail Service • Call Forwarding Service
- If you receive a call from the phone number set to be rejected in Anonymous Caller, Anonymous Caller is prioritized over this function.
- In case **Delay time** is set to the same number of seconds as the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring alert may sound.

Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook Reject Unregistered Caller

- Combination with Caller ID Request Service is recommended to use.
- While PIM Lock is on or when **Delayed ring alert** in Mute Ring Time Setting is set to **ON**, this function cannot be set.

Default OFF

1 (MENU) 8 4 5 2 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ 1 or 2

When Reject Unregistered Caller is on

When there is an incoming call from the party who is not registered in the phonebook, the call is disconnected without activating the ring alert and the caller hears busy signals.

- The rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- The call is also rejected in the following cases:
 - When a call with no caller ID is received even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
 - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party registered in the phonebook entry with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

- When there is an incoming call with no caller ID, this function's setting is prioritized over Anonymous Caller.
- i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.

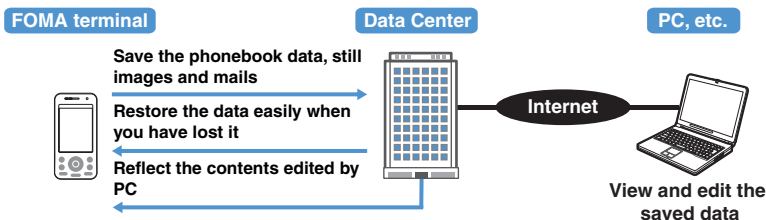
Using Data Security Service

Data Security Service

Data Security Service is a service which allows you to save the phonebook data, still images and mails in your FOMA terminal (hereinafter called the saved data) to the Data Center of DoCoMo.

Even if your FOMA terminal is lost or exposed to water and the saved data is cleared, you can restore the phonebook data, etc. saved in the Data Center to a new FOMA terminal by operating in i-mode. In addition, you can edit easily the saved data in the Center from a PC by operating on the My DoCoMo web page and reflect the edited data to your FOMA terminal.

- For details of usage of Data Security Service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".



- Data Security Service is a pay service for which subscription is required (it requires i-mode subscription).
- To save or restore the data, refer to the following pages:
 - Phonebook data ➡ P91, P93
 - Still images ➡ P284
 - Mails ➡ P214

Other “Security settings”

You can also use the following functions and services related to Security settings besides having introduced in this chapter.

Purpose	Names of function and service	Page
To enable safe and reliable data communications by using the electronic authentication service (FirstPass-compatible sites only)	FirstPass	P163 P180
To receive only necessary mails out of large-volume messages received	Receive Option Setting	P218
To register/check the safety of relatives by using i-mode when a disaster occurs	“i-mode Disaster Message Board” service	See “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”
To change/check the mail address	Change/Confirm Mail Address	
To reject mails containing URLs	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL)	
To receive/reject only mails sent from the specified domains	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
To receive/reject mails only between i-mode terminals		
To receive/reject only mails from the specified addresses		
To reject SMS	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
To reject i-mode mails after 200th mail sent from an i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) in a day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject unsolicited AD mails	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the received mail size	Limit Mail Size	
To check the setting status of the mail function	Confirm Settings	
To stop the mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To prevent use of the IC card function	IC Card Lock	P252
To reject “Nuisance calls” including malicious calls and repeated misdialled calls	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P374
To reject calls with no caller ID	Caller ID Request	P375
To update the FOMA terminal software by using packet communication	Software Update	P423
To protect the FOMA terminal from viruses by deleting data that may cause problems or stopping the starting of applications	Virus Scan Function	P427

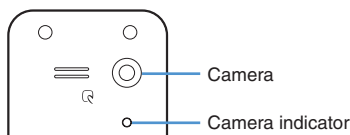
Camera

Before using the camera.....	144
Shooting still images.....	Still Camera 147
Recording videos.....	Movie Camera 150
Setting the still image/video size or the saving method	Still Image Setting/Recording Setting 151
Shooting by various methods	153
Changing the settings during shooting.....	154
Sending still images shot during voice calls	One-shot Message 158
Using Bar Code Reader.....	Bar Code Reader 158

Before using the camera

You can shoot still images and videos with the FOMA terminal's camera. Still images and videos can be displayed/played on the FOMA terminal or saved to the microSD memory card. Also they can be sent via i-mode Mail as attachments or via infrared/iC communication.

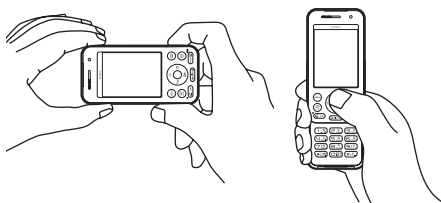
The camera is on the back of the FOMA terminal.



Precautions for using the camera

To shoot clean images

Shooting can be performed no matter if the FOMA terminal is closed or opened. Hold your FOMA terminal firmly to shoot, as shown in the illustration below.



- When shooting, be careful not to move the FOMA terminal.
- Do not cover the lens with fingers or strap.
- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before shooting.
- When shooting, keep a distance of at least 50 cm from the object. Switch to the macro mode when you want to shoot the object from a closer position. ➡P153
- Use of auto timer is effective to avoid camera shake because the shutter is automatically released.
- To shoot a video, use the shake reduction function. ➡P155

About the camera

- Though the camera is manufactured with extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed lighter or darker than you expect. Noises such as dots and lines may increase especially when you shoot in a place with very low light intensity, but note that such noises are not a malfunction.

- When the lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time, the inside color filter will become discolored and images may be correspondingly discolored as well.
- When you attempt to shoot a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp or when the battery level is low, the image may become dark or degraded.
- Depending on the characteristics of the lens, displayed images may be distorted.
- Capturing under illumination flickering at high frequencies such as fluorescent lights, mercury vapor lights, or sodium lights may make the screen flicker, but this is not a malfunction. Flickers may be reduced by changing the distance or the angle of shooting the object or by moving to another position. In addition, flickers can be reduced by flicker adjustment. ➡P157
- Images taken with the camera may differ from the actual objects in color and brightness, depending on conditions.

Points of concern when shooting images

- Set the brightness depending on the situation of the shooting. ➡P155
- When the microSD memory card is set as the destination, do not remove the microSD memory card while using the camera. The FOMA terminal may malfunction.
- If the battery power goes out before saving a shot still image or video, it is not saved.
- Because the camera consumes a lot of battery power, do not leave the camera activated long time or do not keep shot images long time without being saved.
- If no action is taken on the shooting screen for about 1 minute, Still Camera/Movie Camera terminates automatically by default. The camera time-out setting can be changed. ➡P151

About copyrights and portrait rights

The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use, such as reproduction, alteration and modification, of photographs or videos and i-mode site or website information obtained by using the FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When you release shot or recorded work on web pages, use care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that shooting or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.



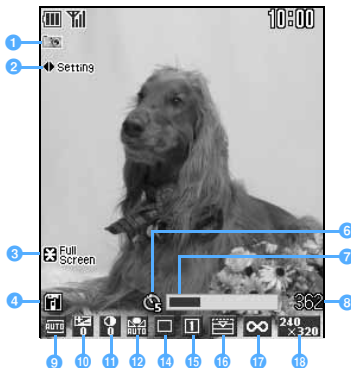
Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Viewing the shooting/recording screen

The shooting/recording screen

On the shooting or recording screen, the guides for operations and the state of camera settings are displayed. For details, see the following.

■ Still image shooting screen



■ Video recording screen



1 Task bar icon

Indicates the state (the still image shooting or video recording).

2 Settings guide

Use to change settings for shooting. P154

3 Screen mode switching guide

Use to switch between the standard and full-screen displays during still image shooting.

- When the full-screen mode is set, the settings guide disappears as well as icons and the guide row at the bottom of the screen.

During video recording, this guide appears only with the image size of QVGA (320 x 240) to allow switching between the vertical and horizontal shootings using .

4 Save to P152

: FOMA terminal : microSD memory card

5 Recording type P152

: Video + Voice : Video only

6 Auto timer

When the auto timer is set, the icon of the auto timer is displayed. P153

7 Indicator

During standby for shooting

Indicates the available storage space of the memory to save during the normal shooting.

Indicates the time remaining until the shutter is released during auto timer count down.

- The microSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no still image or video have been saved.

During video recording/pause

Indicates the rate of the recorded image size to the file size set in size restrictions (or the allowable saving size when *None* is set).

8 Counter

During standby for shooting

During the normal shooting, it indicates the maximum number (estimate) of still images or the maximum recording time (estimate) of videos that can be saved to the FOMA terminal or the microSD memory card in the current setting.

Indicates the time remaining until the shutter is released during auto timer count down. Indicates shot number/total shot number during manual continuous shoot of still images.

During video recording/pause

Indicates the elapsed/remaining time (estimated remaining time before the recording stops).

9 Scene mode/effect P154

10 Brightness P155

11 Color density P155

12 White balance P155

13 Shake reduction P155

14 Frame P155

15 Continuous shoot P149

16 Quality P156

17 Size restrictions P156

18 Size P156

INFORMATION

- Some settings may require extra time to show an image on the shooting screen after you start the camera.
- Some functions cannot be used or some settings cannot be changed when the camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i-appli software.
- The indicator, counter and size restrictions are not displayed when Still Camera is started from i-appli. The size restrictions and storage area usage of the indicator are not displayed when Movie Camera is started from i-appli. Available time for one shooting is indicated on the counter.
- During video recording, when the horizontal shot for 320 x 240 (QVGA) is used, **STANDBY** (recording standby), **REC** (recording) or **PAUSE** (in pause) is indicated. The indicator, settings guide and icons are not displayed on the lower screen.

Shutter and countdown sounds

- The shutter sound and the auto timer's countdown sound are heard even when *silent* is set for the ring alert volume or while Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is on.
- The volume of the shutter or countdown sound cannot be changed.
- You can change the type of the shutter sound in Still Image Setting or Recording Setting.

The camera indicator and lighting of the Enter key

During standby period of the camera, the camera indicator lights. During still image shooting, video recording/pause or countdown by the auto timer, the camera indicator and the Enter key either light or flash depending on the state.

- The setting not to light/flash is unavailable and the lighting pattern and color cannot be changed.

File names and file formats

The shooting date/time is automatically assigned as the file name and displayed name of the shot image or recorded video file, or as the title of the recorded video file.

(Example) In case of 12:34:56 on December 5, 2007
→ 20071205123456

The file format is as follows:

Format of still image files

Item	Contents
File format	JPEG (compatible to Exif format, PRINT Image Matching III)
Extension	JPG

Format of video files

Item	Contents
File format	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: AMR
Extension	3GP

INFORMATION

- The file name and display name can be changed after shooting. ➡P309

Maximum number of saved still images

The number of still images that can be saved in D704i or the microSD memory card varies depending on the settings of image size, quality and size restrictions or the shooting conditions.

- The image size, quality and size restrictions can be set in Still Image Setting.

Maximum number of saved still images (D704i terminal)

The estimated number of still images that can be saved in D704i is as shown below.

Unit: images

Size \ Quality	Economy	Standard	Fine
96 x 72	504	504	504
128 x 96	504	504	504
176 x 144	504	504	476
240 x 320	504	393	238
352 x 288	411	311	196
640 x 480	196	141	83
480 x 640	196	137	82
960 x 1280	76	46	26

Maximum number of saved still images (microSD memory card)

The estimated number of still images that can be saved in the microSD memory card is described below for each of 64 MB card.

Unit: images

Size \ Quality	Economy	Standard	Fine
96 x 72	8,736	7,644	6,794
128 x 96	6,794	6,115	4,704
176 x 144	5,559	4,704	3,218
240 x 320	3,597	2,658	1,609
352 x 288	2,779	2,108	1,329
640 x 480	1,329	955	561
480 x 640	1,329	926	555
960 x 1280	513	316	177

Maximum recording time of videos

The video recording time available varies depending on the size restrictions, image size, quality and recording type settings and the recording conditions.

- The size restrictions, image size, quality and recording type can be set in Recording Setting.

Maximum recording time per video clip (D704i terminal)

The estimated recording time per video clip that can be saved in D704i is as shown below:

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice Lower row: Only video

Size restrictions	Size	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach: (Small)	128 x 96	197 sec.	123 sec.	89 sec.	36 sec.
	176 x 144	152 sec.	78 sec.	52 sec.	20 sec.
	320 x 240	56 sec.	30 sec.	23 sec.	10 sec.
	320 x 240	63 sec.	31 sec.	25 sec.	10 sec.
Msg attach: (Large)	128 x 96	13 min.	502 sec.	364 sec.	150 sec.
	176 x 144	10 min.	318 sec.	213 sec.	80 sec.
	320 x 240	227 sec.	121 sec.	95 sec.	41 sec.
	320 x 240	255 sec.	128 sec.	102 sec.	42 sec.

Total recording time (D704i terminal)

The estimated total recording time of video clips that can be saved in D704i is as shown below:

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice Lower row: Only video

Size restrictions	Size	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach: (Small)	128 x 96	78 min.	49 min.	35 min.	14 min.
	176 x 144	60 min.	31 min.	20 min.	480 sec.
	320 x 240	22 min.	12 min.	552 sec.	240 sec.
	320 x 240	25 min.	12 min.	10 min.	240 sec.
Msg attach: (Large)	128 x 96	78 min.	49 min.	35 min.	14 min.
	176 x 144	60 min.	31 min.	20 min.	471 sec.
	320 x 240	22 min.	11 min.	565 sec.	241 sec.
	320 x 240	25 min.	12 min.	10 min.	253 sec.

Total recording time (microSD memory card)

The estimated total recording time of video clips that can be saved in the microSD memory card is described below for each of 64 MB card.

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice Lower row: Only video

Size restrictions	Size	Quality			
		LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach: (Small)*1	128 x 96	401 min.	250 min.	181 min.	75 min.
	176 x 144	309 min.	158 min.	105 min.	40 min.
	320 x 240	114 min.	61 min.	46 min.	20 min.
	320 x 240	128 min.	63 min.	50 min.	20 min.
Msg attach: (Large)*1	128 x 96	401 min.	251 min.	182 min.	75 min.
	176 x 144	309 min.	159 min.	106 min.	40 min.
	320 x 240	113 min.	60 min.	48 min.	20 min.
	320 x 240	127 min.	64 min.	51 min.	21 min.
None*2	128 x 96	401 min.	251 min.	182 min.	75 min.
	176 x 144	309 min.	159 min.	106 min.	40 min.
	320 x 240	113 min.	60 min.	47 min.	20 min.
	320 x 240	127 min.	63 min.	51 min.	21 min.

*1 The maximum recording time per video clip is the same as shown under "Maximum recording time per video clip (D704i terminal)".

*2 You can also record one video clip for up to the total recording time.

Menu 671

Shooting still images

Still Camera

Shooting still images

1 (for over a second)



Still image shooting screen

Still image shooting is activated.

- To switch between the full-screen display and the standard display:



2 Point the camera at the object and or

The shutter sound is heard and a still image is shot before the image confirmation screen appears.

- There is a small time lag between taking a picture and pressing or . Do not move the FOMA terminal for a short period after pressing or .

3 View and confirm the still image

- To retake another image without saving the shot image:
- To display the still image with the display size of 640 x 480 (H-VGA) or larger at the same size and check it:
 - to scroll. Press to return to the original size.
- For auto-saving without displaying a confirmation screen

4 or

The shot still image is saved in the *Camera* folder of *My Picture*.

- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the image is saved in the *My Picture* folder of the microSD memory card.

■ Checking the saved still image:

Select the still image

- When the memory to save is the microSD memory card, press to select a folder and then select a still image.

Operations available on the confirmation screen

The following operations are available on the confirmation screen of Step 3.

■ Sending mail with images attached:

- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether or not to save the shot still image. Select *Yes* to save the image and the mail composition screen is displayed.
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of the image size and size restrictions. Select *No limit* to save the shot still image at the original size or select *Msg attach:Small* to save it in the file size smaller than 90 Kbytes. Then the mail composition screen appears.
- Depending on the image size, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to the size of 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (Standby).
- If the file size of the still image is smaller than 90 Kbytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste the shot still image into the mail text. Select *Yes* to paste it into the mail text, and select *No* to set to the attached file.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the image is saved to the FOMA terminal.

■ Setting the image for the standby display:

The shot still image is saved and set for the standby display.

- If zooming is available for the shot still image, select *Yes (Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *Yes (Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-appli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen asking whether or not to cancel it is displayed continuously.
- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the standby display.

■ Adding the image to phonebook entries (only when the image size is 96 x 72 (phonebook)):

or

The shot still image is saved and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To update saved entries, select the party to add the image.
- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the image cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

■ Changing the title: Enter the title (up to 31 one-byte or two-byte characters (30 characters for continuous shot images))

■ Adjusting the brightness or color balance:

- For the subsequent steps, follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Adjusting brightness and tone balance"
- When the image size is 640 x 480 (H-VGA) or larger, it cannot be corrected.
- When a frame is set in four-frame shooting, adjustment is disabled.

■ Switching the memory to save between the FOMA terminal/microSD memory card:

- After saving the still images, the setting for the memory to save returns to the setting before switching.

■ Displaying the list of images stored:

or

- When you display the images in the microSD memory card in the list, select the folder.

INFORMATION

- If you shoot a fast moving object, the shot image might slightly differ from the object displayed on the screen when you press or .

- Saving the shot still image may take time depending on the image size, quality or memory to save.
- When there is not enough available storage space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, delete unnecessary images according to the screen or change the settings of image size and quality to lower values.
- Shooting still images during a voice call may interrupt the call.
- If a call arrives before you complete saving the still images you have shot, the shot still images may be discarded.
- Even if you shoot while setting the shooting date/time to **Date** or **Date + Time** in Still Image Setting, the date or the time is not displayed on the image confirmation screen. The date or the time is displayed on the saved still image. In addition, on the still image with the display size of 640 x 480 (H-VGA) or larger, if you press  on the image confirmation screen and display the still image at the same size, the date or the time is displayed.
- You cannot save the still images on the microSD memory card while using the microSD memory card for another function.
- Pressing  on the still image shooting screen switches the screen to the video recording mode.

Shooting continuously

The following types of continuous shooting are available. In either case, you can choose between automatic shooting at about 0.7-second intervals and manual shooting which shoots one image at a time.

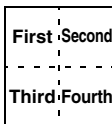
- Automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting

Up to 6 still images can be shot continuously. The shot images are saved in the format of Created animation in **My Picture** and can be displayed continuously like animations. The image sizes which can be shot are 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF), 176 x 144 (QCIF), 240 x 320 (Standby), and 352 x 288 (CIF).

- The number of images to be shot is set in Still Image Setting.
- If you use the function to cancel Created animation in **My Picture**, you can divide the continuous shots into individual still image.
- If the still images shot continuously are saved in the microSD memory card, they are saved as a still image per sheet.

- Automatic four-frame shooting/manual four-frame shooting

Shots 4 still images of the size of 120 x 160 and makes the images arranged to one still image. The image size which can be shot is only 240 x 320 (Standby).



1 (for over a second)

Still image shooting is activated.

2 to highlight the icon for continuous shooting ▶ to highlight the shooting method ▶



Icon of continuous shooting

-  Automatic continuous shooting
-  Manual continuous shooting
-  Automatic four-frame shooting
-  Manual four-frame shooting
-  OFF (Continuous shooting deactivated)

- The cursor does not move to the icon for continuous shooting on the image size in which continuous shooting cannot be performed.

3 Point the camera at the object and or

In the automatic continuous/four-frame shooting, the still images are continuously shot till their count reaches the predefined number, each shooting with the shutter sound for the auto continuous shoot. In the manual continuous/four-frame shooting, the first of the continuous still images is shot with the shutter sound. To shoot the next ones, press  or  for each. The image confirmation screen is displayed after shooting the predefined number.

- To stop manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting on the way, press .
 - In case of manual four-frame shooting, the still images shot by then cannot be saved.
- Automatic continuous shooting and automatic four-frame shooting cannot be interrupted on the way.

4 View and confirm the still images shot continuously

- To retake another shot without saving the shot images: 
- When you have shot 2 or more images by automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting, each time you press , the display switches between one image and thumbnail display. When one image is displayed, press  to show the previous or next still image.

5 or

The still images are saved.

■ Saving only one still image (only for automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting):

① Highlight a still image

- Display the still image to be saved for one image display.

② (for over a second) ▶ Yes

- Unsaved still images are discarded.

■ Saving the selected still images (only for automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting):

① while displaying

thumbnail ▶ Unselect still images that are not to be saved

- Press  to zoom the still image at the cursor position. To return to the thumbnail display, press .

② ▶ Yes

- Unsaved still images are discarded.

INFORMATION

- If a call arrives or the time set for the alarm clock or schedule alarm is reached during manual continuous shooting, shooting terminates at that point. In case of manual four-frame shooting, the still images shot up until then are discarded and cannot be saved.

Recording videos

Movie Camera

- At the time of purchase, the video with sound is set to be shot. It can be changed in Recording Setting.

1



Video recording screen

Video recording is activated.

- To switch between the vertical and horizontal shootings: 
 - This is available only for the image size of 320 x 240 (QVGA).

2 Point the camera at the object and or



The shutter sound is heard and recording is started.

-  appears at the lower part of the screen.
- Press  to pause during shooting.  switches to . Press  or , and the recording restarts.

3 or

The shutter sound is heard and the recording is finished. The image confirmation screen is displayed.

- If the size of video file reaches the limit while recording, recording is automatically stopped.
- Press  during pause to end the recording.

4 View and confirm the video shot

- To retake another video without saving the shot video: 
- To play the video: 
- For auto-saving without displaying a confirmation screen ▶ P152

5 or

The recorded video is saved in the *Camera* folder of *i-motion*.

- When the microSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the image is saved in the *Movie* folder of the microSD memory card.

■ Checking the saved video: ▶ Select a video

- When the memory to save is the microSD memory card, press  to select the folder and then select a video.

Operations available on the confirmation screen

The following operations are available on the confirmation screen of Step 4.

■ Sending mail with images attached: ▶ Yes

The recorded video is saved and the mail composition screen appears.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the video is saved to the FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 1.99 Mbytes, the video cannot be attached.
- When you send a video file to any terminal other than the models*1 shown below, it is recommended to send a file with the size restriction of *Msg attach:Small*, image size of 176 x 144 (QCIF) and quality of HQ (Best quality).
 - *1 903i series, 904i series, 703i series (except P703iμ) and 704i series (except P704iμ)

■ Setting the video for the standby display:

   ▶ Yes

The recorded video is saved and set for the standby display.

- If zooming is available for the shot video, select *Yes (Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *Yes (Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-αppli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen asking whether or not to cancel it is displayed continuously.
- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the standby display.

■ Adding the video to phonebook entries:

[MENU] (2) ▶ (2) or (3) ▶ Yes

The recorded video is saved and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To update saved entries, select the party to add the video.
- Videos can be added to the phonebook entry only when the image size is set to 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF) and the recording type is set to *Video only*.
- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the video cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

■ Changing the title: **[MENU] (3) (1) ▶ Enter the title (up to 31 one-byte or two-byte characters)**

▶ (1)

- The changed title will be valid after the video is saved.

■ Inserting a ticker: **[MENU] (3) (2) ▶ Yes**

The recorded video is saved and the ticker setting screen is displayed. Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Inserting tickers". ➡P288

- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), a ticker cannot be inserted.
- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, a ticker cannot be inserted.

■ Switching the memory to save between the FOMA terminal/microSD memory card: **[MENU] (5)**

- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 1.99 Mbytes, the saving destination cannot be switched.
- After saving the videos, the setting for the memory to save returns to the setting before switching.

■ Displaying the list of saved videos: **[MENU] (6) ▶ (1) or (2)**

- To display the list of videos saved in the microSD memory, select the corresponding folder.

INFORMATION

- If you shoot a quick moving object with Movie Camera, the image may be blurred.

- When you press a key or start charging the battery during recording, operation sound or confirmation sound may be recorded.
- Recording may be stopped before the file size reaches the limit set for the size restrictions, depending on data you record.
- If you set the size restrictions to *None*, data may not be saved when the battery power goes out during recording.
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum allowable number is exceeded, delete unnecessary videos or sounds according to the screen or change settings of the size restrictions.
- When a call arrives, the time set for the alarm clock or schedule alarm is reached or **[]** is pressed during recording, the recording ends at that point. The data recorded up to that point can be saved.
- If the battery is almost exhausted during recording, the low battery message appears and the recording process ends. The data recorded up to that point can be saved.
- If an alarm clock sound, schedule alarm or battery alarm interrupts recording, you may hear the alarm clock sound, schedule alarm or battery alarm at the end of the recorded video/sound.
- You cannot save videos on the microSD memory card while using the microSD memory card for another function.
- Pressing **[F5]** on the video recording screen switches the screen to the still image shooting mode.

Setting the still image/video size or the saving method

Still Image Setting/Recording Setting

Default

- Still image settings
Image size: Standby(240 x 320)
Size restriction: None Quality: Standard
Shooting date/time: None
Continuous shot photos: 6 Auto save: No
Save to: Phone Camera time-out: 1 min.
Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
Set lighting: Always on
- Recording settings
Size restriction: Msg attach:Large
Quality: STD(Standard)
Image size: QVGA(320 x 240)
Recording Type: Video + Voice
Size restrict:SoundREC: Msg attach:Large
Quality:Sound recorder: STD (Standard)
Auto Play: No Auto save: No
Save to: Phone Camera time-out: 1 min.
Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
Set lighting: Always on

Example When changing Still Image Setting

1 **[]** (for over a second) **[MENU] (7)**

■ Changing Recording Setting:

[MENU] (6) (7) (2) ▶ [MENU] (7)

2 Set each item ►

■ Checking the number of still images that can be shot (estimate): on the still image setting screen

The estimated number of still images that can be shot is displayed for each image size and quality.

- The number of images is calculated based on the current size restrictions and the memory to save. For any image size that cannot be set from the current size restrictions, however, assignable size restrictions will be used for the calculation.
- When the image size selection screen is being displayed, the number can also be displayed by pressing .

Still image settings

Image size :

Set the image size for shooting. ➡P156

- You cannot set 960 x 1280 (SXGA) and *Msg attach:Small* (size restriction) at the same time.

Size restriction :

Set the size restrictions for shooting. ➡P156

Quality :

Set the image quality for shooting. ➡P156

Shooting date/time :

Set whether to insert the shooting date and time at the lower right of still images.

- Even when *Date* or *Date + Time* has been set, if the image size is set at 96 x 72 (phonebook), the shooting date/time will not be inserted.

Continuous shot photos :

Set the number of images to be shot continuously (2 to 6 images).

Auto save :

If *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the shot still image is automatically saved. When setting *No*, the image confirmation screen appears after shooting.

Save to :

Select *Phone* or *microSD*.

Camera time-out :

Set a time-out period of inactivity before termination of still image shooting.

Shutter sound :

Select one from the shutter sounds 1 to 5.

Set lighting :

When *Phone settings* is set, the setting conforms to *Normal use of Display light time* of Display Light Setting. ➡P114

Recording settings

Size restriction :

Set the size restrictions for recording. ➡P156

- When *Phone* is set for *Save to*, *None* cannot be set for size restrictions.

Quality :

Set the video quality for recording. ➡P156

Image size :

Set the image size for recording. ➡P156

Recording Type :

Select *Video + Voice* or *Video only* as the recording type for shooting.

Size restrict:SoundREC :

Set the restrictions on file size for the voice recorded with Sound Recorder. ➡P320

- When *Phone* is set for *Save to*, *None* cannot be set for size restrictions.

Quality:Sound recorder :

Set the sound quality of the voice recorded with Sound Recorder. ➡P320

Auto Play :

Set whether to play the video/sound automatically when the image confirmation screen is displayed.

Auto save :

If *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the recorded video/sound is automatically saved. Selecting *No* displays the image confirmation screen after recording.

Save to :

Select *Phone* or *microSD*.

Camera time-out :

Set a time-out period of inactivity before termination of video recording or Sound Recorder.

Shutter sound :

Select one from the shutter sounds 1 to 5.

Set lighting :

When *Phone settings* is set, the setting conforms to *Normal use of Display light time* of Display Light Setting. ➡P114

INFORMATION

- You can also change the recording settings by pressing  in the Sound Recorder screen and selecting *Recording settings*.
 - Images/videos cannot be set when the camera is activated from the phonebook, mail or i-appli. In this case, *Camera time-out* is automatically set to *1 min*.
 - If Recording Setting is set for either video recording or Sound Recorder, both settings are changed.
 - The settings of *Shutter sound* are reflected to the settings of *System sound* of Sound Setting. ➡P102
- The *Set lighting* setting is reflected to the settings of *Display light time* of Display Light Setting. ➡P114

Shooting by various methods

Zooming

The display magnifications which can be changed in each image size are as follows:

■ During still image shooting

Image size	Max. display magnification
96 x 72 (phonebook)	10.0 times (25 scales)
128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	7.4 times (22 scales)
176 x 144 (QCIF)	5.4 times (18 scales)
240 x 320 (Standby)	4.0 times (15 scales)
352 x 288 (CIF)	2.7 times (11 scales)
640 x 480 (H-VGA)	1.4 times (5 scales)
480 x 640 (V-VGA)	2.0 times (8 scales)
960 x 1280 (SXGA)	Zooming not possible

■ During video recording

Image size	Max. display magnification
128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	6.0 times (4 scales)
176 x 144 (QCIF)	4.0 times (3 scales)
320 x 240 (QVGA vertical shoot)	2.0 times (2 scales)
320 x 240 (QVGA horizontal shoot)	4.0 times (3 scales)

1 on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen



During still image shooting

Each time you press, the magnification changes and the slider indication shifts.

- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

Slider

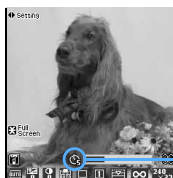
Using auto timer

The shutter is automatically released after the specified number of seconds have elapsed. The number of seconds can be selected from among 2, 5, 10 and 15.

- You cannot use auto timer for manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting.

1 on the still image shooting screen or on the video recording screen

2 -



The auto timer is set and any of the , ,  and  is displayed.

- To cancel the setting:



Icon of auto timer

3 Point the camera at the object or

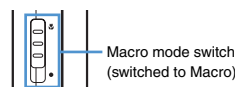
The countdown sound is heard and the auto timer starts countdown. The indicator and counter show an estimate of the remaining time before shooting and the remaining number of seconds. The interval of sounds becomes shorter as the shooting time approaches. After the specified number of seconds have elapsed, the shutter sound is heard and shooting is started.

- To stop the auto timer: 
- Shooting stops if a call arrives, the time set for the alarm clock or schedule alarm arrives, or  is pressed during auto timer countdown.

Shooting nearby object

Macro

To shoot an object from a very short distance with the camera, turn the macro mode switch on the side of the FOMA terminal to  (Macro).



- Slide the switch (and do not stop sliding) until it reaches the end of the  side.
- When shooting, keep a distance of 7 to 10 cm in the macro mode or at least 50 cm in the normal mode.
- At the end of shooting in the macro mode, be sure to turn the macro mode switch back to  (normal mode). If you shoot a distant object without canceling  (Macro), you cannot get a sharp picture.

Changing the settings during shooting

Default

SceneModes: Full auto Brightness: ± 0
 ColorDnsty: ± 0 WhiteBalance: Auto
 ShakeReduce: Auto Frame: not set
 Quality: <Still image> Standard <Video> STD (Standard)
 Size Limit: <Still image> None <Video> Msg
 attach:Large Size: <Still image> 240 x 320 (standby)
 <Video> 176 x 144 (QCIF) Adjust flicker: Auto

1 to highlight the icon on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen



- Flicker adjustment cannot be set by the icon. Setting flicker adjustment  P157

- Icons can be selected also by pressing keypads of **[1]** to **[9]** and **[0]**.

- [1]** : Scene mode/effect
- [2]** : Brightness **[3]** : Color density
- [4]** : White balance
- [5]** : Shake reduction (only for video recording)
- [6]** : Frame
- [7]** : Continuous shooting (only for still image shooting) 
- [8]** : Quality **[9]** : Size restrictions
- [0]** : Image size

2 to highlight an item to set

- Alternatively, you can set a frame by pressing **[6]** repeatedly to choose a frame and pressing .
- To cancel the frame, hold down **[6]** on the shooting screen for over a second.

INFORMATION

- The following settings will be maintained even after you terminates still image shooting or video recording.
 - Brightness • Color density • Shake reduce
 - Quality • Size restrictions • Image size
 - Flicker adjustment

Scene mode/effect

Setting types are available according to color tone and shooting situation.



Full auto :

Standard scene mode/effect. Use this mode normally.



Adjust backlight :

Compensates backlight images by adjusting brightness of the darkened part such as face.



Spot photometry :

Brightness of the whole image is set based on its central part.



Scenery :

Suitable for shooting nature or cityscape vividly. Intensity and sharpness are set rather high.



Night :

Slows the shutter speed for night shooting. Hold the terminal firmly to prevent blurring.



Twilight :

Suitable for shooting the beautiful sunset scenery. With high intensity, images tend to look rather cyan.



Surf&Snow :

Enhances the blue of the sky and sea, and the white of snow.



Sport :

Shutter speed is set to high, allowing you to shoot fast-moving objects with less jiggling.



Pet :

Shutter speed and color intensity are set to high.



Gourmet :

Suitable for shooting cuisines and sweets.



Letter :

Enhances letter outlines.



Whiten :

Skin-color looks brighter and whiter. Recommended for indoor shooting.



Suntan :

Skin-color looks sun-tanned. Recommended for outdoor shooting situation.



Soft touch :

Blurs the outlines to soften the image.



Mono tone (red) :

Shoots in monotone of red gradation.



Mono tone (green) :

Shoots in monotone of green gradation.



Mono tone (blue) :

Shoots in monotone of blue gradation.



Monochrome :

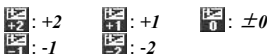
Shoots images like black-and-white photographs.

Sepia :

Shoots in sepia colors.

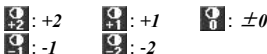
- **Night** cannot be set with the automatic continuous shooting or automatic four-frame shooting.
- In **Night** mode, color is captured more precisely; due to the camera characteristics, there may be noise (such as lines) in the image when shootings are done in a low-light situation.
- In **Sport** or **Pet** mode, shoot in a sufficient-light situation. There may be noise in the images shot in a room or a low-light situation.
- In **Gourmet** or **Letter** mode, switch to Macro when shooting from a close range.
- Press   on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen to select a mode while viewing the description of each mode.

Brightness



- If you change the level, it may not give much effect depending on the object.
- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to **Whiten** or **Suntan**.

Color density



- If you change the level, it may not give much effect depending on the object.
- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to **Whiten**, **Suntan**, **Mono tone (red)**, **Mono tone (green)**, **Mono tone (blue)**, **Monochrome** or **Sepia**.

White balance

Natural color tone coordinated with the light source is provided for shooting.

Auto :

Adjusts white balance automatically.

Sunlight :

Sets when shooting outdoor in fine weather.

Cloudy :

Sets when shooting in cloudy weather, shade or evening.

Fluorescent :

Sets when shooting under illumination such as a fluorescent lamp.

Bulb light :

Sets when shooting under illumination such as an electric bulb.

- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to **Scenery**, **Twilight**, **Surf&Snow**, **Whiten**, **Suntan**, **Mono tone (red)**, **Mono tone (green)**, **Mono tone (blue)**, **Monochrome** or **Sepia**.

Shake reduction

Set whether to use the shake reduction function during video recording.

- You cannot use during still image shooting.

Auto :

Shake reduction is automatically activated when the settings and conditions for shooting are likely to cause camera shake.

OFF :

Shake reduction is disabled.

INFORMATION

- Camera shake may not be corrected in the following cases:
 - When camera shake is too much
 - When the object is moving
 - When shooting with zoom
- Even in other cases, note that camera shake may not be corrected, depending on the object or shooting situation.
- When you record video using the shake reduction function, the angle of coverage becomes narrower as compared to the case where shake reduction is disabled.

Frames

You can select frames saved in the FOMA terminal or frame images downloaded from sites.

 : Frame is set  : Frame is canceled

- The frames registered in the FOMA terminal by default are applicable to image sizes of 176 x 144 (QCIF), and 240 x 320 (standby). ➡P394
- Frames cannot be set when 96 x 72 (phonebook), 640 x 480 (H-VGA), 480 x 640 (V-VGA) or 960 x 1280 (SXGA) for image size of still image, or 320 x 240 (QVGA) for image size of video is set.

INFORMATION

- You can also select frames from the list by pressing    on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen.

- If you select a frame that is opposite in horizontal and vertical values to the image size (for example, if you select a 144 x 176 frame when the image size is 176 x 144 (QCIF)), the frame is displayed after rotating 90 degrees clockwise. In this case, the frame rotates 180 degrees by pressing on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen. Note that your frame cannot be rotated if it is the same as the image size in terms of horizontal and vertical values.
- If the frame downloaded from a site during shooting is not displayed, press on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen.

Quality

Set the quality of still image or video to shoot.

During still image shooting

- Fine**:
Provides the highest quality. The file size is enlarged.
- Standard**:
Provides the standard quality.
- Economy**:
Provides the lowest quality. The file size is reduced.

During video recording

- HQ+**:
Provides the highest quality. The file size is enlarged and the recording time becomes the shortest.
- HQ**:
The video motion becomes smooth.
- STD**:
Provides the standard quality
- LP**:
Provides the lowest quality. The file size is reduced and the recording time becomes the longest.

Size restrictions

Set the size restrictions of files.

During still image shooting

When the file size of the shot still image is larger than the limit value, this setting automatically degrades the quality or reduces the file size to save the image.

- None**:
No restriction for the file size.

- Msg attach:Large*1**:

Restricts the file size to 2 Mbytes. You can attach the image to i-mode Mail without changing the file size.

- Msg attach:Small*1**:

Restricts the file size to 90 Kbytes. The image with this file is suitable for attaching to i-mode Mail.

- If the image size is 960 x 1280 (SXGA), you cannot use **Msg attach:Small** for the setting.
- The setting for size restrictions may be changed automatically depending on the setting for the image size.

During video recording

When the file size of video exceeds the limit value during video recording, recording ends automatically.

- None**:

No restriction for the file size. When the memory to save is set to **Phone** in Recording Setting, you cannot select this.

- Msg attach:Large*1**:

Restricts the file size to 1.99 Mbytes.

- Msg attach:Small*1**:

Restricts the file size to 500 Kbytes. The file of this size is suitable to be attached to i-mode Mail.

- To send the shot video as an i-mode mail attachment, set the size restriction to other than **None**.

*1 When you select the icon, **Msg attach S** or **Msg attach L** is displayed on the screen.

Image size

You can set the following image size:

Shooting method	Icon	Image size	Remarks
Still Camera		96 x 72 (phonebook)	❶
		128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	
		176 x 144 (QCIF)	
		240 x 320 (Standby)	
		352 x 288 (CIF)	❷
		640 x 480 (H-VGA)	
		480 x 640 (V-VGA)	
		960 x 1280 (SXGA)	
Movie Camera		128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	❸
		176 x 144 (QCIF)	
		320 x 240 (QVGA)	

- ❶ Images can be sent as an i-mode mail attachment. In addition, these sizes are suitable for attaching to Deco-mail.
- ❷ Images can be sent as an i-mode mail attachment. A confirmation screen appears asking whether to convert to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (Standby) when attaching files to mail.
- ❸ Images can be sent as an i-mode mail attachment.
 - The maximum size of an image or video file that can be sent to the i-mode terminal is up to 2 Mbytes.
 - Depending on the receiver's model, the file may not be received or displayed properly, or video may be degraded or displayed as continuous images.
 - When a video file is sent to devices other than below*1, use the video size of 176 x 144 (QCIF).
 - *1 903i series, 904i series, 703i series (except P703i μ) and 704i series (except P704i μ)
- The setting for size restrictions may be changed automatically depending on the setting for the image size.

Flicker adjustment

If you set the flicker adjustment according to the power supply frequency of the area of use when the screen flickers under a fluorescent light etc., the flicker may be able to be reduced.

Adjustment might fail to remove flickers if there is strong light from fluorescent or other lamps.

1 on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen ▶

-

Auto :

Adjusts to reduce the flicker automatically.

50Hz (East-Japan) :

Adjusts according to the power supply frequency of Eastern Japan.

60Hz (West-Japan) :

Adjusts according to the power supply frequency of Western Japan.

INFORMATION

- If you use the shake reduction function with the flicker adjustment being set to *Auto*, flickering may not be adjusted sufficiently. It is recommended that you change the flicker adjustment setting according to the local power supply frequency.
- This setting is also reflected to the flicker adjustment setting for the videophone and Bar Code Reader. ◀P71, P159

Changing the settings collectively Adjust All

You can set the brightness, color density, white balance and flicker adjustment at the same time.

- When the scene mode/effect is set to *Whiten* or *Santan*, Adjust All cannot be performed.

1 on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen

■ Operating in the scene mode/effect setup screen:

① on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen

② Highlight the scene mode/effect ▶

2 Set each item ▶

- The *Scene mode/effect* field displays the current scene mode/effect (or the scene mode/effect selected in the scene mode/effect setup screen if you have operated in that setup screen). It cannot be changed.
- Some items cannot be selected depending on the scene mode/effect.
- If you have operated in the scene mode/effect setup screen, pressing sets the scene mode/effect as well.

■ Resetting all items to the default settings collectively: ▶ Yes

Restoring the default settings for shooting

Reset the settings for the scene mode/effect, brightness, color density, white balance and flicker adjustment to the default settings.

1 on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen ▶

Yes

Sending still images shot during voice calls

One-shot Message

Send the still image shot during a voice call by attaching it to i-mode Mail to the other party during the call.

- When you set the memory to save to **microSD** with Still Image Setting, set **Auto save** to **No**. If **Auto save** is set to **Yes**, the still image you shot during a voice call cannot be sent.
- Even if the memory to save is set to **microSD**, the still image you send is saved in the FOMA terminal.

1 during a voice call

2 Shoot a still image

- When the memory to save is set to **Phone** and **Auto save** is set to **Yes**, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to attach the shot image to mail. If **Yes** is selected, the shot still image can be checked.
- The still images shot continuously are displayed as thumbnails. Press  to highlight the still image.

3 Save the still image according to the screen

The mail composition screen appears.

- The displayed screen is the same as with mail attachment made from a confirmation screen during still image shooting.  P148
- If the mail address of the other party you are talking to has been registered in the phonebook, the other party's address is inserted in the receiver field automatically. However, the mail address is not inserted when Privacy Mode is active (with **Authorized access** set for **Phonebook & Logs**)

4 Compose and send i-mode Mail

- To return to the talking screen: 

Using Bar Code Reader

Bar Code Reader

You can scan and use text and numerics from the JAN code or QR code.

- You can save the scanned data up to 5 items.
- The bar codes and two-dimensional codes other than JAN and QR codes cannot be scanned.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on the types and sizes.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, the low print quality, the strong reflection of light or some QR code versions may prevent the codes from being scanned.
- You can activate Bar Code Reader on the character entry screen and enter the scanned data directly.  P367

JAN Code

The JAN code is one of the bar codes indicating numbers with the vertical lines (bars) of different width. The bar codes of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 digits (JAN13) can be scanned.

The JAN code below shows the numeral data "4942857130874".



QR Code

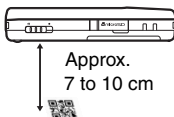
The QR code is one of the two-dimensional codes indicating a string of alphanumeric and other characters (kanji, kana and pictograms) or data such as melody or image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.



The left QR code shows the text data "FOMA D704i".

Scanning the code

Keep the camera about 7 to 10 cm away from the code to scan.



1 ► Slide the macro mode switch to (Macro)

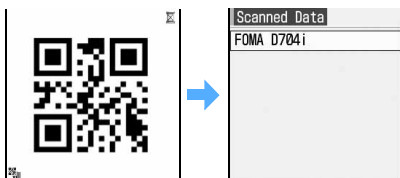


Macro mode switch
(switched to Macro)

- After bar code reading finished, turn the macro mode switch back to (normal mode) to make the camera ready for a next shooting occasion. If you shoot a distant object without canceling (Macro), you cannot get a sharp picture.
- Switch to the normal mode to read a large size code.
- During bar code scanning, the following operations are enabled:
 - : Switch to the same size
 - : Switch to the double size
- To set flicker adjustment: ► -
 - For details of settings
 - This setting is also reflected to the flicker adjustment setting for the videophone and camera. ,

2 Scan the code

When you point the camera toward the code, the code is scanned automatically. If scanned correctly, a confirmation sound is played and the scanned data is displayed.



- When it is hard to scan the code, adjust the distance, angle or direction of the code and the camera. This may enable the code to be scanned. Switching to the same size may also work out.

- When the code could not be scanned, after 30 seconds have passed after the key operation, **Could not scan.** is displayed. After 30 more seconds, if the code is still unable to be scanned, **Could not scan.** is displayed again and Bar Code Reader is exited.
- If the data exceeds 11,000 one-byte or 5,500 two-byte characters, the exceeded characters are not displayed, but can be saved.
- When scanning is paused such as while a submenu is displayed, the icon indicated at the upper right of the screen changes to .

■ Re-scanning the code:

3

The scanned data is saved to the FOMA terminal.

- When 5 data items have already been saved or the memory is not enough, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the saved data. Select **Yes** to delete the saved data.

■ Copying the text data in the scanned data:

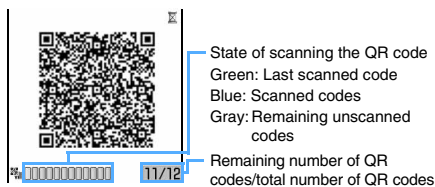
① ► Select the start position to copy

- To copy the entire text data:

② Select the end position to copy

Scanning divided QR codes

When the data is divided into multiple parts (up to 16), scan them one by one according to messages displayed on the screen.



- To cancel scanning on the way: ► **Yes**

INFORMATION

- If you press on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and select **Switch mode** → **Bar code reader**, Bar Code Reader can be used as well.
- On the code reading screen, press and press or to switch between still image shooting and video recording modes. When Bar Code Reader is started from the character entry screen or i-appli, switching is not available.

- The scanned data is given a file name made up of the scanned date and time + serial file number + .jan or .qr ("jan" is for JAN code and ".qr" for QR code). The file name 20071205123400.jan, for example, means the JAN code scanned at 12:34 on December 5, 2007. When there are any previously saved data at the same date and time, 1 is added to the serial file number. The file name cannot be changed.

Using the scanned data

The available operations vary depending on the scanned data.

Example Adding data to the phonebook

1     

2 Select the scanned data

- **Deleting the scanned data: Highlight the data**     *Yes*

- To delete all:     Enter the terminal security code  *Yes*

3 Highlight the data to add to the phonebook

   (Add new data) or    (Update)   or 

The phonebook registration screen appears.

- To update saved entries, select the party to add the data.
- **Adding all data to the phonebook at one time:**
Add to phonebook   or 
The phonebook registration screen appears.
The name and the reading are also entered depending on the data.
- **Sending i-mode Mail: Select a mail address or Compose message**
The mail composition screen appears.
 - When *Compose message* is selected, the subject and the text are entered depending on the data.
- **Connecting i-mode sites or Internet websites: Select a URL**  *Yes*
 - When the display is possible in both i-mode and Full Browser, selecting *Yes* displays i-mode and selecting  displays Full Browser.

■ Saving URLs as bookmarks:

- ① **Highlight a URL**    or *Add bookmark*
- ② **Select a folder**
- ③ **Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)** 
 - When *Add bookmark* is selected, the title name is also entered depending on the data.

■ Starting i-appli: Start i-appli

■ Making voice/videophone calls:

- ① **Select a phone number**  **Set the dialing conditions** 
- ②   *Yes*
 - To make a call after invalidating the settings other than Chaku-moji and call type:   *No, use original*

■ Saving or displaying still images: Select the file name of a still image

 *Save*

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Downloading images". 
- To display a still image: *Display*

■ Saving or playing melodies: Select a file name of melody

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Downloading melodies". 
- The melody is saved in the *Data transfer* folder of Melody in Data Box.

■ Saving or displaying ToruCa: Select the name of a ToruCa file

 *Save*

- To display ToruCa: *Display*

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

What's i-mode?	162
Displaying sites	
Displaying i-mode sites	162
Reading and operating sites	164
Using My Menu	My Menu 165
Changing your current i-mode password	Change i-mode Password 166
Displaying Internet websites	Internet Connection 166
Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing ...	Bookmark 167
Saving site contents	Screen Memo 169
Downloading images and melodies from sites	
Downloading various data from sites	Download 170
Useful functions of i-mode	
Useful functions of i-mode	173
Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode settings	i-mode Setting 175
Using Message Service	
When Message R/F is received	Receive Message R/F 176
Displaying saved Message R/F	Message R/Message F 178
Using certificate	
Operating certificates	179
Using i-motion	
i-motion	181
Downloading i-motion from sites	182
Setting auto play and the type of i-motion to be downloaded	
.....	i-motion Setting 183
Using i-Channel	
i-Channel	183
Displaying i-Channel	Channel List 185
Changing i-Channel settings	i-Channel Ticker 185
Restoring i-Channel information to the default settings	Reset i-Channel 186

What's i-mode?

With i-mode, you can use online services such as connecting to i-mode sites (programs) or Internet websites, or sending and receiving i-mode Mail by using the display of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called the i-mode terminal).

- i-mode is a pay service for which subscription is required. Please refer to the back of this manual for further information on subscription.
- For details of i-mode service, see the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Before using i-mode

- The contents of i-mode sites (programs) and Internet websites are usually protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data downloaded to your i-mode terminal from these i-mode sites (program) or Internet websites a cannot be used or altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- Data saved/registered in your i-mode terminal (mail, Message R/F, screen memo, i-appli, i-motion, and bookmark) may be erased due to failure, repair, or other handling of i-mode terminal. It is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the data you saved/registered in your i-mode terminal. We are not responsible for any lost data.
- Depending on the model, you cannot display or play still images, videos or melodies downloaded from sites, files (images, videos, melodies, etc.) attached to sent/received mail, screen memos or Message R/Fs when the power of your terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted.
- When the data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the standby display or ring alert, the settings return to the default if the power is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted. When the UIM that was used during downloading the data is inserted, the settings returns to the previous settings.

INFORMATION

- Data such as mail and bookmarks can be saved to the microSD memory card. ●P299

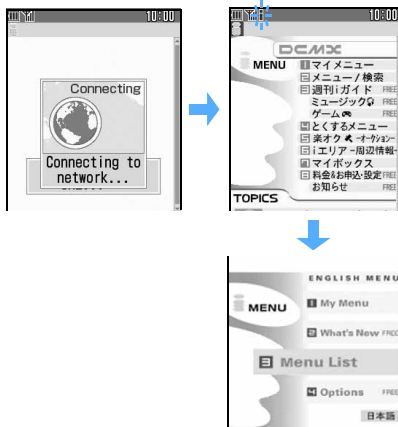
- If you have a PC, data such as mail and bookmarks can be saved to the PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink and the FOMA USB Cable (optional). If you subscribe to Data Security Service (charged), you can save mails in the Data Center.

Menu 21

Displaying i-mode sites

1 English iMenu

Flashes in i-mode communication.



- Press  on the connecting screen to stop connection.
- Item with the number such as  or  can be selected by pressing the key of the number corresponding to the item (Direct key function). However, you may not select them on some sites.

2 Menu List



- Press  while accessing the page to stop downloading.

3 Select an item

You are connected to a site. You can display the target page by repeating this operation.

4 when you finish viewing the site ► Yes

INFORMATION

- When you display a site containing an image, the following icons may be indicated instead of the image:
 - : When **Not display** is set for **Image** in Image & Effect Setting ( in case of undownloaded image of Message R/F)
 - : When no image has been received because, for example, the image data is invalid, the image is missing, or the FOMA terminal is out of the service area
 - : When the image cannot be displayed because of incorrect URL
- To return to iMenu during site display, press  and select **iMenu**.
- When a site requests your serial number of mobile phone/UIM, a confirmation screen appears. When you select **Yes**, your serial number of mobile phone/UIM is sent. The IP (Information Provider) uses the serial number of mobile phone/UIM to identify you for providing the information customized for you or for determining whether your FOMA terminal supports the site content provided by the IP. Since your serial number of mobile phone/UIM is sent to the IP via the Internet, there is a possibility the information could be intercepted by third parties. However, your information such as FOMA terminal's phone number, your address, age, and sex will never be disclosed to the IP with this operation.
- If a site requests entry of the user name and password, the entry screen is displayed. Enter the user name and password of the site and select **OK**.

Connecting to SSL pages

You can display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) by the same operation as for ordinary sites.

- Some SSL pages may not allow connection unless the date and time are set.
- Establishment of SSL session may require electronic information called "certificate" for the connected site and FOMA terminal issued by the same certifier. P179
- To connect to a FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it in the UIM.

Connecting to an SSL page

A screen informing you of the start of SSL communication is displayed. When the certificate saved in the FOMA terminal is required for the SSL communication, the selection screen is displayed.  appears on the top of the screen when the SSL page is displayed.

■ Displaying a certificate during SSL page display:

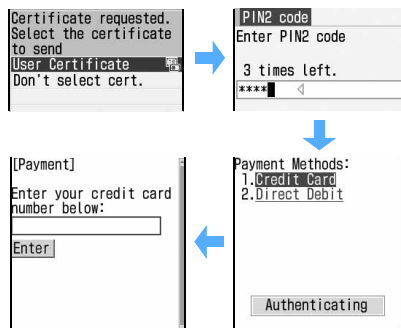
- Certificate contents P179

Displaying an ordinary page from an SSL page

A confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to display an ordinary page and  disappears on the top of the screen.

Connecting to a FirstPass compatible page

The following screens appear:



① Select a user certificate

- Highlight a user certificate and press  to check the content of the certificate.

② Enter the PIN2 code

The user certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page is displayed.

- If the correct PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the SSL communication is disconnected.

INFORMATION

- Packet communication fee while being connected to FirstPass compatible sites will be included in the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full. However, the fee for data communication using a connected PC will not be included in the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full.

Menu 233

Reconnecting to the page displayed last

Last Visited URL

Last Visited URL allows you to quickly reconnect to the page displayed last.

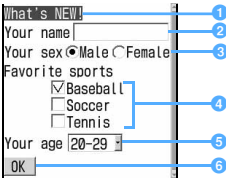
- Some pages may not be displayed. In addition, pages different from the last visited one may be displayed.



Reading and operating sites

Selecting links and items

Selectable items and entry fields appear depending on the page. Press to highlight an item or entry field and press to select the item or enter characters.



1 Link

Select to jump to a related page. The link is highlighted when the cursor is placed over.

2 Character entry field

Enter characters. The character types and the maximum number of characters that can be entered depend on the character entry field.

3 Radio button (: Unselected : Selected)

You can select only one from selections.

4 Check box (: Unselected : Selected)

You can select multiple items from selections. Press to switch between and .

5 Pulldown menu

Select an item from the item list.

6 Button (name differs depending on the site)

You can send page settings to a site or cancel the settings.

INFORMATION

- Some images may have links.
- The character entry screen allows you to enter the phonebook data, registered contents of Own Number and character strings information of the JAN or QR code read by Bar Code Reader. ➤P366
- Depending on the pulldown menu, multiple items can be selected by pressing . After selecting items, press .
- The information set or entered using radio buttons, check boxes, pulldown menus, or character entry fields does not have effect on the contents of registered bookmarks or screen memos.

Flash movie displays

Flash movie allows expressive sites to be displayed.

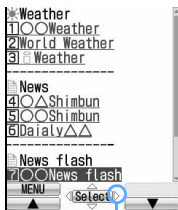
- Some sites that use Flash movie may not be operated or displayed in the same way as normal sites.
- Even if saved as an image or screen memo, some Flash movies may appear different from those displayed on sites because the part of the image is not saved.
- The sound effects of Flash movie set for the standby display or incoming image do not play.
- Even if Flash movie is displayed, it may not operate correctly. Also, you may not be able to save Flash movie that does not operate correctly.
- If an error occurs while playing Flash movie, the image cannot be saved.
- Even if is not indicated in the guide row, some Flash movies may be operated.
- To play Flash movie from the beginning, press .
- Some Flash movies may have sound effects. The volume conforms to the setting of the call alert volume. To disable sound effects during site display, press and set *Sound effect setting* to *OFF* in Image & Effect Setting.
- Even if Vibrator Setting is set to other than *OFF*, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate when the sound effects of Flash movie play.
- Note that some Flash movies may vibrate the FOMA terminal during play even if Vibrator Setting is set to *OFF*.
- If no operation is performed for 30 seconds or longer while playing Flash movie, it is brought to a pause. To replay, press any of the following keys: , , , , , , - , , or .

Displaying the previous or next page

The FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 pages displayed in a "cache".

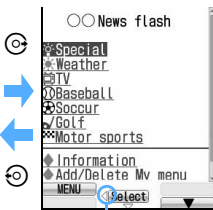
- Cache is a storage space in the FOMA terminal that temporarily records the displayed pages. You can display the recorded pages by pressing without establishing communication. In case the cache is full or a page that is set by the site to load the latest page is displayed, the FOMA terminal starts communication.
- This function is unavailable while being connected to the FirstPass center. ➤P180

1 page before the current page



Indicates you can proceed to the next page.

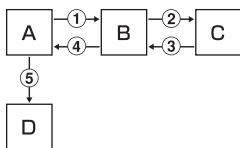
Current page



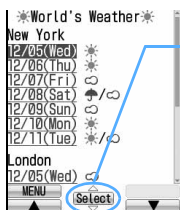
Indicates you can return to the previous page.

INFORMATION

- Records in the cache may be deleted when it is full. Pressing ⏮ may not return to previous pages.
- Information such as entered characters or settings is not recorded.
- When you terminate i-mode, all the records in the cache are deleted.
- The operation may differ when Flash movie is displayed.
- When you display page A → page B → page C in this order (①, ②), return to page A (③, ④), and proceed to page D (⑤), the display record of page A → page B → page C is deleted. You can return to page A from page D but you cannot then return to page B.



Scrolling the screen



When there are more rows or links not shown on the screen, △ and ▽ appear in the guide row to allow scrolling.

- Press ⏮ to scroll the screen. Hold down the key to scroll continuously.
- Press ⏮ or ⏭ to scroll the screen by a page. Hold down the key to scroll the screen continuously by a page.

Reloading data

When sites cannot be displayed because of connection interruption, etc., you may be able to display the sites by reloading.

1 [MENU] [5] during site display

Displaying the URL of current site

1 [MENU] [9] [1] during site display

Using My Menu

My Menu

You can register i-mode sites in My Menu, which allows you to quickly access the sites later.

- Up to 45 sites can be registered.
- You need the i-mode password to register sites. The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.
- When you submit an application to a pay site registered in Menu List of iMenu, the site is automatically registered in My Menu.
- Only the sites listed in Menu List of iMenu can be registered in My Menu. However, some sites cannot be registered in My Menu. To register the site which cannot be registered or Internet websites, use Bookmark.

Registering sites in My Menu

1 マイメニュー登録(Register) during site display

- Since the page structure differs depending on the site, press the key of the number corresponding to the item or select the applicable item.

2 The i-mode password entry field ▶ Enter ▶ 決定(OK)

Displaying sites from My Menu

1 iMenu ▶ English iMenu ▶ My Menu ▶ Select a site

Changing your current i-mode password

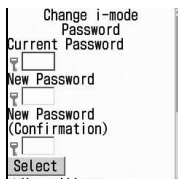
Change i-mode Password

Your i-mode password is required to register/delete sites in/from My Menu, subscribe to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay sites, or make the mail settings. The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default, so change it to your own number (4 digits). Please be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

- Please note that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

1 iMenu ▶ English iMenu ▶ Options ▶ Change i-mode Password

2 Current Password field ▶ Enter the current i-mode password



3 New Password field ▶ Enter a new i-mode password

4 New Password (Confirmation) field ▶ Re-enter the password entered in Step 3 ▶ Select

- When there is an error or omission in the entered contents, an error screen is displayed. Select **Re-enter** and operate from Step 2 again.

Menu 231

Displaying Internet websites

Internet Connection

- Internet websites incompatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly.
- You can switch i-mode to Full Browser. ➡P273

1 [F1] [F3] [F1] ▶ Enter a URL (up to 256 one-byte characters) ▶ [F1]

- From the next time, the last entered URL you connected to appears.

- To enter "/", ".", "-", etc., press [F1] repeatedly in the alphabet input mode. To enter "http://www.", ".co.jp", ".ne.jp", ".com" and ".html", press [F1] repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press [MENU] and select **Go to location** → **Enter URL**.
- A message is displayed when received data exceeds the maximum size for a page. Press [F1] to clear the message and display the received data.
- The operation procedures when displaying Internet website are the same as when displaying i-mode site.

Menu 232

Displaying sites using URL history

URL History

The terminal keeps a record of the last 20 URLs of sites you connected to by entering URL. You can use this URL history to connect to Internet websites.

1 [F1] [F3] [F2] ▶ Select the URL

- A long URL is shown only partially. To check the URL, highlight it and press [F1].

■ Editing the URL and connecting to it:

Highlight a URL in the URL history list ▶

[MENU] [F6] ▶ Edit the URL ▶ [F1]

■ Deleting the URL history:

① Highlight a URL in the URL history list ▶

[MENU] [F4] [F1]

- To delete all: [MENU] [F4] [F2] in the URL history list ▶ Enter the terminal security code

② Yes

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press [MENU] and select **Go to location** → **URL history**.
- When the number of recorded URLs exceeds 20, the URL will be deleted from the oldest one.

Displaying characters correctly

Character Encode

When characters are not displayed correctly on i-mode sites or websites, they may be displayed correctly by changing the character encode. Character encode is a generic term for the encoding scheme and structure developed for making characters available on computers.

1 while displaying i-mode sites or websites

- Each press of these keys switches the character encodes in the following order: *Auto switch* → SJIS → EUC → JIS → UTF8. Pressing     returns to *Auto switch*.
- When you display an i-mode sites or website, *Auto switch* is set.
- Characters may not be displayed correctly even if you change character encodes.

Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing

Bookmark

If you register your favorite i-mode sites or websites in Bookmark, you can quickly display the pages by only selecting bookmarks.

- The maximum number of bookmarks that can be registered .
- You cannot register URLs longer than 256 one-byte characters in Bookmark.
- Some sites may not be registered in Bookmark.

Registering in Bookmark

1 ▶ Select a folder to save the bookmark

2 Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) ▶

- If you save the bookmark without entering a title, the page title or the URL of the site is displayed in the bookmark list.

INFORMATION

- In the screen memo list, screen memo view screen, or URL history list, press  and select *Add bookmark*.
- When the maximum number of registered bookmarks is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the registered bookmarks. To register a new URL, select the bookmark to overwrite.

Menu 22

Displaying websites or i-mode sites from Bookmark

1 ▶ Select a folder

: No bookmark

: Bookmark present

2 Select a bookmark

■ Checking the URL: Highlight a bookmark



INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press  and select *Bookmark* → *Display*.

Connecting to sites using simple key operation

i-mode Shortcut

When you register a bookmark as i-mode shortcut, you can quickly display an i-mode site or website from the standby display.

- Up to 10 sites can be registered in total for i-mode and Full Browser.

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶

- To cancel shortcut, execute the same operation shown above.
- If a bookmark unregistered as an i-mode shortcut has been highlighted, you can also register it by pressing .

2 Select the number to register

- When displaying the site with i-mode Shortcut, the icon numbers ( to ) correspond to  - .
- In the bookmark list, the icon changes from  to  -  when registered.
- If the already registered number is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite it. When *Yes* is selected, it is overwritten.

Displaying a site using i-mode Shortcut

1 The dial key (-) ▶

Operating from the list of i-mode shortcuts Menu 281

Default Not recorded

1

The list of i-mode shortcuts is displayed.

-  is indicated for a bookmark of Full Browser.

■ Displaying a site: Select a bookmark

■ Registering a site:

- 1 **Highlight *Not recorded*** ▶
 - To register a bookmark of Full Browser:
Highlight *Not recorded* ▶
- 2 **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a bookmark**

■ Canceling an i-mode shortcut: Highlight a bookmark

▶ ▶ *Yes*

■ Checking the URL: Highlight a bookmark

▶

Creating/deleting folders

Creating a folder

- Up to 20 folders including フォルダ¹ (Folder 1) can be created.

1 ▶

■ Changing a folder name: Highlight a folder

▶

■ Changing the order of folders: Highlight a folder

▶ or

2 **Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)** ▶

Deleting folders

- フォルダ¹ can be deleted.
- When only one folder exists, the folder cannot be deleted.

1 ▶ **Highlight a folder** ▶ ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ *Yes*

Moving bookmarks

1 ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight a bookmark** ▶

■ Moving selected bookmarks:

▶ ▶ **Select bookmarks** ▶

3 **Select a folder to move the bookmark to**

Renaming bookmark titles

1 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Highlight a bookmark** ▶

- Follow Step 2 of “Registering in Bookmark”.
▶ P167

Sending mail with a bookmark attached

1 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Highlight a bookmark** ▶

The mail composition screen with the bookmark attached appears.

Deleting bookmarks

1 ▶ **Select a folder**

- **Deleting all the bookmarks:** in the folder list ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Go to Step 3**

2 **Highlight a bookmark** ▶

- **Deleting selected bookmarks:**

▶ **Select bookmarks** ▶

- **Deleting all the bookmarks in the folder:**

▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

3 *Yes*

INFORMATION

- If you delete a bookmark registered as an i-mode shortcut, the i-mode Shortcut setting is also canceled.

Sorting bookmarks

Sort

Bookmarks in the list are temporarily sorted. When you quit the display, *By access date* returns.

- All the folders are the target of sorting.
- You can select from *By access date*, *By title*, *By URL* or *By access frequency*.

1 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ -

INFORMATION

- If one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, the result sorted by *By title* may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Saving site contents

Screen Memo

Saving screen memos

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
➡ P430
- The maximum size of a screen memo that can be saved is 100 Kbytes including images, etc.

1 Display a site ▶ 4 1

2 Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) ▶

- When you save the screen memo without entering the title, *No title* is displayed in the screen memo list.

INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite the saved screen memo. Select the screen memo to overwrite. The protected screen memos are not overwritten.

Menu 24

Displaying screen memos

1 4 ▶ Select a screen memo

- : Ordinary screen memo
- : Protected screen memo

- The available operations are the same as on site displays, with a few exceptions. ➡ P164

■ Checking URL: Highlight a screen memo ▶

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press and select *Screen memo* → *Display*. At this time, if the character encode has been changed, it is reset to *Auto switch* when returning to the site from the displayed screen memo.
- To play Flash movie again during screen memo display, press and select *Display* → *Retry*.

Renaming screen memo titles

1 4 ▶ Highlight a screen memo ▶

- Follow Step 2 of "Saving screen memos".
➡ P169

INFORMATION

- During screen memo display, press and select *Rename title*.

Protecting screen memos

- The maximum number of items that can be protected ➡ P430

1 4

2 Highlight a screen memo ▶ 1 1

The screen memo is protected and the icon changes from to .

- To cancel protection: Highlight a screen memo
▶ 1 3

■ Protecting selected screen memos:

1 2 ▶ Select screen memos ▶

■ Canceling protection of selected screen memos: 1 4 ▶ Select screen memos ▶

■ Canceling protection of all the screen memos: 1 5

INFORMATION

- During screen memo display, press and select *Protect* or *Release*.

Deleting screen memos

- Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

1 4

2 Highlight a screen memo ▶ 2 1

■ Deleting selected screen memos:

2 2 ▶ Select screen memos ▶

■ Deleting all the screen memos:

2 3
▶ Enter the terminal security code

3 Yes

INFORMATION

- During screen memo display, press and select *Delete*.

Sorting screen memos

Sort

Screen memos in the list are temporarily sorted. When you quit the display, *By date* returns.

- You can select *By date* or *By title*.

1 or

INFORMATION

- If one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, the result sorted *By title* may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Downloading various data from sites

Download

Downloaded various data (files) from sites can be saved in the FOMA terminal.

- Some data (files) can be saved in the microSD memory card.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum allowable number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the data. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

Common basic operations

- To stop downloading: (for PDF data) during downloading
- To cancel saving (excluding an image or PDF file): **Back** **No**
- To display and confirm the saved data (Mail templates, ToruCa, Kisekai tool or Machi-chara): **Preview**

Downloading images

Save Image

Images, frames or Deco-mail pictograms can be downloaded and saved from sites. The saved images can be viewed from *My Picture* or set for the standby display.

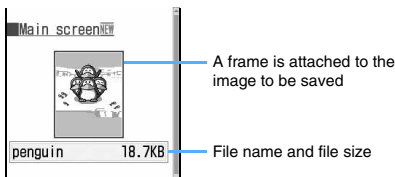
- The maximum number of items that can be saved
- The maximum size of an image that can be downloaded is 100 Kbytes.
- Images in GIF, JPEG and Flash formats can be saved.

Example Downloading an image from a site

1 **Display a site**

Saving the background image on site: Display a site **Go to Step 3**

2 **Select an image**



3 **Set each item**

- Some items may not be available for setting depending on the image file.
- For images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA terminal (file restriction set to *File restricted*), you can change the display name only.

Display name :

36 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

File name :

36 characters including one-byte alphanumeric, “.”, “-” and “_” can be entered. However, “.” character cannot be used for the first character of file name.

Comment :

100 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

Use as frame :

Sets whether to enable an image to be pasted as a frame image.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 240 x 320 or 352 x 288 cannot be changed to **Yes**.

Use as stamp :

Sets whether to enable an image to be pasted as a stamp image.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 240 x 320 cannot be changed to **Yes**.

File restriction :

When you send an image to another mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict that image from being sent again from the received party's mobile phone to any other mobile phone.

- The image files downloaded from sites cannot be changed.

- When  is indicated in the guide row, press  and press  to save the data to the microSD memory card.
When saving to the microSD memory card, only **Display name** can be set.
- When saving in the terminal, press  to display the menu list for setting images for the standby display, etc. 

4 **Select the folder to save the image**

- For Deco-mail pictograms, the image is saved to the **Deco-mail pict** folder of **My Picture** in Data Box.

INFORMATION

- Some images may not be displayed correctly.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.
- When displaying a site containing an image wider than the display, the image will be reduced.

Downloading melodies

i-melody

Your terminal can download melodies from sites and play and save them (compatible with i-melody). The saved melodies can be played from **Melody** or used as ring alert.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved 
- The maximum size of a melody that can be downloaded is 100 Kbytes.
- Melodies in SMF and MFi formats can be saved.

1 **Display a site** **Select a melody**

2 **Save**

- To play i-melody: **Play**

3 **Enter a display name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters)**

The melody is saved in the **i-mode** folder of **Melody** in Data Box. 

- When  is indicated in the guide row, press  and press  to save the melody to the microSD memory card.

INFORMATION

- Some melodies may not play correctly.

Downloading PDF data

- The maximum number of items that can be saved 
- The maximum size of a PDF file that can be downloaded is 2 Mbytes.
- Note that downloading large PDF data may incur high packet communication fees.

1 **Display a site** **Select PDF data**

The data is downloaded and then displayed on PDF Viewer. 

- Go to Step 3 depending on PDF data.
- When a password is set for the PDF data, enter the password and press .
- To download the remaining data of the PDF data downloaded partially, press  .

2

- If the same PDF data is already saved, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite it, depending on the data. Select **Yes** to overwrite.

3 **Enter a display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters)**

The PDF data is saved in the **i-mode** folder of **My Document** in Data Box. 

- When  is indicated in the guide row, press  and press  to save the data to the microSD memory card.
- If not all the pages are downloaded, the downloaded part is saved.

INFORMATION

- If you try to download PDF data exceeding 2 Mbytes, a message appears indicating that the data exceeds the download size limit and the download fails.
- For the PDF data in which the total size of i-mode bookmarks and marks is larger than 100 Kbytes or whose size is unknown, the download fails.
- When a different i-mode bookmark or mark is set for the PDF data that you are downloading again, the i-mode bookmark or mark is added. However, when the number of registered i-mode bookmarks or marks exceeds 10, a message appears indicating that the maximum number of registered items is exceeded. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete i-mode bookmarks or marks until the number is below the limit.
- When you download PDF data exceeding 500 Kbytes in size, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download. To download such data, select **Yes**.

- If you stop downloading or the network connection breaks while downloading the PDF data, the data is saved incompletely. You can download it again from *My Document*. To download again, follow Step 2 in "Displaying the PDF data". ➡P320

Downloading dictionaries

- Up to 10 items can be saved.
- The maximum size of a dictionary that can be downloaded is 32 Kbytes.
- Using the downloaded dictionary ➡P369

1 Display a site ▶ Select a dictionary ▶ Save ▶

The dictionary is saved to *DL dictionary* of *Other* in *Settings & NW services*.

Downloading Chara-den

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P430
- The maximum size of a Chara-den image that can be downloaded is 100 Kbytes.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a Chara-den image

2 Save

- To display the Chara-den image: *Display*

3 Set each item

Display name :

Up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

Comment :

Up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

4

The Chara-den image is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *Chara-den* in Data Box. ➡P290

INFORMATION

- If the preinstalled Chara-den has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, "My D-style". ➡P391

Downloading mail templates

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P430
- The size of a mail template you can download is up to 200 Kbytes per item.
- Mail templates you have downloaded are saved in *Read templates* with mail templates preset by default.

1 Select a mail template during site display

▶ Save

Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Saving templates". ➡P199

INFORMATION

- When the downloaded mail template has a file attachment which cannot be used, it cannot be saved until the attachment is deleted.
- When the downloaded mail template has an image that cannot be attached to mail or output from or used on the FOMA terminal, it cannot be saved until the image is deleted.

Downloading ToruCa

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P430
- The maximum size that can be saved ➡P248
- The saving destination for ToruCa ➡P248
- If you have downloaded detailed information from saved ToruCa, it is not saved as another file, and the detailed information is added to original ToruCa.
Obtaining ToruCa (details) from ToruCa ➡P249
- ToruCa downloaded from a site is regarded as being read even if being saved without selecting *Preview*.

1 Display a site ▶ Select ToruCa ▶ Save

Downloading Kisekai tool

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P430
- The maximum size of a Kisekai tool that can be downloaded is 500 Kbytes.
- Using Kisekai tool ➡P118

1 Display a site ▶ Select a Kisekai tool ▶ Save ▶ Enter the display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶

Kisekai tool is saved in *Kisekai Tool* in Data Box.

- To set Kisekai tool: Highlight a Kisekai tool  ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- The screen or ring alert to be set differs depending on Kisekai tool.
- Some Kisekai tool may not be displayed and saved.
- If you save Kisekai tool for which download stopped in the middle due to communication interruption, etc., you can download it from *Kisekai Tool*. To download again, follow Step 2 in "Using Kisekai tool". ➡P118

Downloading Machi-chara

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
➡ P430
- The maximum size of a Machi-chara image that can be downloaded is 500 Kbytes.
- Setting Machi-chara ➡ P119

1 Display a site ▶ Select a Machi-chara image ▶ Save

2 Enter the display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters)

- To set to display on the standby display: 

3

The Machi-chara image is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *Machi-chara* in Data Box. ➡ P293

INFORMATION

- If you save Machi-chara for which download stopped in the middle due to communication interruption, etc., you can download it again from *Machi-chara*. To download again, follow Step 2 in “Displaying Machi-chara”. ➡ P293

Downloading the original certificate

- The original certificate can be saved up to 5 items. The RootCA certificate and intermediate certificate can be saved up to 10 items.
- The maximum size of a certificate that can be downloaded is 100 Kbytes.
- When the UIM (blue) is inserted, the original certificate cannot be downloaded.
- The original certificate is issued by each company. The downloaded certificate can be used on the site which supports the certificate.
- The packet communication fee for downloading is charged.
- Setting validity/invalidity of the downloaded original certificate ➡ P180

1 Display a site ▶ Select the original certificate ▶ Save

- When entry of the password is required, enter the password and select *OK*.

Useful functions of i-mode

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To

When phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs are displayed on the screen, select them to make voice calls or videophone calls (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to i-mode sites or websites (Web To). In addition, you can view or schedule TV programs (Media To) from the links of information for 1Seg viewing or TV program schedules on the screen currently displayed.

- You can also execute this function from mail or Message R/F, etc.
- Some functions may not be available depending on i-mode sites or websites.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a link such as a phone number, mail address, URL, or information for 1Seg viewing or TV program schedules

■ Phone To (AV Phone To):

The Call Option screen appears.

① Set dialing conditions ➡ P54

② ▶ Yes

- To dial with the setting other than Chaku-moji or call type set to invalid:

▶ No, use original

■ Mail To:

The mail composition screen with the selected mail address set as the receiver is displayed.

① Compose and send i-mode Mail

- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in between, the Mail To function may not be available.

■ Web To:

You are connected to the selected i-mode site or website.

- When you executed from mail, etc., a confirmation screen appears. If *Yes* is selected, you are connected to the site. When *FBrowser* is displayed in the guide row while the confirmation screen is being displayed, if you press , the site is displayed by Full Browser.

■ Media To:

① Yes on the confirmation screen

The TV screen or the TV Program scheduling screen appears. ➡ P262, P263

- If 1Seg is activated, the function at the startup is ended (except for when activating from mail).
- While viewing 1Seg or displaying data broadcasting website, if you select a link of information for 1Seg viewing and select **Yes** on the confirmation screen, the function under execution is ended and viewing of the channel specified by information for 1Seg viewing is started.

INFORMATION

- Even if the link of information is highlighted, Media To function may not be used from some links.
- In the following cases, 1Seg cannot be activated by Media To from sites or mails. Besides, 1Seg may not be activated depending on the function running.
 - While making or receiving calls, while talking, or during communication
 - While receiving mails or Message R/Fs
 - While performing data communication with PC connected
- In case while viewing 1Seg, viewing of the channel specified by Media To may not be started depending on the process under execution (such as while displaying the channel list or while setting the channel).
- 1Seg cannot be activated by Media To from mails saved in the microSD memory card.
- Recording cannot be scheduled by Media To. (The information of the start time and the end time after the present is included in the selected link and both are valid, it is regarded as scheduled recording, so an error occurs.)

Using the location information

When there are the link items of location information (address information) on the screen, you can display the map.

1 Display a site ▶ Select location information

2 Select a menu item

- **Viewing the map:** *Read map* ▶ 

You are connected to a map site.
- **Using GPS compatible i-appli:** *Run i-appli* ▶  ▶ **Select i-appli**
 - GPS compatible i-appli is not registered by default.
- **Pasting to i-mode Mail:** *Paste to mail* ▶ 

The mail composition screen on which  and the URL of location information are entered in the text is displayed.

Copying the URL

Copy the URL of the site or screen memo being displayed. The copied text can be pasted in the entry fields on the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- The copied text is recorded until the power of the FOMA terminal is turned off. You can paste it in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be recorded. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying the URL of current site

1 Display the URL of a site ▶

- Displaying the URL  P165

2 Select the start position of the copying range ▶ Select the end position

- Press   to select all the text.
- Press  to specify the start position again.
- Press  or  after specifying the start position to move the cursor to the beginning or end of the text.

3 Display a character entry screen to be pasted ▶ Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

- In the URL history list, i-mode shortcut list, or screen memo list, press  and select *Copy URL*. In the bookmark list, press  and select *URL disp/type/copy* → *Copy URL*. When you operate from any of these screens, the whole URL is copied.
- To paste the URL of the current site to mail, press  during site display and select *Compose message*. The mail composition screen is displayed with the URL of the site pasted in the message text.

Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook

Add to Phonebook

When phone numbers or mail addresses are displayed on the screen, you can register them in the phonebook.

Example Registering a phone number displayed on the site screen as new entry

1 Display a site ▶ Highlight a phone number

- You can register only highlighted phone numbers or mail addresses.

2

- To edit the existing phonebook data:

3 1 or 2 ▶ Register the name, etc.

☛P79, P81

- To edit the existing phonebook data: 1 or 2 ▶ Select a party ▶ Edit the data ☛P88

INFORMATION

- During screen memo display, press and select *Phonebook* → *Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*. On the Message R/F view screen, press and select *Store* → *Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*.

Registering URLs in the phonebook

Add URLs to the phonebook from the bookmark list or screen memo list.

Example Registering a URL from the bookmark list

1 2 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a bookmark ▶ 7 1

- To edit the existing phonebook data: Highlight a bookmark ▶ 7 2

3 Register the name, etc. ☛P79, P81

- To edit the existing phonebook data: Select a party ▶ Edit the data ☛P88

INFORMATION

- In the screen memo list, press and select *Phonebook* → *Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*.

Making i-mode settings

i-mode Setting

Menu 282

Setting the connection timeout

Connection Timeout Setting

Set the timeout for connection to the i-mode Center. If a connection is not established correctly, it is automatically interrupted after the set period of time.

Default 60 seconds

1 8 2 ▶ 1 - 3

INFORMATION

- Even if you set the connection timeout to *Unlimited*, a connection with the i-mode Center may be interrupted due to poor signal conditions, etc.

Menu 287

Changing the host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication)

Host Selection

* You do not need to change the settings when using DoCoMo i-mode service.

Default i-mode(UIM)

About ISP connection communication

You can connect to various providers (ISPs) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DoCoMo. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- Please note that packet communication fee for connection to the ISP will not be included in the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full.
- You do not need to additionally subscribe to DoCoMo.

About provider subscription

- You need to separately subscribe to a provider to use the ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details on services (site and Internet connection, mail function, etc.) and subscription.
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DoCoMo will never charge you for it.
- Your phone number may be sent to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.
- You cannot make or change the host settings during communication.

1 8 7

2 Highlight one from *User host1* to *10* ▶ Enter the terminal security code

■ Restoring the setting for using i-mode:
i-mode (UIM) ▶

■ Changing to the previously set host:
Select a host ▶

3 Set each item ▶

Host name :

Up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters can be entered.

Host number :

Up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address :

Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address2:

Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

- **Host address2** is the host of i-Channel.
- You can delete all the contents entered by pressing .

4 Select the edited host

INFORMATION

- If you change the host, the i-Channel information will no longer be displayed as a ticker on the standby display. When the i-Channel information is automatically updated or when you press  on the standby display to show the channel list, the latest information is received and displayed as a ticker on the standby display.
- In case **Host number** or **Host address** is changed, the auto-send setting is canceled.

Menu 285

Setting image display and sound effects

Image & Effect Setting

You can set image display and sound effects (when playing Flash movie) on a site, screen memo, etc.

 **Image, Animation: Display**
Use phone information: Yes
Sound effect setting: ON

1

2 Set each item

Image:

Sets whether to display images.

- When **Not display** is set, images, Flash movie and animation are not displayed and  appears instead. Also, **Animation** and **Use phone information** cannot be set.

Animation:

Sets whether to play animation.

- When **Not display** is set, the first frame of animation is displayed.

Use phone information:

Sets whether to use the data saved in the FOMA terminal when displaying Flash movie.

Sound effect setting:

Sets whether to play the sound effect of Flash movie.

INFORMATION

- On the site screen or screen memo view screen, press  and select **Display** → **Set image & effect**.
- Even if **Not display** is set for **Animation**, Flash movie plays.

- The setting for **Image** is also reflected to the image display setting for 1Seg. P267
It does not apply to the images attached as attachment or images inserted in the text of Message R/F. When **Not display** is set for **Image**, the images attached to i-mode Mail using the Web To function cannot be displayed or saved.
- **Sound effect setting** does not have effect on Message R/F.
- When **Yes** is set for **Use phone information**, information such as the battery level, received signal level, time, melody volume for Adjust Volume, selected language, and terminal model may be sent to IPs via the Internet, which may give the information to third parties.

Menu 283

Setting the display lighting for use during site display

Display Light

You can set the lighting while displaying a site, screen memo, Message R/F, i-Channel, etc.

 **Default**  **Terminal setting**

1 or

Terminal setting:

The display light conforms to the setting of **Normal use of Display light time** in Display Light Setting.

Always ON:

The display always lights up.

INFORMATION

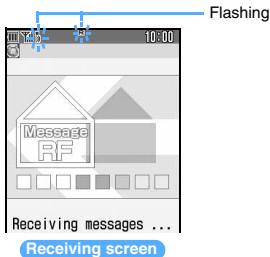
- On the site screen or screen memo view screen, press  and select **Display** → **Set lighting**.
- This setting is also reflected to **i-mode session of Display light time** in Display Light Setting. P114

When Message R/F is received

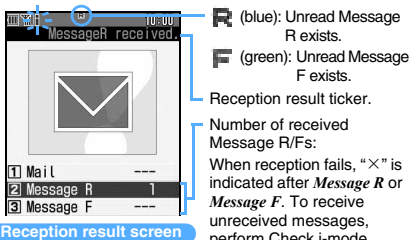
Receive Message R/F

- The received Message R is saved in **MessageR** and the received Message F is saved in **MessageF**.
- The maximum number of items that can be saved P430

1 A Message R/F is received



Reception completed



R and **R** (Blue) or **F** (Green) flash and *Receiving messages...* is displayed.

When reception is completed, the Message R/F ring alert sounds, reception result ticker appears, the Enter key lights/flashes, and the reception result screen is displayed.

- Press **2** on the receiving screen to stop reception.

2 **2** or **3** ▶ Select a Message R/F

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. **P221**

However, when a Message R/F is displayed automatically, it does not play.

- Viewing the Message R/F screen **P178**

INFORMATION

- The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key or until the ring alert stops if ring time is set to 15 seconds or longer in Message R/F Alert. When Auto-display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are displayed before the display returns to the previously displayed screen. To return to the previous screen quickly, press **2UP**.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the received Message R/Fs except unread ones will be overwritten, oldest first. Note that you need to protect Message R/F you want to keep. **P178**

- If the messages cannot be overwritten because the memory is full with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F, Message R/F reception is stopped. **R** (red) or **F** (red) is indicated on the screen. To receive new messages, display unread Message R/Fs (**P178**), delete unnecessary Message R/Fs (**P179**) or cancel message protection (**P178**) beforehand.

- Incoming Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:

- The power is off
- During a videophone call
- In Self Mode
- When reception fails
- While being out of service area
- While receiving SMS
- During infrared communication
- While connecting to the Data Center
- While Omakase Lock is on
- While connecting to the FirstPass center
- When the memory is full with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F

- Message R/F received by the FOMA terminal is saved to the FOMA terminal and the Message R/F stored in the i-mode Center is deleted.

- If there are unreceived Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center, **R**, **R** or **R** is indicated. However, the icon may not be indicated even when there are Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be stored in the i-mode Center is reached, the icon changes to **R**, **R** or **R**.

Menu 2631

Displaying Message R/F automatically

Auto-display

Sets whether to automatically open and display Message R/Fs for about 15 seconds upon reception. In addition, you can set either of Message R/F to be displayed and also set to give priority to either of Message R/F.

Default MessageR preferred

1 **2** **6** **3** **1** ▶ **1** - **5**

INFORMATION

- Auto-display is available only from the standby display. When you display a mail or Message R/F from the reception result screen or when you receive a Message R/F using Check i-mode Message, Auto-display is not performed.
- When Auto-display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are automatically displayed when the reception result screen returns to the screen that was displayed prior to reception. If you do not press any key during auto-display, the Message R/F is saved as unread.

Displaying saved Message R/F

Message R/Message F

Example Displaying Message R

1

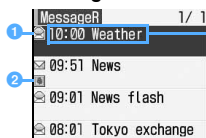
■ **Displaying Message F:**

2 Select a Message R

The Message R/F list/view screen

Reading Message F is the same as that of Message R.

■ Message R/F list screen

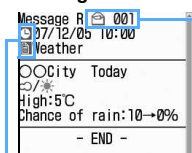


Reception date and time, and subject

- In the reception date and time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.

- 1 : Unread : Read : Protected
 2 : Image attached : Melody attached
 : ToruCa attached : Multiple files attached

■ Message R/F view screen



Status icon, attachment icon (only when there is an attachment), Message R/F number

: Reception date and time : Subject

- You can display the previous/next Message R/F by pressing .
- When a file is attached, its icon, file name, file size, etc. are displayed on the Message R/F view screen.
 - Meaning of icons for images, melodies and ToruCa P204
- When an image is inserted in the message text, the image is displayed.
If you could not receive the image, an icon is indicated. The icon is the same as when you cannot display images on a site. P163

Displaying and saving the attached file

Display or save images or ToruCa attached to Message R/F, or play or save melodies.

Example Saving an attached file

1 Display the Message R/F list ▶ Select a Message R/F ▶ Highlight the file name of an attached file ▶

- For the images, follow the procedure from Step 3 of "Downloading images". P170
- For the melodies, follow Step 3 of "Downloading melodies". P171
- For ToruCa, select the folder to save. However, a confirmation screen appears indicating that ToruCa (details) is not saved depending on ToruCa.
- ToruCa exceeding 1,024 bytes can be saved only to the microSD memory card.

■ Displaying and playing: Select the file name

- For the images, displaying/not displaying are switched.
- ToruCa exceeding 1,024 bytes cannot be displayed.

■ Displaying the title: Highlight the file name

▶

- Operation is not available for images.

INFORMATION

- To save the image inserted in the text or the background image, press and select *Save image* → *Select image* or *Save Background*, and then select an image.
- Some ToruCa cannot be saved more than once.

Protecting Message R/F

Protect Message

- The maximum number of items that can be protected P430
- Unread Message R/Fs cannot be protected.

1 Display the Message R/F list

2 Highlight a Message R/F ▶

The Message R/F is protected and the icon changes from to .

- To cancel protection: Highlight the Message R/F
▶

■ Protecting selected Message R/Fs:

▶ Select Message R/Fs ▶

■ Canceling protection of selected Message R/Fs: ▶ Select Message R/Fs ▶

■ Canceling protection of all the Message R/Fs:

INFORMATION

- On the Message R/F view screen, press and select *Protect* or *Release*.

Deleting Message R/F

Delete Message

- Protected Message R/Fs cannot be deleted.
Cancel protection first and then delete them.

1 Display the Message R/F list

2 Highlight a Message R/F

- Deleting only read Message R/Fs:

- Deleting selected Message R/Fs:

- Deleting all the Message R/Fs:

3 Yes

INFORMATION

- On the Message R/F view screen, press and select *Delete*.

Selecting the type of Message R/F to display

Display by Type

Display only the specified type of Message R/F temporarily on the Message R/F list. When you quit the display, *Display all* returns.

- You can select from *Display all*, *Display unread only*, *Display read only*, or *Display protected*.

1 Display the Message R/F list

-

- When you select *Display read only*, the protected Message R/F is not displayed.

Sorting Message R/F

Sort

Message R/Fs in the list are temporarily sorted. When you quit the display, *By date* returns.

- You can select *By date* or *By title*.

1 Display the Message R/F list

or

INFORMATION

- If one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, the result sorted by *By title* may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Operating certificates

Perform the operation of certificates required for the SSL communication.

Menu 2841

Displaying certificates and setting certificate validity/invalidity

Manage Certificate

Displaying a certificate

- When the UIM (Blue) is inserted in the FOMA terminal, the certificate other than CA certificate is not displayed.

1

Manage certificate 1/4	
	CA Certificate 1
	CA Certificate 2
	CA Certificate 3
	CA Certificate 4
	CA Certificate 5
	CA Certificate 6
	CA Certificate 7
	CA Certificate 8
	CA Certificate 9

Valid No icon: Invalid

— : Cannot be set

CA: CA certificate

: DoCoMo certificate/User certificate

: Original certificate

- When you select an original certificate, the list screen appears. Select a certificate.

CA Certificate :

It is a certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in the FOMA terminal by default.

DoCoMo Cert :

It is a certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass center and FirstPass compatible sites. It is saved in the UIM in advance.

User Certificate :

It is a certificate required for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites.

You request the FirstPass center to issue the certificate and download. The downloaded certificate is saved in the UIM.

Original certificate :

It is a certificate issued originally by companies or self-governing bodies and downloaded by you.

■ Changing the certificate name of the original certificate:

- 1 Highlight a certificate on the certificate list screen ▶
 - 2 Enter the certificate name (up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters) ▶
- To return to the user name:

■ Deleting the original certificate: Highlight a certificate on the certificate list screen ▶

- ▶ Yes ▶ Enter the terminal security code

Menu 2844

Skiping entry of the terminal security code when using original certificates Skip Password

When using an original certificate, authentication is performed by entering the terminal security code. Set whether to omit entry of the terminal security code when you reuse the original certificate for which authentication is completed.

Default Yes

1 ▶ or

Menu 2842

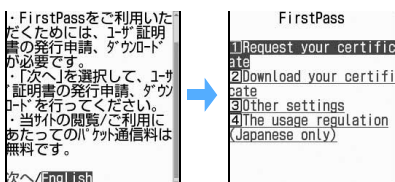
Setting FirstPass Certificate Download

Connect to the FirstPass center to request the issue of an user certificate and download it.

- The screens and operations displayed by the FirstPass center may be changed.
- Mail cannot be sent/received and Message R/F cannot be received while being connected to the FirstPass center.

1 ▶ English ▶

1 Request your certificate



■ Invalidating the issued user certificate:

- 1 ▶ English ▶ Other settings
- 2 Revoke your certificate ▶ Select User Certificate
- 3 Enter the PIN2 code ▶ Continue
- 4 Continue ▶ Continue

2 Continue



3 Enter the PIN2 code

- If the PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the request is canceled.

INFORMATION

- Certificate contents displayed:

User

CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

O= : (Organization) Company name, etc.

C= : (Country) Country name

Issued by

CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

OU= : (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company

O= : (Organization) Company name, etc.

Expiration date

Serial number

- When a certificate has no information on the user, issuer or expiration date, only the item names are displayed.

Setting validity/invalidity of certificate

1 ▶ ▶ Highlight a certificate ▶

- Pressing switches between on and off.
- Press to display the certificate.

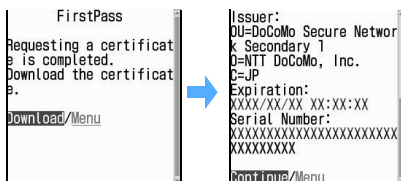
2

The checked certificate is set as valid.

INFORMATION

- DoCoMo Cert2 cannot be set as invalid.

4 Download ▶ Continue



- The downloaded user certificate is added to the certificate list. ◀P179

INFORMATION

- Packet communication fee is not charged for connection to the FirstPass center.
- The user certificate certifies that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. The downloaded user certificate is saved in the UIM and it can be used on FirstPass compatible sites.
- The original certificate is issued by companies or self-governing bodies. The downloaded certificate can be used on the site which supports the certificate.
- The original certificate can also be used for Full Browser.
- The packet communication fee at the time of downloading an original certificate is charged.
- If you install FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM to your PC, you can connect the FOMA terminal to the PC and perform communication using FirstPass. For details, see “[簡易操作マニュアル](#) (Simple User's Manual) (FirstPassManual.pdf)” in the attached CD-ROM. To view “[簡易操作マニュアル](#) (FirstPassManual.pdf)” (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required.
If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, install Adobe Reader in the same CD-ROM. For details of usage, see Adobe Reader Help.

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and the FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.
- FirstPass can be used for Internet communication using the FOMA terminal and for Internet communication using the FOMA terminal that is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with a PC, FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM is needed.
- When requesting the issue of a user certificate, be sure to read FirstPass usage regulation displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code.
- All the operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Use abundance of caution not to let the UIM or PIN2 code used by any third party.

- If the UIM is lost or stolen, you can contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual to have the user certificate nullified.
- Under no circumstances shall DoCoMo have any obligation or be held responsible for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that occurs must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier provides any guarantee for security, etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

Menu 2843

Changing the certificate host

Certificate Host

When you use services other than FirstPass, set the connection destination. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

- Downloading the original certificate ◀P173

[Default](#) [DoCoMo](#)

1

2 **Host field** ▶

- To restore the setting for connecting to FirstPass:
Host field ▶ ▶ Go to Step 5

3 **User host field** ▶ **Enter the connection destination (up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters)**

4 **User host URL field** ▶ **Enter the URL (up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters)**

5

i-motion

Images or sounds downloaded and saved from i-mode sites or websites can be played as “i-motion” or can be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion). i-motion such as vocals of your favorite singers can be used as ring alert as well as melodies (some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone).

Generally, there are two types of i-motion as follows. You cannot change or select the data type when downloading the data.

■ **Normal type (can be saved*1)**

Playing action	Description
Play while downloading data (up to 500 KB)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. After downloading of data is completed, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as the i-motion played after downloading all data.
Play after downloading data (up to 500 KB)	The i-motion file is played after downloading all data.

*1 Some i-motion cannot be saved.

■ **Streaming type (cannot be saved)**

Playing action	Description
Play while downloading data (up to 2 MB)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. The i-motion data is deleted after playback is completed and cannot be saved in the FOMA terminal.

Downloading i-motion from sites

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
 ▶ P430

1 Display a site ▶ Select i-motion

When downloading is finished, a message indicating that appears.

- If you try to download streaming type i-motion when *i-motion type setting* in i-motion Setting is set to *Normal type*, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to change the setting. Select *Yes* to change the setting to *Norm-Streaming* so that you can download the streaming type i-motion. ▶ P183
- When the streaming type i-motion is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay. Select *Yes* to replay while downloading i-motion.

■ **i-motion played while the data is being downloaded:**

i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded. After finishing the replay, the operation is the same as the i-motion replayed after downloading data.



Amount of received data/total data

- During playback, the following operations are available:
 - ⏸ : Pause/play (only normal type)
 - 🔊 : Adjust volume
 - ⏏ : Interrupt (streaming type)
Stop (normal type; press ⏸ to play from the beginning.)
 - ℹ : Display detail information
- Even if you pause or stop playing, the data reception continues.
- When the operation is interrupted, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select *Yes* to interrupt.

■ **i-motion played after downloading data:**

i-motion is played automatically when downloading is completed.



- During playback, the following operations are available:
 - ⏸ : Pause/play
 - 🔊 : Adjust volume
 - ⏩ : Fast forward
 - ⏮ : Rewind and play
 - ⏏ : Stop (the message is displayed indicating the completion of downloading.)
 - ℹ : Display detail information

2 Save

- Streaming type i-motion cannot be saved.
- To play i-motion again: *Play*
- To display detail information: *File property*
- To cancel saving: *Back ▶ No* (For streaming type i-motion, a confirmation screen does not appear.)

3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one- or two-byte characters) ▶

The downloaded i-motion is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion* in Data Box.

- When 📁 is indicated in the guide row, press ⏮ and press ⏏ to save the data in the microSD memory card. The list of folders for i-motion compatible with Movable Contents is displayed. Select a folder and press ⏏ to save. (To display a folder in the folder, select the folder.)

The current saving destination is checked by the display on the task bar.

- When saving to the terminal, press  to display the list of destination to use i-motion. For setting to the standby display, etc, follow Step 2 in "Setting video/i-motion to the standby display or phonebook data". ➡P286

■ When a link is set within ticker stream of downloaded i-motion:

If a link such as a phone number, a mail address, or a site URL is set in a ticker, you can use Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To, or Web To after playback is finished or interrupted. For Phone To and AV Phone To, the Call Option screen appears. For Mail To and Web To, a confirmation screen appears.

- If the i-motion is not saved, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save it.
- When the link type is Phone To (AV Phone To), pressing  allows you to add phone numbers to the phonebook. When the link type is Mail To, selecting *Add to phonebook* allows you to add mail addresses to the phonebook.
- When there are multiple link items, only one item will be effective. The item which is to become effective depends on i-motion data.

INFORMATION

- Only the i-motion in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and played. i-motion in ASF format cannot be downloaded and played.
- The replay restrictions such as number of replayable times or expiration of playback may be set for i-motion files.
- When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, replay may be paused in wait for data reception. The replay is automatically resumed when data reception is restarted.
- When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, i-motion may become unable to play or the i-motion image may be blurred depending on radio wave conditions. Even if in such a case, the i-motion can be replayed after the completion of downloading if the data is normally received. However, some i-motion files may allow downloading of data but may not be replayed correctly.
- Even for the type of i-motion which is played while the data is being downloaded, it may not be played during downloading depending on the status of sites.
- When i-motion data is improper, reception of i-motion may be canceled.
- When you use i-motion from i-appli and attempt to save it, sometimes it may not be saved even if *Ring alert* and *Receive display* are set to *Available* in the detail information. In this case, you cannot set the i-motion as the ring alert or incoming image.

- When there is an incoming call in case streaming type i-motion is being played while downloading or when the date and time specified by Alarm Clock or schedule arrives, downloading is interrupted and playing is stopped.
- When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete data. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the saved video/i-motion.

Menu 286

Setting auto play and the type of i-motion to be downloaded

i-motion Setting

Default Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON
i-motion type setting: Normal type

1 ▶ Set each item ▶

Auto replay setting :

Sets whether to automatically play normal type i-motion during or after downloading.

- Even when *Auto Play OFF* is set, i-motion can be played by selecting *Play* after downloading i-motion.
- For streaming type i-motion, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to play automatically regardless of the auto play setting.

i-motion type setting :

Sets the type of i-motion to be downloaded.

- When replaying streaming type i-motion, select *Norm·Streaming*.

INFORMATION

- On the site screen, press  and select *Display* → *i-motion settings*.

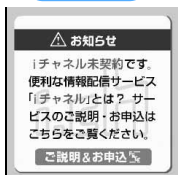
i-Channel

i-Channel is a service in which DoCoMo or IP delivers graphical information such as news and weather information to i-Channel compatible terminals.

Users can receive information regularly, and read the latest information as it appears as tickers on the standby display, or view it in the channel list by pressing the i-Channel compatible key () (Displaying the channel list ➡P185). Additionally, users can obtain rich, detail information by selecting a favorite channel in the channel list.

- i-Channel information is displayed in Japanese only.
- For important notes on using i-Channel and detail information about how to use i-Channel, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

Not signed

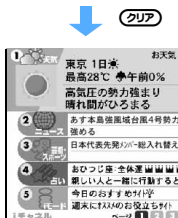


Before you sign up for i-Channel

After sign-up



After you sign up for i-Channel, tickers automatically run on the standby display as information is received or as you display the channel list.



Pressing **チャンネル** displays the channel list. Each channel contains various information in a list form including those that ran as tickers.



to make connection

You can select each channel to view detail information.

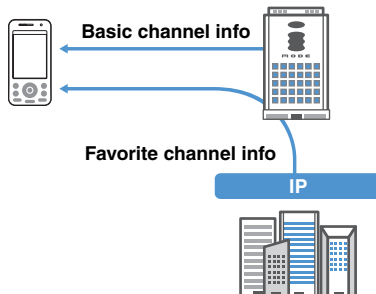
- The screens shown here are for information purpose only and may differ from the actual screens.

There are two types of channels: “Basic channel” and “Favorite channel”. Basic channel is pre-registered channels provided by DoCoMo and ready for use immediately after i-Channel sign-up. Packet communication fee for automatic information update in relation to Basic channel is included in the i-Channel service fee. Favorite channel is provided by non-DoCoMo IPs and users register their desired channel for viewing. Packet communication fee for automatic information update and other fees in relation to Favorite channel are not included in the i-Channel service fee. Both the information on Basic channel and Favorite channel can be displayed as a ticker on the standby display.

- Information charge may be imposed to use Favorite channel.
- Some Favorite channels require separate sign-up to the IPs who provide the channels.
- Viewing detail information from the channel list, whether Basic channel or Favorite channel information, causes separate packet communication fee that is not covered by the i-Channel service fee.

i-mode terminal

i-mode Center



i-Channel is a pay service for which subscription is required. (You need an i-mode subscription in order to subscribe to i-Channel.)

- Operating i-Channel **☎185**

Trial channel

Basic channel is available for free of service charge for a set period of time to i-mode subscribers who use an i-Channel compatible terminal, and who have never signed up for the subscriber line. However, packet communication fee caused by viewing the detail information from the channel list is to be borne by the users.

- For important notes on using Trial channel and detail information about how to use the service, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

In principle, Trial channel automatically starts after a set amount of time once the UIM (FOMA card) is inserted and the i-Channel compatible terminal goes into use. If Trial channel does not start automatically, you can start it by pressing **チャンネル**.

Trial channel is available only once per subscriber line.

Trial channel automatically stops after a certain period of time following the service start. For information about how to stop the channel on the way, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

- Neither ring alert nor vibrator operates at the reception of information. Likewise, the Enter key does not light or flash.
- If you cancel i-Channel or i-mode service subscription, tickers are no longer displayed. Pressing **[2UP]** displays the pre-subscription screen. Until the cancellation procedure has finished, however, tickers may be displayed on the screen and pressing **[2UP]** may display the last received information in the channel list.
- When **Show ticker** is set to **No** in i-Channel Ticker, no tickers are displayed.
- If you cannot receive information because the power of the FOMA terminal is turned off or due to out-of-service area or poor signal conditions, when receiving is available, press **[2UP]** to receive information.
- **[P]** blinks during reception of information.
- You can change the i-Channel host (although you usually do not need to change it).
 - Operating procedure ➤ P175

Displaying i-Channel

Channel List

1


The channel list appears.

- When video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-αppli is set as the standby display: **[7]** **[1]**
 - i-Channel is not displayed even if **[2UP]** is pressed.

2 Select a channel

Your terminal connects to the site and the detail information appears.

- Depending on the situation of use, information may be received when displaying the channel list.

INFORMATION

- To refresh the channel list, press **[MENU]** in the channel list and select **Retry**.
- When you press **[MENU]** in the channel list and select **Sound effect setting**, you can set whether to enable sound effects for Flash movie. For setting, see "Setting image display and sound effects". ➤ P176

Changing i-Channel settings

i-Channel Ticker

You can set whether to run tickers of the received i-Channel information on the standby display. You can also set the ticker running speed.

- When **Show ticker** is set to **Yes**, up to 10 tickers for the newest information are shown on the standby display each time the standby display appears until the display items disappear. When **Show ticker** is set to **No**, no tickers are displayed.
- In the default state or in case the UIM is replaced or the host address 2 is changed, if the i-Channel information is automatically updated or if you press **[2UP]** to display the channel list, the ticker is displayed and you can set i-Channel Ticker.

Default **Show ticker: Yes** **Ticker speed: Normal**
1

▶ Set each item

Show ticker :

Select **Yes** or **No**.

Ticker speed :

Select **Slow**, **Normal** or **Fast**.

2


- When **Show ticker** is set to **Yes**, a confirmation screen appears when video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-αppli is set as the standby display. If you select **Yes**, the video/i-motion, Chara-den or i-αppli is released.

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, i-Channel information cannot be displayed in the ticker.
 - In All Lock
 - In PIM Lock
 - In Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - When the UIM not inserted
- After replacing the UIM, i-Channel Ticker returns to its default.

Restoring i-Channel information to the default settings

Reset i-Channel

You can delete all the received information of i-Channel and restore the default settings.

- The setting for i-Channel Ticker is retained.

1    ► *Yes*

INFORMATION

- If Reset i-Channel is performed, tickers on the standby display disappear. Pressing  on the standby display and displaying the channel list receives the latest information. When *Show ticker* is set to *Yes*, tickers will be displayed on the standby display.

Mail

FOMA terminal mail function	188
Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail	
Composing and sending i-mode Mail	Compose Message 191
Composing and sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail 192
Attaching files	Attachment 195
Using mail templates	198
Saving i-mode Mail for sending later	Save Mail 199
Composing mail quickly	Quick Mail 200
Receiving and handling i-mode Mail	
Receiving i-mode Mail	Mail Auto Receive 200
Selecting i-mode Mail to receive	Receive Option 202
Checking for i-mode Mail	Check i-mode Message 202
Replying to received i-mode Mail	Reply to Mail 202
Forwarding received i-mode Mail	Forward Mail 203
Displaying, playing and saving attachments from i-mode Mail	Display/Play/Save Attachment 203
Using the mail box	
Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox	Inbox/Outbox 207
Useful functions of mail	213
Saving mails in the Data Center	Data Security Service 214
Using the mail log	
Using the mail log	Received Msg. Log/Sent Msg. Log 215
Setting mail	
Setting mail functions of the FOMA terminal	Mail Setting 216
Using chat mail	
Composing and sending chat mail	Compose Chat Mail 222
Using SMS (Short Message)	
Composing and sending SMS	Compose SMS 225
When SMS is received	Receive SMS 226
Checking for SMS	Check SMS 227
Making SMS settings	SMS Setting 227
Saving SMS to the UIM	Save SMS to UIM 227

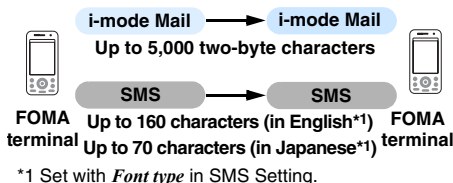
FOMA terminal mail function

The FOMA terminal provides two types of mail functions: i-mode Mail and SMS.

- To use i-mode Mail, an i-mode subscription is required.
- You can use SMS without an i-mode subscription.

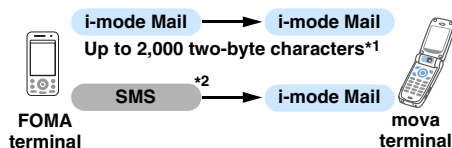
Sending and receiving mail

FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal



FOMA terminal → mova terminal

SMS sent from a FOMA terminal is received by a mova terminal as i-mode Mail.

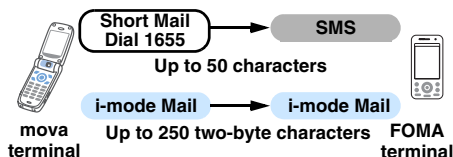


*1 The limit varies by the settings of a mova terminal.

*2 When you set the delivered report to *Request* in SMS Setting, SMS cannot be sent to the mova terminal.

mova terminal → FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal receives Short Mail sent from a mova terminal as an SMS message.



- Short Mail Service allows the exchange of text messages between mova service mobile phones.

i-mode Mail

i-mode subscribers can send and receive mail to and from other i-mode terminals (including mova terminal) or via Internet e-mail.

In addition to the text, files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF, etc.) can be attached up to 10 items within a total of 2 Mbytes. Also, it supports Deco-mail and the font color, size and background color of characters of the mail text can be changed. Since many Deco-mail pictograms which can be inserted like pictograms are preinstalled, you can compose richly expressive mail easily and send it.

The mail address for i-mode subscribers is constructed as follows:

When you newly subscribe to i-mode

The part of the address preceding the @ symbol is a combination of random alphanumeric characters. Be sure to check your mail address after subscribing to i-mode.

Example: abc1234~789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

• How to check your mail address

iMenu → *English iMenu* → *Options* → *Mail Settings* → *Confirm Mail Address*

- For mail exchange between i-mode terminals (including mova terminal), mail can be sent also only with the address before the @ symbol.
- For receiving e-mail from a PC, use the entire address including @docomo.ne.jp.
- Sending mail ➡P191
- Receiving mail ➡P200
- For details of i-mode service, see the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

■ Receive Option

You can check the subject of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and select the mail to receive or delete without receiving it. ➡P202

Mail settings

The following settings can be made for mail:

Setting procedure

iMenu → *English iMenu* → *Options* → *Mail Settings* → Follow each setting in [] below.

- For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

■ Changing the mail address [Mail Address (Change Mail Address)]

You can change the address before the @ symbol to another, such as "docomo.△△_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp".

■ **Checking the mail address** [*Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)*]

You can check your current mail address.

■ **Registering a secret code** [*Mail Address (Other Settings) → Register a Secret Code*]

When you use the phone number address, a 4-digit secret code can be registered in addition to the mail address. Since mail with no secret code specified is not received, you can avoid receiving unnecessary mail.

■ **Resetting the mail address** [*Mail Address (Other Settings) → Reset Mail Address*]

You can set your mail address to "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp".

■ **Spam Mail Prevention**

You can restrict incoming mail by setting to receive/reject mail in one of the following methods:

① **Rejecting Mail with URL** [*Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → Reject Mail with URL*]

You can set to reject mail with the URL of the sites that NetSTAR Inc. judges that it corresponds to categories such as dating site, sexually explicit site, illegal site, and security site among i-mode mails.

② **Reject/Receive Mail Settings** [*Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → Reject/Receive Mail Settings*]

You can specify carrier(s) from which you want to receive mail out of DoCoMo, au, SoftBank, Tu-Ka, and WILLCOM.

In addition, you can receive only mails from the specified domain(s) or address(es). Even if the carrier or domain is specified, you can reject mails by specifying the mail address that you want to reject individually. You can also reject only the mail that pretends to be the domain of the mobile phone/PHS via Internet among the mail through carriers other than the above.

③ **SMS Rejection Settings** [*Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → SMS Rejection Settings*]

You can set to reject SMS to be received and select from 4 options, *Reject All SMS*, *Reject Anonymous SMS*, *Reject Intl. SMS* or *Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS*. You can also confirm the current settings.

④ **Rejecting mass i-mode Mail senders**

[*Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders*]

The 200th and later i-mode mails sent from an i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) in a single day are rejected. The initial setting is *Reject* and you do not need to make any settings to reject mail from large-volume senders.

⑤ **Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail (mail with “未承諾広告※”) [Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail]**

Unsolicited mail sent for the purpose of advertising and publicity without the receiver's consent that is marked with “未承諾広告※” at the beginning of the subject can be rejected. The initial setting is *Reject* and you do not need to make any settings to reject such mail. (The sender is required by law to add “未承諾広告※” (6 two-byte characters) at the beginning of the subject.)

■ **Restricting mail size** [*Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)*]

You can restrict the i-mode Mail you receive to a specified size.

■ **Checking current settings** [*Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)*]

You can check the current settings for receiving/rejecting mail, etc.

■ **Suspending i-mode Mail function** [*Suspend Mail*]

If you do not use the mail function, you can stop it in the i-mode Center.

When you cannot receive mail

The i-mode Mail received by the i-mode Center is immediately sent to your i-mode terminal. However, when you cannot receive mail because the terminal is turned off or out of the service area, the mail is resent until it is received for 720 hours for which mail is saved.

- When the mail is not received, it is saved in the i-mode Center for 720 hours.
- Resending conditions change according to the conditions for which you cannot receive mail.

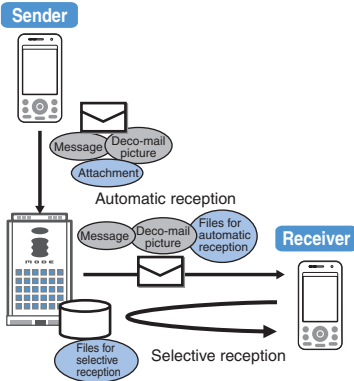
You can also select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center using Receive Option.

Other useful functions

■ **Sending and receiving attachments**

For i-mode Mail (compatible with 2-Mbyte files), it is possible to attach all the file types. The files up to 10 items within a total of 2 Mbytes can be attached to mail for sending. When receiving as i-mode Mail (compatible with 2-Mbyte files), it is possible to receive all the file types. You can receive automatically up to 100 Kbytes (automatic reception of attachments), and for the attachment up to 2 Mbytes exceeding 100 Kbytes, you can select and receive only files you need (selective reception of attachments). In addition, attachments of which size is 100 Kbytes or less can also be selected and received regardless of the size by Incoming Msg. Attach of the terminal.

When receiving by other models, only the compatible file types are received within the mail receiving capacity of the terminal.



Deco-mail

Compose and send your original i-mode mails by changing the character size/background color or inserting images in the text, and also enjoy receiving decorated mail. In addition, since many Deco-mail pictograms which can be inserted like pictograms are preinstalled, you can compose richly expressive mail easily and send it (when decorated mail is received from a PC, operations may not be the same as on PC because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals).

When Deco-mail is sent to non-compatible terminals and Deco-mail compatible terminals up to 10,000 bytes, it may be received as mail containing a URL. In that case, the receiver can view Deco-mail by clicking the displayed URL.

- Editing Deco-mail ◀P192
- Sending Deco-mail ◀P192
- Supporting models: Available with Deco-mail compatible models. For details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

SMS (Short Message)

Text messages can be exchanged between the FOMA terminals.

- Sending ◀P225
- Receiving ◀P226
- Checking for SMS ◀P227

Address of SMS

The address of SMS is the subscribed mobile phone number.

- You can exchange SMS with users of overseas service provider other than DoCoMo. For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The maximum number of characters differs depending on the font type setting. ◀P227

Item	English	Japanese
Address	20 characters (numbers only)*1	
Message	160 one-byte characters*2	70 one- or two-byte characters

*1 If a one-byte “+” is contained, up to 21 characters can be entered.

*2 One-byte alphanumeric and symbols (except for “_”, “[”, “.” and “”) can be sent.
When symbols (“|”, “^”, “{”, “}”, “[”, “]”, “~” and “¥”) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced.

When you cannot receive SMS

SMS sent to your FOMA terminal is received by the SMS Center and sent to your FOMA terminal immediately. When you cannot receive the messages because the terminal is turned off or outside the service area, the messages are stored in the SMS Center.

INFORMATION

- The SMS Center can store messages up to 72 hours. The sender can specify the storage period. ◀P227
- The messages are automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.
- You can use Check SMS to receive the messages stored in the SMS Center. ◀P227
- When the FOMA terminal receives the messages stored in the SMS Center, the messages are deleted from the Center. The received SMS is saved to the FOMA terminal.

Other useful functions

Delivered report

You can receive a delivered report that informs you whether the other party has received the sent SMS. ◀P227

Saving to the UIM

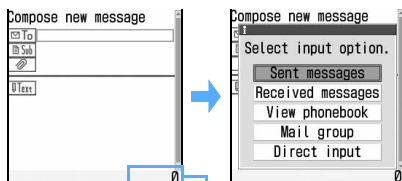
You can save the received and sent SMS to the UIM. ◀P227

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

Compose Message

Example

Composing and sending i-mode Mail by entering an address directly

1 **field**

Mail composition screen

The number of total bytes of the characters and decoration data in the message (1 two-byte character is 2 bytes)

2 **Direct input** ▶ Enter the address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- When sending mail to an i-mode terminal, you may omit "@docomo.ne.jp" in the mail address.
- In 5-touch Input Method, press  repeatedly in the alphabet input mode to enter ".", "@", "-", etc. In addition, ".com", ".ne.jp", ".co.jp", etc. can be entered by pressing  repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.
- When the other party has registered a secret code, enter the other party's i-mode terminal phone number followed by the 4-digit secret code.

■ **Selecting from the sent message log:** *Sent messages* ▶ Select a log

- The address of mail receiver is set.

■ **Selecting from the received message log:** *Received messages* ▶ Select a log

- The address of mail sender is set.

■ **Searching the phonebook:** *View phonebook* ▶ Select a party■ **Using a mail group:** *Mail group* ▶ Select a mail group

- If the total of entered addresses exceeds 5, the mail group cannot be added.
- Highlight a mail group and press  to check the mail group details.

3 **field** ▶ Enter the subject (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters)4 ▶ Enter the message (up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters)

- Line feeds can be inserted in the message.
Press  to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method (except for the one-byte/two-byte numeric modes).
- A space of one- or two-byte or a line feed is also counted as a character in the message.
- If Deco-mail pictogram (pictogram D) is inserted in the message, it will become Deco-mail.
- Text can be decorated. 

■ **Inserting a signature:**

- Signature must be registered beforehand.

5

- Pressing  on the connecting screen or pressing  on the sending screen stops sending and saves the i-mode Mail to the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*. However, depending on the operation timing, the mail may not be saved in the *Unsent messages* folder, or the mail may be sent even if it is saved in the folder.
- When you are outside the service area and the number of auto-send mails already saved is 4 or less, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to send mail automatically in the service area. When you select *Yes*, the mail is saved as auto-send mail in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*.

INFORMATION

- When mail exceeding 10,000 bytes was automatically saved due to start of other functions, part of the mail being composed may not be saved.
- Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- When transmission is completed correctly, the i-mode Mail is saved in the *Outbox* folder of *Outbox*. However, when the sent mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder. When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.
- When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and the i-mode Mail is saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*. You can edit and send i-mode Mail from *Unsent messages*.
- Even if i-mode Mail is sent correctly, "Transmission failed." may be displayed depending on signal conditions, and the mail may be saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*.

- If you send i-mode Mail including pictograms to other mobile phone companies (au/SoftBank/Tu-Ka), it is automatically converted to the similar pictograms supported by the receiver side.
 - Depending on the model or function of the receiver's mobile phone, the pictograms may not be displayed correctly.
 - If there is no corresponding pictograms supported by the receiver side, it is converted to characters or "■".
- Depending on the settings of the receiver's terminal such as the number of characters that can be displayed, the font or its display size, face marks may not be displayed correctly and their shapes and views may be different from the original ones.
- An error message for address unknown etc. may not be received when mail is sent to addresses other than DoCoMo.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, i-mode Mail cannot be composed and sent. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and SMS from *Unsent messages*. ◀P212

Adding receivers

Add Address

You can send i-mode Mail to up to 5 addresses at one time (Multi-address transmission).

- There are three address types:  (TO),  (CC) and  (BCC).
 -  : Used for usual addresses.
 -  : Used when you want to inform the other party of the content of the particular mail sent to the TO address.
 -  : Used when you want to inform the other party as with CC, but the BCC-specified address is not shown for the other party.
- Mail with no address entered in the  field cannot be sent.

1 Highlight the address field on the mail composition screen

An address field is added.

■ Adding CC and BCC:

- ①   on the mail composition screen
 - ▶ Select an input method
- ② CC or BCC ▶ Enter a mail address
 - Also TO can be selected.
 - When you have added by selecting *Mail group*, TO, CC and BCC are set as registered for the mail group.

■ Changing TO, CC and BCC: Highlight an address field

  ▶ Select an address type

- Deleting the added address field: Highlight an address field   ▶ Yes
 - Only the address in the field is deleted when there is only one field.

2 Enter the address in the added field

INFORMATION

- The mail addresses entered in the  field and  field are displayed at the receiver side. However, it may not be displayed depending on the terminal, device, or mailing software.
- When sending of mail to some addresses fails, an error message is displayed. Pressing  may display a list of mail addresses for which transmission failed.

Composing and sending Deco-mail

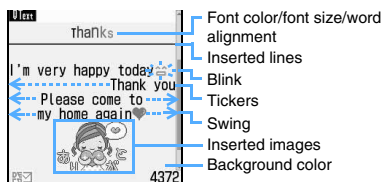
Deco-mail

You can decorate the i-mode mail message by changing the font size, font color, or background color and inserting the shot still images.

Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail pictogram (pictogram D) set by default can also be used to compose Deco-mail.

- The size of Deco-mail which can be sent is less than 100 Kbytes, which is the total size of the mail text and the images inserted in the text. In addition, the files up to 10 items or 2 Mbytes can be attached.

■ Examples of decoration



■ Flow of Deco-mail composition

Step 1 Display the message text entry screen from the mail composition screen



Start composing i-mode Mail on the entry screen for message text.

Step 2 Enter characters and set decorations



- Specify the decoration and then enter the characters. ◀P193
- Enter the characters and then specify the decoration. ◀P194
- Press   during editing to check the decoration on the preview screen.

Step 3 Confirm the decoration before sending

Check the decoration on the mail composition screen.

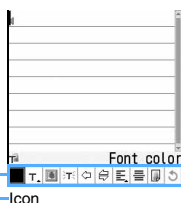
INFORMATION

- Even if you delete decorated characters, the decoration data may remain and the number of characters that can be entered may be fewer. Cancel the decoration first and then delete characters. Holding down **[2nd]** for over a second deletes all the characters and decoration data (except the background color).
- When sent and received to/from other than the Deco-mail compatible FOMA terminal such as a PC, the decoration in Deco-mail may not be correctly displayed.
- When Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes is sent to Deco-mail compatible terminals other than the following terminal*1, the mail with URL for viewing is received at the receiver side.
*1 903i series, 904i series, 703i series (except P703iμ) and 704i series (except P704iμ)
- When Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes is sent to a Deco-mail non-compatible terminal, the mail with URL for viewing is received at the receiver. However, when the size of Deco-mail exceeds 10,000 bytes, some non-compatible terminal may receive only the text, and mail without URL for viewing may be received.
- The actions of decoration such as blink, ticker, swing, and animation stop automatically after a certain period of time on the mail composition screen or the preview screen.
- If Deco-mail pictogram (pictogram D) is entered in the message, it will become Deco-mail.

Entering characters after specifying the decoration

1 **[U]Text** on the mail composition screen ►

2 **Select a decoration ► Enter characters**



Decoration selection screen

Highlight an icon on the decoration selection screen and press to select a decoration. For the operations, see “Operations on the decoration selection screen”. ◀P193

■ **Setting selected decorations: Highlight icons on the decoration selection screen** ►

- *Ticker*, *Swing* and *Word alignment* cannot be selected at the same time.

■ **Canceling a selected decoration and enter characters: Place the cursor on the character entry position** ► ►

- *Font color*, *Font size*, *Blink*, *Ticker*, *Swing* and *Word alignment* can be canceled.

■ **Changing the decoration: 1 8** ► **Place the cursor on the start position** ►



- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in “Specifying decoration after entering characters”. ◀P194

■ **Canceling all the decorations: 1 9**

3

► **Check the decoration** ►

- You can check the set decoration and the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered.

4



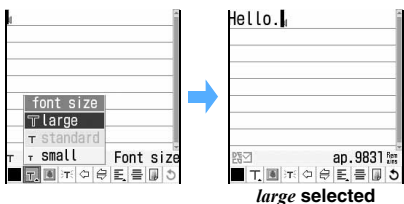
Operations on the decoration selection screen

■ **Changing the font color: ► Select a color**
► **Enter characters**



- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in *Other color*.
- The colors of pictograms 1 and 2 are also changed. To return to the original color, specify the range and select *Default*. For operations, see “Specifying decoration after entering characters”. ◀P194

■ **Changing the font size: (or) ► Select a size ► Enter characters**



- The size of Deco-mail pictogram cannot be changed.

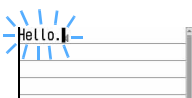
■ **Inserting images: ► Phone memory ► Select a folder ► Select an image**



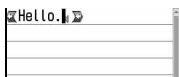
The image is inserted at the cursor position.

- When **Phone memory** is selected, an image that cannot be inserted is not displayed. When **microSD** is selected, in case of selecting an image that cannot be inserted, a message appears indicating that it cannot be inserted.
- To insert an image from the microSD memory card: **microSD** ▶ **1** - **3** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image
- To shoot a still image and insert it: **Use still camera** ▶ **Shoot** ▶ **📷**
 - The size of still image is automatically set to 96 x 72 (phonebook).
- Deco-mail pictogram can also be inserted by the procedure for entering pictograms. ➡P365
- Up to 20 images within a total of 90 Kbytes can be inserted. The same image may be inserted up to more than 20 items.
- When an image is inserted, the number of bytes of text increases by the size of not actual image size but the decoration data size which indicates an insertion of the image.
- Deco-mail pictures and Deco-mail pictograms set by default ➡P392, P393

■ Making characters blink: **⏏** ▶ Enter characters

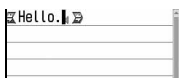


■ Making characters into ticker to run from right to left: **⏏** ▶ Enter characters



- Enter characters between **📷** and **📷**.

■ Making characters swing left and right: **📷** ▶ Enter characters



- Enter characters between **📷** and **📷**.

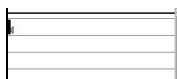
■ Changing word alignment: **≡** (or **≡**, **≡**) ▶ Select the display position ▶ Enter characters



right selected

- When characters are already entered and the cursor is placed between characters, a new blank line is started at the selected position.

■ Inserting lines (ruled lines): **≡**



A line (ruled line) is inserted in the color specified with font color (**■**).

■ Changing text background color: **📷** ▶ Select a color



- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in **Other color**.

■ Restoring the previous condition: **⏏**

The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

Specifying decoration after entering characters

You can decorate entered characters or change the decoration of characters by specifying the range.

- You cannot insert lines or images, or change the background color. Specify the decoration first.

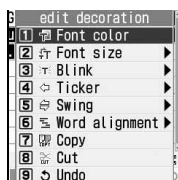
1 Highlight the start position on the message text entry screen ▶ **📷**

2 Place the cursor at the end position ▶ **📷**



- To select from the start position to the beginning of the text: **MENU** **📷**
- To select from the start position to the end of the text: **📷** **📷**
- To select all the text: **📷**

3 Select the decoration method



- The procedure for confirming and canceling decorations is the same as when entering characters after specifying the decoration. ➡P193

- **Changing the font color:** (1) ▶ **Select a color**
 - The color of lines (ruled lines) is also changed.
- **Changing the font size:** (2) ▶ (1) - (3)
- **Making characters blink/canceling it:** (3) ▶ (1) or (2)
- **Making characters into ticker/canceling it:** (4) ▶ (1) or (2)
- **Making characters swing/canceling it:** (5) ▶ (1) or (2)
- **Changing the word alignment:** (6) ▶ (1) - (3)
 - The display position of an image is also changed.
- **Copying characters:** (7)
- **Cutting characters:** (8)
- **Restoring the previous condition:** (9)
 - The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.
- **Decorating characters continuously:** (MENU) ▶ **Repeat Step 3**

4

The selection of decorated characters is canceled.

- You can also cancel it by pressing (X).

5

INFORMATION

- Press (MENU) (OK) on the message text entry screen to display the preview screen and confirm the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered.

Attaching melodies to Deco-mail

Melo-deco

1 (X) on the decoration selection screen

- When a melody is already attached, the list of attached melodies is displayed. Go to Step 3, "Attaching another melody" or "Removing an attached melody".

2 Select a folder

- When a microSD memory card is inserted, select *Phone memory* or *microSD* and then select a folder.

3 Select a melody

The melody is attached and its file name and file size are displayed in the list of attached melodies.

- When *Phone memory* is selected, melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed. Highlight a melody and press (D) to play the melody. Press (X) to attach it or (ZUP) to return to the list.

- When *microSD* is selected, if you select a melody that cannot be attached, a message appears indicating that the file cannot be selected. Highlight a melody and press (D) to play the melody or press (X) to return to the list.

■ Attaching another melody:

① (MENU) ▶ Select a folder

- When a microSD memory card is inserted, press (MENU), select *Phone memory* or *microSD* and then select a folder.

② Select a melody

■ Removing an attached melody: Highlight a melody ▶ (X) ▶ Yes

- If all the melodies are deleted, a message appears indicating that there is no attached melodies. Press (X).

■ Playing melodies: Select a melody

- Completing the play returns to the list.

4

(X) appears at the lower part of the screen.

5

Melodies for mail attachment

The following melodies are registered in the *Mail attach melody* folder by default.

Title	Song title (composer name in [])
クリスマス (Christmas)	JOY TO THE WORLD [HANDEL GEORGE FRIDERIC/MASON LOWELL]
結婚式 (Wedding)	BRIDAL MARCH [WAGNER RICHARD WILHELM]
誕生日 (Birthday)	—
嬉しい (Glad)	—
悲しい (Sad)	—

- The composer's names are described in accordance with the JASRAC website.

Attaching files

Attachment

You can send i-mode Mail with the file attached:

- The maximum number of files that can be attached is 10, and the total size of attachments that can be saved is a maximum of 2 Mbytes.
- Sending may take some time depending on the size of attachment.

The type of file which can be attached

File type	Restriction	Remarks
Image	Only images in JPEG and GIF formats can be attached. Created animations cannot be attached.	① ②
Video/ i-motion	Files with replay restriction set cannot be attached. The file without replay restrictions set may not be attached, either.	③
Melody	The melodies in the <i>Preinstalled</i> folder cannot be attached. Even if the melody in MFi format is attached, it is not inserted in the message.	④
ToruCa	Some ToruCa in the <i>Used ToruCa</i> folder cannot be attached. Depending on the settings of IP (Information Provider), some ToruCa cannot be attached, either.	⑤
PDF data	PDF data in the <i>Preinstalled</i> folder cannot be attached.	—
Schedule	TV program schedules cannot be attached.	—
Phonebook	—	—
Bookmark	—	—
Recorded voice	—	⑥
Others	The file of Word, Excel or PowerPoint, or non-viewable file is attached.	—

① When you send mail with a JPEG image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to the terminal other than the following models*1, the image is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that can be received at the receiver's terminal.

*1 903i series, 904i series, 703i series (except P703i μ) and 704i series (except P704i μ)

② Depending on the receiver's device (terminal, PC, etc.), images will be received as attachments to mail or a mail containing URLs.

③ Depending on the receiver's model, video/i-motion is not received or displayed correctly, or may be degraded or displayed as continuous images. When sending video to the terminal other than the following models*1, video with the size restriction: Msg attach: (Small), image size: 176 x 144 (QCIF) and quality: HQ (Best quality) is recommended.

*1 903i series, 904i series, 703i series (except P703i μ) and 704i series (except P704i μ)

④ When sent to the terminal other than the following models*1, melodies may not play correctly at the receiver side.

*1 D703i, D704i, D903i, D903iTV or D904i

⑤ Some receiver's terminal may not receive ToruCa (details).

⑥ The data recorded with Sound Recorder is saved as i-motion and can be attached to mail.

Attaching files and sending them

1 field on the mail composition screen

2 Select a file type ▶ Select a file ▶

The file name is displayed in the  field.

When the file name is too long to be displayed, highlight the  field and press

   to display the file name.

- You can display or play the attached file by selecting the  field. However, the following files cannot be displayed and played:
 - Melody exceeding 100 Kbytes
 - ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbytes and ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 Kbytes
 - A file which includes multiple types of data among phonebook, schedule and bookmark
 - Non-viewable file

■ Attaching an image:

① Image

② Phone memory ▶ Select a folder

- To select from the microSD memory card: *microSD* ▶  -  ▶ Select a folder
- To shoot a still image and attach it: *Activate camera* ▶ Shoot an image ▶ 
 - The size of images is automatically set to 240 x 320 (standby).

③ Select an image

- Images that cannot be attached are not displayed. Highlight an image and press  to display. Press  to attach it or  to return to the list.
- For a JPEG image with the image size exceeding 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to reduce it to 240 x 320 (QVGA). Select *Yes* to convert.
- For a JPEG image exceeding 2 Mbytes, it is automatically reduced to a size that can be attached to mail. This operation may take some time.

■ Attaching video/i-motion:

① i-motion

② Phone memory ▶ Select a folder

- To select from the microSD memory card: **microSD** ▶ **(4)** or **(5)** ▶ Select a folder
- To record and attach video: **Activate camera** ▶ **Record** ▶ **(⊕)**
 - The size of video images is automatically set to 176 x 144 (QCIF).

③ Select a video/i-motion file

- When **Phone memory** is selected, video/i-motion that cannot be attached is not displayed. Highlight video/i-motion and press **(⏮)** to play. Completing the play returns to the list.
- When **microSD** is selected, if you select video/i-motion that cannot be attached, a message appears indicating that the file cannot be attached. Highlight a video/i-motion file and press **(⏮)** to play. Pressing **(⏮)** returns to the list.

■ Attaching a melody:

① Melody

- When a microSD memory card is inserted, select **Melody** and then select **Phone memory** or **microSD**.

② Select a folder ▶ Select a melody

- When **Phone memory** is selected, melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed. Highlight a melody and press **(⏮)** to play. Press **(⊕)** to attach it or **(⏮)** to return to the list.
- When **microSD** is selected, if you select a melody that cannot be attached, a message appears indicating that the file cannot be attached. Highlight a melody and press **(⏮)** to play and pressing **(⊕)** returns to the list.

■ Attaching ToruCa:

① ToruCa

- When inserting the microSD memory card, select **ToruCa** and select **Phone memory** or **microSD**.

② Select a folder ▶ Select ToruCa

- When ToruCa (details) can be attached, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to attach to the mail, including details.
- When ToruCa (details) cannot be attached, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to attach ToruCa without details. If **Yes** is selected, the details are cut off, but when there is detail information on the site, the details can be downloaded at the receiver side.

- Highlight ToruCa and press **(⏮)** to confirm the contents. Press **(⊕)** to attach it or **(⏮)** to return to the list.
- If you select any ToruCa that cannot be attached, a message appears indicating that the data cannot be attached.

■ Attaching PDF data:

① PDF

- When inserting the microSD memory card, select **PDF** and select **Phone memory** or **microSD**.

② Select a folder ▶ Select PDF data

- For **Phone memory**, PDF data that cannot be attached is not displayed. Highlight PDF data and press **(⏮)** to display the data. Press **(⏮)** to return to the list.

■ Attaching a schedule:

① Schedule

- When inserting the microSD memory card, select **Schedule** and select **Phone memory** or **microSD**.

② Select a date ▶ Select a schedule ▶ **(⊕)**

■ Attaching a bookmark:

① Bookmark

- When inserting the microSD memory card, select **Bookmark** and select **Phone memory** or **microSD**. When **microSD** is selected, go to Step ③.

② Select a folder

- For **Phone memory**, press **(⏮)** in the folder list to switch between bookmarks of i-mode and bookmarks of Full Browser.

③ Select a bookmark

- Highlight a bookmark and press **(⏮)** to display the URL. Press **(⏮)** to return to the list.

■ Attaching phonebook data:

① Phonebook

- When inserting the microSD memory card, select **Phonebook** and select **Phone memory** or **microSD**.

② Select a phonebook entry ▶ **(⊕)**

■ Recording sound and attaching it: **Record voice** ▶ **Record (Sound Recorder)** ▶ **(⊕)**

■ Attaching a Word, Excel, PowerPoint file:

① Other

- When inserting the microSD memory card, select **Other** and select **Phone memory** or **microSD**.

② Select a folder ▶ Select a file

- **Attaching a non-viewable file: Other** ▶
microSD ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a file

INFORMATION

- Only one JPEG image can be attached and sent to a mova terminal. In this case, it is received as a mail containing a URL (i-shot Mail). The attached files other than JPEG image will be deleted and mail with no attachment will be delivered.
- If you send mail with the file which the receiver's terminal does not support attached, the attached file may be deleted in the i-mode Center.
- Files prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA terminal (except images and melodies with the file restriction set to *File restricted* on your terminal or the PDF data which is obtained from *Data transfer* and files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be attached.
- Images exceeding 10,000 bytes can be reduced to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA). ●P281

Changing/removing attachments

Example Removing an attachment

1 Display the mail composition screen

2 Highlight field ▶ ▶ Yes

- **Changing the attachment: Highlight**  field ▶  ▶ Attach a file ●P195

Using mail templates

Mail templates are samples of the i-mode Mail. You can easily compose i-mode Mail by using mail templates; adding and editing the content. In addition, the Deco-mail also can be composed easily by using the mail template that has the decoration such as images predefined. You can use the mail templates downloaded from the sites (●P172) or those you have composed besides the mail templates set by default (●P392).

- Mail templates downloaded or composed are saved in *Read templates* as well as the mail templates set by default.
- You cannot use templates for SMS.

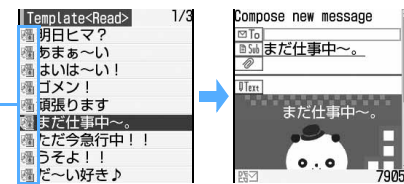
Using templates while composing mail

Read Template

1 on the mail composition screen

- Highlight a template and press  to display the template. Press  to read it or press  to return to the list.

2 Select a template



 : Image attached	 : Word file attached
 : Melody attached	 : Excel file attached
 : Video/i-motion file attached	 : PowerPoint file attached
 : ToruCa attached	 : Non-viewable files attached
 : PDF data attached	 : Files of various types attached
 : Schedule attached	
 : Bookmark attached	
 : Phonebook attached	

- When you read a template on the mail composition screen after entering any text, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite the mail contents. When you select *Read body only* and then select a template, only the message text is overwritten with the template. When you select *Read all* and then select a template, the address, subject, attachment, and message text are all overwritten. Press  to stop reading.
- Multiple templates cannot be read for one mail.

3 Edit the mail ▶

Menu 18

Displaying templates and composing mail

Read Template

1 ▶ Select a template

- Press  to display the previous or next template.

2 ▶ Edit the mail ▶

Saving templates

Save Template

Composed or received/sent i-mode Mail can be registered as a template.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
➡ P430
- You can edit a preinstalled template and save it as a new template.
- In the following cases, the mail cannot be registered as a template:
 - When the total size of the text and decoration exceeds 10,000 bytes
 - The total size of images inserted in the text exceeds 90 Kbytes
 - The total size of the text, images inserted in the text and attachments exceeds 100 Kbytes
- If no text is entered, the received/sent i-mode Mail cannot be registered. In addition, the address and subject are not registered.

1 on the mail composition screen ➡ Yes

- To register a received/sent i-mode Mail:
   on the mail view screen

2 Set each item

Display name:

Up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters can be entered.

File name:

A file name can contain up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumerics, “.”, “-” and “_”. However, “.” cannot be used for the first character of the file name.

3

- To overwrite the saved template:  ➡ Select a template ➡ Yes
 - The preinstalled templates cannot be overwritten.

INFORMATION

- To check or change the detail information of saved templates, highlight a template in the template list, press  and select **Detail info** → **View** or **Edit**. Note that the detail information of preinstalled templates cannot be changed.
- If you try to save a template containing an image that cannot be sent, the image may be deleted.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the saved templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them.

Deleting templates

- The preinstalled templates cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting one item

1

2 Highlight a template ➡

- **Deleting selected templates:**   
 - ➡ **Select templates** ➡ 
- **Deleting all the templates:**    ➡
Enter the terminal security code

3 Yes

Saving i-mode Mail for sending later

Save Mail

Saving unsent i-mode Mail

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
➡ P430
- If none of address, subject, attachment or text is entered, the mail cannot be saved.

1 on the mail composition screen

i-mode Mail is saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*.

INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough, a message may appear indicating that the mail cannot be saved, or a confirmation screen may appear asking whether to remove the attachment and then save the mail. In that case, delete unnecessary mails in *Unsent messages* or remove the attachment before saving.

Sending i-mode Mail automatically inside the service area

Auto-send

You can save i-mode Mail composed outside the service area after setting it to be sent automatically when you are within the service area.

- Up to 5 items can be saved.
- You cannot save without setting the receiver (To).

1 on the mail composition screen

The mail is saved as auto-send mail in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages* and  appears at the top of the screen.

Inside the service area

Auto-send mail is sent automatically. ✉ flashes while an auto-send mail is being sent and ✉ disappears after all the auto-send mails are sent.

- When sending fails, the auto-send failure mail remains in *Unsent messages* and ✉ flashes. When there are no auto-send failure mail by deleting, canceling the auto-send setting or exchanging the UIM, ✉ disappears.

INFORMATION

- Auto-send mail is not sent automatically while editing the signature.
- Once auto-send mail fails to be sent, it is not sent automatically when you are inside the service area next time. However, when sending is failed due to outside the service area, mail is resent up to twice.

Canceling the auto-send setting

- 1 Highlight a mail with the auto-send setting in the unsent mail list ▶ ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- The auto-send setting is also canceled if a mail with Auto-send set is selected in the unsent mail list.
- If you highlight an auto-send failure mail in the unsent mail list, press and select *Display* → *Display failed msg*, the cause of the error is displayed.
 - In case a message indicating that sending to the broadcast addresses has failed appears as the cause of the error, you can display the broadcast address by pressing .
- The auto-send setting is also canceled in the following cases:
 - When the mail is moved to the folder for the Message i-appli
 - When exchanging the UIM
 - When *Host number* or *Host address* is changed in Host Selection.

Menu 14 / Menu 15

Editing and sending sent/saved i-mode Mail

Example Editing the unsent mail

- 1 ▶ **Select a folder**
 - is indicated for SMS.
 - To edit and send a sent mail: ▶ Select a folder
- 2 **Select a mail**
 - To edit the sent mail again: Highlight the mail ▶
- 3 **Edit the mail** ▶

INFORMATION

- You can also edit mail by pressing on the sent mail view screen.

Composing mail quickly

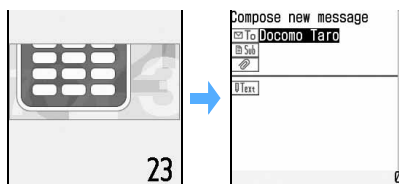
Quick Mail

You can compose i-mode Mail and SMS easily to the parties registered to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address of i-mode Mail and the first phone number as the address of SMS.

Example Sending i-mode Mail to the party of phonebook No. 23

- 1 Enter the phonebook No. () in this case) ▶



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefix zero (0).

■ Composing SMS: Enter the phonebook No. ▶ (for over a second)

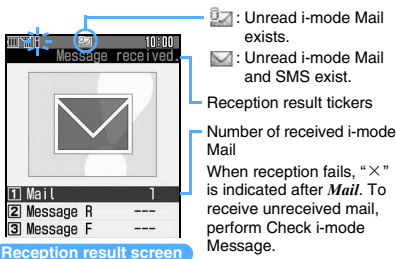
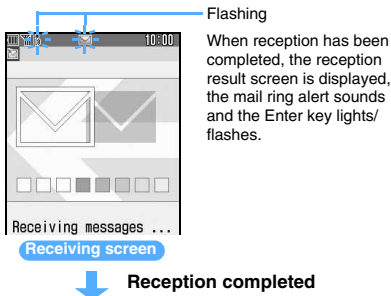
- Composing and sending SMS ▶ P225

Receiving i-mode Mail

Mail Auto Receive

- The received i-mode Mail is saved in the *Inbox* folder of *Inbox*. However, when the received mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.
- The maximum number of items that can be saved ▶ P430

1 An i-mode mail is received



- Press while receiving i-mode Mail to stop reception, but depending on the receiving condition, i-mode Mail may be received.
- Setting to display new mails by opening the FOMA terminal P218

2 1 Select a folder Select a mail

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. P221
- Displaying the received mail P207
- Select a Message i-appli folder to start the corresponding i-appli.

INFORMATION

- The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key, or until the ring alert stops if ring time is set to 15 seconds or longer in Mail Alert. To return to the previous screen immediately, press P207.
- If the data size of received mail (number of characters, attachment file size) exceeds the limit (maximum number of characters) set with **Limit Mail Size** in **Options** of iMenu, the attachments cannot be received automatically. To receive it, select the file name on the mail view screen.
- When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread one is overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep. Note that the number of read mails to be deleted increases especially when receiving an attachment with large size, such as 2 Mbytes.

- If the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of i-mode Mail is stopped. or is indicated on the screen. To receive new messages, display unread mail, change unread mail to read, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.
- i-mode Mail may not be received automatically soon after sending it. Perform Check i-mode Message.
- Extremely large i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center and be returned to the sender with an error message.
- When new i-mode Mail is delivered, the i-mode Mail and Message R/F stored in the i-mode Center are also received.
- i-mode Mail received by the FOMA terminal is saved in **Inbox** and i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center is deleted.
- The FOMA terminal shows which of TO, CC and BCC is specified for you when you receive a mail from a party who can specify TO, CC and BCC. P209
- When i-mode Mail is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation of the ring alert, vibrator and the Enter key. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". P78
 - When multiple items of i-mode Mail or Message R/F are received at the same time, the operation depends on the conditions set for the last i-mode mail or Message R/F received.
- For each i-mode mail including the attachment, it can be automatically received up to 100 Kbytes. The attachment exceeding 100 Kbytes can be manually downloaded from the i-mode Center. P204
- Incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:
 - The power is off
 - During a videophone call
 - In Self Mode
 - When reception fails
 - While being out of service area
 - While receiving SMS
 - During infrared communication
 - During iC communication
 - When Receive Option Setting is on
 - While connecting to the Data Center
 - While Omakase Lock is on
 - While connecting to the FirstPass center
 - When the storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail
- If there is unreceived i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center, or is indicated. However, the icon may not be displayed even when there is i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of mail that can be stored in the i-mode Center is reached, the icon changes to or .

Selecting i-mode Mail to receive

Receive Option

You can select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center without receiving automatically.

When mail arrives in the i-mode Center

When Receive Option Setting is set to **ON**, incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center and **You have mail at i-mode center** appears.

- Even if i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center, the mail ring alert or vibrator is not activated.
- Press any key other than  and  to clear the message.

INFORMATION

- During All Lock, Omakase Lock or PIM Lock, the notification message does not appear for mail coming to the i-mode Center.
- Even if Receive Option Setting is on, all the i-mode mails in the i-mode Center are received when Check i-mode Message is performed. If you do not want to receive mail, unselect the mail in Message Retrieval Setting.
- SMS and Message R/F are received automatically even if Receive Option Setting is on.

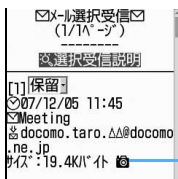
Menu 163

Selecting mail to receive

Check the subjects of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and then select mails to receive. You can also delete mails at the i-mode Center before receiving.

- To select mails to receive, set Receive Option Setting to **ON** in advance. When **ON** is set, i-mode Mail is not received automatically.

1



You are connected to the i-mode Center and the list of i-mode Mail stored appears.

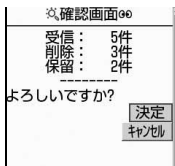
-  : Image attached
-  : Melody attached
-  : i-motion attached
-  : ToruCa attached
-  : Other files attached

2 保留(Hold) for each mail ▶ 受信(Receive), 削除(Delete) or 保留

- When **保留** is selected, the mail is stored at the i-mode Center. It can be received by using Check i-mode Message, etc.

- To delete all mails stored at the i-mode Center, select **削除** for **i モードセンターから全てのメールを** (All the mails from the i-mode Center).
- When the mail list has more than 1 page, select **前ページ** (Previous page) and **次ページ** (Next page) at the end of the list to view the previous and next pages.

3 受信 / 削除 (Receive/Delete) ▶ 決定 (OK)



Menu 161 / Menu 25 / 61 / 5

Checking for i-mode Mail

Check i-mode Message

You can check whether i-mode Mail has been delivered to the i-mode Center while the FOMA terminal was out of the service area or turned off. Also check for Message R/F at the same time if it is set so in Message Retrieval Setting.

- Operate the terminal in locations with good radio wave conditions.

1 (for over a second)

- The operation on the reception result screen is the same as for auto reception. However, the screen does not return to the previous screen after about 15 seconds.

Replying to received i-mode Mail

Reply to Mail

- You may not be able to reply to some received mail.
- You cannot reply to the SMS for which **User unset**, **Payphone** or **Unavailable** is displayed in the sender field.
- Mail Reply Format allows you to set whether to quote the message in a reply mail and to select the character to be inserted at the beginning of the quoted message.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a mail ▶

The quick reply message selection screen appears.

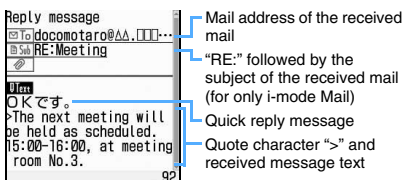
- When you are replying to SMS, the quick reply message selection screen does not appear. Go to Step 4.

■ Replying to all of the multiple addresses of received mail:

You can reply to the sender and all the receivers except you. You can select whether to quote the text.

①  ① ▶ ③ or ④

3 Select a quick reply message



- To cancel inserting a quick reply message, select **Compose Message**. The message text entry screen appears.

4 Edit the mail ▶

INFORMATION

- On the received mail view screen, press .
- If you press  on the received mail list and view screen, and select **Reply/Forward** → **Reply** or **Reply with quote**, you can select whether to quote the text regardless of the setting for Mail Reply Format. When there are multiple addresses, you can also select **Reply all** or **Reply all w/ quote**.
- The attachments to received mail are not attached to reply mail.
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-appli or melodies inserted in the message) is neither attached nor quoted as characters in reply mail.
- When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. However, if file restriction is set to the images, they are not quoted in reply mail.
- When you reply to the mail that was sent to multiple addresses by pressing  or opening the FOMA terminal, the mail addresses entered in the address field differ depending on the screen you operate from. When you reply from the received mail list, the mail address of the sender is entered. When you reply from the received mail view screen, the mail addresses of the sender and all the receivers except you are entered.

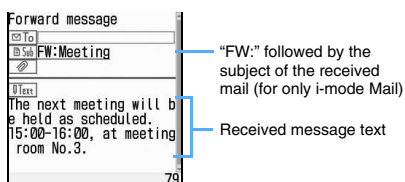
Forwarding received i-mode Mail

Forward Mail

- You can forward received SMS in the same way. i-mode Mail is forwarded as i-mode Mail and SMS is forwarded as SMS.

1 ① ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a mail ▶



- When forwarding received mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set. However, an attachment which is not downloaded or is being downloaded is not set.

3 Edit the mail ▶

INFORMATION

- On the received mail view screen, press  and select **Reply/Forward** → **Forward**.
- Regarding the attachments to received mail, files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA terminal are not attached to forwarding mail.
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-appli or melodies inserted in the message) is neither attached nor quoted as characters in forwarding mail.
- When received Deco-mail is forwarded, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted.
- When the total size of images inserted in the text exceeds 90 Kbytes, a message appears indicating that the image which exceeds the limit is deleted. Pressing  deletes the image of the part beyond the limit and displays the mail composition screen.

Displaying, playing and saving attachments from i-mode Mail

Display/Play/Save Attachment

The file attached to i-mode mail can be received and downloaded up to 10 files within a total of 2 Mbytes. The attachment beyond it is deleted in the i-mode Center.

The attachment is automatically downloaded up to 100 Kbytes in total. The attachment which cannot be received automatically is selected and then downloaded. The downloaded attachment can be displayed and played, or saved in the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
 P430

Checking the type/download status of attachment

1 Select a folder Select an i-mode mail with the file attached



- Icon for attachment, file name and file size
- When the file is not downloaded or is being downloaded, the storage period is displayed.
 - For the melody inserted in the message, the title is displayed.
 - For the links to start i-appli, and the name of i-appli is displayed. P241

- The downloaded image is displayed automatically (except for the attachment of Deco-mail).
- The downloaded melody is played automatically. Also, you can set not to play automatically. P221
- The downloaded viewable files of other types can be displayed or played by selecting the file name. P204, P206
- Non-viewable attachment cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal. Saving to the microSD memory card (P206) or forwarding i-mode Mail (P203) with it is available.
- When the attachment is deleted in the i-mode Center, [添付ファイル削除] (Attachment deleted) appears under the subject of the received mail.

Meaning of the icon for attachment

File type	Download Status					
	Down-loaded*1	Down-loaded*2	Not down-loaded	Download in progress	Download unavailable	Data invalid
Image						
Video/i-motion						
Melody (SMF format)						
Melody (MFi format)			—	—	—	

File type	Download Status					
	Down-loaded*1	Down-loaded*2	Not down-loaded	Download in progress	Download unavailable	Data invalid
ToruCa						
PDF data						
Schedule		—				
Bookmark		—				
Phonebook		—				
Word		—				
Excel		—				
Power Point		—				
Non-viewable file		—				—

- *1 Can be attached to mail and output from the FOMA terminal.
- *2 Cannot be attached to mail and output from the FOMA terminal.

Downloading the attachment for selective reception

- Download the attachment which is not downloaded or is being downloaded of the received mail.
- The file of which storage period expires cannot be downloaded.

1 Select the file name on the mail view screen

INFORMATION

- In case of downloading the attachment which is not downloaded or is being downloaded, if the memory is not enough, the unprotected read mail may be deleted according to the size of file to be downloaded.
- Highlight the file name on the mail view screen, press and select *Attachment* → *Display URL* to check the site.

Displaying, playing and saving the image, video/i-motion, ToruCa or PDF data

Example Saving from Inbox

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen

-
- **Saving images displayed in Deco-mail:**
 Select an image
 - For the image inserted in Deco-mail, the display name or file name is not displayed.
 - **Displaying and playing: Select the file name**
 - For the image, displaying/not displaying is switched whenever the file name is selected.

- ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbytes or ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 Kbytes cannot be displayed.

■ Checking the title: Highlight the file name



2 Set each item

- For details on setting the image, follow Step 3 in "Downloading images". ➡P170
- For details on setting video/i-motion, follow Step 3 in "Downloading i-motion from sites". ➡P182
- For details on setting PDF data, follow Step 3 in "Downloading PDF data". ➡P171
- For ToruCa, the screen to select the registration destination (the FOMA terminal or the microSD memory card) is displayed. Depending on ToruCa, only one of registration destinations may be selected.
 - ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbytes or ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 Kbytes can be saved only to the microSD memory card.

3

- For the image, select the folder to save.
- For the location to save, refer to "The location to save attachments". ➡P207

INFORMATION

- When you check the title from the sent mail view screen, mail template view screen or mail view screen in the microSD memory card, highlight the file name, press and select *Attachment* → *Check title*.
- You can save the file attached to the sent mail in the same way as above.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved items. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.
- When an image is wider than the display, the reduced image is displayed.
- Some images and video/i-motion files may not be displayed correctly.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 352 x 288 cannot be used as frame.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 240 x 320 cannot be used as stamp.
- When the received mail with an image attached is displayed, the attached image is automatically displayed. Note that, the image inserted in the message text of received Deco-mail is automatically displayed, but the image attached to Deco-mail is not displayed automatically. Select the file name of image to display the image.
- Playing i-motion attached to the mail on a PC requires special software. ➡P410

Playing and saving melodies

- If the sender uses a terminal other than the following terminals*1, the received melodies may not be correctly played.
*1 D703i, D704i, D903i, D903iTV and D904i

Example Saving from *Inbox*

1 Highlight the file name (title) on the mail view screen

- For the melody exceeding 100 Kbytes, a message appears indicating that the melody will be saved in the microSD memory card. Press .

■ Playing: Select the file name (title)

- To stop playing:
- The melody exceeding 100 Kbytes cannot be played.

■ Checking the title (melody to be attached after the message): Highlight the file name



- To check the title (melody to be inserted in the message): Highlight the title

■ Displaying the melody data as characters: Highlight the title

- This function is not available with melodies to be attached after the message.
- To return to the title display: Select the first row of the melody data

2 Enter the display name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters)

- For details on entering the display name, follow Step 3 of "Downloading melodies". ➡P171
- When the microSD memory card is inserted, press to switch the locations to save (the FOMA terminal/the microSD memory card).
- For the location to save, refer to "The location to save attachments". ➡P207

INFORMATION

- To play and save the melody when displaying the melody data, highlight the first row of the data, press and select *Attachment* → *Play or Save*.
- On the sent mail view screen, highlight the melody, press and select *Attachment* → *Save*.
- When you check the title on the sent mail view screen, mail template view screen or mail view screen in the microSD memory card, highlight a file name, press and select *Attachment* → *Check title*.
- The attached melody of the sent mail, mail template or in the microSD memory card can be played similarly.

- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved items. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

Displaying and saving the schedule, bookmark and phonebook data

Example Saving from *Inbox*

1 Select the file name on the mail view screen

■ Displaying: Highlight the file name ➤

6 1

- If multiple data is contained in one file, they cannot be displayed.

■ Checking the file name: Highlight the file name ➤ 6 2

2

- For a bookmark, enter the title (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters).
- When inserting the microSD memory card, press to save to the microSD memory card.
- If multiple data is contained in one file, they can be saved to only the microSD memory card.
- For the location to save, refer to “The location to save attachments”. ➤P207

INFORMATION

- The phonebook, schedule and bookmark data can be displayed and saved by the same operation also from the sent mail view screen.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the data cannot be saved.

Displaying and saving the files of Word, Excel and PowerPoint

Example Saving from *Inbox*

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen ➤ 6 3

■ Displaying: Select the file name

■ Checking the file name: Highlight the file name ➤ 6 2

2

- When inserting the microSD memory card, press to switch the locations to save (the FOMA terminal or the microSD memory card).

- For the location to save, refer to “The location to save attachments”. ➤P207

INFORMATION

- The files can be displayed and saved by the same operation also from the sent mail view screen.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved items. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

Saving non-viewable files

The file which cannot be displayed and played by the FOMA terminal (non-viewable file), which are attached to the received/sent mail, are saved to the microSD memory card.

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen ➤ 6 3

■ Checking the file name: Highlight the file name ➤ 6 2

2 Yes

- For the location to save, refer to “The location to save attachments”. ➤P207

Deleting attachments

Delete Attachment

- Images, melodies or links to start i-appli inserted in the message cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting an image attached to the received mail

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen ➤ 6 4

- To delete all the attachments: 6 5

2 Yes

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in a light color and cannot be selected.

INFORMATION

- On the sent mail view screen, highlight an attachment, press and select *Attachment* → *Delete* or *Delete all*.

The location to save attachments

Attachments are saved in the following locations by the file type. Some data may not be saved to the microSD memory card.

File type	FOMA terminal	microSD memory card
Image* ¹	<i>My Picture</i> of Data Box • Select the folder to save from <i>i-mode</i> , <i>Deco-mail picture</i> or album* ² .	<i>My Picture</i> or <i>Other image</i> of Data Box
Video/i-motion	<i>i-mode</i> folder* ³ of <i>i-motion</i> of Data Box	<i>Movie</i> or <i>Other movie</i> of Data Box
Melody	<i>i-mode</i> folder* ³ of <i>Melody</i> of Data Box	<i>Melody</i> of Data Box
ToruCa	<i>ToruCa</i> of LifeKit	<i>ToruCa</i>
PDF data	<i>i-mode</i> folder* ³ of <i>My Document</i> of Data Box	<i>My Document</i>
Schedule	<i>Scheduler</i> of Stationary	<i>Schedule</i> of PIM
Bookmark	<i>Bookmark</i> of <i>i-mode</i> • The bookmark of Full Browser is saved to <i>Bookmark</i> of Full Browser.	<i>Bookmark</i> of PIM
Phonebook	Phonebook list	<i>Phonebook</i> of PIM
Word, Excel, PowerPoint	<i>Other</i> of Data Box • When there are multiple files, select the folder to save.	<i>Other</i>
Non-viewable file	—	<i>Other</i>

*¹ The images which can be used as Deco-mail pictogram are saved to the *Deco-mail pict* folder in the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card.

*² For the mail copied from the microSD memory card or the mail received via data communications, select from *Data transfer*, *Deco-mail picture* or album.

*³ For the mail copied from the microSD memory card or the mail received via data communications, it is saved to the *Data transfer* folder.

Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox

Inbox/Outbox

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
➡P430
- Folders in *Unsent messages* contain the i-mode Mail and SMS that were saved without sending or failed to be sent, as well as the i-mode Mail that is set to be sent automatically upon entering the service area.
- Mails in *ドコモからのお知らせ* (Information from DoCoMo)  are saved in the *Inbox* folder of *Inbox* by default.

1 1, 4 or 5

2 Select a folder

The mail list is displayed.

- Select a Message i-appli folder to start the corresponding i-appli.
- To display mail in a Message i-appli folder without starting i-appli: Highlight the folder ▶

 1

3 Select a mail

- Useful functions of mail ➡P213
- Selecting mail from the unsent mail list displays the mail composition screen.

Viewing the folder list screen

■ The received mail folder list screen



 (in gray): No mail

 (in yellow): No unread mail

 : No mail/No unread mail (Privacy on)

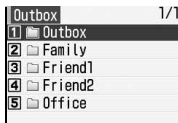
 : No mail/No unread mail (used for Message i-appli)

 : Unread mail exists

 : Unread mail exists (Privacy on)

 : Unread mail exists (used for Message i-appli)

■ The sent/unsent mail folder list screen



(in gray): No mail

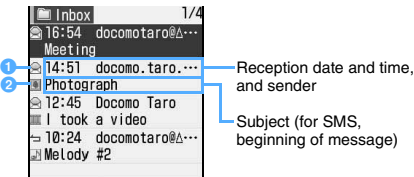
(in yellow): Mail exists

: Privacy on

: Message i-appli

Viewing the mail list screen

■ The received mail list screen



1 : Unread

: Unread (unable to reply)

: Read

: Read (unable to reply)

: Read (replied)

: Read (forwarded)

: Protected

: Protected (unable to reply)

: Protected (replied)

: Protected (forwarded)

• For replied/forwarded mail, icon indication priority is given to the last operation made.

2 : Image attached : Melody attached

: Video/i-motion attached

: ToruCa attached : PDF data attached

: Schedule attached

: Bookmark attached

: Phonebook data attached

: Word file attached

: Excel file attached

: PowerPoint file attached

: Non-viewable files attached

: Multiple files attached

: SMS/missed videophone call notice

: Delivered report/missed voice call notice

: i-appli To exists

: Mail used for Message i-appli

• When **Display 1 row** is set in Mail List Setting, is indicated before the subject for a mail with attachment.

• When i-appli To exists, the icons for other attachments are not displayed.

• When the sender is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

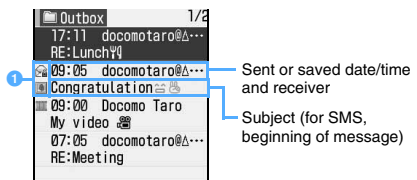
• For SMS sent from overseas, "+" is appended at the beginning of the sender address.

• In the reception date and time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.

• The subject may not be displayed depending on the received i-mode Mail.

• For SMS which contains an error, is indicated and the reception date and time becomes "--/--" (only on the reception day). The sender is not displayed.

■ The sent/unsent mail list screen



1 No icon: Unprotected

: Protected

: Auto-send

: Protected (auto-send)

: Auto-send failure

: Protected (auto-send failure)

: Image attached : Melody attached

: Video/i-motion attached

: ToruCa attached : PDF data attached

: Schedule attached

: Bookmark attached

: Phonebook data attached

: Word file attached

: Excel file attached

: PowerPoint file attached

: Non-viewable files attached

: Multiple files attached

: SMS

: Mail used for Message i-appli

• When **Display 1 row** is set in Mail List Setting, is indicated before the subject of a mail with attachment in the sent mail list.

• In the sent or saved date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.

• When the receiver is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

The mail view screen

■ Received mail view screen



Receiver icon*1, status icon, attachment icon, SMS icon

*1 TO, CC or BCC is indicated (for i-mode Mail).

- 1 : Reception date and time
- : Sender
- : Receiver (TO) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Subject (*Received SMS*, *SMS report request* or *Notify missed call* for SMS)
- : Sender (unable to reply)
- : Receiver (TO) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Receiver (CC) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)
- For SMS which contains an error, is indicated.

■ Sent mail view screen



Status icon, attachment icon, SMS icon

- 1 : Sent date and time
- : Receiver (TO)
- : Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Receiver (BCC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Subject (*Sent SMS* for SMS)

- The subject and sender of the received SMS, delivered report, and missed call notice are displayed on the view screen as shown below:

Item	SMS	Delivered report	Missed call notice
Subject	<i>Received SMS</i>	<i>SMS report request</i>	<i>Notify missed call</i>
Sender	Phone number*1	<i>SMS Center</i>	<i>DoCoMo SMS</i>

*1 Missed videophone call notice is displayed as DoCoMo MSG.

- When the caller ID is not notified, the following characters are displayed in the sender field:

Anonymous :

Message sent by setting not to notify the caller ID

Payphone :

Message sent from a payphone

Unavailable :

Message sent using a procedure that does not provide the caller ID

- When there are attachments (P203) or links to start i-appli (P241), the icon, the file name, etc. are displayed on the view screen.

Creating/deleting folders

Creating folders

- In *Inbox*, you can add up to 40 folders other than the *Inbox* folder and Message i-appli folders.
- In *Outbox* or *Unsent messages*, you can add up to 20 folders other than the *Outbox* folder or the *Unsent messages* folder and Message i-appli folders respectively.
- Folder settings for the *Inbox*, *Outbox* and *Unsent messages* folders and Message i-appli folders cannot be changed.

1 ► (1), (4) or (5)

2 (1)

■ Changing folder settings: Highlight a folder ► (3)

■ Changing the order of folders: Highlight a folder ► ► (7) or (8)

3 Set each item ►

Folder name :

Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters).

Privacy :

When *ON* is set, the folder is not displayed while Privacy Mode is on (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*).

INFORMATION

- The character which cannot be displayed is replaced by a blank, etc.
- When decorated mail is received from a PC, operations may not be the same as on the PC.
- For melody and links to start i-appli inserted in the message, only one item is available. When there is more than 1 data item attached in the message text, the attached data becomes invalid. In this case, is indicated for the attachment icon.
- For i-mode Mail, the mail address of sender or receiver is checked against the mail address field in the phonebook data. For SMS, the phone number of sender or receiver is checked against the phone number field in the phonebook data. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". P78

Deleting folders

- The **Inbox**, **Outbox** and **Unsent messages** folders registered by default cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing protected mail cannot be deleted. Cancel protection and then delete the folders.
- Message i-appli folders cannot be deleted when the i-appli for the folder exists. Although the folder can be deleted when there is no corresponding i-appli, all the folders created by the corresponding i-appli are deleted.

- 1 ► **1**, **4** or **5**
- 2 **Highlight a folder** ► **2**
- 3 **Enter the terminal security code** ► *Yes*

Checking the number of mail items Msgs. in Folder

You can check the number of received, sent or unsent mail saved in each folder.

- 1 ► **1**, **4** or **5**
- 2 **Highlight a folder** ► **5**

INFORMATION

- On the mail list screen, press and select **Display** → *Check No. of items*.

Checking mail addresses Display Address

You can view an entire mail address when the whole address is not displayed or when the address is registered in the phonebook and only the name is displayed.

- 1 ► **1** or **5** ► **Select a folder**
► **Select a mail**
- 2 **Select a sender or receiver**

INFORMATION

- To check multiple mail addresses at one time, press on the mail view screen and select **Display** → *Display address*. In the received/sent/unsent mail list, highlight the mail to display mail addresses, press and select **Display** → *Display address*. All the receiver's addresses are displayed for sent/unsent mail, and the addresses of sender and all the receivers (except you) for received mail (**TO**: and **CC**: are also displayed).

Moving received/sent mails to another folder

Move Mail

Mail can be moved to another folder.

Example Moving a mail to another folder

- 1 ► **1**, **4** or **5** ► **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight a received mail** ► **4** **1** **1**
 ■ **Moving selected mails:** **4** **1** **2**
 ► **Select mails** ►

 ■ **Moving all the mails in the folder:**
4 **1** **3**
- 3 ► **Select the destination folder** ► *Yes*

INFORMATION

- If a mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message.* appears and the operation may be canceled.
- When i-mode Mail with the auto-send setting is moved to a Message i-appli folder, the auto-send setting is canceled.

Searching mail

Mail Search

Search received/sent mail by specifying sender/receiver or by received/sent date.

- Received mails are searched by specifying sender or received date.
- Sent mails are searched by specifying receiver or sent date.

Example Searching mails by sender

- 1 ► **1** or **5**
- 2 **9** **1** ► **Select the phonebook entry to search**



- To search by received date or sent date:
9 **2** ► **Select the date**

- When you highlight a phonebook entry or a date, when **Display 1 row** is set in Mail List Setting, the first 4 mails that meet the search condition are displayed. When **Display 2 rows** is set, the first 2 mails that meet the search condition are displayed.
- Press to display all the mails in a list that meet the search condition.
- If you search sent mails by receiver, the mails are searched even if the party registered in the phonebook is set in the address after the second item (the first address is displayed on the screen).
- To display the phonebook entry with Secret Attribute set, activate Secret Mode.

3 Select a mail to display

- The search result screen can be operated in the same way as the mail list.
- To cancel mail search:

INFORMATION

- In the received/sent mail list, press and select **Message search** → **With phonebook** or **With calendar**. In this case, only the mails in the selected folder are searched.

Sorting the received/sent mails

Sort

You can temporarily change the order of received or sent mail in the list. Closing the list resets the sorting order to **By date**.

- You can select from **By date**, **By sender** (**By address** for sent mail), **By title**, and **By size**.
- You cannot change the order of unsent mail and received/sent SMS in the UIM.

Default By date

- 1 ➤ or ➤ **Select a folder**
- 2 **for the received mail or**
 for the sent mail ➤ -

INFORMATION

- When **By sender** or **By address** is set, mails will be sorted by mail address not by name in the phonebook even if the mail address is registered in the phonebook.
- When **By title** is set, if the subject contains both one-byte and two-byte characters, mails may not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- In case of **By size**, mails are sorted in order of the mail size including attachments from large to small.
- When **By title** is set, if any SMS is saved in the same folder, mails will not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary because the beginning of the message is displayed as subject.

Changing the read/unread status of received mail

- You cannot change the read/unread status of protected received mail.

Example Changing a read mail to unread

- 1 ➤ **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight a mail** ➤
 - **Changing an unread mail to read:**
Highlight a mail ➤
 - **Changing selected read mails to unread:**
 ➤ **Select mails** ➤ ➤ **Yes**
 - **Changing selected unread mails to read:**
 ➤ **Select mails** ➤ ➤ **Yes**
 - **Changing all the mails in the folder to unread:** ➤ **Yes**
 - **Changing all the mails in the folder to read:** ➤ **Yes**

INFORMATION

- If a mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, **Unable to display message.** appears and the operation may be canceled.

Protecting received/sent mail

Protect Mail

You can protect received, sent and unsent mail to avoid accidental deletion or being overwritten when there is not enough storage space.

- The maximum number of items that can be protected ●P430
- Unread mail cannot be protected.

Example Protecting a mail

- 1 ➤ , or ➤ **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight a mail** ➤

The mail is protected and the icon changes to one of the following:

Received mail: (read) (unable to reply)
 (replied) (forwarded)

Sent/unsent mail:

 - To cancel protection: Highlight a mail ➤
 - **Protecting selected mails:** ➤ **Select mails** ➤
 - **Protecting all the mails in the folder:**

- Canceling protection of selected mails: ▶ Select mails ▶
- Canceling protection of all the mails:

INFORMATION

- On the mail view screen, press and select *Protect* or *Cancel protection*.
- If a mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message.* appears and the operation may be canceled.
- When *Protect all* is selected, mails are protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.

Deleting received/sent mail

Delete Mail

Unnecessary mail can be deleted from *Inbox*, *Outbox* and *Unsent messages*.

- Protected mail cannot be deleted. When you delete all the mails at one time, protected mail remains undeleted even if it matches the specified criteria. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Deleting received mail

○: Available ×: Not available

Deletion method	Screen for starting operation		
	Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
<i>All messages</i>	○*2	×	×
<i>Read in folder</i>	○	○*3	×
<i>All in folder</i>	○	○*3	×
<i>7days past in fldr*1</i>	○	○*3	×
<i>14days past in fldr*1</i>	○	○*3	×
<i>30days past in fldr*1</i>	○	○*3	×
<i>One item/Selected item</i>	×	○	○
<i>Selected items</i>	×	○	×
<i>All search result</i>	×	○*4	×

*1 Mail is deleted when the specified number of days has passed since it was received.

*2 In Privacy Mode (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), mails within the hidden folder are also deleted.

*3 Not available from the mail search results list

*4 Available only from the mail search results list

• When you delete all the mails at one time, unread mails that match the specified criteria are also deleted.

Example Deleting a received mail

1

- Deleting all the mails: ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Go to Step 4

2 Select a folder

3 Highlight a received mail

- Deleting selected mails: ▶ Select mails ▶

- Deleting the read mail in the folder:

- Deleting all the mails in the folder:

▶ Enter the terminal security code

- Deleting by specifying the number of days that has passed since the mail was received: ▶ -

4 Yes

INFORMATION

- In the folder list, press and select *Delete message*.
- On the mail view screen, press and select *Delete*.
- If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message.* appears and the operation may be canceled.

Deleting sent/unsent mail

○: Available ×: Not available

Deletion method	Screen for starting operation		
	Folder list	Mail list	Mail view (sent mail)
<i>All messages</i>	○*2	×	×
<i>All in folder</i>	○	×	×
<i>All items*1</i>	×	○*3	×
<i>One item/Selected item</i>	×	○	○
<i>Selected items</i>	×	○	×
<i>All search result</i>	×	○*4	×

*1 Deleting all the mails in the folder

*2 In Privacy Mode (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), mails within the hidden folder are also deleted.

*3 Not available from the sent mail search results list

*4 Available only from the sent mail search results list

Example Deleting a sent mail

1 ▶ or

- Deleting all the mails: ▶

Enter the terminal security code ▶ Go to Step 4

2 Select a folder

- 3 Highlight a mail** ►
- **Deleting selected mails:** ►
Select mails ►
- **Deleting all the sent mails in the folder:**
 ► **Enter the terminal security code**

4 Yes

INFORMATION

- In the folder list, press and select *Delete message*.
- On the mail view screen, press and select *Delete*.

Useful functions of mail

You can make a voice/videophone call (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to i-mode sites or websites (Web To) from a phone number, mail address or URL in the message. You can also execute Activate 1Seg or Booking Program (Media To) from the links of information for Activate 1Seg or TV program schedule information. In addition, you can also copy characters in the message and save phone numbers or mail addresses, etc. to the phonebook.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To

- The operation is the same as when performing the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, or Media To function from sites. ◀P173
- When mail is received from a PC, these functions may not be available.

Copying text

You can copy characters in the i-mode Mail, SMS, or mail template. Copied text can be pasted in entry fields on the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- For SMS stored in the UIM, you can copy the message text, receiver and sender.
- For Deco-mail, the decoration data is not copied other than the message text and signature. Only the text can be copied.

- The copied text is recorded until the power of the FOMA terminal is turned off and it can be pasted into other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be retained. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying text from the received mail view screen

1 Display the received mail view screen

- Highlight the item to copy when copying a selected item.

2

- When a mail template is displayed, press .

3 Select the copying method

Copy text:

Copies a specified range of the message text.

Copy title:

Copies the subject.

Copy selected item:

Copies a highlighted item.

- For *Copy text*, specify the copy range. Follow Step 2 in "Copying the URL". ◀P174

4 Display a character entry screen to be pasted ► Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

- When text in the Date To format is included in the message, it needs to be pasted and saved to Notepad before saving as schedule.

Making calls from the received/sent mail

Phone Call

Calls can be made to the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail.

- The mail address (except for "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp") and phone number must be registered in the phonebook.

Example Making a call from the received mail

1 Display the received mail list

2 Highlight a mail ►

- On the received/sent mail view screen, highlight the party to call (sender/receiver) and press .
- When there are multiple receivers, the mail address selection screen appears. Select the mail address to make a call to.

3 Set dialing conditions

4

- When operating from the view screen, press  and select *Yes*.

Registering phone numbers, addresses and URLs in the phonebook

You can register phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs in i-mode Mail or SMS in the phonebook.

Example Registering a new entry from the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail ► Highlight an item

- You can register only the items that can be highlighted.

2 4 1

- To add the data to the existing phonebook entry:  4 2
- Follow Step 3 in “Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook”. ➡P175

INFORMATION

- On the view screen for sent mail, SMS in the UIM, or mail in the microSD memory card, press  and select *Save*.
- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.
- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in the message text, you may not be able to register them.

Registering URLs in Bookmark

You can register URLs in the message text of the i-mode Mail or SMS in Bookmark.

Example Registering a bookmark from the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail

2 Highlight the URL ► 4 3

3 Select a folder

- Follow Step 2 of “Registering in Bookmark”. ➡P167

INFORMATION

- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

Saving mails in the Data Center

Data Security Service

Data Security Service allows you to save i-mode Mail and SMS in the Data Center.

- Data Security Service is a pay service and requires a subscription. For more information, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

Saving mails

- Mail for which the file capacity of one item exceeds 10,000 bytes cannot be saved.
- You can check the log of communication with the Data Center. ➡P94

1 ► 1, 4 or 5 ► Select a folder

2 4 5 for a received/sent mail, or 4 3 for a unsent mail ► Select a mail ►

- Up to 10 items can be selected.
- Delivered report of SMS cannot be saved.

3 Yes ► Enter the terminal security code

The selected mail is saved in the Data Center. When saving is completed, the result is displayed.

- The result disappears in about 5 seconds and returns to the mail list. Press  to return to the list immediately.

INFORMATION

- If you have not yet subscribed to Data Security Service, a screen appears to inform you of that effect.

Restoring mail

Mail saved in the Data Center is restored from the site of the Data Center to the FOMA terminal. For more information, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

- Files will be protected when restored. However, this is not applicable in the following cases:
 - When unread mail saved in the Data Center is restored
 - When the maximum number of protected mails that can be saved in the FOMA terminal is reached

Using the mail log

Received Msg. Log/Sent Msg. Log

This function records the log of the received/sent mails. You can compose i-mode Mail/SMS, or make a voice/videophone call by calling the log.

- When the mails are sent to multiple addresses, they are recorded on the sent message log for every address.
- When multiple mails are sent to the same address, only the latest one is recorded on the sent message log.
- The logs of the received mails which are unable to reply are not recorded.
- Up to 30 items are recorded, respectively. If it exceeds 30 items, the oldest one will be deleted.

1 or

2 Highlight a log

- If you select the log, the details screen of the log is displayed.

3 Press the key to perform the operation

- You can perform the operation in the same way from the details screen of the log.

■ Composing i-mode Mail:

The mail composition screen is displayed and a mail address is set in the address field as follows:

- For the log of i-mode Mail, the mail address of the sender/receiver is set.
- For the log of SMS, when the phone number of the sender or receiver is registered in the phonebook entry and the mail address is registered in the same phonebook entry, the mail address is set.

■ Composing SMS: (for over a second)

The SMS composition screen is displayed, and a phone number is set in the address field as follows:

- For the log of SMS, the phone number of the sender or receiver is set.
- For the log of i-mode Mail, when the mail address of the sender or receiver is registered in the phonebook and the phone number is registered in the same phonebook entry, the phone number is set.

■ Making a voice call:

- Holding down for over a second dials using the speakerphone function.

■ Making a videophone call:

- Holding down for over a second dials using the speakerphone function.

■ Using Call Option:

The screen for Call Option is displayed.

Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Making calls by setting the conditions". ➡P54

■ Adding to the phonebook: to register a new entry or to add to an existing entry

- Follow Step 3 in "Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook". ➡P175
- The mail address is registered for i-mode Mail, and the phone number is registered for SMS.

■ Setting whether to display an image on the log details screen: on the log details screen -

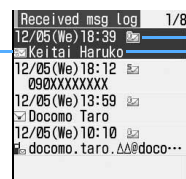
- For details ➡P88

INFORMATION

- You can also display the received message log by or the sent message log by .
- Even if mails sorted automatically to the folders with the privacy set to **OFF** is moved to the folders with the privacy set to **ON** and Privacy Mode is set (with **Hide secret fldrs** set for **Mail**), the mails are displayed on the mail log. On the contrary, even if mails sorted automatically to the folders with the privacy set to **ON** is moved to the folders with the privacy set to **OFF**, the mails are not displayed on the mail log when Privacy Mode is on (with **Hide secret fldrs** set for **Mail**).
- The phone number used when making a voice/videophone call or using Call Option is as follows depending on whether you use the log of i-mode Mail or SMS.
 - For SMS, a call is made to the phone number of the log.
 - For i-mode Mail, when the mail address of the sender or receiver is registered in the phonebook and the phone number is registered in the same phonebook entry, a call is made.

Received/sent message log list screen

■ Log list screen



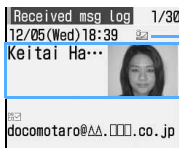
Received/sent date and time
Icon for type of the log

Mail address of sender/receiver (phone number for SMS) or name*1

*1 When the mail address or phone number is registered in the phonebook.

Displayed when registered in the phonebook

Log details screen



- Received/sent date and time
- Icon for type of log
- Name*1, Image*2
- Mail address of sender/receiver (phone number for SMS)

- *1 When the mail address or phone number is registered in the phonebook.
 *2 When the mail address is registered in the phonebook.

- On the received message log list or details screen, if you press **MENU** and select *Sent msg log*, the sent message log list is displayed.
- On the sent message log list or details screen, if you press **MENU** and select *Received msg log*, the received message log list is displayed.
- On the received message log list or details screen, press **□** to display the received call list of phone.
- On the sent message log list or details screen, press **□** to display the redial list.

Deleting message logs

Delete Msg. Log

- 1 **MENU** **4** **7** **▶** **1** or **2**
- 2 **Highlight a log** **▶** **MENU** **6** **1**
 - **Deleting selected logs:** **MENU** **6** **2** **▶**
 - Select logs** **▶** **□**
 - **Deleting all the logs:** **MENU** **6** **3**

3 **Yes**

INFORMATION

- On the mail log details screen, press **MENU** and select *Delete*.
- Even if the received/sent message log is deleted, the received/sent mail is not deleted.
- Even if the received/sent mail is deleted, the received/sent message log is not deleted.

Setting mail functions of the FOMA terminal

Mail Setting

Menu 193

Sorting mails automatically into designated folders

Sort Criteria

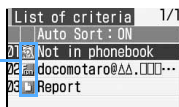
Received/sent i-mode Mail and SMS can be sorted into the specified folders automatically according to the set criteria.

- Up to 30 criteria can be registered for received mail and sent mail respectively.

Setting sort criteria

- To set and activate the criteria, set auto sort to *ON* for received mail and sent mail. It is set to *ON* by default. **▶P217**
- The criteria are valid for the mail received/sent after setting the criteria. Previously received/sent mail is not resorted.
- You can sort normal mail to Message i-appli folders.
- If the corresponding Message i-appli folder exists, any mail for Message i-appli is saved in that folder, regardless of the sort criteria.

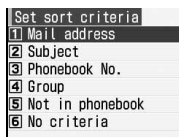
- 1 **MENU** **9** **3** **▶** **1** or **2**



- 1 **Auto Sort: ON** **▶** Auto sort on/off
- 2 **Not in phonebook** **▶** Registered sort criteria (listed in the order of priority)
- 3 **docomotaro@ΔΔ.□□□.co.jp**
- 4 **Report**

- 1 **To** : Receiver mail address
- From** : Sender mail address
- No** : Phonebook No. **□** : Not in phonebook
- : Subject **□** : Group
- : No criteria

- 2 **MENU** **1** **▶** **Set the sort criteria**



Sort criteria setting screen

■ Specifying a mail address:

Sorts mail by sender/receiver mail address. Specify an entire address including characters following the @ symbol (up to 50 one-byte characters). You cannot sort mail by specifying part of the mail address. If you specify a phone number, you can sort SMS as well.

① ① ④ ▶ Enter a mail address ▶

- To select from the sent message log:
① ① ▶ Select a log
- To select from the received message log:
① ② ▶ Select a log
- To specify a mail address registered in the phonebook: ① ③ ▶ Select a party

■ Specifying a subject: ② ▶ Enter a subject ▶

Sorts mail having a subject that includes the specified characters (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters). You cannot sort SMS by subject.

■ Specifying a phonebook No.: ③ ▶ Enter the phonebook No. ▶ Select the phonebook data

Sorts mail to/from the mail address or phone number corresponding to the specified FOMA terminal phonebook No. i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is sorted by checking the phone number in the phonebook.

■ Specifying a group: ④ ▶ ① or ② ▶ Select the group

Sorts mail to/from the mail address or phone number saved to the specified group.

■ Specifying *Not in phonebook*: ⑤

Sorts mail to/from the mail address or phone number not saved in the phonebook. i-mode Mail is checked against the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is checked against the phone number in the phonebook.

■ Setting *No criteria*: ⑥

Sorts all the mails without setting criteria.

3 Select the folder to sort mail

- When a Message i-appli folder is selected, a message appears indicating that mail in the selected folder is used for i-appli. To set as the folder to sort mail to, select *Yes*.

4 Specify the priority

The new criteria is added above the selected row.

- To set the first criteria in the list: *[Add last]*.
- To add the criteria to the end of the list: *[Add last]*.
- Criteria are listed in the order of priority.
- When registered criteria are changed, *[Move to last]* is displayed instead of *[Add last]*.

INFORMATION

- If the sender uses an i-mode terminal with its phone number set as the mail address, only the phone number is received as the address. Therefore, no sorting occurs when "mobile phone number @docomo.ne.jp" is specified in the criteria.
- When the same mail address is registered in both of the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook, the FOMA terminal phonebook addresses are given priority for sorting. In such a case, the sort priority set in this function may not apply.
- The criteria are checked in accordance with their priority. For example, when 2 criteria are set, mail is sorted as follows:
 - ① Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of first priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, the procedure goes to ②.
 - ② Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of second priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, it is saved in the *Inbox* folder or the *Outbox* folder.

Checking and changing sort criteria

1 ⑨ ③ ▶ ① or ②

2 Select the sort criteria

- You can change or delete sort criteria while checking it.

■ Changing registered sort criteria:

Highlight the sort criteria ▶ ⑨ ② ▶

Specify the sort criteria ▶ *Yes*

■ Changing the priority: Highlight a sort criteria ▶ ⑨ ⑤ ▶ Select the position

- The criteria is moved to just above the selected row. To move to the end of the list, select *[Move to last]*.

■ Deleting criteria: Highlight a sort criteria

▶ ⑨ ③ ▶ *Yes*

- To delete all: ⑨ ④ ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ *Yes*

Setting auto sort

- Even if *ON* is set, no sorting occurs when sort criteria are not set.

Default ON (all)

1 ⑨ ③ ▶ ① or ②
⑨ ⑥ ▶ ① or ②

Registering signature for mail

Signature

You can register the signature to be inserted in the message of i-mode Mail and SMS. You can also set whether to automatically insert the signature when you compose mail.

Editing and registering signature for mail

- The signature can be decorated. The procedure of decoration is the same as for Deco-mail. However, Melo-deco cannot be used. Decoration reduces the number of characters you can enter accordingly.
- Mail becomes Deco-mail if any decorated signature is inserted into the mail.

Default not recorded

1 9 4 ▶ 2 ▶

2 Enter the signature (up to 9,998 one-byte or 4,999 two-byte characters) ▶

- Up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters can be entered. However, since a line feed is entered when you insert a signature, reduce 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte for line feed.

Setting whether to insert signature automatically

- Even if *ON* is set, the signature cannot be inserted when not registered.

Default ON

1 9 4 ▶ 1 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- The signature text is counted as characters in the message. If there is no available space for number of characters of the signature and line feed, a signature cannot be inserted.
- When *Auto add* is set to *ON*, the signature is always inserted at the end of message when replying and forwarding. However, as for the background color which is set for Signature, it is reflected only when composing i-mode Mail or replying to received i-mode Mail without quoting.
- When a signature has been registered, you can insert the signature by pressing on the message text entry screen and selecting *Phrase/Kuten/Quote* → *Add signature*. However, as for the background color which is set for Signature, it is reflected only at the state where the text is not input in case of in i-mode Mail.

- The signature cannot be inserted in SMS in following cases:
 - When the number of characters exceeds 70 (one- or two-byte), if you add the signature
 - When the signature is decorated
 - When composing SMS in case the font type is set to *English* in SMS Setting
 - When replying to or forwarding SMS for which the font type is set to *English*
- When the registered signature includes phone number, mail address or URL and is sent to an i-mode terminal, the receiver can use the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function.

Setting items to inquire to the i-mode Center

Message Retrieval Setting

- *Mail*, *MessageR*, and *MessageF* are all selected to be ☒ by default. If you do not want to check for an item, change it to ☐.

Default selected (all)

1 6 4 ▶ Select an item to inquire
▶

Setting to select and receive only necessary mail

Receive Option Setting

- When *ON* is set, mail is selected to be received, and when *OFF* is set, mail is received automatically.

Default OFF

1 9 7 2 ▶ 1 or 2

- When *ON* is selected, a message appears indicating that mails will not be automatically delivered. Press .
- When *ON* is set, Chat Mail cannot be used.

Setting to display new mails by opening the FOMA terminal

Display New Mail

When *ON* is set, if you open the FOMA terminal while displaying the reception result screen or reception result ticker in case i-mode Mail or SMS is received, the details screen of the received i-mode Mail or SMS can be displayed.

- When you receive multiple mails at the same time, the last received mail is displayed.

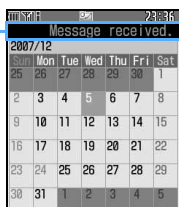
Default OFF



Open
➔



Open
➔



Reception result ticker

1 [Mail] [9] [8] ➔ [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

- When this function is set to *ON*, if you open the FOMA terminal while displaying mail reception result ticker, the details screen for new mail is displayed regardless of Edit by Slide.
- In the following cases, Display New Mail cannot be performed:
 - While activating i-appli
 - While receiving a voice/videophone call
 - While talking a voice/videophone call
 - While Key Lock is on (when Key Lock Setting is set to *OFF when slide open*)

Menu 196

Registering addresses in a mail group

Mail Group Setting

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, multiple addresses can be set by a simple operation when composing i-mode Mail.

- Up to 20 mail groups can be registered. Up to 5 mail addresses can be saved in each mail group.

1 [Mail] [9] [6]

2 [1]

- Renaming a mail group:** Highlight a mail group ➔ [MENU] [2]
- Copying a mail group:** Highlight a mail group ➔ [MENU] [3]
- Deleting a mail group:** Highlight a mail group ➔ [MENU] [4] [1] ➔ Yes

- Deleting all the mail groups:** [MENU] [4] [2] ➔ Enter the terminal security code ➔ Yes

3 Enter a mail group name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ➔ [1]

- To add another group: [1]

4 Select a mail group

5 [Mail] ➔ Set each item

Address Type:

Set TO, CC or BCC. ⬅P192

Address:

Enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters).

- To select from the sent message log: [MENU] [1] ➔ Select a log
- To select from the received message log: [MENU] [2] ➔ Select a log
- To select from the phonebook: [MENU] [3] ➔ Select a party

6 [1]

- To add another mail address to the mail group: Repeat from Step 5

- Editing a mail address:** Select a mail address (or name) ➔ Edit the mail address ➔ [1]

- Deleting a mail address:** Highlight a mail address (or name) ➔ [MENU] [2] ➔ Yes

- Displaying mail address details:** [MENU] [3] ➔ [1] after checking the details

7 [1]

- Highlight a mail group and press [1] to compose i-mode Mail.

Menu 195

Setting whether to quote the message when replying

Mail Reply Format

You can set whether to quote the message text when you reply to i-mode Mail or SMS. In addition, you set the quote characters that are added to the quoted message.

Default Quote:Yes
Quote characters:> (one-byte character)

1 [Mail] [9] [5] [1]

2 Set each item ➔ [1]

Quote:

Sets whether to quote the message when replying to mail.

Quote characters:

Up to 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte character can be entered.

- The quote characters are counted as characters in the message.
- If a character that cannot be sent is specified, the default character is used.

Menu 1952

Setting whether to insert a quick reply message when replying

Quick Reply Setting

- Quick reply messages cannot be inserted in SMS messages.
- Even if *ON* is set, a quick reply message cannot be inserted when not registered.

Default **ON**

1 [Envelope] [9] [5] [2] [Right] [1] or [2]

Menu 1953

Registering quick reply messages to be inserted when replying

Quick Reply Template

- Up to 5 messages can be registered.
- To add a new quick reply message when there are 5 default messages, edit or delete a default message.

Default OKです。(OK) NGです。(No good) ありがとう! (Thank you!) ゴメンなさい! (Sorry!) 後ほど連絡します。(Get in touch later.)

1 [Envelope] [9] [5] [3] [Right] **Select a message**

2 **Enter the message (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters)** [Enter] **Yes**

- A line feed cannot be inserted.

■ **Viewing a registered message: Highlight a message in the quick reply message list**

[Right] [Enter]

■ **Deleting a registered message: Highlight a message in the quick reply message list**

[Right] [MENU] [1] [Right] **Yes**

■ **Registering a new message: <New reply template> in the quick reply message list** [Right] **Enter the message** [Enter]

■ **Restoring the default settings:** [MENU] [2] **in the quick reply message list** [Right] **Enter the terminal security code** [Right] **Yes**

Menu 1975

Setting the display style of the mail list

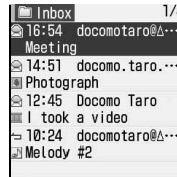
Mail List Setting

The display style of the mail list can be set for received/sent mail.

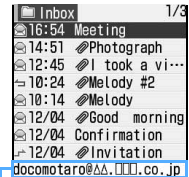
- The 2-row display applies to unsent mail and SMS in the UIM regardless of this setting.

Default **Display 2 rows**

Display 2 rows



Display 1 row



Sender address of the highlighted received mail (first receiver address for sent mail)

1 [Envelope] [9] [7] [5] [Right] [1] or [2]

Menu 1976

Preventing mail from being peeped

Only View

Specifies whether to set Only View to the i-mode Mail/SMS composition screen, view screen, signature edit screen (not decorated), or mail template view screen.

- Setting *ON* adjusts the contrast of the display screen, making it difficult to see the display, so that one can hardly peep the screen.
- For the following screens, Only View is not available.
 - Entering characters
 - Listing
 - Deco-mail
 - Chat mail

Default **OFF**

1 [Envelope] [9] [7] [6] [Right] [1] or [2]

- To switch the setting while displaying: [TV] (for a over second) [Right] **Yes**
- Switching while displaying also changes the setting for Only View as well.

Menu 1973

Setting whether to receive attachment automatically

Incoming Msg. Attach.

- For all of image, melody, i-motion, ToruCa, PDF, tool data, and others, ☒ is attached by default. When not receiving automatically (selecting to receive), set to ☐.

- **Tool data** includes the schedule data, bookmark data, and phonebook data.
- **Other** includes Word, Excel, PowerPoint files and other files.

Default selected (all)

1 [M] [9] [7] [3] ▶ Select a type of the file to change the setting [M]

INFORMATION

- The images or melodies inserted in the message are received automatically regardless of this setting.
- The file with ☐ set is not received when receiving mail. To receive the file, select the file name on the mail view screen.
- Even if ☒ is set, message text, images inserted in the text, and attachments are received automatically up to 100 Kbytes in total. If the total size exceeds 100 Kbytes, they are selected to be received.

Menu 1974 / Menu 2633 / ▼ 633

Setting whether to play melodies automatically Attachment Auto-play

You can set whether to play melodies attached to i-mode Mail or Message R/F automatically when the mail or message is displayed.

Default Auto play

1 [M] [9] [7] [4] ▶ [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

- When **Auto play** is set, displaying received mail, sent mail, mail template or Message R/F with a melody attached plays the melody once at the volume set for the call alert volume. When more than 1 melody is attached, the melodies play one after another. Press [27P] to stop playing.
- When Message R/F is displayed automatically, melodies are not played automatically even **Auto play** is set.

Selecting the type of mail to display Display Type

Only mail of the specified type is displayed. Closing the list resets the setting to **Display all items**.

- For received mail, you can select from **Display all items**, **Unread item only**, **Read item only**, or **Protected item only**.
- For sent mail, you can select **Display all** or **Display protected**.
- You cannot select the display type for unsent mail and received/sent SMS in the UIM.

Default Display all items (for received mail)/Display all (for sent mail)

1 [M] [1] or [5] ▶ Select a folder

2 [MENU] [7] [2] ▶ [1] - [4]

INFORMATION

- When **Read item only** is set, the protected mail is not displayed.

Changing the font size of the mail view screen

Font Size

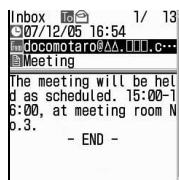
You can change the font size of the displayed message for received mail, sent mail and mail template.

- The change of font size applies to all the mails including received/sent mail, mail template, and mail in the microSD memory card.

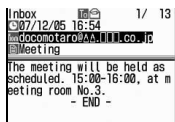
Default Medium (standard)



Large: 24 dots



Medium (standard): 20 dots



Small: 16 dots

Example Changing on the mail view screen

1 [M] [1] or [5] ▶ Select a folder

2 Select a mail [MENU] [3] [1]

- When a mail template is displayed, press [MENU] [4] [1].

3 [1] - [3]

INFORMATION

- The font size can be changed from **All listed** or **Mail view** of Font Size Setting.
- On the view screen for received/sent/unsent mail in the microSD memory card, press [MENU] and select **Font size**.
- Even if the font size is changed, the size of Deco-mail pictogram is not changed.
- The new font size of the mail view screen is retained until it is changed.
- The settings in this function are reflected to **Mail view** of Font Size Setting.

- The font size at the time of composing and editing mail can be changed from *All listed* or *Text input* of Font Size Setting.

Menu 1971

Setting mail reception notification Display Priority

You can set whether or not to display the receiving screen and reception result screen when i-mode Mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received and sending screen for auto-send mail during the FOMA terminal operation.

Default Show message

1 [Mail] [9] [7] [1] [1] or [2]

Continue operation:

Displays neither the receiving screen, reception result screen nor sending screen for auto-send mail while operating the FOMA terminal.

Show message:

Displays the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen for auto-send mail even if the FOMA terminal is operated.

INFORMATION

- When *Continue operation* is set, the receiving screen, reception result screen or sending screen for auto-send mail is not displayed in any mode other than the standby mode (while other function is running).
- Even when *Show message* is set, the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen for auto-send mail are not displayed in the following cases:
 - During a voice call
 - During a videophone call
 - While using the camera
 - While operating i-appli
 - While playing streaming type i-motion
 - While alarm clock or alarm is sounding.
- When All Lock, PIM Lock, or Public mode (Driving mode) is active, the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen for auto-send mail is not displayed.
- When the reception result screen is not displayed, the mail ring alert does not sound. The Enter key for incoming mails does not light/flash, either.

Composing and sending chat mail

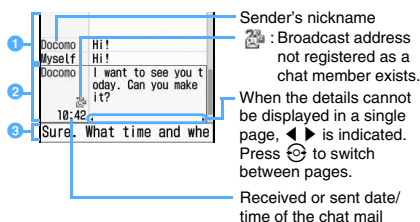
Compose Chat Mail

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation. The sent and received mail can be read on the same screen.

- Mail addresses of the receivers must be registered as chat members in advance.

- Chat mail is not available when Receive Option Setting is *Off* or there is no available storage space for received/sent mail.
- When chat mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is received as a mail with the subject “チャットメール (Chat mail)”. If a mail with the subject containing “チャットメール” is sent from a registered chat member who uses a non-compatible terminal, the FOMA terminal can receive it as chat mail.
- The communication fee for sending and receiving chat mail to/from multiple parties is the same as that for sending broadcast mail.

Chat mail screen



1 Sent/received log

100 items from the latest history can be displayed.

- Press (F) to scroll the log when ▲ ▼ is displayed in the guide row.
 - To scroll by a page: (F) or (M)
 - To move to the first row: (MENU) [5] [1]
 - To move to the last row: (MENU) [5] [2]

2 Details field

Displays details of the latest chat mail or the highlighted chat mail. Up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters can be displayed.

3 Text entry field

Menu 13

Adding chat members

Chat Member Setting

- Up to 5 chat members can be registered. You cannot register the same mail address for multiple members.

Registering first chat members

1 [Mail] [3] ▶ Yes ▶ [Mail]

2 Set each item

Address :

Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- When registering a member whose mail address has a secret code, register the mail address to the phonebook and set the secret code, and then register only the phone number for the chat member.
- To select from the sent/received message log or the phonebook: ► (1) - (3) ► Select the log or address

Nickname :

Up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters can be entered.

- When the mail address matches the address registered in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook (the first 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters) is displayed in the *Nickname* field.
- When no nickname is entered, the first 8 characters preceding the @ symbol in the mail address are displayed on the chat mail screen.

Font color :

Select the font color of nickname.

3

The chat member is displayed.

- To add another member: ► Repeat Steps 2 to 3

4

Adding, editing and deleting chat members

Example Adding a chat member

1 ► (7)

2 ► Set each item

- To edit: Select a member ► Set each item
- To delete one item: Highlight the member ► (2) ► Yes
- To display the detail information: (3) ► after checking the details
- To replace all the members by mail group: (5) ► Select a group ► Yes

3

Setting personal information (your nickname and the font color)

1 ► (8) ► Set the nickname and font color ►

- When your nickname was not set, *Myself* is displayed.

Menu 13

Composing and sending chat mail

- Chat mail is sent to all the registered members by default. You can also select members when sending, but the setting returns to default when you quit chat mail or change chat member information.
- The sent chat mail is saved in the *Outbox* folder of *Outbox*. However, when the sent mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1

- When a confirmation screen appears asking whether to add members, select *Yes* and register.

2 The text entry field ► Enter a message (up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters)

■ Copying and pasting text from chat mail log:

① Highlight a chat mail ► (6) ►

Specify the range

- Specifying the range ► P367

② The text entry field ► Specify the paste location ► (3)

■ Selecting members to send mail: (3)

► Select addresses ►

3

- When the chat mail is sent correctly, the sent chat mail is displayed on the chat mail screen.

■ Replying to all the broadcast addresses of received mail: (2) (2)

INFORMATION

- Chat mail can be displayed on the chat mail screen by the following operations:
 - In the received/sent mail list, highlight a chat mail, press and select *Display* → *Start chat mail*.
 - On the received/sent mail view screen, press and select *Display* → *Start chat mail*.

- If chat mail fails to be sent or is unsent when quitting chat mail, it is saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*. In this folder, only one chat mail can be saved. If sending of another chat mail fails, the chat mail saved in the *Unsent messages* folder is overwritten. In addition, the chat mail saved in the *Unsent messages* folder is displayed in the text entry field next time chat mail is started. To resend unsent chat mail, start operation from the chat mail screen.

Receiving chat mail

Receive Chat Mail

When chat mail has been started

When mail with the subject containing “チャットメール” in one-byte or two-byte characters is received from a registered chat member, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

- When chat mail has been activated, the ring alert or vibrator does not start even if a chat mail is received. The Enter key for incoming mails does not light/flash, either.
- When chat mail is received from a sender not registered as a chat member, follow the procedure in “When chat mail has not been started” below to display the mail on the chat mail screen.

When chat mail has not been started

Chat mail is saved in the *Inbox* folder of *Inbox* as i-mode Mail. However, when received chat mail matches the criteria set in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 Highlight the mail to display as chat mail in the received mail list ▶

- On the received mail view screen, press   .
- If the sender address of the highlighted mail is not registered as a chat member, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to register it. Select *Yes* to register. ◀P222
- Deco-mail or HTML mail received from PCs cannot be displayed on the chat mail screen.

Receiving chat mail stored in the i-mode Center

1 on the chat mail screen

If there is chat mail stored in the i-mode Center, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

- When  blinks, the log cannot be updated.

- When chat mail is received using Check i-mode Message, i-mode Mail is also received at the same time.

INFORMATION

- Even if the message on the chat mail screen contains phone number, mail address or URL, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, Media To, or i-appli To function is not available. No attachments are displayed. When you quit chat mail and display the chat mail from *Inbox*, these functions become available.
- When you delete chat mail from *Inbox*, the nickname appears as “-----”, date/time as “-/-” and text as *Deleted* on the chat mail screen.
- Chat mail received from a registered chat member while chat mail is not started will be displayed on the chat mail screen next time chat mail is started.
- The chat mail displayed on the chat mail screen will be marked as read in *Inbox*.
- When mail is sent or received from Message i-appli, the mail is displayed on the chat mail screen when received as chat mail.

Displaying broadcast addresses

Broadcast addresses of received mail can be displayed.

1 Highlight a mail on the chat mail screen ▶

The list of the addresses of received mail is displayed.

- In the field of address registered as a chat member, the registered nickname and mail address appear. In the field of address not registered as a chat member, *Not recorded* and the mail address appear.
- When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name appears instead of the mail address. Press  to display the mail address.

■ Adding unregistered broadcast address for chat member: Highlight an address ▶



- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in “Registering first chat members”. ◀P223

■ Copying broadcast addresses: Highlight an address ▶

Deleting all the chat mail log

- The chat mail in *Inbox* or *Outbox* is also deleted except for protected mail.

1 on the chat mail screen ▶ *Yes*

Quitting chat mail

1 or on the chat mail screen ► No

Chat mail quits. The previous chat mail log is displayed next time chat mail is started.

- When **Yes** is selected, all the chat mails are deleted. The chat mail in **Inbox** or **Outbox** is also deleted except for protected mail.

Menu 171

Composing and sending SMS

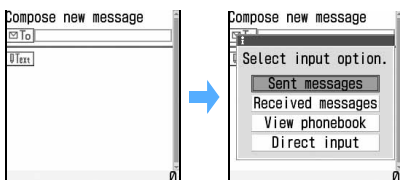
Compose SMS

- The maximum number of items that can be saved
◀P430
- If you use one-byte katakana, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly.
- International SMS can be sent and received to/from the parties that use overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. Please visit the DoCoMo website for the countries where the service is provided and available overseas carriers.
- Reading the received/sent/unsent SMS list/view screen ▶P208

Example

Composing and sending an SMS message by entering address directly

1 ► field



2 **Direct input** ► **Enter the address (the other party's phone number)**

- To send to a party that uses an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo, enter "+" (by holding down  for over a second) and the country code plus the party's mobile phone number. Omit the first zero (0) of the phone number. You can also send by entering "010" and the country code plus the party's mobile phone number (add "010" when replying to a received SMS message from overseas).
- You can enter up to 26 characters in the  field. However, up to 20 characters (21 characters if "+" is contained) can be sent as address.

■ Searching the phonebook: *View phonebook*

► Select a party

- When multiple phone numbers are registered, select a phone number.

■ Selecting from the sent message log of

SMS: Sent messages ► **Select a log**

- The phone number of the address of SMS is set.

■ Selecting from the received message log of

SMS: Received messages ► **Select a log**

- The phone number of the sender of SMS is set.

3 ► **Enter the message**

- When the font type is set to **Japanese** in SMS Setting, up to 70 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered. A space is also counted as a character in the message.
- When the font type is set to **English** in SMS Setting, up to 160 one-byte characters can be entered. Alphanumerics and symbols (except for `、[ ]、` and ` `) can be sent. A one-byte space is counted as a character in the message.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press  to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method (except in the one-byte/two-byte numeric modes). A line feed is counted as a character in the message. However, it is replaced by a space on the receiver's terminal.

■ Inserting a signature:

- Signature must be registered beforehand.

4

■ **Saving without sending:**

- You can edit and send the unsent SMS.
▶P200

INFORMATION

- Depending on signal conditions, the type of characters to be sent or the other party's terminal, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Even if **Not notify** is set in Caller ID Notification, the caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent.
- If you enter some symbols (| ^ { } [] ~ and ¥) when the font type is English, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. In this case, you may not be able to send the message even if the number of characters is less than the limit. In this case, reduce the number of characters and send it again.
- When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, SMS cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and SMS from **Unsent messages**. ▶P212

- Even when SMS has been sent, a model incompatible with SMS reception cannot receive SMS normally.
- The font type and whether to receive the delivered report must be set in SMS Setting beforehand. You can also change the settings for the delivered report and storage period while composing SMS.
- When transmission is completed correctly, SMS is saved in the **Outbox** folder of **Outbox**. However, when the sent SMS matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder. When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.
- When transmission fails, an error message appears and SMS is saved in the **Unsent messages** folder of **Unsent messages**. You can edit and send the SMS from the **Unsent messages** folder. ◀P200
- When you set the delivered report to **Request** and send SMS, you will receive a delivered report that notifies you that the message has been received by the other party's FOMA terminal. The delivered report is saved in **Inbox**.

- Setting to display new mails by opening the FOMA terminal ▶P218

2 ☺ or 1 on the reception result screen

▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an SMS message

- You can reply to (◀P202) or forward (◀P203) the received SMS. The operation is the same as for i-mode Mail.

INFORMATION

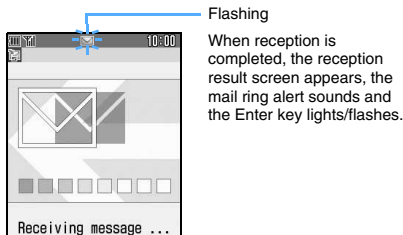
- The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key, or until the ring alert stops if ring time is set to 15 seconds or longer in Mail Alert. To return to the previous screen immediately, press (ZUR).
- While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, or connecting to the Data Center, SMS is not automatically received. Perform Check SMS.
- When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread ones is overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.
 - When the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of SMS is stopped. ☹ or ☹ is indicated on the screen. To receive new messages, you need to display unread mail, change unread mail to read, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.
- When the UIM already contains 20 messages, SMS may not be received even though there is space available in **Inbox**. ☹ or ☹ is indicated on the screen. Move messages to the FOMA terminal (◀P228) or delete them from the UIM (◀P228).
- In case that a phone number or URL is described in SMS, a caution appears indicating that the phone number and URL are described when displaying the SMS first. To display SMS, press ☺. You can also set not to display the caution in Scanning Setting. ▶P427
- When the received SMS has been set to be saved directly to the UIM, it will be saved directly in the UIM. Note that, when the number of messages in the UIM reaches 20, SMS cannot be received any more. Delete unnecessary messages and perform Check SMS again.
- The received SMS is saved in **Inbox**.
- Short Mail sent from a mova terminal is received by the FOMA terminal as SMS.
- When SMS is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation of the ring alert, vibrator and the Enter key. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". ▶P78
 - When multiple items of SMS are received at the same time, the operation depends on the conditions set for the last SMS received.
- When SMS is received from overseas carriers other than DoCoMo, "+" is added before the sender address. If the sender address prefixed with "+" is registered in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed.

When SMS is received

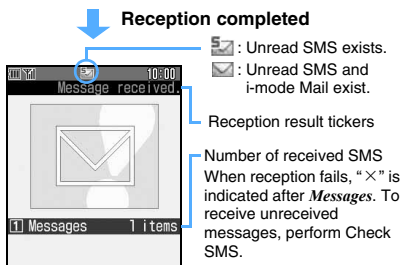
Receive SMS

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ▶P430

1 An SMS message is received



Receiving screen



Reception result screen

- Press (ZUR) while receiving SMS to stop reception, but SMS may be received depending on the receiving status.

Checking for SMS

Check SMS

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while the FOMA terminal was out of service area or turned off.

- Operate the terminal in locations with good signal condition.

1   

INFORMATION

- It may take time to receive SMS with Check SMS.

Making SMS settings

SMS Setting

Usually, you do not need to change *SMSC*, *Address* and *Type of Number* settings.

Default Font type: Japanese
 SMS report request: Not request
 Keep in SMS center: 3 days SMSC: DoCoMo
 Address: 81903101652
 Type of Number: international

1   

2 Set each item

Font type:

Selects Japanese or English language of messages to be sent. The maximum number of characters that can be sent differs depending on the font type.

SMS report request:

Specifies whether to request a delivered report when you send SMS.

Keep in SMS center:

Sets the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS Center in cases the receiver cannot receive the message.

- When *0 day* is set, SMS is resent after the fixed time has passed and deleted from the SMS Center.

SMSC:

Sets SMSC when you use SMS services other than DoCoMo.

- When *Others* is set, select the *Address* field and enter the address (up to 20 one-byte characters).

Type of Number:

Selects either *international* or *unknown*.

- When you select *Others* for *SMSC* and enter only numbers or numbers plus “+” or “#” in the *Address* field, select *unknown*.

INFORMATION

- On the SMS composition screen, press  and select *SMS settings*. In this case, only *SMS report request* and *Keep in SMS center* can be set and the settings are valid only for the SMS being composed.
- The settings for *Font type*, *Keep in SMS center*, *SMSC* and *Type of Number* are saved in the UIM.

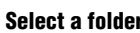
Saving SMS to the UIM

Save SMS to UIM

Moving/copying SMS to the UIM

- The maximum number of items that can be saved  P430
- SMS in *Unsent messages* cannot be saved to the UIM.
- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to *Received SMS* together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving/copying an SMS message

1   or  
 2   or  

Moving/copying selected messages:

   or   

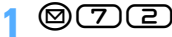
3 Yes

INFORMATION

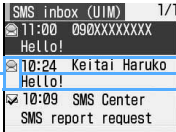
- On the received/sent mail view screen, press  and select *Move/Copy* → *Move to UIM* or *Copy to UIM*.
- When the UIM already contains 20 messages, you cannot move or copy additional messages to the UIM. Delete unnecessary messages from the UIM.
- The protection setting is not moved or copied to the UIM.

Displaying SMS in the UIM

Example Displaying received SMS



Received SMS is displayed in 2 rows on the received SMS (UIM) list screen.



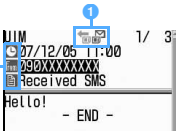
Reception date and time, and sender or receiver

The beginning of the message, *SMS report request* or *Notify missed call*

- 1 : Unread (able to reply)
- : Unread (unable to reply)
- : Read (able to reply)
- : Read (unable to reply)
- : Delivered report/missed call notice

- The read/unread icon in the list indicates whether SMS in the UIM has been displayed. The status of unread/read before moving or copying is also carried over.
- In the reception date and time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- To display sent SMS: 7 3

2 Select an SMS message



- 1 : Received (able to reply)
- : Received (unable to reply)
- : Sent
- : Delivered report/missed call notice
- : SMS in the UIM
- 2 : Date and time : Address
- : Sender
- : Sender (unable to reply)
- : Subject (*Received SMS*, *Sent SMS*, *SMS report request*, or *Notify missed call*)

- *SMS Center* is displayed as the sender of delivered report and *DoCoMo SMS* as the sender of missed call notice.
- When the sent SMS is moved or copied to the UIM, the sent date and time are cleared from the SMS in the UIM. However, for the sent SMS with delivered report, the date and time of delivered report is displayed.

INFORMATION

- When you reply to/forward or resend SMS in the UIM, the sent SMS is saved in *Outbox* of the FOMA terminal.

Moving/copying SMS from the UIM to the FOMA terminal

- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to *Inbox* together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving/copying an SMS message



Moving/copying selected messages:

- 3 2 or 4 Select messages



INFORMATION

- On the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press and select *Move/Copy* → *Move to phone* or *Copy to phone*.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, you cannot move or copy SMS. Unprotected SMS and i-mode Mail are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary mails/messages.

Deleting SMS from the UIM

- When you delete sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are also deleted from the UIM.



Deleting selected messages: 2 2

- Select messages

Deleting all the messages: 2 3

- Enter the terminal security code

Deleting all the delivered reports:

- 2 4 Enter the terminal security code



INFORMATION

- On the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press and select *Delete*.

i-αppli

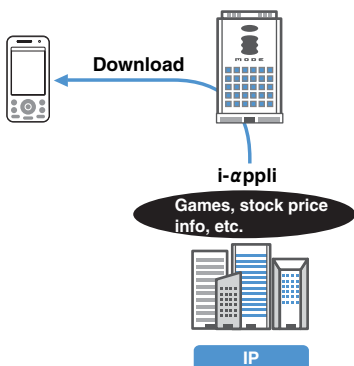
i-αppli	230
Downloading i-αppli from sites	231
Starting i-αppli	233
Using preinstalled i-αppli	236
Starting i-αppli with One-key Shortcut	One-key Shortcut 239
Starting i-αppli with Two-key Shortcut	Two-key Shortcut 240
Automatically starting i-αppli	240
Starting i-αppli from sites or mails	i-αppli To 241
Operating the i-αppli standby display	i-αppli Standby Display 241
Managing i-αppli	242
Using various functions from i-αppli	244

i-appli

Downloading i-appli software from sites allows more convenient use of the i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called the i-mode terminal). For example, various games can be downloaded to the i-mode terminal for amusement and i-appli for stock price information can be downloaded for automatically checking stock prices at regular intervals. Map i-appli downloads only necessary data and allows smooth scrolling. In addition, direct registration to the phonebook and schedule from i-appli may be made and working with Data Box including saving and obtaining of image may be available with some i-appli applications.

i-mode terminal

i-mode Center



- Downloading i-appli ➡P231
- Starting i-appli ➡P233
- Automatically starting i-appli ➡P240

INFORMATION

- Some i-appli applications may use the mobile phone or the UIM (FOMA card) serial number of your i-mode terminal.
- Some i-appli applications attempt to make connection when running. Such attempts can be disabled by presetting not to make connection. ➡P234

Using saved data

Some i-appli applications allow viewing, registering and operating of data (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images, videos, ToruCa and icons) saved in your i-mode terminal. The following operations can be performed using the saved data:

- Register phonebook entries
- Use icons
- Add bookmarks
- Save schedules

- Obtain images from Data Box
- Save images and videos in Data Box
- Refer to or obtain ToruCa
- Save ToruCa
- Use the microSD memory card

INFORMATION

- Some i-appli applications may not be used in Privacy Mode (with *Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*, *My Picture*, *i-motion* or *Schedule*).
- Any image or video saved from i-appli is stored in the *i-mode*, *Deco-mail picture* or *Deco-mail pict* folder of *My Picture*, the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion*, or within the i-appli itself. The obtained ToruCa are saved in the *ToruCa* folder of the ToruCa list.

i-appli DX

i-appli DX is more convenient and enjoyable i-appli. In conjunction with i-mode terminal information (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i-appli DX allows you to compose mail on your favorite character screen and inform you of a sender of an incoming call by character's comments when a call is received. Also, i-appli DX updates the desired information on stock price, game in progress or any other information in real time in conjunction with mail.

Using saved data

Some i-appli DX applications allow viewing, registering and operating of saved data such as mails, redials, received calls and ring alerts in addition to the saved data available with standard i-appli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images, videos, ToruCa and icons). The following operations can be performed using the saved data:

- Register phonebook entries
- View phonebook data
- Add bookmarks
- Use the Mail menu
- Use the mail composition screen
- View the latest redial
- View the latest received call
- View the latest unread mail
- Change ring alerts (phone, mail, Message R/F)
- Obtain images from Data Box
- Save images, videos and ring alerts in Data Box
- Refer to or obtain ToruCa
- Save ToruCa
- Change image settings (standby display, incoming/outgoing call, incoming videophone call, incoming/outgoing mail, Message R/F reception)
- Use the microSD memory card

INFORMATION

- With i-αppli DX, communication may be made to confirm the validity of i-αppli regardless of the NW transmission setting of i-αppli. The number of attempts to make communication and the timing depend on i-αppli.
- Activating i-αppli DX requires the date and time setting.
- Some i-αppli DX applications cannot be used in Privacy Mode (with *Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My Picture, i-motion* or *Schedule*).
- Any image, video and ring alert saved from i-αppli are stored in the *i-mode*, *Deco-mail picture* or *Deco-mail picture* folder of *My Picture*, the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion* or *Melody*, or within the i-αppli DX itself. The obtained ToruCa is saved in the *ToruCa* folder of the ToruCa list.

Message i-αppli

Message i-αppli is a type of i-αppli DX that allows more convenient and enjoyable use of i-αppli by providing real-time update of desired information on stock prices, games in progress, etc. through exchanging information by i-mode Mail.

- Mails used by Message i-αppli may not be correctly displayed.

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli allows you to read and write the data in the IC card and use convenient functions such as downloading electronic money or tickets or referring to the remaining balance and usage history on the FOMA terminal.

- Using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli sends the information in the IC card to IP (Information Provider) of the service that you subscribe to.
- For details about Osaifu-Keitai ◀P246

Other convenient functions

■ i-αppli standby display

On the i-αppli standby display, i-αppli can be used as the standby display screen, which allows directly receiving mails and making phone calls. Also the i-αppli standby display enables you to check the latest news and weather forecast on the screen or to have your favorite character inform you of incoming mails and alarms. ◀P108, P241

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting the i-αppli standby display.

■ i-αppli auto start

i-αppli can be automatically started at the user-specified time, date, day of week, etc. Some i-αppli applications allow auto start at the time intervals preset with i-αppli. ◀P240

■ Shooting with the camera

Images can be taken with the i-mode terminal camera from i-αppli. ◀P244

- This function is available with i-αppli supporting camera shooting.

■ Infrared communication

The data can be exchanged with the devices that are provided with the infrared communication function from i-αppli. This allows enhanced use by interacting with devices provided with the infrared communication function. ◀P244

- This function is available with i-αppli that supports infrared communication.
- Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

■ Infrared remote control

Various devices such as electrical appliances that support infrared remote control can be operated from i-αppli. ◀P315

For example, the preinstalled Gガイド番組表リモコン(G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) allows using your terminal as an AV remote controller which works with the TV program guide. ◀P237

- This function is available with i-αppli that supports infrared remote control. i-αppli that supports the device to control is required.

Downloading i-αppli from sites

- The maximum number of i-αppli that can be saved ◀P430
- If i-αppli download has failed due to poor signal conditions, etc., the i-αppli will not be saved in the FOMA terminal.
- The maximum size of an i-αppli file that can be downloaded is 1 Mbytes.

1 Display the site containing i-αppli ▶ Select an i-αppli

The selected i-αppli is downloaded.

- To stop downloading: Ⓞ ▶ Yes

■ **When Software Info Display is set to ON:**

i-appli information is displayed. When you select *Yes*, i-appli is downloaded.

- To check the detail information of i-appli:



■ **When downloading i-appli that uses the saved data, the serial number of the mobile phone/UIM/IC card or the microSD memory card:**

A confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to download i-appli.

- When *Guide* is displayed in the guide row, the details of the data to be used by the i-appli can be checked by pressing

■ **When the selected i-appli is already downloaded:**

Already downloaded is displayed. When the new version of i-appli is released, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to upgrade. When you select *Yes*, i-appli is downloaded to upgrade the version.

■ **When the selected i-appli is already downloaded to a UIM other than the current UIM:**

A confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite. Select *Yes* to overwrite the downloaded i-appli.

2 Select a folder to save

A confirmation screen appears asking whether to use the i-appli.

- With some i-appli applications, the settings screen appears for the standby display (*Set i-appli display*), the NW transmission or the program guide key (*Set program guide key*). Set each item.

For items to set, see Step 2 of “Setting the operating conditions of i-appli”. ◀P234

3 Yes

The downloaded i-appli starts.

- To return to the site screen: *No*
- When *Set stand-by disp.* is set to *Yes* on the settings screen, another confirmation screen appears asking whether to set i-appli as the standby display. When you select *Yes*, the ticker setting is canceled if *Show ticker* is set to *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- If you cancel downloading or the network connection breaks, i-appli data downloaded up to that point may be saved. To download the remaining part of i-appli data, follow Step 3 of “Starting i-appli”. ▶P233
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete saved i-appli. Note that the deleted i-appli and the deleted data in the microSD memory card cannot be restored even if downloading has failed.
- Depending on the amount of data in the IC card, even if there is enough storage space available for i-appli, some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be downloaded. In this case, delete some saved i-appli according to the instructions on the screen. Note, however, that some types of i-appli applications are not indicated as being deletable. Also note that you cannot delete some types of i-appli applications until you start or download them again to delete the data in the IC card.

Downloading Message i-appli

When Message i-appli is downloaded, folders for Message i-appli are automatically created in the folder lists of *Outbox*, *Inbox* and *Unsent messages*. The name of downloaded Message i-appli is used as the folder name which cannot be changed.

- Message i-appli can be saved up to 5 applications (included in the 100 maximum number of i-appli applications). If the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete an existing Message i-appli folder (when the folder is deleted, the corresponding i-appli is also deleted).
- If Message i-appli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in the FOMA terminal, the i-appli cannot be downloaded.

INFORMATION

- If you delete a Message i-appli application without deleting the corresponding mail folder and try to download the Message i-appli that will use the undeleted mail folder, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to use the existing folder. When you select *Yes*, the Message i-appli is downloaded. If you choose not to use the mail folder, delete the folder before downloading the Message i-appli.
- If mails corresponding to the Message i-appli to be downloaded are already saved, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to move them to the folder created at the time of downloading. When you select *Yes*, the mail is sorted to that folder. However, when Privacy Mode is on (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), you cannot sort them.

Viewing i-appli information when downloading

Software Info Display

Default OFF

1 (MENU) 3 2 3 ▶ 1 or 2

Menu 31

Starting i-appli

1 (for over a second)

- Displaying only the IC card software (Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli):

(MENU) 6 5 1

The IC card software list screen appears.

Go to Step 3.

2 Select a folder

The software list screen is displayed.

📁: i-appli present 📁: No i-appli

3 Select an i-appli

- Each time you press (OK), the list display and the thumbnail display are switched.
- When **Confirm every session** is set for NW transmission of i-appli to be started, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to connect.
- If you select the IC card data transferred by the iC transfer service, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the software. Depending on the transferred IC card data, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to connect to a site to download the software. If you download the corresponding Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, you can start it.
- If you select an i-appli application partially downloaded before, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the remaining data. Selecting **Yes** starts downloading. If you download the remaining data, you can start the i-appli. If the remaining data fails to be downloaded, the partially saved i-appli may be deleted.

Quitting i-appli

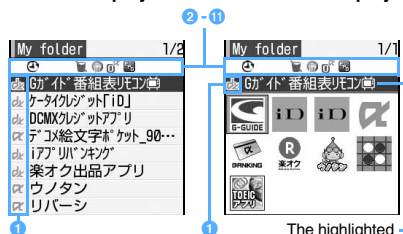
Quit i-appli following the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit i-appli by pressing (STOP) and selecting **Yes**.

The software list screen

List display

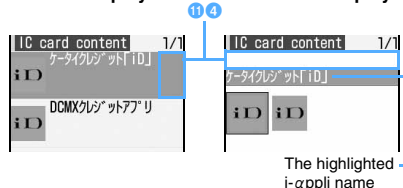
Thumbnail display



Software list screen

List display

Thumbnail display



IC card software list screen

- 1 (in orange): Normal i-appli
 - 📁: i-appli DX
 - 📁: Message i-appli
- 2 (in orange): i-appli that can be set for the i-appli standby display
 - 📁: i-appli being currently set for the i-appli standby display
- 3 (in orange): i-appli with Auto Start on
- 4 (half gray and half orange): Partially saved i-appli
 - 📁: i-appli stopped by IP
 - 📁: i-appli downloaded from SSL pages
 - 📁: Protected i-appli
 - 📁: i-appli that cannot be protected, released or deleted
- 7 (in orange): i-appli registered in One-key Shortcut
- 8 (in orange) to 9 (in orange): i-appli registered in Two-key Shortcut
- 9 (in orange): i-appli that allows to set the program guide key
 - 📁: The program guide key is being set
- 10 (in orange): IC card data transferred by the iC transfer service
 - 📁: Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli
- 11 (in orange): i-appli that cannot be used because of the UIM operation restriction

INFORMATION

- In case of partially saved i- α ppli, only the detail information can be displayed, deleted, protected and moved to another folder.
- IC card data transferred by the iC transfer service can only be deleted.
- i- α ppli is interrupted in the cases described below. When you quit the function being used, i- α ppli is resumed. To resume i- α ppli without quitting the current function, press  and select *i- α ppli*. However, i- α ppli may not be resumed by  depending on the function running. Some i- α ppli applications may not return to the state before interruption when resumed.
If Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- α ppli is interrupted, the read/write operation of data from/to the IC card is also interrupted. In that case, the data being read or written may be discarded.
 - When there is an incoming call (except when the ringing time of Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service is set to 0 Sec.)
 - When the time set by Timer has passed
 - When the time set in the schedule alarm or alarm clock arrives
 - When you switch to another function
- When you are outside the service area or the saved data cannot be used, i- α ppli may not start or not operate correctly.
- Images used by i- α ppli or the data you entered may be sent to the server via Internet automatically. Images used by i- α ppli are such as those shot with the camera activated by the running i- α ppli and those obtained through the infrared communication/iC communication function of the i- α ppli.
- For some i- α ppli applications, the IP can access i- α ppli saved in the mobile phone and directly stop its use. This disables the i- α ppli to be started, upgraded, or set for the standby display. You can only delete it or view the detail information. To use it again, please contact the IP to release suspension of i- α ppli.
- For some i- α ppli applications, the IP may send data to i- α ppli saved in the mobile phone.
- When the IP requests to stop/restart i- α ppli or sends data to i- α ppli, the FOMA terminal communicates and  blinks. In this case, the communication charge is not required.
- Some software allows data to be saved in the microSD memory card. Show the detail information to see whether or not the microSD memory card is used. The data saved in the microSD memory card may not be used by other FOMA models.
- The i- α ppli continues its operation even if you set Key Lock and the display disappears while i- α ppli is operating.
- The sound volume for i- α ppli operation can be set by *i- α ppli effect sound*. However, sound effect is unavailable for some i- α ppli applications.
- If thumbnail images cannot be obtained, any of the , ,  and  *1 appears.

*1 IC card data transferred by the iC transfer service

● To i- α ppli creators

If i- α ppli being created does not operate normally, "trace information" may help. Pressing     on the standby display displays the trace. Note that trace information cannot be displayed if i- α ppli created to record trace information is not saved.

To delete the trace information, press  and select *Yes*.

Displaying the history when operation finished without using saved data Security Error History

When i- α ppli ended because of an error such that i- α ppli cannot use the saved data, the name of i- α ppli, date and time, and cause of the security error are recorded.

- Up to 20 errors are recorded in the security error history. When the number of recorded errors exceeds 20, the oldest one is deleted.

1

■ **Deleting the history:**  on the log display screen ▶ *Yes*

Displaying i- α ppli detail information Detail Info

Detail information such as the name and version of i- α ppli can be checked.

1 (for over a second) ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Highlight an i- α ppli** ▶

- The displayed items differ depending on i- α ppli.
- For i- α ppli downloaded from SSL pages, you can check the site certificate by pressing  on the software detail information screen.

Setting the operating conditions of i- α ppli

Settings

- Items that can be set depend on i- α ppli.

1 (for over a second) ▶ **Select a folder** 2 **Highlight an i- α ppli** ▶ ▶ **Set each item** ▶

Set i- α ppli display :

Set whether to set i- α ppli as the standby display.

- Only one i- α ppli application can be set.

Set NW transmission during i- α ppli display :

Set whether to allow automatic connection while the i- α ppli standby display is operating.

Set NW transmission :

Set whether to allow automatic connection while i-αpli is running.

Set program guide key :

Set whether to activate the i-αpli as the program guide i-αpli on the menu or TV screen.

- This setting is available only for i-αpli applications that can operate with 1Seg.
- Only one i-αpli application can be set.

Use icons :

Set whether to allow i-αpli to use icons for mail, Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode and received signal level.

Start from browser :

Set whether to permit starting (i-αpli To) from sites.

Start from ToruCa :

Set whether to permit starting (i-αpli To) from ToruCa.

Start from mailer :

Set whether to permit starting (i-αpli To) from mails.

Start from Location Service menu :

Set whether to permit starting (i-αpli To) from link items for location information in sites, Message R/F and ToruCa.

Start from external :

Set whether to permit starting (i-αpli To) from external devices.

Start from data broadcasting :

Set whether to permit starting (i-αpli To) from data broadcast or data broadcasting sites.

Allow ring tone/image changes by software*1 :

Set whether to allow i-αpli to change the settings of ring alerts or images on the screen such as the standby display.

Confirm all changes*1 :

Set whether i-αpli displays a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring alerts or images are changed.

Allow access to phonebook/call records by software*1 :

Set whether to allow i-αpli to refer to the phonebook, redial data and received call history.

- This setting also applies to ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal.

*1 This setting is available only for i-αpli DX.

- When *Set i-αpli display* is set to *Yes*, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to set i-αpli as the standby display. Selecting *Yes* sets the i-αpli standby display. When you select *Yes*, the ticker setting is canceled if *Show ticker* is set to *Yes*. If the i-αpli is already set for i-αpli standby display, the confirmation screen does not appear.

- When you change the setting of *Set program guide key* from *Yes* to *No*, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel the program guide key setting.

INFORMATION

- Note that if you set *No* for *Set NW transmission*, i-αpli may not be started and timely information such as stock prices or weather forecast may not be provided by i-αpli.
- If *Yes* is set for *Use icons*, information about icons for unread mail, unread Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode, and icons within service area/outside service area may be sent to IPs through the Internet. Therefore, the information may be leaked to a third party. When *Use icons* is set to *No*, i-αpli that requires the icon information may not operate.

Setting the lighting and vibrator during i-αpli running

Display Light/Vibrate Effect

Setting display light

- The i-αpli standby display light follows the setting of *Normal use* of *Display light time* in Display Light Setting. ➡P114
- While Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the light does not operate while i-αpli is running even if *Software* is set.

Default Terminal setting

1 (MENU) 3 2 4 ▶ 1 or 2

Terminal setting :

The light follows the setting of *Normal use* of *Display light time* in Display Light Setting.

Software :

The light comes on according to i-αpli.

INFORMATION

- For some i-αpli applications, *Terminal setting* does not take effect even if you set it.
- This setting also applies to *i-αpli* of *Display light time* in Display Light Setting. ➡P114

Setting vibrator

This setting allows the vibrator operation by i-αpli.

- While Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the vibrator does not operate while i-αpli is running regardless of this setting.

Default ON

1 (MENU) 3 2 5 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- This setting also applies to Vibrator Setting. ➡P103

Starting another i-appli application from i-appli

Depending on the i-appli application, you can start another i-appli without returning to the software list.

1 Operate the i-appli to start another i-appli

INFORMATION

- Some i-appli applications allow you to select another i-appli to activate. When a message appears asking you to select an i-appli, press  and select it.

Using preinstalled i-appli

The following i-appli applications are registered by default:

- Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)
- ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 (iD credit payment service)
- 「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (DCMX credit application)
- デコメ絵文字ポケット (Deco-mail Pictogram Pocket)
- i アプリバンキング (i-appli Banking)
- 楽天出品アプリ (Rakuten auction application)
- 七田式トレーニング 右脳鍛錬 ウノタン for D704i (Shichida-shiki Training Unou Tanren Unotan for D704i)
- リバーシ (Reversi)
- 旺文社TOEICアプリ for D (Obunsha TOEIC application for D)

Select an i-appli application from the list to start.

- Some i-appli names may be different from those on the display.
- If you delete default i-appli and want to restore it, you can download it from the i-mode site "My D-style". ●P391

七田式トレーニング 右脳鍛錬 ウノタン for D704i (Shichida-shiki Training Unou Tanren Unotan for D704i)

This is a game that requires quick judgment and thereby exercises your right brain and enhances judgment. There are two modes available: the トレーニング (Training) mode and the チャレンジ (Challenge) mode

- The following 4 games are available.

ドッツ (Dots):

The game which requires you to quickly count the number of dots appearing on the screen.

カラー (Color):

The game to judge which color dots are the largest in number.

合計金額 (Sum):

The game to instantly calculate the total amount of coins on the screen.

たし算 (Add):

The game to add up all numbers on the screen.

- On the top screen, you can perform various settings or read descriptions. For details about operations, see マニュアルじや (The Manual) on the top screen or descriptions on the game selection screen.



©2007

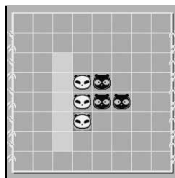
Interchannel-Holon Inc.

©2007 Softasia Inc.

リバーシ (Reversi)

This is an i-appli version of a famous board game. You can select among 3 levels of difficulties and whether to play first (black stones) or second (white stones). Also you can select the game screen design from ノーマル (Normal) and 珍さん (Chin-san).

- On the menu screen, you can show the score, options and Help. For details about playing, see Help.



Chin-san mode

■ Operation procedure

Select a square: 

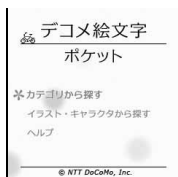
Place a stone: 

旺文社TOEICアプリ for D (Obunsha TOEIC application for D)

This is an i-appli version of English learning program for TOEIC® (Test of English for International Communication). Two types of lessons are available: TOEIC(R)テストトイディウム (Idioms for TOEIC(R) Test) and TOEIC(R)テストボキャブラリー (Vocabulary Building for TOEIC(R) Test). Each lesson

provides two modes: 暗記モード (Memorization) and テストモード (Test). In the 暗記モード, answer the questions on the screen and then select 答えをめくる (Show answers) to check your answers. In the テストモード, choose an answer from multiple choices. To show the menu, press  on the screen of each lesson. For details about how to use, select 利用方法 (How to use) from the menu.

デコメ絵文字ポケット (Deco-mail Pictogram Pocket)



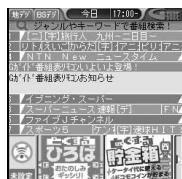
デコメ絵文字ポケット is an i-appli application specially designed for Deco-mail pictograms that you can use in i-mode mails in the same way as for regular pictograms. This i-appli enables you to easily search and save Deco-mail pictograms.

Using such topics as カテゴリー (Category) and イラスト・キャラクタ (Illustrated Character), you can easily search for Deco-mail pictograms provided by IP and save them in your mobile phone.

You can also save multiple Deco-mail pictograms at a time. When you find a favorite Deco-mail pictogram, you can read the description about the site that provides the pictogram and access the site.

- デコメ絵文字ポケット is available free of charge; no monthly fee is required. Note, however, that you may be separately charged with an i-mode information fee if you visit a site provided by an IP.
- Packet communication fee is separately required.
- For more information, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

Gガイド番組表リモコン(G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)



- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screen. TV channels of your local area are displayed.

This is a convenient, free-of-charge application that provides a combination of the TV program guide and the AV remote controller.

With this i-appli, you can easily access the digital terrestrial or digital BS TV program information from anywhere at any time. The TV program information includes program titles, brief description of program content, starting and ending time, etc. You can activate 1Seg from the program guide. Also you can activate the program guide from 1Seg.

You can schedule to record your favorite TV programs onto the DVD/hard-disk recorder from a remote place via Internet. This function is available with DVD/hard-disk recorders that support remote record scheduling. Before using this i-appli, it is necessary to perform initial settings. In addition, it is possible to search for the program information using keywords such as the TV program genre or your favorite entertainer. You can also operate the TV, video player/recorder and DVD player remotely (some devices do not support this function).

- When using this i-appli for the first time, it is necessary to make initial settings and consent to the agreements for use.
- Packet communication fee is separately required.
- For more information, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
- For remote control operation ◀P315

Scheduling of 1Seg viewing

Highlight a TV program on the program guide i-appli screen and select 視聴予約 (Booking program) in the menu to schedule 1Seg viewing.

■ The procedure of scheduling

Start this i-appli, highlight a TV program which you want to schedule and select 視聴予約 in the menu. Select 予約実行 (Execute scheduling) and follow the instruction on the screen to schedule 1Seg viewing.

Remote record scheduling

If your DVD/hard-disk recorder supports remote record scheduling, you can schedule to record TV programs using the program guide of this i-appli from a remote place via Internet.

For remote scheduling, it is necessary to perform initial settings with this i-appli.

■ Performing initial settings

- ① **Connect your DVD/hard-disk recorder to Internet**
 - See the manual of your DVD/hard-disk recorder.
- ② **Start this i-appli and select リモート録画予約 (Remote record scheduling) from the menu.**
 - The guidance appears. Perform initial settings according to the guidance.

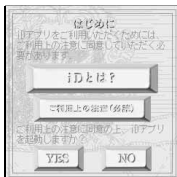
■ Scheduling to record TV programs

After the initial setting is completed, specify a TV program and select **リモート録画予約** on the menu. Your FOMA terminal connects via Internet to your DVD/hard-disk recorder at home to schedule recording of TV programs.

- Packet communication fee is required separately.

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 (iD credit payment service)



- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screen.

The iD credit payment service is a credit service that enables shopping or cashing by holding Osaifu-Keitai over the reader/writer. With this service you do not need to take out the credit card from the wallet or sign the slip, allowing you to enjoy shopping more conveniently.

- To use iD, it is necessary to apply for a credit card supporting iD. Also the iD application and the card application issued by a card company are required.
- When you use iD application for the first time, you have to agree on **ご利用上の注意** (Terms and Conditions for Use), prepare for usage, and download the card application.
- The cost for using an iD-supported credit card service, such as the annual fee, depends on card companies.
- To download iD application and card application issued by a card company, packet communication fee is required.
- See the following iD i-mode site and websites for information about iD.

i-mode site:

iMenu → **メニュー/検索**
(Menu/search) → **ケータイ**

クレジット iD (iD credit payment service)

Web page: <http://id-credit.com>



QR code for
website access

「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (DCMX credit application)



- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screen.

“DCMX” is a credit service that NTT DoCoMo group provides for the iD credit payment service. DCMX is available in two types: DCMX mini and DCMX. DCMX mini allows credit payment of up to ¥10,000 per month and DCMX offers a credit line of more than that. With DCMX, you can also earn DoCoMo points. You can apply for “DCMX mini” from this i-appli to use the iD credit payment service immediately.

■ i-appli functions

Application and screening*1

Card information setting

Use

No cumbersome charge required.
You can enjoy shopping only by holding your FOMA terminal over the reader/writer at a shop. You do not need to sign a slip*2.

Check*3

You can check your credit card balance and usage details from this i-appli.

Change

You can update the card from this i-appli.
Also, when you change your FOMA terminal to a new one, you can set the card information from this i-appli.

*1 Your application for DCMX mini will be examined online. For any application for other than DCMX mini, your terminal automatically connects to the online application page of i-mode.

*2 Entering a password may be required under a certain condition.

*3 Checking the usage details, etc. is available only for DCMX mini.

- For details about the service or application procedure, see the following:
DCMX home page

- From i-mode: **DCMX** of iMenu
- From PC: <http://dcmx.jp/>

- Contact “General Inquiries” described on the back of this manual for details.



QR code for website access

INFORMATION

- When you use this i-appli for the first time, you have to agree on ご利用上の注意 (Terms and Conditions for Use) before using it.
- For setting and operating this i-appli, packet communication fee is required separately.

Precautions for Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the information saved in the IC card.

i アプリバンキング (i-appli Banking)

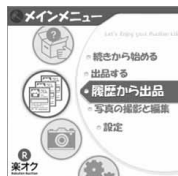


- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screens.

This i-appli is intended to enable you to use mobile banking conveniently. Mobile banking is a service by which you can use a mobile phone to check your account balance and account activity or transfer money at any time and from anywhere. All you need is to enter your password when starting the i-appli application. You can use mobile banking services of up to 2 financial institutions.

- To use mobile banking with this application, you have to open your account at a financial institution and apply for the mobile banking service of the institution.
- The service requires a separate packet communication fee.
- For details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
- For details about i アプリバンキング, see the i-mode site.

楽オーク出品アプリ (Rakuten auction application)



- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screens.

楽オーク出品アプリ is a convenient i-appli application that allows you to exhibit your items at Rakuten Auction at any time and from anywhere.

Even the first-time exhibitor can use the application easily because of its convenient guidance. Other convenient functions include photographing, photo editing and logging. These allow you to exhibit your items more quickly than you do from the website.

- You need to agree to the 利用規約 (Terms of Use) if you are a first-timer.
- The service requires a separate packet communication fee.
- For details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
- To exhibit your items at Rakuten Auction, you have to apply for Rakuten membership and exhibitor registration.
- For more information about Rakuten Auction, see the i-mode site.
Home page:
<http://a.rakuten.co.jp/>
i-mode site:
楽オーク - オークション (Rakuten auction) of iMenu



QR code for site connection

Starting i-appli with One-key Shortcut

One-key Shortcut

Registering i-appli to One-key Shortcut

- Only one i-appli application can be registered. By default, ケータイクレジット 「iD (アイディ)」 is registered.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight an i-appli ▶

- To cancel, repeat the same procedure.

Starting i-appli with One-key Shortcut

1 (for over a second)

Starting i-appli with Two-key Shortcut

Two-key Shortcut

Registering i-appli to Two-key Shortcut

- Up to 10 i-appli applications can be registered.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight an i-appli ▶

- To cancel, repeat the same procedure.

3 Select the number to register

- The icon numbers ( - ) correspond to dial keys  to  to be pressed to start Two-key shortcut.
- When you select a dial key that has already been assigned an i-appli application, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite it.

Starting i-appli with Two-key Shortcut

1 - ▶ (for over a second)

Displaying the Two-key Shortcut list

Default Not recorded

1

- To start: Select an i-appli
- To display details: Highlight an i-appli ▶ 
- To cancel registration: Highlight an i-appli ▶   ▶ Yes

Automatically starting i-appli

Select whether to use auto starting and set different auto starting conditions for each i-appli.

Setting whether to start automatically

Auto Start

Default ON

1 ▶ or

Setting the date and time of auto starting

Auto Start Info Setting

Set Auto Start on/off or the start time for each i-appli and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on i-appli.
- Some i-appli applications may not be started automatically.
- When Auto Start is set to **OFF**, this setting is not available.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight an i-appli ▶ ▶ Set each item ▶

User :

Select whether to set conditions of Auto Start.

Time :

Enter the time to automatically start i-appli.

Repeat :

Set the condition for repetitive automatic starting of i-appli.

Weekly :

Set the day of week for auto starting when *Weekly* is set for *Repeat*.

Date :

Set the date for auto starting when *Onetime* is set for *Repeat*.

Software :

Set whether to automatically start at the intervals preset for i-appli.

i-appli 1 to 4 :

Depending on i-appli DX, up to 4 conditions of Auto Start can be set while it is operated. Set whether to enable the settings.

INFORMATION

- Even when auto starting is set, i-appli does not start in the following cases.  appears on the standby display and the case is recorded in the Start Failure History.
 - When a screen other than the standby display is displayed
 - When the UIM restricts operation (except for preinstalled i-appli)
 - When the UIM cannot be detected
 - When the interval of auto starting is too short
 - When All Lock, Omakase Lock (Remote Lock), PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (with *Authorized access* set to *i-appli*)
 - When i-appli usage is stopped by the IP
- When 2 or more i-appli applications are specified to start automatically at the same time, only one i-appli is activated. The failed i-appli information is recorded in Start Failure History, but  does not appear on the standby display.

Displaying the history when auto starting of i-appli fails

Start Failure History

If automatic start of i-appli fails,  appears on the standby display and the i-appli name, the date and time and the failure reason are recorded.

- Up to 20 start failures are recorded. When the number of recorded failures exceeds 20, the oldest one is deleted.
- When you display the start failure history or when the next automatic start is successful,  on the standby display disappears.

1



■ **Deleting the history:**  on the log display screen ▶ *Yes*

Starting i-appli from sites or mails

i-appli To

1

Select a link item enabled to start i-appli from sites or i-mode mails ▶ *Yes*

i-appli is started.

INFORMATION

- If the i-appli you attempt to start with i-appli To is not saved in the FOMA terminal, it cannot be started. Note that some i-appli applications may start just after downloaded from sites even if it is not saved.
- If the specified i-appli is set not to start with i-appli To, it cannot be started. ●P234

Operating the i-appli standby display

i-appli Standby Display

When i-appli is set for the standby display, you can start and operate i-appli from the standby display. On the i-appli standby display,  or  is indicated at the top of the screen.

- It is necessary to set i-appli for the standby display beforehand. ●P108

INFORMATION

- When you set i-appli that performs communication, it may not operate correctly depending on signal conditions, etc.
- While All Lock, PIM Lock, Privacy Mode (with i-appli set to *Authorized access*) or Omakase Lock is active, the i-appli standby display will be canceled temporarily. If

you cancel All Lock, PIM Lock, Omakase Lock, or Privacy Mode, the i-appli standby display restarts.

- If the use of i-appli set to the i-appli standby display is stopped by IP, the i-appli standby display is canceled.
- If an error occurs and a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel the i-appli standby display, select *Yes* to cancel it. At this time, the name of i-appli and date/time are recorded in Abnormal Exit History.
- You cannot connect to a site (Web To) from the i-appli standby display.
- When the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the i-appli standby display set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to start the i-appli standby display. When you select *Yes* or operate nothing for about 5 seconds, the i-appli standby display starts. When you select *No*, the i-appli standby display setting is canceled. When the power is turned on by Auto Power ON, the i-appli standby display automatically starts, without displaying the confirmation screen.

Starting i-appli of the i-appli standby display

1

 on the i-appli standby display

The screen is switched to the i-appli screen and  or  blinks at the top of the display.

Quitting i-appli to return to the i-appli standby display

1

 while i-appli is running ▶ *End*

i-appli terminates and the i-appli standby display returns.

- The procedure to quit i-appli and return to the i-appli standby display depends on the type of i-appli.
- Even if *End* is selected, the i-appli standby display setting is not canceled. To cancel, select *Cancel*.

INFORMATION

- You can also cancel the i-appli standby display by highlighting the i-appli of the i-appli standby display in the software list, pressing , selecting *i-appli display* and then selecting *Cancel*.

Displaying the exit history of the i-appli standby display

Abnormal Exit History

When an error that will cancel the i-appli standby display occurs, the i-appli name, date and time are recorded.

- Up to 20 abnormal exits are recorded. When the number of recorded abnormal exits exceeds 20, the oldest one is deleted.
- In the normal end, exits are not recorded.

- 1    
 - Deleting the history:  on the log display screen ▶ *Yes*

Managing i-appli

Upgrading i-appli

Upgrade

When i-appli has been updated, its version can be upgraded.

- i-appli whose usage is stopped by IP cannot be upgraded.

- 1  (for over a second) ▶ **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight an i-appli** ▶   ▶ *Yes*
Upgrading starts.

INFORMATION

- When you upgrade i-appli, data such as game scores stored by the i-appli may be erased.
- Some i-appli applications may inquire the DoCoMo server about the availability depending on the length of time of use/number of times of use. If the server gives a notice of i-appli having been updated, it can be upgraded after confirmation.
- Some i-appli applications may be upgraded automatically.

Creating/deleting folders

Creating a folder

- Up to 20 folders can be created including *My folder*.

- 1  (for over a second)
- 2  
 - Changing the folder name: Highlight a folder ▶  
 - Changing the order of folders: Highlight a folder ▶  ▶  or 
- 3 **Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)** ▶ 

Deleting folders

- Note that the folder cannot be deleted if it contains the protected i-appli. Cancel the protection and then delete it.

- You cannot delete a folder if it contains Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)

- 1  (for over a second) ▶ **Highlight a folder** ▶   

- To delete a folder with any i-appli stored in it, enter the terminal security code.

2 Yes

- If there is any Message i-appli in the folder to be deleted, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the mail folder. Select *Yes* to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in the folder. Select *No* to delete i-appli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-appli and mail folder even when you select *Yes*.
- If the folder to delete contains an Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli application that cannot be deleted unless the data in the IC card is deleted, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete i-appli other than that.
- If the folder to delete contains an i-appli application that has data in the microSD memory card, a confirmation screen may appear to ask whether to delete the data in the microSD memory card as well. If you select *Yes*, the data in the microSD memory card is also deleted. Select *No* to delete i-appli only.
- If the folder to delete contains an i-appli application for which *Set program guide key* is set to *Yes*, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the folder.

INFORMATION

- When the mail folder for Message i-appli to be deleted is being used (including being displayed in the list), the i-appli may not be deleted.
- When only i-appli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-appli is left undeleted, the mail can be displayed from the submenu in the folder list of mail.
▶ P207

Moving i-appli to another folder

- Gガイド番組表リモコン cannot be moved.

- 1  (for over a second) ▶ **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight an i-appli** ▶   
 - Moving the selected items:   
 - ▶ Select i-appli applications ▶ 

■ Moving all the items in folder:

(MENU) 4 3

3 Select the folder to move to ► Yes

Protecting i-appli

- The maximum number of i-appli that can be protected ◀P430
- Gガイド番組表リモコン is protected. The protection cannot be canceled.

1 (for over a second) ► Select a folder

2 Highlight an i-appli ► (MENU) 3 1

i-appli is protected and  is indicated on the software list screen.

- To cancel, repeat the same procedure.

■ Switching the protection of selected items on/off: (MENU) 3 2 ► Select i-appli applications ►

■ Switching the protection of all the items in the folder on/off: (MENU) 3 3 ► Enter the terminal security code

Deleting i-appli

- For some i-appli applications, the data in the IC card is also deleted.
- Some i-appli applications cannot be deleted unless you start i-appli and delete the data in the IC card.
- If the IC card data is transferred by the IC transfer service, some i-appli applications cannot be deleted until being downloaded again to delete the data in the IC card.
- Some of the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli applications may not be deleted.
- Gガイド番組表リモコン cannot be deleted.

1 (for over a second) ► Select a folder

2 Highlight an i-appli ► (MENU) 2 1

■ Deleting selected items: (MENU) 2 2 ► Select i-appli applications ►

■ Deleting all the items in the folder: (MENU) 2 3 ► Enter the terminal security code ► All or w/o protect

3 Yes

- When you delete Message i-appli, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the mail folder as well. Select *Yes* to delete the mail folder and all the mails stored in

it. Select *No* to delete i-appli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-appli or mail folder even when you select *Yes*.

- If the i-appli applications to be deleted by *Selected items* or *All items* include Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli that cannot be deleted unless the data in the IC card is deleted, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete i-appli other than that.
- When you delete the i-appli that has data in the microSD memory card, a confirmation screen may appear to ask whether to delete the data in the microSD memory card as well. If you select *Yes*, the data in the microSD memory card is also deleted. Select *No* to delete i-appli only.
- When you delete an i-appli application for which *Set program guide key* is set to *Yes*, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete it.

INFORMATION

- To delete all i-appli applications in a folder from the folder list, highlight the folder, press (MENU), and select *Delete* → *Delete software*.
- The protected i-appli cannot be deleted by selecting *One item* or *Selected items*.
- If the folder for Message i-appli to be deleted is in use (as while displaying a list), i-appli may not be deleted.
- When only i-appli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i-appli is left undeleted, the mail can be displayed from the submenu in the folder list of mail. ◀P207

Sorting i-appli

Sort Software

Default By download time

1 (MENU) 3 2 1

2 1 - 5

- For *By download time* and *By access time*, i-appli is sorted by the time set in Date and Time Setting of the FOMA terminal.
- For *By name*, the sorted order may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary if one-byte or two-byte characters, or alphabetic characters are included in the name of i-appli.
- For *By access frequency*, the frequency does not include the number of times of being started as the i-appli standby display. The access frequency is carried over even when i-appli version is upgraded.

- For *By software size*, i-αpli applications are sorted in the order of the total size of the software and scratchpad from large to small. However, the sorted order may differ from the order of total sizes calculated from the sizes of software and scratchpad displayed in the detail information.

INFORMATION

- The access time includes the date and time when i-αpli is downloaded.

Checking the number of i-αpli applications in a folder

Software in Folder

1 (for over a second) ► Highlight a folder ►

- Meaning of the icon  P233

Checking the current settings of i-αpli

Software Information

- You can check the following:
 - The usage rate of the software storage area
 - The number of saved applications
 - i-αpli standby display, One-key Shortcut, the program guide key setting, the name and storage folder of i-αpli set for automatic start, and the date/time of the next automatic start

1 (for over a second) ►

Displaying i-αpli data saved in the microSD memory card

microSD Data

- The contents of data cannot be displayed.

1

The folder list of the data saved in the microSD memory card by i-αpli is displayed.

■ Confirming the information of folder:

Select a folder

- Displays availability of the folder, the name of i-αpli for use and the reason why it is not available. All the items may not be displayed for every folder.

■ Deleting the folder:

- 1 **Highlight a folder** ►  
 - Deleting selected items:   ► Select folders ► 
 - Deleting all the items:   ► Enter the terminal security code

② Yes

Using various functions from i-αpli

- It is necessary to download i-αpli that supports each function beforehand.
- The operation varies for each i-αpli and some i-αpli applications may not be used.

Using the camera from i-αpli

1 Operate i-αpli to use the camera

INFORMATION

- Shot images or videos may be automatically sent to the server.
- When Still Camera or Movie Camera is activated from i-αpli, you cannot change the size restriction and image size. Also you cannot set the frame and quality. Further, in case of still image shooting, the indicator and counter are not displayed and continuous shooting is unavailable.
- When the camera has been activated from i-αpli, a shot image is saved in the *i-mode* folder or the *Deco-mail picture* folder of *My Picture* or within the i-αpli itself. A shot video is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion* or within the i-αpli itself.

Using Bar Code Reader from i-αpli

1 Operate i-αpli to scan barcodes

- A message appears indicating that scan results are used and saved in the i-αpli.

Using infrared communication from i-αpli

- Infrared communication may be unavailable depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

1 Operate i-αpli to perform infrared communication

- i-αpli can also be started by receiving i-αpli starting data via infrared communication.
- If you perform infrared communication while your terminal is sending/receiving mail, the mail transmission is stopped.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What's Osaifu-Keitai?	246
What's iC transfer service?	247
Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- α ppli	247
What's ToruCa?	247
Obtaining ToruCa	248
Displaying ToruCa	249
Setting ToruCa	251
Preventing use of IC card functions	IC Card Lock 252

What's Osaifu-Keitai?

The i-mode terminal which is equipped with an IC card and provides useful functions of i-mode using the IC card (i-mode FeliCa) is called "Osaifu-Keitai".

FeliCa is the contactless IC card technology, which allows reading and writing data just by holding an IC card over a reader/writer. The Osaifu-Keitai can be used more conveniently, as electronic money for payment, as airplane tickets, or as reward point cards, just by holding it over a compatible reader/writer. Also, compared to a conventional contactless IC card compatible with FeliCa, the Osaifu-Keitai provides more useful functions; you can charge electronic money into the IC card of the terminal or check the balance or usage history using communication.

Note 1: Before using Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, make settings using the i-appli compatible with the IC card function (IC appli). For details, contact the IP (Information Provider) of each service.

Note 2: For usage precautions, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

- Data in the IC card may be lost or modified due to failure of Osaifu-Keitai. (DoCoMo will not receive to repair your Osaifu-Keitai with the data remaining in the terminal. You will be required to delete the data.) Use backup services provided by IPs, other than IC transfer service, to have the data reissued, restored, temporarily stored or moved. Availability and usage conditions (required procedures, charges, etc.) of backup service and compatibility with IC transfer service differ depending on the Osaifu-Keitai service. Contact the IP in advance for details. When important data is involved, make sure to use the Osaifu-Keitai service that is provided with backup service.
- For any damage resulting from using Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, including loss or modification of the data in the IC card, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility in any circumstances.
- If your Osaifu-Keitai is lost or stolen, contact the IP of your Osaifu-Keitai compatible service immediately. Note that you can restrict the IC card function by Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) or IC Card Lock on this FOMA terminal. ◀P131, P252

Using the Osaifu-Keitai

Step 1: Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli ▶P231

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」(iD credit payment service) and 「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (DCMX Credit i-appli) are registered by default.

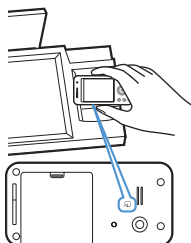
Step 2: Start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli to read and write data in the IC card ▶P247

Use Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli to charge electronic money and tickets or to check the balance and usage history.

Step 3: Hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer

- When *ON* is set for the lighting during IC card transaction in Light Alert Setting, the Enter key flashes according to the setting of lighting color if reading and writing become available.

You can use the FOMA terminal as electronic money for shopping or as tickets by holding the FeliCa mark on the terminal over a reader/writer. This function can be used without starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.



INFORMATION

- If the IC card is not recognized when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer, try again by changing the position, angle, etc.
- Do not expose the FOMA terminal to strong shocks when holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer.
- The IC card can be used during a call or i-mode by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer. However, you cannot start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli during i-mode.
- To enable the IC card to be used by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer even the power is off, set IC Lock (power-off) to **Remain lock status** and turn the power off without setting IC Card Lock.
- IC card function cannot be used when the battery pack is removed. When you use the IC card function, attach the battery pack. Even when the battery pack is attached, if it is not used for an extended period or is not charged after a low battery alert, the IC card may not be used. In this case, charge the battery.
- When the power is off, you cannot start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli to read and write data in the IC card. You cannot obtain ToruCa either.

- Setting Omakase Lock automatically disables the IC card function regardless of the setting of IC Card Lock.
- i-appli may start when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer. However, no i-appli starts when the target i-appli is not saved or is set not to start with i-appli To.

What's iC transfer service?

iC transfer service*1 is a service that transfers at once all the data of IC card*2 to new Osaifu-Keitai*3 when you change the terminal to another model or repair it. After the data of IC card is transferred, you can easily use Osaifu-Keitai compatible service by downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

iC transfer service is available at a DoCoMo Shop.

For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

*1 A fee is needed for use of iC transfer service.

(There is the case that fee is not needed.) Also, for downloading IC appli and for various settings, packet communication fee is required.

*2 Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible services are not supported. Since the services that are not supported will be deleted when you use iC transfer service, make backup of data using the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service or delete it, in advance.

*3 Only available for a terminal (Osaifu-Keitai) that supports iC transfer service.

Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

- In case you start or download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli for the first time, "**Current UIM necessary to use IC card.**" is displayed. From next time, the IC card function cannot be used, unless the associated UIM is inserted. When you use your terminal with another UIM, IC card function cannot be used unless you insert the associated UIM and delete all the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

1



- For the subsequent steps, follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Starting i-appli". ●P233

INFORMATION

- While Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is started, the IC card may not be used by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer.
- Some of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli operations may not be available during a videophone call.
- Some functions of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli may not start or operate correctly in case your terminal is outside the service area or cannot use the saved data.

What's ToruCa?

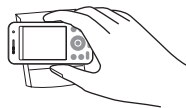
ToruCa is an electronic card that is available through Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as a flyer, restaurant card, coupon, etc.

You can obtain ToruCa from the reader/writer and sites and exchange the obtained ToruCa easily by using mail, infrared communication, and microSD memory card.

The obtained ToruCa is saved in **ToruCa** in the **LifeKit** menu.

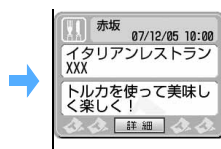
- For details of ToruCa compatible models, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Procedure for using ToruCa

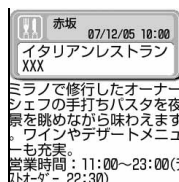


Hold the Osaifu-Keitai over a reader/writer to obtain ToruCa.

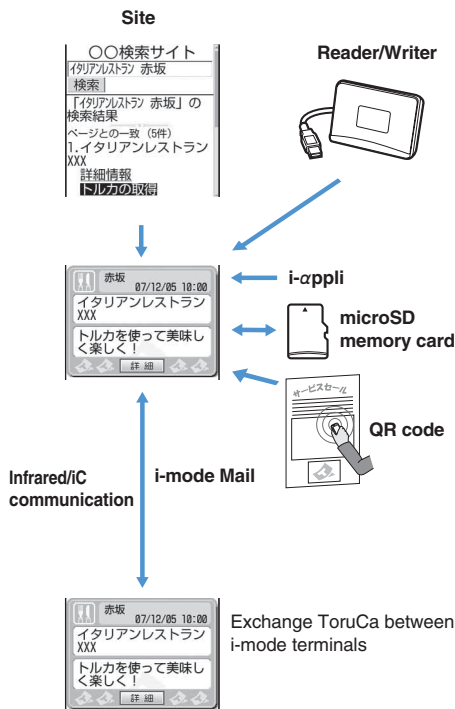
Select obtained ToruCa from the ToruCa list.



For more details, press **詳細** (Details) button.



How to get ToruCa



INFORMATION

- Exchanging ToruCa in i-mode communication needs packet communication fee.

Obtaining ToruCa

- Maximum number of items that can be saved
●P430
- The ToruCa size that can be saved is up to 1 Kbyte per item. For ToruCa (details), up to 100 Kbytes can be saved.
- The obtained ToruCa is saved in the **ToruCa** folder. However in case of obtaining ToruCa from reader/writer, it is saved in the specified folder when ToruCa matches the criteria specified in ToruCa Sort Rule.

INFORMATION

- You can also obtain ToruCa by the following methods. However, when you obtain ToruCa from the received mail, Message R/F, i-appli or Bar Code Reader, it is saved as already read.
 - Downloading from sites ●P172
 - Received mail or Message R/F ●P203, P178
 - i-appli
 - Bar Code Reader ●P158
 - Infrared communication ●P313
 - iC Communication ●P317
 - microSD memory card ●P299

Obtaining ToruCa from a reader/writer

- Make sure that **ToruCa receive** is set to **ON** in ToruCa Setting.
- You cannot obtain ToruCa while IC Card Lock is on.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer

You will hear a sound that lets you know ToruCa is obtained and the Enter key flashes.

- **When a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download details: Yes or No**
 - When **Yes** is selected, ToruCa (details) is saved by connecting to i-mode.
- **When a confirmation screen appears asking whether to use auto reading function: Yes or No**
 - When you use auto reading function, select **Yes** and then press **☺** **1**.
 - Setting whether to use the auto reading function in advance ●P252

■ **When Auto-display is set to ON in ToruCa Setting:**

The obtained ToruCa is displayed only on standby display. It will be displayed for about 15 seconds, if you do not press any key. To return to the standby display immediately, press **⏏**.

INFORMATION

- When **Duplication check** for ToruCa Setting is set to **ON**, the already-obtained ToruCa cannot be obtained. To obtain, change the setting to **OFF**.
- ToruCa may not be used, if auto reading function is not used.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a message indicates that the ToruCa cannot be saved. Delete unnecessary ToruCa.

- When you obtain ToruCa from reader/writer in case *Auto-display* is set to *ON* in ToruCa Setting, it is regarded as unread if you press **[F5]** or **[F2/F3]** to exit. When you press any other key, it is regarded as read.

Displaying ToruCa

- The details screen of ToruCa in the *Used ToruCa* folder cannot be displayed.

1 **[MENU] [6] [4] ▶ Select a folder**

- To switch to the folder list of the microSD memory card: **[F5]** on the folder list
 - How to handle the microSD memory card
✎P302

■ **Sending mail with ToruCa attached: Highlight ToruCa on the ToruCa list** **[MENU] [5]**

- Depending on ToruCa (details), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to attach to the mail, including details. To send with details, select *Yes(w/ detail)* and to send in status before the details are obtained, select *Yes(w/o detail)*.
- Depending on ToruCa (details), the confirmation screen appears that details are not included.
- Some ToruCa cannot be sent. ✎P195

2 **Select ToruCa**

■ **Obtaining ToruCa (details): 詳細 in the ToruCa view screen** **[F5]**

The FOMA terminal is connected to i-mode and saves ToruCa (details).

■ **Updating ToruCa (details): [MENU] [1] in the ToruCa (details) view screen** **[F5]**

The FOMA terminal is connected to i-mode and updates and saves ToruCa (details).

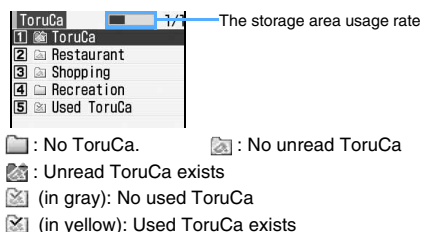
INFORMATION

- To send mail with ToruCa attached from the view screen, press **[MENU] [2]**.
- Depending on the settings of IP, ToruCa may not be updated, moved, copied, sent via mail or exchanged via infrared communication.
- In case that expiration date is set to ToruCa and the date is expired, the background color of ToruCa list screen is displayed with different color.

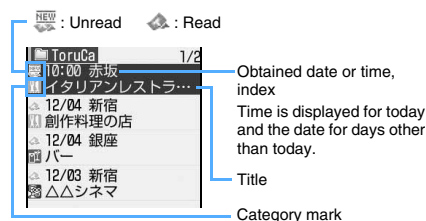
- There is the case that the issuer's original category mark appears on the ToruCa list screen or view screen. However, it is not included to the category mark of *Category* of the search or the sort criteria (ToruCa Sort Rule).
- Depending on the receiver's model, ToruCa (details) attached to mail may not be received.
- If the displayed text includes the phone number, mail address or URL, you can use Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To function.
- The location information included in the displaying text can be used. Operation is as same as using from sites.
✎P174
- To register new data in the phonebook, highlight the phone number or mail address on the view screen and press **[MENU] [4] [1]**. To update the data in the phonebook, press **[MENU] [4] [2]**. To register a URL in Bookmark, highlight the URL and press **[MENU] [4] [3]**. To save an image, press **[MENU] [4] [4]** and select the image. The background images can be saved by pressing **[MENU] [4] [5]**.
- To replay the animation on the view screen, press **[MENU] [7]**.

Reading the folder list/ToruCa list screen

The folder list screen



The ToruCa list screen



Creating/deleting folders

- You cannot change the folder name or sort order or delete the *ToruCa* or *Used ToruCa* folders.

Creating a folder

- You can create up to 20 folders other than the *ToruCa* and *Used ToruCa* folders.

- Changing the folder name:** Highlight a folder on the folder list ▶ **Changing the order of folders:** Highlight a folder on the folder list ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Yes**
- Enter the folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶

Deleting a folder

- Highlight a folder** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Yes**

Moving/copying ToruCa into a folder

- Moving or copying may be unavailable depending on ToruCa.
- You cannot move or copy to the *Used ToruCa* folder.

Example Moving one item

- Select a folder**
- Highlight ToruCa** ▶ **Moving multiple items:** ▶ **Select ToruCa** ▶ **Moving all ToruCa in a folder:** ▶ **Copying one item to another folder:** ▶ **Highlight ToruCa** ▶ **Copying multiple items to another folder:** ▶ **Select ToruCa** ▶ **Copying all items to another folder:** ▶
- Select the folder to move or copy ToruCa to ▶ **Yes**

INFORMATION

- In the view screen, press **3**.

Checking the information of the saved ToruCa

- Information such as the number of ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal or the percentage of the used area to the total capacity is displayed.

 - ToruCa in the *Used ToruCa* folder is not included.

Checking the number of ToruCa in a folder: Select the folder on the folder list ▶

Searching for ToruCa

- ToruCa in the *Used ToruCa* folder cannot be searched.

- To search a folder:** Select the folder on the folder list ▶
- Search criteria field** ▶ **1 - 3** ▶

Search all
Search criteria
Category
restaurant
Search text

- When you select *Category*, select the *Category* field and a genre.
- If you select *Title* or *Index*, select the *Search text* field and enter the title or index (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for a title and up to 15 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters for an index).
- You can make a search by entering only a part of a title or index. Two-byte characters can be distinguished from one-byte characters, but the cases of alphabets are ignored.
- You cannot search the data by the obtained date or time.

Sorting ToruCa

Sort

You can change the sorting order of the ToruCa list temporarily. Ending the display returns to the order *By date*.

- You can sort by date, genre, title, index or name.

- Select a folder** ▶ **1 - 5**

INFORMATION

- In the sorting order by title or index, items may not be sorted in the order of Japanese syllabary if the titles or indexes have both one-byte and two-byte characters.
- It will be sorted in order by ID which is kept in ToruCa in case *By name* is selected (ID cannot be displayed).

Deleting ToruCa

- 1** **(MENU)** **(6)** **(4)** ▶ **Select a folder**
- 2** **Highlight ToruCa** ▶ **(MENU)** **(3)** **(1)**
 - **Deleting multiple items:** **(MENU)** **(3)** **(2)** ▶ **Select ToruCa** ▶ **(1)**
 - **Deleting all ToruCa in a folder:** **(MENU)** **(3)** **(3)** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**
 - **Deleting ToruCa in the *Used ToruCa* folder:** **Highlight ToruCa** ▶ **(*)**

3 *Yes*

INFORMATION

- On the view screen, press **(MENU)** **(8)**.

Setting ToruCa

Specifying whether to obtain ToruCa

ToruCa Setting

Specify whether to obtain ToruCa from a reader/writer and set the actions for obtaining ToruCa.

- Even if *ON* is set for *Auto-sort*, no sorting occurs when sort criteria are not set in ToruCa Sort Rule.

Default ToruCa receive, Duplication check: *ON*
Auto-sort, Auto-display: *OFF*

- 1** **(MENU)** **(8)** **(5)** **(2)** **(2)**
- 2** **Set each item** ▶ **(1)**

ToruCa receive :

Specify whether to obtain ToruCa.

Duplication check :

Specify whether to check if the read ToruCa has already been obtained.

- When *ON* is set, the obtained ToruCa cannot be obtained.

Auto-sort :

Set whether to sort into the specified folder automatically.

Auto-display :

Specify whether to display automatically.

INFORMATION

- The ToruCa in the *Used ToruCa* folder or expired ToruCa is not checked for duplication.

Sorting ToruCa automatically into the folders

ToruCa Sort Rule

Set sort criteria for ToruCa obtained by reader/writer.

- Up to 20 criteria can be registered.
- To enable this setting, set *Auto-sort* of ToruCa Setting to *ON*.
- This setting is valid for ToruCa which is obtained after setting the criteria. The already-obtained ToruCa cannot be sorted.
- ToruCa cannot be sorted into the *Used ToruCa* folder.

Setting sort criteria

- 1** **(MENU)** **(8)** **(5)** **(2)** **(4)**

1

List of criteria 1/1

0 restaurant

2 Shopping

3 No criteria

Registered sort criteria (listed in the order of priority)

1

Genre

Index

1

Title

No criteria

- 2** **(1)**

Add criteria

Sort by: Category

Category restaurant

Enter text:

Sort to: ToruCa

Sort criteria setting screen

- 3** **Sort by field** ▶ **(1)** - **(4)**

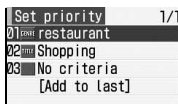
- When *Category* is selected, select the *Category* field and select a genre.
- If you select *Title* or *Index*, select the *Enter text* field and enter the title or index (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for a title and up to 15 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters for an index).
- You can make a sort by entering only a part of a title or index.
- When *No criteria* is set, all ToruCa is sorted without setting criteria.

4 Sort to field ▶ Select the folder to sort



5 Specify the priority

The new sort criteria is added above the selected row.



- To set the first criteria in the list: [Add to last]
- To add the criteria to the end of the list: [Add to last]
- Criteria are listed in the order of priority.
- When registered criteria are changed, [Move to last] is displayed instead of [Add to last].

INFORMATION

- The criteria are checked in accordance with their priority. Order of priority is as same as sort criteria. (INFORMATION of "Sorting mails automatically into designated folders" P217) However, when conditions are not suited, it is saved in the *ToruCa* folder.

Checking and changing sort criteria

1 [MENU] 8 5 2 4

2 Select the sort criteria

- You can change or delete sort criteria while checking it.
- **Changing sort criteria: Highlight the sort criteria ▶ [MENU] 2 ▶ Specify the sort criteria**
 - Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Setting sort criteria" for specifying sort criteria. P251
- **Changing the priority: Highlight the sort criteria ▶ [MENU] 5 ▶ Select the position**
 - The criteria is moved to just above the selected row. To move to the end of the list, select [Move to last].
- **Deleting criteria: Highlight the sort criteria ▶ [MENU] 3 ▶ Yes**
 - To delete all: [MENU] 4 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Specifying whether to use auto reading function

ToruCa Auto-read

When you hold the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer to use ToruCa, specify whether to make a terminal to read available ToruCa automatically.

- When *ON* is set, available ToruCa is identified automatically and moved to the *Used ToruCa* folder.
- Up to 20 items can be saved in the *Used ToruCa* folder. When the number exceeds 20, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.

Default ON

1 [MENU] 8 5 2 3 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- When you hold the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer, when *OFF* is set, the message may indicate that auto reading function are invalid. When you use ToruCa, select *Yes* and set this function to *ON*.

Menu 652 / Menu 83131

Preventing use of IC card functions

IC Card Lock

IC Card Lock disables use of the IC card by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer. It also disables acquisition of ToruCa and download or use of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli. iC communication cannot also be operated.

- IC Card Lock cannot be set when All Lock is active. To set both IC Card Lock and All Lock, first set IC Card Lock and then set All Lock.

Default OFF

1 [MENU] (for over a second) ▶ Yes

IC Card Lock is set and [] appears on the standby display.

Canceling

- When *Voice + Security Code* is set as the procedure for canceling IC Card Lock, and voice keyword for authentication is recorded, voiceprint authentication is needed for canceling IC Card Lock.
- For voiceprint authentication, please take the following precautions:
 - Hold the terminal in the same way as when you were recording. (In the same way as you speak over the phone, hold the terminal beside your face, or 5 cm away from the front of your face.)

- A voice is hard to be recognized in a noisy environment.
- A voice is hard to be recognized when using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional), etc.

1 ☺ (for over a second)

After about 2 seconds, a beep is heard and authentication starts.

- When **Security code** is set for the procedure to cancel IC Card Lock, go to Step 3.

2 Say the authentication keyword within 5 seconds

When the keyword is authenticated, the terminal security code entry screen appears.

- To stop the authentication: ☹



- Say the keyword which was set in IC Card Lock Setting.

- When there is a noise around, *“Please try again to verify voiceprint in quiet place.”* is displayed. Press ☺ and say the keyword again.
- If the keyword was not authenticated, the message appears. Press ☹ and say the keyword again.
- Pressing [TV] for over a second, without voiceprint authentication operation, displays the terminal security code entry screen.

3 Enter the terminal security code

INFORMATION

- You can also set/cancel in shortcut operations.
 [MENU] [6] [5] [2] or [MENU] [8] [3] [1] [3] [1] ▶
 Enter the terminal security code ▶ [1] or [2]
- When **Voice+SecurityCode** is set as the procedure for canceling IC Card Lock, voiceprint authentication is needed before entering the terminal security code.
- Depending on words you registered or conditions where you recorded, voice data may be certified by the neighboring sounds or the similar words. It may happen easily when you registered a particularly short word or recorded at a noisy place.
- When you fail in voiceprint authentication 5 times consecutively, the voiceprint authentication stops.
- Even if the phone is turned off or the battery runs out during IC Card Lock, the lock will not be canceled.

Enabling to cancel by voice and the terminal security code

IC Card Lock Setting

Set the authentication operation that is necessary for canceling IC Card Lock.

- Only one voice recording for about 0.5 to 2 seconds can be made.
- Please take the following precautions when recording:
 - Record at as quiet a place as possible with little neighboring noise.
 - It is recommended to register words of 5 to 10 syllables. In addition, please avoid the words that you do not usually use because pronunciation does not maintain the same.
 - Hold the terminal about 5 cm away from your mouth and talk by one of the following methods. Accuracy of voice recognition is improved when you talk holding your FOMA terminal beside your face just like you talk normally.
 - In the same way as you speak over the phone, open the FOMA terminal and hold it beside your face
 - Hold it in the front of your face
 - Speak as clearly as possible. Please do not register in a low or a loud voice.
 - Be careful not to cover the microphone with your finger.
 - Please note that voice data could be certified by a voice of another person, if the word with any sounds of サ(sa) line such as シャ(sha), シュ(shu) and ショ(sho) is used.
 - It may become hard to be certified if the following words are used:
 - With some prolonged sounds(ー) such as “セーター” (sweater)
 - With some geminate consonants(っ) such as “とっちゃって” (totchatte)
 - Please do not make the sound that is unrelated to the voice data, such as clearing your throat, “Uh..”, or tongue-clicking. In addition, please do not blow your breath to a microphone.
 - Be careful not to make the silence part while you are recording. Talking too slowly may be considered as a silence part, and may not be recorded correctly.

Default Security code

- 1 [MENU] [6] [5] [5] ▶ Enter the terminal security code

2 Cancel method field ▶ (2)

- To set the authentication operation to the terminal security code input only: (1) ▶ Go to Step 6

3 Record in Voice data field ▶ (🗣️)

- When the voice data is already recorded, after selecting **Record**, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite.

4 (🗣️)

After about 2 seconds, a beep is heard and recording starts.

- When there is a noise around, “*Please try again to record in quiet place.*” is displayed. Press (🗣️) and retry.

5 Say the keyword within 5 seconds ▶ (🗣️)

▶ Say the keyword again within 5 seconds

- Record the keyword twice. It is registered when the first and second recording match.
- To stop the recording: (🗣️)
- A confirmation screen appears in the following cases. Press (🗣️) to retry from Step 4, and change the volume of voice or the keyword.
 - When a voice is small
 - When keyword is short or long
 - When there are few syllables
 - When there is the noise around
 - When the first and second keyword did not match

6 (🗣️)

INFORMATION

- Since the voice of a person will change by age or other reasons, using the same keyword for long term may become hard to match to the recorded voice data. In that case, please register the voice data again.
- Voiceprint authentication makes no warranty of complete certification. For any damage or loss, which the user shall sustain by having been used by a third party or misauthentication of voiceprint, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility.

Menu 83132

Setting IC Card Lock automatically Timed Lock

You can set to lock IC card automatically after the specified time (1 to 90 minutes) is passed.

Default OFF

1 (MENU) (6) (5) (3)

2 Timed lock field ▶ (1)

- To cancel: **Timed lock** field ▶ (2) ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Time to lock (min) field ▶ (1) - (7)

4 (🗣️)

INFORMATION

- Even if **ON** is set, IC card will not be locked automatically when **i-appli** is running. The setting is made after **i-appli** ends.
- In case the power is turned off or the battery runs out while **ON** is set, IC Card Lock is set, even the specified time has not passed.
- When IC Card Lock is on, Osaifu-Keitai compatible **i-appli** may not be deleted.

Menu 83133

Setting IC card function to lock when you turn the power off IC Lock (power-off)

Default Remain lock status

1 (MENU) (6) (5) (4) ▶ Enter the terminal security code

2 (2)

- To continue a state of IC Card Lock just before the power is turned off: (1)

Watching TV

Watching TV on FOMA	256
Before watching TV	257
Setting channels	Channel Setting 258
Watching TV	Activate 1Seg 259
Using program guide i-appli	Program Guide 262
Scheduling TV program viewing	Booking Program List 263
Using data broadcast	Data Broadcasting 264
Using TV links	TV Link 265
Capturing the screen you are viewing into a still image	Still Image Recording 266
Setting TV	1Seg Setting 266

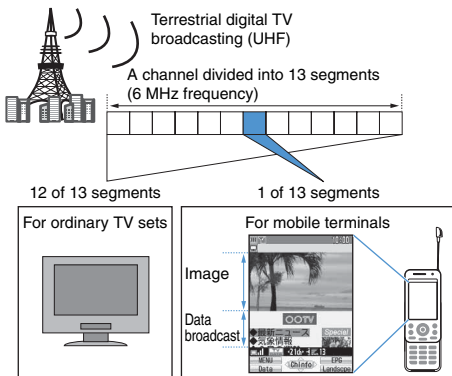
Watching TV on FOMA

What's 1Seg?

1Seg is the terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service for mobile phones. This service uses 1 of 13 segments of a 6 MHz channel allocated to each digital TV broadcasting company. This is why the service is called "1Seg".

The 1Seg service broadcasts data as well as images and sounds. The data broadcast aims at complementing the TV broadcast. You can obtain more detailed information from data broadcasting websites or i-mode sites via communication. To access those data sites, packet communication fee is required.

You can communicate with the TV broadcasting companies (TV stations) bidirectionally using the communication function of your mobile phone. This means you can take part in a quiz show or purchase any goods on TV shopping.



Using 1Seg

- 1Seg is a new service provided by TV broadcasting companies (TV stations).
- The 1Seg service broadcasts TV programs and data free of charge. You do not need to subscribe to the service.
- In the data broadcast area, two types of information are displayed: data broadcast and data broadcasting websites. The data broadcast is the data carried together with images and sounds via broadcasting signals. The data broadcasting websites enable you to connect to the Internet sites provided by TV broadcasting companies (TV stations) from the data broadcast

information. Sometimes your FOMA terminal may connect to an i-mode site. To connect to sites, subscription to the i-mode service is required.

- While you are viewing a data broadcasting website or i-mode site, packet communication fee is charged. You may need to pay information fee to access certain sites (i-mode pay sites).
- For details about the 1Seg service, visit the following website.

The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting

<http://www.dpa.or.jp/>

- The 1Seg service is not available when and where broadcasting signals cannot reach (outside of service area or off-duty hours), regardless of inside or outside of FOMA service area.

Broadcast storage area

The broadcast storage area is an area dedicated to 1Seg within the terminal in accordance with the ARIB*1 technical specifications for broadcasting. The information you entered according to the instructions in data broadcast of the TV program you are watching is saved in the broadcast storage area based on the settings of the TV broadcasting company (TV station). The saved information may include answers to quizzes and personal information such as membership number, gender, age and occupation.

The saved information may be displayed when you view the data broadcasting website or sent to TV broadcasting companies (TV stations) without your re-entering the information.

- The broadcast storage area includes an area specific to individual stations and an area common to the affiliates*2.

The information saved in the station-specific area can be used only while you are watching programs of a TV station. Also, the information saved in the affiliate-common area can be used only while you are watching the programs of a TV station and its affiliates.

- To clear the broadcast storage area ◀P267



- When you replace the UIM with another, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to initialize the broadcast storage area. Select *Yes* to initialize the broadcast storage area. Selecting *No* disables the services that use the broadcast storage area.

*1 ARIB: Association of Radio Industries and Businesses

*2 Affiliates: The same affiliate channels such as Fuji Television, Tokai Television and Kansai Television.

■ When the broadcast storage area becomes full

If a new TV station attempts to write in a station-specific area when 8 station-specific areas are already used in the broadcast storage area, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite saved items. When you select *Yes*, a screen for selecting items to delete appears. Select items and then select *Yes* to save new items.

■ Message shown on the screen when you read information from the broadcast storage area

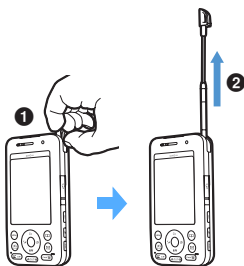
When you use the information from the broadcast storage area while you are watching a TV program, the message *Use saved information? It may include information used by the same broadcasting group.* may appear. If you select *Yes*, this message does not appear again while you are watching the same program. When you select *Yes (Always)*, this message will not appear again even if you change programs.

Before watching TV

TV antenna

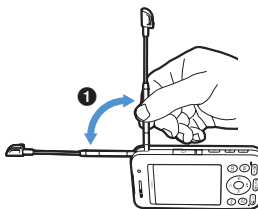
When you view 1Seg TV, pull out the TV antenna completely.

■ Pulling out the TV antenna



- 1 Put your finger under the head of the TV antenna and pull it out.
- 2 Pull out the TV antenna until it stops.

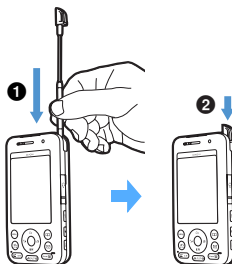
■ Changing the direction of the TV antenna



- 1 Pull out the antenna to its full length. Hold the lower part of the antenna and change the direction.

- Be sure to pull out the antenna completely. Otherwise, you cannot change its direction.
- If you try to change the antenna direction forcibly, it may cause deformation or damage.

■ Storing the TV antenna



- 1 Hold the lower part of the antenna and pull it straight down.
- 2 Align the head of the antenna to the groove and push it down into the body completely.

- If you try to pull down the antenna forcibly, it may cause deformation or damage.

INFORMATION

- When you have poor 1Seg reception, move your FOMA terminal away from or close to your body or move to another location for a better signal reception. Changing the TV antenna direction may improve the signal reception.

When an action occurs during 1Seg viewing

In the following cases, the image and sound are interrupted. Upon completion of each action, the TV screen returns.

- When you make or receive a call
- When a mail or Message R/F is received (in case Display Priority is set to *Show message*)
- When the preset date and time for an alarm clock or schedule arrives
- When an i-motion, melody or Chara-den file is played or displayed*1
- When the program guide i-appli is activated or i-appli is activated from data broadcast
- When a 64K data communication call arrives

*1 A confirmation screen appears asking whether to continue viewing.

1Seg may be automatically activated upon completion of a call. You may be surprised by a sudden sound of 1Seg while you are still holding your FOMA terminal close to your ear.

INFORMATION

- You cannot view 1Seg if UIM is not inserted, subscription to DoCoMo is canceled or use of the FOMA service is stopped.
- Even if the subscribed UIM is inserted, repeating 1Seg activation while the communication is unavailable because of outside of the FOMA service area or any other reason disables further activation of 1Seg. In that case, move back to within the FOMA service area to enable activation of 1Seg.
- When you view 1Seg for the first time, activate 1Seg within the FOMA service area.
- If the saved data should be lost or corrupted due to failure, repair or other handlings of the FOMA terminal, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of data. When you have your FOMA terminal repaired or purchase a new one, the data you saved in your FOMA terminal (such as videos or still images recorded from 1Seg, TV links and the information saved in the broadcast storage area) cannot be transferred. It is recommended that you keep a record of such information separately.

Setting channels

Channel Setting

Before watching 1Seg TV, it is necessary to set channels and register channel lists.

- Up to 10 channel lists can be registered. If you register channel lists according to local service areas, you can view TV channels of a local area just by selecting the corresponding channel list.
- To a single channel list, up to 62 channels can be registered.

Registering channel lists

Two setting methods are available: one is to select an area to set from the area list registered in the FOMA terminal (*Select area*) and the other is to detect automatically the channels available in your current location from broadcasting signals (*Auto channel set*).

Registering the first channel list

1   

2 Select an area or perform automatic channel setting

■ **Selecting an area:** *Select area* ▶ *Select a large area* ▶ *Select a detail area*

- To confirm the available channels of the detail area: Highlight an area in the detail area list ▶ 
 - Press  to select the highlighted area.

■ **Performing automatic channel setting:**

- It takes about 10 to 60 seconds to complete the automatic channel setting.

① *Auto channel set*

The automatic channel setting starts and a confirmation screen appears upon completion of automatic setting.

② *Yes*

- If multiple broadcasting areas are available, channel numbers (remote control numbers) may overlap between areas. When a message appears, press  and select an area.

3 Enter a channel list name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶

- The detail area name is already entered as the channel list name when selecting an area, and the date and time of setting is entered when performing the automatic channel setting.

Registering additional channel lists

1   

The channel lists are displayed.

2 Highlight [*Not recorded*] ▶ (*Area*) or (*Auto set*)

- The following procedures are the same as for registering the first channel list.
- When a channel list is added, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to set it as a channel list to use. Select *Yes* or *No*.

INFORMATION

- When you select an area, channels may not be set properly depending on the area. In this case, use the automatic channel setting.

Setting the channel list to use

When multiple channel lists are registered, you can change the channel list to use.

1

- To set channel lists during 1Seg viewing:
  on the vertical TV screen

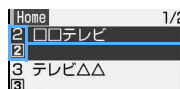
2 Select a channel list



■ Checking the channels of the channel list:

Highlight a channel list

The channels of the list are displayed.



Upper: Remote control No.

Lower: Dial key used for channel selection on the TV screen

Editing/deleting channel lists

1 ► Highlight a channel list

2 Edit/delete the channel list

- Changing the channel list name:  
► Enter a channel list name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ► 

- Updating a channel list:  (Area) or  (Auto set) ► Yes

- The following procedures are the same as for registering channel lists.

- Deleting a channel list:   ► Yes

- The channel list being in use cannot be deleted.

- Initializing the channel lists (deleting all channel lists):   ► Enter the terminal security code ► Yes

- Changing the remote control number:

① 

The channels of the list are displayed.

② Highlight a channel ►  

③ Select a remote control number to assign ► Yes

- If a channel is registered to the selected remote control number, the remote control numbers are exchanged.

- Deleting a channel:  ► Highlight a channel ►   ► Yes

- The channels of the channel list being in use cannot be deleted.
- If all the channels of a list are deleted, the channel list itself is also deleted.

INFORMATION

- If you press   on the vertical TV screen, a list of channel lists appears to allow you to add or edit channel lists. If you press  , a list of channels is displayed. You cannot delete a channel list or initialize all channel lists.
- When you move to a different location, available broadcasting signals or stations may change due to mountains or buildings in the area or any other reason. If broadcasting signal conditions deteriorate after you move, perform the automatic channel setting. You may be able to receive different broadcasting signals or stations. If you perform a channel search, you may be able to view stations that you could not register with the automatic channel setting. ◀P260

Menu 91

Watching TV

Activate 1Seg

1 (for over a second)

A confirmation screen about the usage conditions is displayed.

- This screen appears only once. Next time you press this key, 1Seg starts and receives a TV program of the channel you watched before. Go to Step 4.

2 Confirm the usage conditions ►

A confirmation screen about the broadcast storage area is displayed.

3 Check the content ►

- When no channel list is registered, a selection screen for creating a channel list is displayed. Go to Step 2 of "Registering the first channel list". ◀P258

4 View 1Seg TV

When the FOMA terminal is open, the vertical screen appears. With the FOMA terminal closed, the horizontal screen appears. To switch between the vertical and horizontal screens, press  or open/close the FOMA terminal.



 or open/close the FOMA terminal



- This operation does not work while a submenu is displayed or in the data broadcast mode.
- If **Tuning.** is displayed for a long time due to poor broadcasting signals, etc., perform a channel search to search for receivable channels. ◀P260
- When the information about the channel names are received from broadcasting stations, a message appears to indicate that the channel list is updated. Depending on the information received, channel name display may be changed.

5 to end viewing ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- You can also activate 1Seg from the program guide i-appli.
- You can also activate 1Seg from the 1Seg program information link in a site or mail (Media To). ◀P173
- Depending on broadcasting signal conditions, the sound may be interrupted or the image may be stopped. Also there may be block noises in images, or the image or data may not be displayed on the screen.
- If you activate 1Seg after you have done the following operations, the confirmation screens about the usage conditions and about broadcast storage area are displayed again.
 - Reset Settings for 1Seg
 - Delete All Data
 - Replace UIMs

Operations available during 1Seg viewing

The following operations are available on the TV screen (in the TV mode).

Selecting a channel

- Changing the channel to the previous or next:



- Selecting a channel by a direct key: Press the key corresponding to the remote control number

Remote control No.	Corresponding key
1 - 9	 - 
10	
11	
12	
13 - 62	Cannot be selected by direct keys

- Selecting from channels of a list:   on the vertical screen ▶ Select a channel

- Searching for an available channel and switching to it (channel search):  (for over a second)

Channels are searched in the order of frequencies. When an available channel is detected, the channel is switched automatically.

- To register the detected channel to the channel list being in use:    on the vertical screen

The channel is registered to the smallest unused remote control number from 13 to 62. If the channel is already registered, however, the remote control number is not changed.

- If the channel information is not obtained, the channel cannot be registered.

- Selecting from multiple services (programs) broadcasted on the same channel:

   on the vertical screen ▶  - 

- This operation is available only when the channel you are viewing provides multiple services (programs).

Adjusting volume/switching sounds

- Adjusting the volume: 

- The default is *vol.13*.

- Muting sound (Mute): 

- To unmute the muted sound:  or 

- **Switching between the main and sub sounds (Main/Sub sound):** (MENU) (8) (7) on the vertical screen ▶ (1) - (3)

• The default is *Main sound*.

- **Switching between the headset or the speaker of FOMA terminal as the output device of sound (Sound output):** (MENU) (8) (8) on the vertical screen ▶ (1) or (2)

- This setting is enabled only when you view 1Seg programs with the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set (optional) connected.
- When 1Seg is activated, the sound output is set to *Headset*.
- If you set *Speaker*, the setting returns to *Headset* when you disconnect the earphone.

- **Switching sounds (Switch sound):** (MENU) (8) (6) on the vertical screen ▶ (1) or (2)

- You can switch the sound only when the TV program you are viewing allows sound switching.
- When 1Seg is activated, *Sound1* is set.

Changing screen display

- **Hiding the display (Sound mode):** (6) (for over a second)

- To show the hidden display: Press any key other than (0) or open the FOMA terminal
- When the screen changes to another because of arrival of a call, the sound mode is canceled.
- When Key Lock is set in the sound mode, a message appears to notify that Key Lock is set and the display is hidden.

- **Switching between the standard display and the zoom-in display of the horizontal screen:** (TV) (for over a second)



Standard display

Zoom-in display

- Depending on the program, right and left ends of the image may not fit in the screen when you switch to the zoom-in display.
- Some programs may be displayed on the full screen even if the standard display is set. In this case, switching to the zoom-in display changes nothing.
- The vertical screen will not change with this operation.

- **Showing/hiding subtitles (Subtitles):** (MENU) (8) (1) on the vertical screen ▶ (1) or (2)

• The default is *OFF*.

- **Specifying whether to display icons and time on the horizontal screen (Pictograph):** (MENU) (8) (2) on the vertical screen ▶ (1) or (2)

- The default is *ON*.
- Even when *Pictograph* is set to *OFF*, icons and the time are displayed for about 2 seconds when you press (5), adjust the volume, set/cancel mute or set/cancel Key Lock. Also, while a mail or Message R/F is being received (in case Display Priority is set to *Continue operation*), icons and the time are displayed.
- If you set *OFF*, when broadcasting signal conditions are poor, the horizontal screen may display nothing (a black screen) for a while.

Useful functions

- **Checking the program information:** (MENU) (3) on the vertical screen

- **Using the 1Seg OFF timer:** (MENU) (0) (6) on the vertical screen ▶ (2) - (5)

When the specified time (30/60/120/180 minutes) has elapsed, 1Seg automatically terminates.

- If a display of another function is on the screen when the specified time has elapsed, 1Seg may not terminate until the TV screen returns.
- To cancel the 1Seg OFF timer: (MENU) (0) (6) on the vertical screen ▶ (1)

- **Sending 1Seg program information via i-mode Mail:** (MENU) (0) (2) on the vertical screen

The mail composition screen appears with the 1Seg program information inserted in the text. When you send the mail to the Media To compatible FOMA terminal, the receiver can activate 1Seg by selecting the program information in the mail.

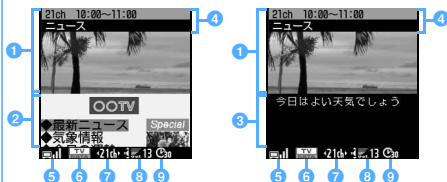
- **Showing Help:** (MENU) (0) (7) on the vertical screen

INFORMATION

- When you deactivate 1Seg, the sound mode, the horizontal zoom-in display and 1Seg OFF timer are canceled. The settings of *Sound output* and *Switch sound* return to those at the time of 1Seg activation.

Viewing the TV screen

The TV screen



Vertical screen
(standard screen)

Vertical screen
(with subtitles)



Horizontal screen
(with subtitles)

- 1 Image area
- 2 Data broadcast area (vertical screen only)
- 3 Subtitle area

This area appears when **Subtitles** is set to **ON**.
●P261

- When **Subtitles** is set to **ON**, the subtitle area appears on the vertical screen even if the program you are watching does not contain subtitles. On the horizontal screen the subtitle area may disappear automatically if the program contains no subtitles.

- 4 Remote control No., start/end time, program name

Displayed for about 2 seconds when you change the channel.

- To display the information manually:

- 5 Broadcasting signal reception level

Display				
Status	Strong Weak			Outside the service area

- 6 Operation mode (vertical screen only)

: TV mode
 : Data broadcast mode
 : Data broadcast mode (data area expanded)

- 7 Remote control No.

- When is available for channel switching or channel search, is displayed as **21ch**.

- 8 Volume

: Mute ON

- When is available for volume adjusting, is displayed as .

- 9 1Seg OFF timer ●P261

: Timer is set (30/60/120/180 minutes)

INFORMATION

- The guide row does not appear on the horizontal screen. However, you can use , , , and in the same manner as with the vertical screen (in the TV mode). Pressing does not display a submenu, though.

Using program guide i-appli

Program Guide

Use the program guide i-appli to select a TV program to view from the program guide or to schedule programs you want to watch.

- Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) is registered as the program guide i-appli by default (●P237). For more information about Gガイド番組表リモコン, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".



Program guide i-appli is activated.

INFORMATION

- You can also activate it by pressing on the TV screen. While the program guide i-appli is running, 1Seg image and sound are stopped.
- You cannot schedule TV programs from the program guide i-appli when Privacy Mode is on (**Schedule** is set to **Authorized access**).
- To use the downloaded i-appli as the program guide i-appli, change **Set program guide key** to **Yes** in the operation settings for the i-appli you want to use.

Scheduling TV program viewing

Booking Program List

You can schedule TV programs you want to view with Booking Program List. This function alerts you just before the scheduled program starts with the schedule alarm screen and alarm sound. You can start to view the program from the schedule alarm screen.

- TV program schedules registered by Booking Program List can also be displayed from Scheduler.
- Maximum number of items that can be registered
➡ P430
- Video recording cannot be scheduled.

Scheduling TV programs for viewing

1 (MENU) 9 3 ▶ (M)

2 Set each item

Channel name :

Select the channel.

Start time :

Enter the start date and time of the program.

Program name :

You can enter up to 96 one-byte or 48 two-byte characters.

3 to switch to Reminder screen ▶ Set each item

Alarm on time (Schedule alarm) :

Set whether to alert you with the schedule alarm screen and alarm sound when the set time arrives. To activate 1Seg from a TV program schedule, set **Alarm on time** to **Yes**.

- If you select **Yes** and select **i-motion**, **Melody**, or **Music**, set the alarm sound. To set music data ➡ P99
 - To play and check a melody or video/i-motion file you select ➡ P99
- If you select **Yes** and **Terminal setting**, the alarm conforms to the setting of Schedule Reminder of Sound Setting.

Alarm before time :

Set how many seconds or minutes before the set time to alert you.

Activate 1Seg :

To activate 1Seg from a TV program schedule, select **Yes**.

4 to switch to Other settings screen ▶ Set each item

Repeat :

To schedule TV programs to view at a specific time every day on and after the date specified by **Start time** or on a certain day of the week, select **Every day** or **Day of week**.

- When **Day of week** is set, select a day of the week on which you want to watch TV.

5 (M)

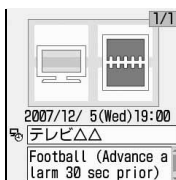
- When you add a TV program schedule with an alarm, (M) or (M) (if an alarm clock is also set) appears on the standby display.

INFORMATION

- You can add TV program schedules from the program guide i-appli as well. ➡ P237
- You can also add TV program schedules from the 1Seg program information link in a site or mail (Media To). ➡ P173
- If you delete the data specified as a schedule alarm (video/i-motion, melody or music), **Terminal setting** is set.

When the set time comes

1 The alarm sounds



Schedule alarm screen (TV program schedule)

- For alarm indication while another function is being used ➡ P338
- The alarm does not operate when Privacy Mode is on (with **Schedule** set to **Authorized access**). If the alarm does not sound at the set date/time in any cases other than the above, see "When alarm clock does not ring at the set time". ➡ P340

2 Press any key other than (M) and (M)

The alarm stops.

- The alarm stops if no action is taken for 1 minute.

■ **Checking the details of the TV program schedule: Stop the alarm and press (M)**

3 ▶ Yes

The scheduled TV program appears on the screen.

- If the channel of the scheduled TV program is not in the current channel list or the information does not match, a confirmation screen appears. If you select *Yes*, 1Seg is activated but a different program may appear.
- When you activate 1Seg on the schedule alarm screen, the TV program schedule is deleted unless *Repeat* is specified.

INFORMATION

- 1Seg cannot be activated in the following cases. Also, depending on the function currently in use, 1Seg may not be activated.
 - While dialing, receiving, talking or communicating a call
 - While receiving mail or Message R/F
 - During data communication with a PC connected
- When the specified date and time comes while viewing 1Seg, the channel may not be switched to the scheduled channel depending on the current processing (while displaying channels of a list, setting a channel list, etc.).

Checking/editing/deleting TV program schedules

1



: TV program schedule for which *Repeat* is set

TV program schedule list

- **Sorting TV program schedules:**

▶ -

- **Checking the number of schedules:**

- **Switching to the schedule calendar screen:**

- For details about the calendar screen ▶ P340
- To return to the TV program schedule list:

2 Check/edit/delete TV program schedules

- **Checking/editing TV program schedules:**

Select a TV program schedule ▶ Check the details on the details screen

- To edit: on the details screen ▶ Modify the content ▶ ▶ *Yes*

- **Deleting TV program schedules:**

① **Highlight a TV program schedule ▶**

- To delete TV program schedules up to the day before the date of the highlighted schedule: Highlight a TV program schedule ▶

- The TV program schedule with *Repeat* is not deleted.

- To delete all: ▶ Enter the terminal security code

② *Yes*

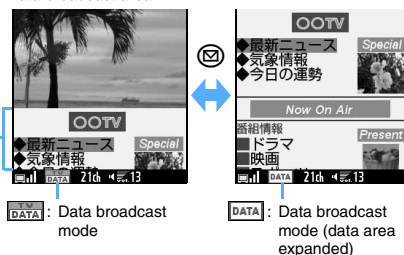
Using data broadcast

Data Broadcasting

1 on the TV screen

The mode is switched to the data broadcast mode. Pressing expands or reduces the data broadcast area.

Data broadcast area



- **Returning to the TV mode:**

- **Returning to the TV mode and displaying images on the horizontal screen:**

2 Select a link item

- Depending on the item you select, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to connect to a data broadcasting website, send information, connect to an i-mode site, or download the data. Select *Yes* to run or *No* to cancel. When you select *Yes (Always)*, the confirmation screen does not appear again and *Yes* is assumed any time.

- If you select *Yes (Always)*, data broadcast information and data broadcasting website information may be automatically updated later and packet communication fee may be required. To show again the confirmation screen on which you selected *Yes (Always)* ▶ P267

- When you select **Display URL** on the confirmation screen asking whether to connect to an i-mode site, the entire URL of the site is shown.

■ Showing previous or next page of the data broadcasting website being displayed: or

- While you are viewing data broadcasting websites, pages you view are logged into the page history of the FOMA terminal. Therefore, you can go back to the previous page with . When you return to the previous page and press , the next page appears.

■ Returning to data broadcast from the data broadcasting website:

INFORMATION

- Pictograms cannot be entered in entry fields in data broadcast or data broadcasting websites. A pictogram is replaced by a two-byte space if entered.
- If you select **Yes (Always)** on the confirmation screen when you connect from data broadcast to a data broadcasting website or reload the data broadcast, other confirmation screens will also not appear afterwards.
- When you connect to an i-mode site, the site is displayed in the full-screen mode. The 1Seg TV sound may continue depending on the program. However, images are not displayed.
- While the voice data is played by data broadcast, it is output in preference to the sound corresponding to the image.
- If you press  while viewing an SSL/TLS page and select **Data broadcasting** → **View certificate**, you can check the details of the certificate.
- If you press  while viewing a data broadcasting website and select **Data broadcasting** → **Reload**, you can refresh the data.
- Depending on the data broadcast or the data broadcasting website, operations may be performed even if you do not select linked items.
- During the data broadcast mode, you cannot use  or  to switch channels or adjust the volume. However, **Channel list** or **Volume** of the submenu operations and  to mute or to switch to the sound mode are available.

Using TV links

TV Link

Depending on the data broadcast or the data broadcasting website, the site information or note can be registered to the TV link.

When you register such information to the TV link, you can display the site or notes directly from the TV link.

Registering to the TV link

- Maximum number of items that can be registered: 50

1 Select an item to be registered to a TV link on the TV screen (in the data broadcast mode) **Yes**

- When you select **Yes (Always)** on the confirmation screen, the confirmation screen does not appear after that.
- When the number of items exceeds the maximum number, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite the oldest TV link or the TV link that is no longer valid.

Displaying registered TV links

- Some TV links may have expiration dates.

1

A list of TV links is displayed.

- The TV link list includes the following icons.

 : Notes

 : Link to data broadcasting website

 : Link to i-mode site

2 Select a TV link

- When you select a TV link of , the note is displayed.
- When you select a TV link of  or , a confirmation screen appears. Selecting **Yes** connects your FOMA terminal to the data broadcasting website or the i-mode site.
- The selected TV link is shown at the top of the TV link list next time.

■ Displaying the detail information:

Highlight a TV link   

■ Deleting TV links:

- ① **Highlight a TV link** ►
 - To delete selected links: ►
 - Select TV links ►
 - To delete all: ► Enter the terminal security code
- ② **Yes**

INFORMATION

- You can also display TV links by pressing on the vertical TV screen and selecting **Others** → **TVlink**.
 - When you connect to a data broadcasting website, data broadcast area is expanded to the full screen size. You cannot switch to the TV mode or expand/reduce the data broadcast area by using or the submenu. Pressing enables the following operations.

• Display TV links	• Adjust the volume*1,*2
• Mute*1	• Display image setting*2
• Sound effect setting*1,*2	• View certificate
• Reload*3	
- *1 You can mute the sound effect or change its volume. Also, you can set sound effects on/off with the sound effect setting.
- *2 The volume adjustment, display image setting and sound effect settings also apply to 1Seg viewing.
- *3 The data broadcasting website is reloaded. Perform this to update the display to the most recent data.

Capturing the screen you are viewing into a still image

Still Image Recording

A scene of the TV program you are watching can be saved as a still image (Still Image Recording).

- If the program is prohibited from being recorded, Still Image Recording is unavailable. When a broadcasting signal condition is not good, programs may not be recorded.
- This function is unavailable in the data broadcast mode (data area expanded).
- The recorded still image cannot be saved into the microSD memory card nor sent via mail attachment or infrared/iC communication. Also, it cannot be used as the standby display.
- The maximum number of items that can be saved
 P430

1 on the TV screen

The recorded still image is saved in the **1Seg image** folder of **My Picture** in Data Box.

- The file name and display name are automatically assigned according to the date and time when the still image is saved.

Example: If a still image is saved at 12:34:56 on December 5, 2007 → 20071205123456

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete some unnecessary images.
- When a videophone call arrives immediately after you press , the still image may not be saved.

Setting TV

1Seg Setting

Setting brightness of the screen

1Seg Backlight

Set the brightness of the screen for viewing 1Seg. The brighter the backlight is, the more battery power is consumed.

Default **AUTO(Normal)**

- 1 ► **Set each item** ►

AUTO Brightness :

Set whether to change the screen brightness automatically during 1Seg viewing.

- **AUTO(Normal)** automatically switches between **Economy mode** (darker) and **Normal mode** (standard) according to the ambient brightness.
- **AUTO(Bright)** automatically switches between **Economy mode** (darker), **Normal mode** (standard) and **Bright mode** (brighter) according to the ambient brightness.
- If you set **OFF**, you need to set **Brightness**. For information about automatic switching of brightness, see INFORMATION in "Setting the light for the display and keys".

Brightness :

Set brightness if **AUTO Brightness** is not set.

■ Setting during 1Seg viewing

- To set **AUTO Brightness**: on the vertical TV screen ► -
- To set **Brightness**: on the vertical TV screen ► -
 - This can be set when **AUTO Brightness** is set to **OFF**.

Unlocking the key lock for TV viewing

Unlock Key Lock

Set whether to unlock the key lock automatically when you activate 1Seg.

Default Not unlock

1 (MENU) 9 6 2 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- When **Unlock** is set, Key Lock is automatically unlocked upon activation of 1Seg. When **Key lock timer** of Key Lock Timer (P137) is set to **ON**, Key Lock is automatically locked when the specified time has elapsed on the standby display after the end of 1Seg.

Deleting the saved data of the data broadcast

Delete Storage Area

Delete the information saved in the broadcast storage area.

1 (MENU) 9 6 5

2 Highlight an affiliate ▶ (MENU) 1 ▶ Yes

- To delete the broadcast storage area of all affiliates: (MENU) 2 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Hiding the image of the data broadcasting website

Display Image

Default ON

1 (MENU) 9 6 3 ▶ 1 or 2

- Changing the setting during 1Seg viewing: (MENU) 7 2 on the vertical TV screen ▶

1 or 2

- This procedure is unavailable while subtitles are shown.

INFORMATION

- This setting is for data broadcasting websites. If you set Display Image to **OFF**, images of data broadcast are displayed.
- The change of settings also applies to Image & Effect Setting for i-mode. P176

Disabling sound effects of the data broadcast

Sound Effect

Default ON

1 (MENU) 9 6 4 ▶ 1 or 2

- Changing the setting during 1Seg viewing: (MENU) 7 3 on the vertical screen ▶

1 or 2

- This procedure is unavailable while subtitles are shown.

INFORMATION

- Even if **ON** is set, no sound is heard when the data broadcasting website contains no sound effect information.

Checking the 1Seg settings

Confirm Settings

1 (MENU) 9 6 7

Displaying the user confirmation screen at the data broadcasting website

Reset Permission Display

Set the confirmation screen to be displayed again for which you selected **Yes(Always)** during the previous data broadcast or program guide i-appli operation not to display it.

1 (MENU) 9 6 6 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- A confirmation screen also appears in the following cases.
 - Reset Settings for 1Seg
 - Delete All Data
 - Replace UIs

Resetting 1Seg settings to the default

Reset Settings

- The following settings are reset:
 - Volume
 - Subtitles
 - Pictograph
 - Main/Sub sound
 - 1Seg Backlight
 - Unlock Key Lock
 - Display Image
 - Sound Effect
- Resetting the 1Seg setting enables the confirmation screen to be displayed again for which you selected *Yes(Always)* during the previous data broadcast or program guide i-appli operation not to display it.

1



9

6

8

▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Full Browser

Viewing Internet web pages designed for PC.....	Full Browser	270
Setting Full Browser.....	Browser Setting	275

Viewing Internet web pages designed for PC

Full Browser

You can view Internet web pages designed for PCs on the FOMA terminal.

- Some web pages may not be downloaded or displayed properly.
- Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges. For details of packet communication fee or billing plans, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Example Entering the URL of a page to view

1 Enter the URL (up to 512 one-byte characters)

- From the second time, the last URL you connected is displayed.
- Connection can be quit if is pressed during connection. Also, to stop displaying the page, press or while downloading the data.

Viewing the home page:

- Your FOMA terminal is connected to the web page registered as a home page in advance.
- If the home page is not registered, the registration screen for the home page appears.

Selecting the URL from Bookmark:

Select a folder Select a bookmark

- Registering the URL to a bookmark

Using URL History to view web pages:

Select the URL

- Up to last 20 URLs you connected to can be recorded in the URL history.

Reconnecting to the page displayed the last time (Last Visited URL):

- Some pages may not be displayed. Or a different page from the page visited the last time may be displayed.

2 Activate Full Browser? field Yes Set

- If you select *Display*, notes are displayed. Please read the notes.
- If Access Setting is set to *Yes*, the operation of Step 2 is not needed.

3 when you finish viewing the Internet web page Yes

INFORMATION

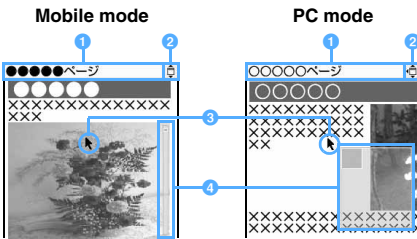
- Some pages may take some time to appear.
- The following functions are not supported:
 - Viewing Flash movies
 - Plug-in
 - Playing sound
 - Saving screen memos
 - Phone To (AV Phone To)
- The following icons may appear instead of images.
 - : While data is being downloaded or when Image Display is set not to display images
 - : When the image data is invalid, cannot be found or cannot be received because of being outside of the service area
 - : When the image cannot be displayed because of the incorrect URL
- Some functions may not be operated while data is being downloaded.
- Operations available from the folder list of the bookmark, bookmark list or URL history list and the input method of the URL are the same as for i-mode.
- Some pages may be connected to the network automatically. A confirmation screen appears asking whether to connect to the network at the beginning of communication.
- Full Browser can display SSL/TLS pages. SSL/TLS is a safer data communication method that uses authentication/encryption technology to protect privacy.
 - When the user certificate or original certificate registered in the FOMA terminal is needed for SSL/TLS communication, the selection screen for certificate appears.
 - During SSL/TLS communication, appears on the screen.
 - To display the certificate of the current page, press while an SSL/TLS page is displayed and select *Display* → *View certificate*.
 - When you close an SSL/TLS page, an confirmation screen appears.

Operations while viewing web pages by Full Browser

The Full Browser screen

The Full Browser screen is available in the mobile mode and the PC mode. In the mobile mode, the layout of a page is adjusted to the width of the FOMA terminal screen and scroll up and down to view the page. In the PC mode, a web page is displayed without being adjusted to the screen size of the FOMA terminal and scroll both vertically and horizontally to view the page.

The mobile mode is set by default.



1 Status/Page title or URL

- : Displaying Frame thumbnail ◀P272
- : Displaying Enlarged frame ◀P272
- (green): Downloading the data
- (gray): Downloading the data of other frame while displaying in enlarged frame
- : Downloading PDF data, Word, Excel or PowerPoint files

2 Display mode icon

- : Mobile mode
- : PC mode

3 Pointer

You can use a pointer to operate like a PC when you display a pointer. ◀P272

4 View position

When a page is displayed or the screen is scrolled, a bar that indicates the current position of the page appears for about 1 second (except for thumbnail display).

Red: Displaying range (The color can be changed.)

Gray: Range not displayed

- The frame size depends on the display mode or a page.

- Multi-window display ◀P272

■ Switching between the mobile mode and the PC mode:

- The setting is saved even after Full Browser ends.

■ Scrolling: in the mobile mode and in the PC mode

- While displaying the pointer, the screen scrolls up, down, right or left automatically, when the pointer reaches at an end of the screen.

■ Scrolling by a page:

- In the mobile mode:
 - 1, 2, 3 or 5 to scroll up
 - 7, 8, 9 or 10 to scroll down
 - 5 and 10 cannot be used while displaying the pointer.
- In the PC mode: 1 - 4 or 6 - 9 (Scroll to the direction of the key)

■ Displaying the previous or next page: or

- When the pointer is not displayed in the mobile mode, operate by or .

■ Switching between displaying/not displaying the guide row:

- Operation is available only when *Full screen view* is set for Screen View Setting.

■ Reloading the data:

■ Showing the URL of a page:

- You can copy the URL. Follow the procedure in "Copying the URL". ◀P174

■ Showing the URL of a linked page: Highlight a link

- To copy the displayed URL: Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Copying the URL". ◀P174

■ Switching the character encode:

- Each time you press the key, the character encode is switched in the following order: SJIS → EUC → JIS → UTF8.
- To set auto switch:
- Characters may not be displayed correctly even if you change character encodes.

■ Playing animation from the beginning:

■ Displaying the view position manually:

- To set the color: -
- To set not to display:

■ Sending the URL via mail:

The mail composition screen appears with the URL of the current page entered in the message text.

■ Viewing another page:

- To display the home page:
- To select the URL from Bookmark:
 - ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a bookmark
- To enter the URL of a page to view:
 - ▶ Enter the URL (up to 512 one-byte characters) ▶
- To view web pages using URL history:
 - ▶ Select a URL

■ Showing Help:

INFORMATION

- In case of scrolling, hold down the relevant key to scroll continuously.

- While the pointer is not displayed, procedures to select links or use entry fields is the same as on the i-mode site screen. However, you cannot select a numbered item by pressing the key of number corresponding to the item.

Switching between displaying/not displaying the pointer

1 # on the Full Browser screen

- The setting is saved even after Full Browser ends.
- The pointer does not appear on the search screen or image selecting screen.

Selecting the item by using the pointer

1 Place the pointer to the item by and

- Holding down  moves the pointer continuously.
- When there are undisplayed range, the screen scrolls up, down, right or left automatically when the pointer reaches at an end of the screen.
- When the pointer is placed at the item which can be selected, *Select* appears in the middle of the guide row.
- You cannot select a guide row or submenu.

INFORMATION

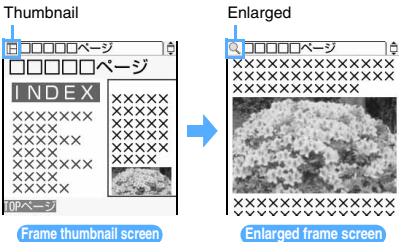
- The pointer's move may be limited depending on the frame.

Displaying a page divided into frames

The frame thumbnail screen appears first. When you select a frame, the enlarged frame screen appears allowing scrolling and selecting items.

- A page divided into many frames may not be displayed. In the multi-window mode, the number of frames that can be displayed is fewer than the standard mode.

1 Select a frame on the frame thumbnail screen



- While displaying the pointer, move the pointer to the frame by  and press .

- When the pointer is not displayed, press  to move the frame and press . In the PC mode, pressing  can also move the frame.
- To return to the frame thumbnail screen: 
- The screen automatically returns to the frame thumbnail screen in some cases such as selecting a link.

INFORMATION

- All the page content may not be displayed depending on the frame composition.
- On the frame thumbnail screen, the following operations are unavailable:
 - Scrolling
 - Showing link destination
 - Saving images, PDF data, Word, Excel or PowerPoint files
 - Searching
 - View position indication/setting
- The frame which needs authentication is shown in yellow, and the frame in which a trouble is detected by Virus Scan Function is shown in red.

Viewing multiple windows

You can open multiple windows at a time and view the pages by switching windows.

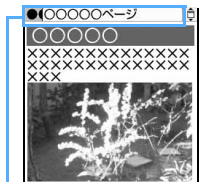
- Up to 5 windows can be open. However, depending on the number of frames or the page content, you may not open 5 windows at a time.
- Multiple pages cannot be displayed on the same screen at the same time.

Example Displaying the link destination on a separate window

1 Highlight a link on the Full Browser screen



The page appears on a new window. The previous page remains in the rear window.



Tab of each window
White: Current window
Gray: Rear window

- To display the home page:   
- To display web pages using Bookmark, URL entry field or URL History:   
-  - 
- For the subsequent steps, see "Viewing Internet web pages designed for PC". ➡P270

- In the multi-window mode, a confirmation screen for the operation on the rear window may appear.
- Some operations may not be made while downloading the data in current window or rear window.
- Pressing **(ZUP)** while downloading the data may stop downloading of current window. Also, pressing **(MENU)** may stop downloading the data of all the windows.

■ **Switching windows:** **(Ⓜ) (3)** ▶ **Select a window**

■ **Closing a window:** **(Ⓜ) (2)** ▶ **Yes**

INFORMATION

- Some links will open a new window automatically.
- In the multi-window mode, switching the display mode of a window changes the display mode of all the open windows as well.

Displaying horizontally

You can display the page by turning the screen 90 degrees.

1 **(Ⓜ) (6)** on the Full Browser screen

The vertical and horizontal display switches.

- The guide row is not displayed in horizontal display.
- To return to vertical display: **(Ⓜ) (6)** again
- The pointer mode will be canceled if you switch between the vertical display and horizontal display.

Operations in horizontal display

While in horizontal display, keys to be used for scrolling by page or forward/back will change.

■ **Scrolling by a page:**

- In the mobile mode:
(3), **(6)**, **(9)** or **(Ⓜ)** to scroll up
(1), **(4)**, **(7)** or **(↻)** to scroll down
(Ⓜ) and **(↻)** cannot be used while displaying the pointer.
- In the PC mode: **(1) - (4)** or **(6) - (9)**
 (Scroll to the direction of the key)

■ **Displaying the previous or next page:** **(Ⓜ)** or **(↻)**:

- When the pointer is not displayed in the mobile mode, operate by **(↻)** or **(Ⓜ)**.

Switching from i-mode to Full Browser

While viewing Internet websites via i-mode, you can switch to Full Browser to view them.

- Some web pages, however, may not be downloaded or displayed properly.

1 **Connect the Internet web page via i-mode**

2 **(MENU) (3) (3) ▶ Yes**

- Follow Step 2 in "Viewing Internet web pages designed for PC". ➡P270
- If you save the settings or press **(ZUP)** with Access Setting set to **No**, the i-mode screen does not reappear.

Various operations on the Full Browser screen

Registering in Bookmark

- Maximum number of items that can be registered ➡P430
- You cannot register URLs longer than 512 one-byte characters in Bookmark.
- Some pages may not be registered in Bookmark.

1 **(MENU) (2) (1) on the Full Browser screen ▶ Select the folder to save the URL**

- Follow Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark" of i-mode. ➡P167

Saving images

The images in GIF or JPEG format can be registered in the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card. Also, images in PNG or BMP format can be registered in the microSD memory card.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P430
- The images in PNG or BMP format are saved in the **Other** folder of the microSD memory card, and cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal. You can send these images by attaching to i-mode Mail, or use them by PC, reading from the microSD memory card.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.
- Image files exceeding 300 Kbytes cannot be saved.
- Even if an image file is of valid format and size, it may not be saved depending on pages.

- Background images cannot be saved. Any other data than images cannot be downloaded.

1 on the Full Browser screen Select an image

- When the images in GIF or JPEG is selected, the saving screen for image appears. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Downloading images". ➡P170

INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete saved images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

Downloading files

PDF data, Word, Excel or PowerPoint files can be downloaded.

- The maximum size of file that can be received is 500 Kbytes.
- Word, Excel and PowerPoint files can be downloaded only while the microSD memory card is inserted.
- The file of Word 2007, Excel 2007 and PowerPoint 2007 cannot be downloaded.
- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P430

1 On the Full Browser screen, select the item for obtaining files

- To cancel downloading:   *Yes*

2 Save

- To display: *Preview*
- To cancel the operation: *Back*  *No*

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte)

The PDF data is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *My Document* in Data Box. ➡P320

Word, Excel, and PowerPoint files are saved in the folder of *Other* in Data Box. ➡P323

- When saving Word, Excel and PowerPoint and there are multiple folders in *Other*, a screen for selecting the folder appears. Select the folder to save.
- When  is displayed in the guide row, press  and then  to save in the microSD memory card.

INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete saved data. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

Searching for a character string in the page

- Searching is unavailable during data downloading.
- Some pages may not be searched.

1 on the Full Browser screen

The screen switches to the search screen and the character string entry field appears at the bottom of the screen.

2 Enter a character string (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters)

Searching is executed and the words matching to entered character strings are highlighted.

- To search the next matching phrase: 
- To search the previous matching phrase: 
- To end searching: 

■ Setting the detailed conditions: on the search screen Set each item

- To search for alphanumeric one-byte characters, set the search method to *Exact match* for perfect matching.
- To distinguish between upper/lower cases and search, select *Yes* in *Case-sensitive*.
- The setting is saved even after Full Browser ends.

INFORMATION

- The search results sometimes overlap the character string entry field. To check the overlapping content, press .

Uploading images

You can upload images of the FOMA terminal to the website supporting image uploading.

- Images in GIF and JPEG format can be uploaded. The image file size must be up to 80 Kbytes. If the image file contains multiple images or character string are to be uploaded, the total size is up to 100 Kbytes.
- You cannot upload images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from the FOMA terminal (excluding images with file restriction set at your terminal). Any other data than images and character strings cannot be uploaded.
- The uploading method varies depending on web pages.

1 Browse on the page for uploading the image

► Select a folder ► Select an image

- If the microSD memory card is inserted, select *Browse* and then *Phone memory* or *microSD*.
- *Browse* appears when images can be uploaded from the FOMA terminal. If you view the same page by PC, you will see a different button in place of *Browse*.

■ **Changing a selected file:** *Browse* ► *Change*

■ **Canceling a selected file:** *Browse* ► *Cancel*

Setting Full Browser

Browser Setting

- The following i-mode settings are also valid for Full Browser:
 - Connection Timeout Setting
 - Host Selection
 - Display Light Setting
 - Manage Certificate
 - Skip Password

Menu 2941

Setting a home page

Home URL

Default not recorded

1 ► Enter a URL (up to 512 one-byte characters) ►

INFORMATION

- You can also set a home page by pressing  while a web page to be set as a home page is displayed and selecting *Set as home URL* and then *Yes*. However, you cannot register the URL longer than 512 one-byte characters.

Menu 2942

Setting cookies

Cookie Setting/Deleting

Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the data about a user (the user name, etc.) in the FOMA terminal when the user accesses Internet websites and sending the saved data to the same website when the user accesses again. Cookie is used, for example, to automatically display the user-specific page.

- Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of enabling cookies.
- If cookies are disabled, some web pages may not be displayed properly or used.

Default Valid

1

2 Set each item ►

Cookie : When you set this to *Valid*, cookies are always enabled. When setting *Valid(notify)*, a confirmation screen appears before transmission. When you set this to *Invalid*, cookies are always disabled.

Notify : Select when to display the confirmation screen from among *Sending*, *Receiving*, and *Sending/receiving*, when *Valid(notify)* is set.

■ **Deleting all cookies:**  ► **Enter the terminal security code** ► *Yes*

INFORMATION

- When you change the UIM with another, *Cookie* is set to *Invalid*.
- When you change *Cookie* from *Invalid* to *Valid* or *Valid(notify)*, the terminal security code may be required. A confirmation screen may appear asking whether to delete saved cookies.
- You cannot display saved cookies or delete each of them.

Menu 2943

Setting script

Script Setting

Make the setting of JavaScript of the Internet web pages.

- JavaScript is a program running on the Internet web pages.
- If you set *Script Setting* to *Invalid*, some web pages may not be displayed correctly.

Default Script Setting: Valid

Window Open Guard: Invalid

1 ► Set each item ►

Script Setting :

Select whether to enable JavaScript.

Window Open Guard :

Specify whether to open a new window in response to a request from a JavaScript program. When you set this to *Invalid*, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to open a new window. Selecting *Yes* on that screen opens a new window. When you set this to *Valid*, a new window does not open.

INFORMATION

- Also you can change the *Window Open Guard* setting by pressing  on the Full Browser screen and selecting *Display* → *Window open guard* and then *Yes*.
- With *Window Open Guard* set to *Valid*, when JavaScript requires to open a new window on the Full Browser screen and the *Window Open Guard* function works,  appears in the position of the display mode icon.

Menu 2944

Setting the display mode Display Mode Setting

Select a display mode (the mobile mode or PC mode) in which Full Browser opens.

Default **Mobile mode**

1     ▶  or 

Menu 2945

Setting whether to display images Image Display

Default **Display (all)**

1     ▶ **Set each item** ▶ 

Image :

Specifies whether to display images or animation.

- When *Not display* is set, *Animation* cannot be set.

Animation :

Specifies whether to play animation. When *Not display* is set, the first frame of animation appears.

INFORMATION

- You can also make this setting by pressing  on the Full Browser screen and selecting *Display* → *Image settings*.

Menu 2946

Setting whether to use Full Browser

Access Setting

Default **No**

1     ▶ *Activate Full Browser?* **field** ▶ *Yes* or *No*

- If you select *Display*, notes are displayed.
Please read the notes before you select *Yes*.

2 *Set*

INFORMATION

- When you change the UIM with another, Access Setting is set to *No*.

Menu 2947

Setting Referrer

Referer Setting

You can set whether to send “Referer” (the link source information to show the page from which you accessed the linked page) when you select a link to view the link destination page.

- Select from *Send*, *Notify* or *Unsend*. Selecting *Notify* displays a confirmation screen before sending Referrer.
- Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referrer.

Default **Send**

1     ▶  - 

Menu 2948

Hiding the guide row from the Full Browser screen

Screen View Setting

Hide the guide row from the Full Browser screen and shows the page content on the full screen.

- In the full-screen display, you can perform operations in the same way as the standard display.

Default **With menu icon view**

1     ▶  or 

Data Display/Edit/Management

Making full use of images

Displaying images.....	My Picture	278
Editing still images.....		280
Setting preferences for images.....	Settings	283
Saving still images in the Data Center	Data Security Service	283

Making full use of video/i-motion

Playing video/i-motion	i-motion	284
Editing video/i-motion.....		287
Setting preferences for video/i-motion	Settings	289
Moving video/i-motion to the microSD memory card	Movable Contents	289

Making full use of Chara-den

Chara-den.....		290
Displaying Chara-den	Chara-den	290
Recording Chara-den	Record Chara-den	291
Setting preferences for Chara-den	Settings	293

Making full use of Machi-chara

Displaying Machi-chara	Machi-chara	293
Setting preferences for Machi-chara	Settings	294

Making full use of melodies

Playing melodies	Melody	294
Setting preferences for melodies	Settings	294

Making full use of the microSD memory card

microSD memory card		295
Inserting/removing the microSD memory card		299
Exchanging the data between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card		299
Displaying data in the microSD memory card		302
Managing the microSD memory card		304
Using the microSD memory card from PC.....		305

Managing various data

Using the album		307
Viewing/editing detail information of the data.....	View/Edit Detail Info	308
Deleting data		310
Sorting data	Sort	311
Checking the memory status of the FOMA terminal.....	Memory Status	311

Making full use of the infrared communication

Infrared communication		311
Sending data by infrared communication.....	Send Ir Data	312
Communication receiving data by infrared	Receive Ir Data	313
Activating infrared communication mode	Infrared Communication Mode	315
Using the infrared remote control function		315
Setting operations for data transfer	Data Exchange Setting	316

Making full use of the iC communication function

iC communication function	iC Communication	316
Using iC communication to send data		316
Using iC communication to receive data		317

Making full use of Sound Recorder

Recording sound with Sound Recorder.....	Sound Recorder	318

Making full use of PDF viewer

Displaying the PDF data	PDF Viewer	320
Using bookmarks or marks		322
Setting preferences for PDF Viewer	Settings	323

Making full use of Document Viewer

Displaying Word, Excel and PowerPoint files	Document Viewer	323

Displaying images

My Picture

You can display images saved in *My Picture* in Data Box of the FOMA terminal.

1 Select a folder

Camera :

Still images shot by the camera or still images captured from video/i-motion or PDF data

i-mode :

Images obtained by i-mode, Full Browser, i-mode Mail and i-appli or saved with Music Player

Deco-mail picture :

Preinstalled images for Deco-mail (P392) and images downloaded from sites or received via i-mode mails

Deco-mail pict :

Deco-mail pictograms preinstalled by default (P393), downloaded from sites or received via i-mode mails

Item :

Frame images preinstalled by default (P394) and frame/stamp images downloaded from sites

1Seg image :

Images obtained by Still Image Recording during 1Seg viewing

Preinstalled :

Images preinstalled by default P391

Data transfer :

Images read by Bar Code Reader, images moved/copied from microSD memory cards and images received via data communications

Album :

Images moved from other folders

- Not displayed by default. To create this folder P307

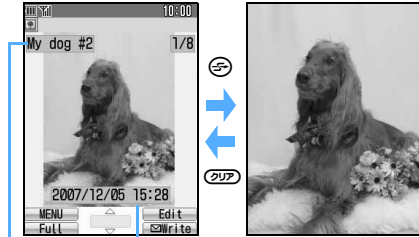
- To switch to the folder list display of the microSD memory card: on the folder list

-

- To handle the microSD memory card P302

2 Select an image

The image is displayed. Pressing allows you to view the image on the full screen.



- Press to display the previous or next image.
- When an animation, created animation or Flash movie is displayed, it will be played automatically. During playing, the following operations are available:

- : Pause/play
- : Retry (replay from the beginning)
- : Slow play (only during stop of playing created animation)
- : Full-screen display

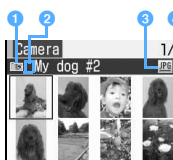
■ Displaying an image to its actual size:

to scroll

- This is available only for images larger than 240 x 320.
- Animation, created animation and Flash movies cannot be displayed in the actual size.
- To end actual size display:

Image list screen and available operations

Thumbnail display



1 Originated

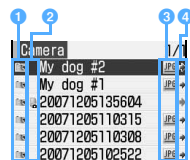
- : Camera
- : Preinstalled
- : 1Seg
- : Chara-den
- : i-mode
- : Item
- : Data transfer

2 Type of image

No icon: Still image

- : Created animation
- : Animation/Flash movie

Title display



3 File format

: GIF format : JPEG format

: SWF (Flash movie)

No icon: Created animation

4 File restriction

➡ (blue): Without file restriction

➡ (gray): With file restriction

- To switch between thumbnail and title displays:



- Images with the UIM operation restriction are displayed with (for Deco-mail pictograms) in the thumbnail display.

- To change display names and other items

➡ P309

■ Sending mail with images attached:

Highlight an image ▶

The mail composition screen is displayed with the selected image attached.

- When the file size of image is under 90 Kbytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to paste it in the mail message. Select *Yes* to paste it in the message and select *No* to attach it to mail.
- For JPEG images whose image size exceeds QVGA (240 x 320 or 320 x 240), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to change the size to the standby display size (QVGA).
- 1Seg images cannot be attached.
- For images that can be attached to mail
➡ P195

Viewing a slide show

The images in the folder are displayed one by one automatically.

- The speed of changing images and the order of images depend on Settings.

1 1 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ 5

The slide show starts.

- The folder list returns after all the images in the folder are displayed.
- Created animation cannot be displayed by the slide show.
- Sound effects of the images are not played.
- To quit halfway:

Setting images to the standby display or phonebook data

- 1Seg images cannot be set.

1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight an image ▶ 2

2 Select an item

■ Setting to the standby display: 1 ▶ *Yes*

- If zooming is available for the image, select *Yes(Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *Yes(Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-appli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel it.
- Setting may be unavailable depending on images.

■ Registering as a new phonebook entry: 2

■ Updating the existing phonebook entry: 3 ▶ Select a party

■ Setting as the call image: 4 ▶ 1 or 2

■ Setting as the videophone call image, substitute image or on-hold image: 5 ▶ 1 - 7

- Images larger than 176 x 144 and images prohibited to be output from the FOMA terminal can be set only as the call image.

■ Setting as the mail image for outgoing messages, incoming messages, the reception result screen or message retrieval: 6 ▶ 1 - 4

- The same image as set for outgoing messages, incoming messages or the reception result screen is also displayed when Message R/F is received or SMS is sent or received.

■ Setting as the menu icon: 7 or 8 ▶ 1 - 9 or 0

The selected image is set as a menu icon of *Customized 1* or *Customized 2* of *Type of tile icons*.

- Created animation, Flash movies and item images cannot be set as a menu icon.

Creating animation

You can create animation by selecting and saving up to 6 still images in a folder.

- Animation, created animation, Flash movies and still images larger than 640 x 480 cannot be used to create animation.
- Still images saved for created animation cannot be displayed or edited separately.

1 **Select a folder**

2

■ **Canceling the animation: Highlight a created animation**   

3 **Select images**

The sequential numbers are assigned to the images in the order of selection.

- To cancel all the selections: 

4 **Enter a display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters)**

In the image list,  and the display name are displayed. In the thumbnail display, the first frame is displayed.

INFORMATION

- Still images taken by continuous shooting are saved as a created animation. When you cancel the created animation, each image is saved as a separate file. A number such as "-1" and "-2" is appended to the end of each file name.

Editing still images

You can edit still images saved in *My Picture* of the FOMA terminal. The items you can edit and the maximum editable image size are as follows:

Item	Maximum editable image size (dot)*1
<i>Change size</i>	1728 x 2304 (352 x 288 for zoom in/out)
<i>Clip</i>	1728 x 2304 (1224 x 1632 for a clipping range)
<i>Brightness/Tone</i>	352 x 288
<i>Effects</i>	240 x 320
<i>Reverse/Rotate</i>	480 x 640
<i>Frames</i>	352 x 288
<i>Paste stamp</i>	352 x 288
<i>Paste text</i>	352 x 288

Item	Maximum editable image size (dot)*1
<i>Cut</i>	240 x 320
<i>Size limitation</i>	1728 x 2304 (480 x 640 for still images of up to 2 Mbytes)
<i>Adjust</i>	352 x 288

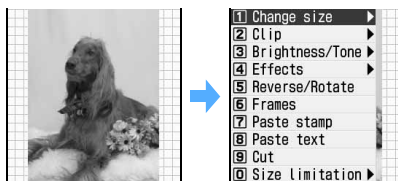
*1 When the image cannot be edited because its size is too large, you can use *Change size* to reduce it to the editable size.

- The following images cannot be edited:
 - Animation, created animation, Flash movies, item images, 1Seg images and images in the *Preinstalled* folder
 - Still images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from the FOMA terminal (excluding still images for which you set *File restricted*)
 - Still images with either the vertical or horizontal size under 8 dots

1 **Select a folder** **Highlight a still image**

The still image edit screen appears.

2 **Edit the still image**



Still image edit screen

Edit menu screen

- For details about editing, see "Using the edit menu". ◀P281
- To adjust the image ◀P283

3 **after editing** **Save**

The edited still image is saved as a new still image in the same folder.

- Select *As frame/stamp* to save as an image for frame or stamp. For images that can be available as frame/stamp ◀P310
- Images that can be used as Deco-mail pictograms are saved in the *Deco-mail pict* folder.
- To send mail with the edited still image attached:  on the still image edit screen

INFORMATION

- Editing of *Brightness/Tone* or *Effects* may display the image smaller. Save as it is because the image size is not changed. The image is saved with a proper size.
- After editing, the still image file size may become larger.

- When the memory is not enough or the maximum allowable number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete saved images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete unnecessary images.

Using the edit menu

Changing the size

- Changing the size of a still image may deteriorate the image quality.

1 ① on the edit menu screen ► Change the image size

■ Changing it to the specified size: ① - ⑨

If the aspect ratio of the specified size is the same as that of the still image, the size is changed and the still image edit screen reappears.

If the aspect ratio differs, a size frame appears. Press or to adjust the position of the size frame, and press to change the area enclosed by the size frame to the specified size.

- To change the still image size to the specified size by ignoring the aspect ratio (*Stretch*):
- To change the still image size to the specified size without changing the aspect ratio (*Fit*):

■ Zooming in/out:

① ► to zoom in/out

You can zoom in/out by 5 % without changing the aspect ratio.

- Press to zoom out by 20 % or press to zoom in by 20 %.
- The vertically long still image can be zoomed in up to 288 x 352 and the horizontally long still image can be zoomed in up to 352 x 288 (up to the limit of either the vertical or horizontal size).
- Images can be compressed down to a size of 8 horizontal or vertical dots.

②

Clipping images to desired sizes

You can clip a part of a still image by specifying a size or range.

- When the original still image is smaller than 16 x 16, clipping is unavailable.

1 ② on the edit menu screen ► Clip the still image

■ Clipping the image to the specified size:

① -

② to adjust the clipping frame position

- To switch the vertical and horizontal sides of the clipping frame:
- To change the clipping size:
- To specify a clipping range:

③

■ Specifying a range and performing clipping:

① ► to adjust the position of

►

The position of upper left corner of the range frame is set and is displayed on the lower right of the frame.

② to adjust the position of ►

The clipping range is set and the range frame is shown in solid line.

- Press instead of to change the position of the upper left again.
- Use after pressing to move the range frame.

③

Changing brightness and tone

1 ③ on the edit menu screen ► Change the brightness and tone

■ Adjusting the brightness:

① ► to adjust the brightness

- To maximize:
- To minimize:

②

■ Changing the tone to monotone or sepia:

② or ③

Applying special effects

1 ④ on the edit menu screen ► Select the type of effect

- Soften* : Softens the image.
- Spherical* : Swells the still image spherically from the center.
- Emboss* : Changes the color to leaden and emphasizes concavity and convexity.
- Spiral* : Makes the still image look as if it is spiraling out from the center.
- Shiny* : Attaches glistening marks.
- Mosaic* : Attaches a mosaic.

Reversing/rotating

1 on the edit menu screen ▶ Reverse/rotate the still image

- Reverse up and down: 
- Reverse left and right: 
- Rotate 90 degrees to the left: 
- Rotate 90 degrees to the right: 

2

Overlaying a frame

- Frames set by default 

1 on the edit menu screen

Frames of the same size as the still image being edited are listed.

- Images set as frame options by Edit Detail Info are displayed even if the size differs from that of the still image being edited.

2 Select a frame ▶ Check the still image

- To switch frames: 
- To rotate the frame 180 degrees: 

3

Pasting stamps

- Stamps set by default 

1 on the edit menu screen

The stamps smaller than the still image being edited are listed.

- Images set as stamp options by Edit Detail Info and default stamps are displayed even if their size is larger than the still image.

2 Select a stamp

The selected stamp is displayed in the center of the screen.

3 to move the stamp ▶

A beep is heard and the stamp is pasted.

- You can also paste it to any additional places.
- To delete all the pasted stamps: 
- The volume of a beep follows the setting of Listen Volume.

4

Pasting characters

1 on the edit menu screen ▶ Set each item ▶

Text : Enter the text (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters).

Font type : Set the text type.

Font size : Set the text size.

Font color : Set the text color.

Font border color :

Set the text bordering color.

Background color :

Set the text background color.

Paste method : Set whether to paste all characters as a single text in a place or paste each character separately in different places.

2 to move the text ▶

A beep is heard and the text is pasted.

- You can also paste it to any additional places.
- When *By character* is set for *Paste method*, each pressing of  pastes each character. When the last character is pasted, the first character is displayed again.
- To delete all the pasted text: 
- The volume of a beep follows the setting of Listen Volume.

3

Cutting out a desired section

Select a color and cut out the section of the similar color.

1 on the edit menu screen ▶ to place on the color to cut out and

The section with a similar color as the color at  is cut out.

- You can also cut out any additional sections.

2

Limiting file size for saving

You can limit the file size to below 90 Kbytes for *Msg attach:Small* and below 2 Mbytes for *Msg attach:Large* for saving.

1 on the edit menu screen ▶ Select a size

The image is saved in the same folder as a new image with a size below the specified size.

- Still images larger than 480 x 640 cannot be set as *Msg attach:Small*.
- For still images of 2 Mbytes or less, you cannot set *Msg attach:Large*.

Adjusting brightness and tone balance

- Adjusting may not have much effect depending on the still image.

1 on the still image edit screen

2 to switch the adjustment mode

Close-up : Makes appropriate adjustment for images such as still objects and plants.

Near view : Makes appropriate adjustment for the background.

Distant view : Gives vivid brightness and contrast to a landscape image.

Beautiful skin : Gives an effect to make the skin look white and smooth on a portrait image.

Tanned : Gives an effect to make the skin look tanned on a portrait image.

Pale : Gives an effect to make the skin look pale on a portrait image.

Drunk : Gives an effect to make the skin look ruddy on a portrait image.

- The adjustment mode can also be selected by pressing  and **1** - **7**.

3 to adjust the level

- To maximize: 
- To minimize: 
- The brightness and color tone change depending on the level.

4

Setting preferences for images

Settings

Default Display 12 icons: Yes Display title: Yes
Display number: Yes Display comments: Yes
Scale up image: No Sound effect: Yes
Auto scroll mode: No
Slide show speed: Normal
Slide show random: No

1 **1** **4** **Set each item**

Display 12 icons :

The thumbnail display appears when setting to *Yes*, and the title display appears when setting to *No*.

Display title :

Set whether to show a display name on the image display screen.

Display number :

Set whether to display the number of images on the image display screen.

Display comments :

Set whether to display comments on the image display screen.

Scale up image :

Set whether to scale up an image smaller than the display area without changing the aspect ratio when displaying it.

- Even when *Yes* is set, the image is not scaled up in case of the full-screen display.

Sound effect :

Set whether to play effect sounds set for an image when the image is displayed.

Auto scroll mode :

Set whether to enable automatic scrolling of JPEG images larger than the screen. If you set *Yes*, pressing  automatically scrolls such an image being displayed.

- If the vertical or horizontal size is smaller than the screen, the image is not enlarged to the vertical or horizontal size of the screen.
- When the aspect ratio of the image is the same as that of the screen, no scrolling takes place.
- To stop or restart scrolling, press . Pressing  will not restart scrolling when the scrolling finishes.

Slide show speed :

Select among *Fast*, *Normal* or *Slow*.

Slide show random :

Set whether to display images randomly in slide show.

Saving still images in the Data Center

Data Security Service

You can save still images in the Data Center using Data Security Service.

- Data Security Service is a pay service and requires a subscription. For more information, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Saving still images

- Still images larger than 100 Kbytes cannot be saved.
- Still images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from the FOMA terminal cannot be saved (excluding still images for which you set *File restricted*).
- Created animations, Flash movies, item images, and images within the *Preinstalled* folder cannot be saved.
- You can check the log of communications with the Data Center. ◀P94

1 Select a folder

2 Select a still image ▶



- Up to 10 images can be selected.

3 Yes ▶ Enter the terminal security code

Selected still images are saved in the Data Center. When saving is completed, the execution result is displayed.

- The execution result disappears in about 5 seconds and the image list returns. Press to return to the list immediately.

INFORMATION

- If you have not yet subscribed to Data Security Service, a message for indicating that appears.

Restoring still images

You can restore still images saved in the Data Center from the site of the Data Center to your FOMA terminal. For more information, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Menu 53

Playing video/i-motion

i-motion

You can play video/i-motion saved in *i-motion* of Data Box in the FOMA terminal.

- Video/i-motion files (MP4 files and ASF files) with an image size from 48 x 48 to 320 x 240 can be played.

1 Select a folder



Camera :

Videos recorded with the camera, sounds recorded with Sound Recorder and video memos



i-mode :

i-motion captured in i-mode or via i-mode Mail or i-motion compatible with Movable Contents that is moved from the microSD memory card



Preinstalled :

i-motion files preinstalled by default ▶P391



Data transfer :

Video/i-motion files moved/copied from the microSD memory card (excluding the i-motion compatible with Movable Contents) or received by data communication



Album :

Video/i-motion files moved from other folders

- Not displayed by default. To create this folder ▶P307
- To switch to the folder list of the microSD memory card: on the folder list ▶ or
- To handle the microSD memory card ▶P302

2 Select a video/i-motion file



The video/i-motion is played.

1 **Play volume:** Indicates the current volume.

2 **Playing duration:** Indicates the current playing time/full duration in numeric and bar.

3 **Playing status**

- : in play
- : in stop
- : in pause

4 **File types**

- : only image
- : only sound
- : only text
- : image + sound
- : image + text
- : sound + text
- : image + sound + text

5 **Enlargement/reduction**

- : enlarged
- : reduced

No icon : actual size

- Whether to enlarge or not can be set in Settings. ▶P289

- When the video you want to play needs to be reduced if *Size adjustment* is set to *Normal* in Settings, a message appears to indicate it. Press to continue.
- The following operations are available while playing video/i-motion:

- : Pause/replay, play from the beginning (after stop)
- : Adjust volume : Stop
- : Play fast forward
- : Rewind and play
- : Stop playing (Return to the video/i-motion list)

■ Playing horizontally (landscape): while playing video/i-motion

- Each time you press it, playing horizontally and vertically are switched.
- For video/i-motion files with inserted tickers, switching is unavailable.

■ Setting a bookmark:

If you set a bookmark in a video/i-motion file, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to play the file from the bookmark next time you select it in the list to play.

- If you play a video/i-motion file by pressing on the pause screen, playing is started from the beginning even if a bookmark is set.
- The number of bookmarks you can set is one for all the video/i-motion files in the FOMA terminal, and one for each of the *Movie*, *Movie* and *Other movie* folders of the microSD memory card. If a bookmark is already set, it is discarded and the new bookmark is set.
- You cannot set a bookmark in a replay-restricted i-motion file. In addition, when you play video/i-motion from the phonebook registration screen, mail composition screen, or the setting screen for sound and display, a bookmark cannot be set and playing from a bookmark is unavailable.
- Playing from a bookmark is unavailable for video memo.

① at the position to set a bookmark during playing ▶ Yes

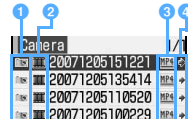
- To continue playing:
- To cancel the bookmark: after stopping the playback

Video/i-motion list screen and available operations

Thumbnail display



Title display



1 Originated

- : Camera : i-mode
- : Preinstalled : Data transfer
- : Chara-den : Videophone

2 Replay restriction

- : No restriction
- : Restriction on the number of times
- : Restriction on expiration
- : Restriction on period

3 File types

- : MP4 : MP4 with bookmark
- : ASF*1 : ASF with bookmark*1

*1 Only the files saved in the microSD memory card can be played.

4 File restriction

- (blue) : Without file restriction
- (gray) : With file restriction

- To switch between thumbnail and title displays:
- In the thumbnail display, sounds recorded with Sound Recorder and sound-only video/i-motion files (i-motion without image such as music) are displayed as ; video/i-motion with the UIM operation restriction is displayed as .
- When you save video/i-motion, thumbnail images may not be acquired due to affect of other functions. Such video/i-motion is displayed as in thumbnail display.
- To change display names and other items
▶ P309

■ Sending mail with video/i-motion attached: Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶

The mail composition screen appears with the video/i-motion attached.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail
▶ P195

When the replay restriction is set

A confirmation screen appears before playing starts. Replay restriction types and displayed messages are as follows:

■ Restriction on the number of times

Status	Displayed messages
Playback counts remain	<i>Available to replay x (x/all) time(s). Play?</i>
Maximum number of plays reached	<i>This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?</i>

■ Restriction on expiration

Status	Displayed messages
Within expiration	<i>Available to replay until year/month/date hour: minutes. Play?</i>
After expiration	<i>Replay period has expired. Delete?</i>

■ Restriction on period

Status	Displayed messages
Within period	<i>Available to replay from year/month/date hour: minutes to year/month/date hour: minutes. Play?</i>
Before period	<i>Replay period has not yet started.</i>
After period	<i>Replay period has expired. Delete?</i>

- You can check remaining playback counts, replay expiration and playback period in View Detail Info.
- Even if you change the date and time, expiration time and period of restriction cannot be changed.

INFORMATION

- Depending on the i-motion, the total playing time is indicated as “:--:--” on the playing screen. In this case the following functions are unavailable:
 - Play fast forward/Rewind and play
 - Playing from a bookmark

Setting video/i-motion to the standby display or phonebook data

- Video/i-motion files without image, i-motion files restricted from being played and i-motion files whose image size is over 320 x 240 cannot be set as the standby display.
- Video/i-motion can be set for the phonebook, Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) or incoming image if the image size is 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF). For the phonebook or incoming image, however, only the video/i-motion file consisting of image only can be set.

- The video/i-motion for which *Available* is set for *Ring alert* and *Receive display* in detail information can be set as Movie ringtone and incoming image. However, the setting is unavailable for the following video/i-motion:

- Video/i-motion files sent back to your terminal after transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal using infrared/iC communication or DoCoMo keitai datalink
- Video/i-motion files (except for i-motion compatible with Movable Contents) copied/moved to the FOMA terminal from the microSD memory card (including the case where files are copied/moved to your terminal again after saved in the microSD memory card from your FOMA terminal)

1 **Select a folder** **Highlight a video/i-motion file**

2 **Select an item**

■ **Setting to the standby display:** *Yes*

- If zooming is available for the video/i-motion, select *Yes(Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *Yes(Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-appli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel it.
- To play the video/i-motion set as the standby display P107

■ **Registering as a new phonebook entry:**

■ **Updating the existing phonebook entry:**

Select a party

■ **Setting as Movie ringtone:**

-

■ **Setting as contact alert (call, mail):**

or

Select a party from the phonebook

Check the content

■ **Setting as incoming image (for voice or videophone calls) or image of the mail reception result screen:**

-

INFORMATION

- Some video/i-motion files may not be set as the standby display and other items.

Editing video/i-motion

You can edit video/i-motion saved in *i-motion*.

- The following video/i-motion can be edited:
 - The video shot with your terminal
 - The video/i-motion without file restriction or replay restriction excluding the video shot with your terminal
- You cannot edit preinstalled video/i-motion files and ASF format video files. Also, depending on the encoding method, some video/i-motion files cannot be edited.

Capturing a video/i-motion scene as a still image

Capture

You can specify any scene while playing video/i-motion and capture it as a still image (Capture).

- Tickers are not included in the captured still image.

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a video/i-motion file

The selected video/i-motion is played.

2 at a desired scene to capture

- To retry capturing: ▶ Yes

3 Check the image

The scene is captured and saved as a still image in the *Camera* folder of My Picture.

■ Sending mail with the captured still image attached:

The captured still image is saved in the *Camera* folder in My Picture and the mail composition screen appears with the still image attached.

- If the file size of the still image is below 90 Kbytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to paste it within the message. Select *Yes* to paste it in the message and select *No* to attach it to mail.

Clipping a part of video/i-motion

Custom Edit

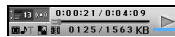
You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning to the desired position.

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶

The custom edit mode is activated and appears on the screen.

- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a message indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select *Yes* to activate the custom edit mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

2 (start position) ▶ at the position ending the clipping (end position)



Current file size/Maximum file size

- Press to retry the operation after pressing (start position). Press to cancel clipping.
- If you play the video/i-motion file till its end without pressing (end position), clipping terminates automatically.
- In case the size of video/i-motion file exceeds 2,038 Kbytes, clipping ends automatically when reaching 2,038 Kbytes regardless of the limit size setting.

■ Setting the limit of clipping size: on the screen before pressing (start position) ▶ *Msg attachment S (500 Kbytes), Msg attachment L (2,038 Kbytes) or No settings (the size of the original file)*

- This setting is available only when the original file size is larger than 500 Kbytes.
- When the file size during clipping has reached the set clipping size, clipping ends automatically.
- When the size of the original file exceeds 2,038 Kbytes, *No settings* is unavailable.

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as a new file in the same folder as the original file.

■ Playing video/i-motion:

■ Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:



The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen appears with the video/i-motion file attached.

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning up to the specified file size.

- The file size which you can specify is from 10 Kbytes to 2,038 Kbytes. However, the maximum size varies depending on the video/i-motion file.

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶

- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a message indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select **Yes** to activate the edit by size mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

2 Enter the size to clip

■ Setting the size for mail attachment:

▶ *Msg attachment S (500 Kbytes) or Msg attachment L (2,038 Kbytes)*

- This setting is available only when the original file size is larger than 500 Kbytes.

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new file in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

■ Playing video/i-motion:

■ Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:

The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen appears with the video/i-motion file attached.

2 Set each item

Time interval to show :

Select **User specified** and specify a desired position to insert the ticker.

Or, select **Regular interval** and specify the number of tickers. The specified number of tickers are inserted at regular intervals during playing of video/i-motion.

Tickers :

Enter the number of tickers when you set *Time interval to show* to **Regular interval**.

3

- When you set *Time interval to show* to **User specified**, a confirmation message appears and  is displayed.
- When you set **Regular interval** of *Time interval to show*, go to Step 6.

4 to start playing ▶ at the ticker insertion position

Playing is not interrupted. Each time you press , the insertion position of a ticker is set.

- When playing starts, the first insertion position is set at the beginning.
- When playing of a video/i-motion file ends or you set a total of 10 tickers (including one ticker at the beginning), the insertion position setting terminates automatically.
- To end the insertion position setting halfway: 

5 Yes

6 Ticker entry field ▶ Enter characters (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters)

■ Modifying tickers: Highlight a ticker ▶

▶ Set each item ▶ 

Ticker1 to 10 :

Characters entered on the ticker edit screen are displayed. You can enter characters.

Font color :

Set the text color. When it is set to **Default**, white is set.

- This setting does not apply to pictograms.

Background color :

Set the background color of tickers. When it is set to **Default**, black is set.

- The number of tickers that can be inserted (up to 10) depends on the video/i-motion files.
- Video/i-motion with inserted tickers cannot be set for Movie ringtone.

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶

- If tickers are already inserted, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete and edit tickers. If **Yes** is selected, all tickers already inserted are deleted.

■ Deleting tickers: ▶ Yes

All tickers inserted are deleted. Go to Step 8.

Scroll :

- **Scroll in** brings characters into view gradually.
- **Scroll out** sends characters out of view gradually.
- **Scroll in & out** brings characters into view and then sends them out of view gradually.

Scroll direction :

Set the scroll direction when **Scroll** is set to other than **None**.

Word alignment :

Set the display position of characters.

Font size :

Set the size of characters.

Under line :

Set whether to underline the characters.

Blink :

Set whether to blink the characters.

7

- If the size of a video/i-motion file is 500 Kbytes or less before insertion of tickers and exceeds 500 Kbytes after insertion, a message appears indicating that the **Msg attachment S** size is exceeded. Press  to continue.

8 Enter the display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters)

The video/i-motion with inserted tickers is saved as a new file in the same folder as the original file.

■ Playing video/i-motion:

■ Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:



The video/i-motion file with inserted tickers is saved and the mail composition screen appears with video/i-motion attached.

Size adjustment :

If **Zoom** is set, video/i-motion is enlarged or reduced automatically to the size of the display area when being played. The aspect ratio of the image is maintained.

When **Normal** is set, video/i-motion is not enlarged or reduced. However, when video/i-motion with a size larger than the display area is played, it is reduced to fit the area with the aspect ratio maintained.

Repeat play :

Set whether to repeat play when you play an album or continuously play video/i-motion files saved in the microSD memory card.

Backlight :

When set to **Terminal settings**, it follows the setting of **Display light time (Normal use)** of Display Light Setting.

Volume :

Set the sound volume for playing.

INFORMATION

- The setting of **Backlight** also applies to **Display light time (i-motion)** of Display Light Setting. ➡P114

Moving video/i-motion to the microSD memory card

Movable Contents

Copyrighted i-motion files downloaded from sites can be moved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card if they are compatible with Movable Contents. However, they cannot be copied.

- i-motion files without permission of a data provider cannot be moved. Refer to View Detail Info to check whether the file is movable. ➡P308

Moving i-motion compatible with Movable Contents from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card

- Moved i-motion files are saved in the i-motion folder compatible with Movable Contents. For playing procedure ➡P303

Setting preferences for video/i-motion

Settings

Default

View thumbnails: Yes

Size adjustment: Normal

Repeat play: ON Backlight: Always on

Volume: Level 13

1

3 Highlight a destination folder ▶

- When you select a folder, the list of data within the folder is displayed. If the selected folder contains no folders, a message appears to indicate that there is no selectable folder.
- To select the home folder: 

4 Yes

INFORMATION

- If you create a new folder (▶P303) and move i-motion files to it, it may not be checked by another FOMA terminal.
- In case of moving selected or all items, i-motion files compatible with Movable Contents downloaded from sites are saved in the folder of i-motion compatible with Movable Contents and video/i-motion files other than those are saved in the *Movie* folder or the *Other movie* folder in Data Box.

Moving i-motion compatible with Movable Contents from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

- To move i-motion files, it is necessary to insert the same UIM that was used when downloading them from the sites or moving them from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card. In addition, some i-motion files cannot be moved between different FOMA models.
- Some i-motion files cannot be moved to the FOMA terminal.
- Moved i-motion files are saved in the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion* in Data Box.

1 ▶

The list of folders for i-motion compatible with Movable Contents is displayed.

2 Select a folder

3 Highlight an i-motion file ▶

■ Moving selected items:    
▶ Select i-motion files ▶ 

■ Moving all i-motion files in the folder:
    ▶ Enter the terminal security code

4 Yes

Chara-den

Chara-den is an animated character to display on the other party's screen when you use the videophone. By pressing dial keys during a videophone call, you can move the character and make it express a feeling casually. In addition, you can set Chara-den to the standby display and have Chara-den make specific actions on standby or for missed calls. You can also shoot and save a still image and video of Chara-den being displayed.

- Some Chara-den images move their mouths responding to the sounds from the microphone.
- Chara-den characters perform two types of actions: action of full body (*Action*) and action of body parts (*Action of Parts*). Some Chara-den images perform only either of them or no action.



Action: 喜ぶ (Joy)



Action of Parts:
足 ジャンプ (Jump)

Menu 56

Displaying Chara-den

Chara-den

1 ▶ Select a folder

 *i-mode* :

Chara-den downloaded in i-mode

 *Preinstalled* :

Chara-den preinstalled by default ▶P394

 *Folder* :

Chara-den moved from other folders

- Not displayed by default. To create this folder ▶P307

2 Select a Chara-den image

The Chara-den image is displayed.



Action mode

 ACTION : Action

 PARTS : Action of parts

- Pressing a dial key performs action in accordance with the key.
- To stop the action: 

■ Switching between large size and same size displays: ⏻ for large size or ⏶ for same size

- If a comment is added to a Chara-den image, switch the display to the same size to show the comment.

■ Switching Chara-den images:

- ① ▶ Select a folder
- ② Select a Chara-den image

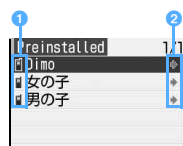
■ Displaying the action list:

The action list for the current action mode is displayed with the action numbers (corresponding to dial keys) and descriptions.

- Selecting an action activates the Chara-den image.
- Highlight an action and press to read the whole description.

■ Switching between Action and Action of Parts: (for over a second)

Chara-den list screen and available operations



① Originated
 : i-mode
 : Preinstalled

② File restriction

➡ (gray): With file restriction

- To change display names and other items ➡P309

■ Making a videophone call using Chara-den:

- ① Highlight a Chara-den image ▶
- ② Enter the phone number ▶
 - Phone number can be entered from the phonebook by pressing .
 - After entering the phone number, press to set the conditions and make a videophone call. ➡P54

■ Setting Chara-den to the videophone substitute image: Highlight a Chara-den image ▶

- You can also set by holding down for over a second on the Chara-den display screen.

■ Setting Chara-den to the standby display:

- ① Highlight a Chara-den image ▶
- ② Set the type of action and the interval of action ▶
 - For details, follow Steps in "Setting the action of Chara-den". ➡P107

③ Yes(Same size) or Yes(Large size)

- If the i-appli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel it.

INFORMATION

- Chara-den cannot be edited nor saved outside of the FOMA terminal by attaching it to mail or transferring the data.

Recording Chara-den

Record Chara-den

- Still images and videos you shoot or record are saved in the same file format as those shot with the camera. For the format to save image files ➡P146

1 ⏻ ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight a Chara-den image ▶

The Chara-den recording screen appears.

2 to switch the recording types



Recording type

Video & Voice :

Records Chara-den together with sounds from the microphone. For Chara-den that reacts with sounds from the microphone, the mouth in the image moves according to the sounds.

Only video (w/mic) :

Records only the image. The microphone is only valid for Chara-den that reacts with the sounds and moves its mouth according to the sounds from the microphone. Sounds are not recorded.

Only video (w/o mic) :

Records only the image. Microphone becomes inactive.

Still image :

Shoots still images.

- The memory to save, quality or size restrictions of video can be changed in Still Image Setting/ Video Setting of Record Chara-den.

■ Switching Chara-den images:

- ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a Chara-den image

3 Start an action of Chara-den to record



In case of shooting a still image, the shutter sound is heard and the still image is saved. In case of recording a video, the shutter sound is heard and recording starts. Recording is stopped by pressing or if the size of video file exceeds the limit. Then the shutter sound is heard and the video is saved.

- The still image/video shot or recorded is saved in the *Camera* folder of *My Picture* or *i-motion* when the FOMA terminal is selected as the memory to save. In case the microSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, it is saved in the *My Picture* folder or *Movie* folder of the microSD memory card.
- Press during video recording to pause. Press to restart recording.
- Action of Chara-den can be performed even while you are recording it in video.

■ When *Auto save* is set to *No* in Still Image Setting or Video Setting:

A confirmation screen appears. The following operations are available on the confirmation screen:

- : Save the still image/video
- : Cancel (Delete the still image/video without saving)
- : Switch the memory to save
- : Compose mail
- : Replay (only video)

■ Checking the saved still image/video immediately: ▶ Select a still image/video file

- When the microSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, press , select the folder and select the still image/video.

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete unnecessary image/video files.

Setting the operation of still image/video recording

Still Image Setting/Video Setting

Default

- **Still Image Setting**
Quality: Standard Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
Rec.File Restriction: File unrestricted
Auto save: Yes Save to: Terminal
Display size: Large Set lighting: Terminal settings
- **Video Setting**
Quality: STD Size restriction: Msg attach:Small
Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
Rec.File Restriction: File unrestricted
Auto save: Yes Save to: Terminal
Display size: Large Set lighting: Terminal settings

1 on the Chara-den recording

screen ▶ Set each item ▶

Quality (Still Image Setting) :

Set the quality of still images to shoot. Higher quality requires a larger size of still image files.

Quality (Video Setting) :

Set the quality of video to shoot. Higher quality requires a larger size of video files.

Size restriction (Video Setting only) :

Set the size restrictions of the video to record. When the size of video file exceeds the limit while recording, recording is automatically stops.

Shutter sound :

Select the shutter sound from shutter sounds 1 to 5.

Rec.File Restriction :

Set whether to restrict the still image/video you send to another mobile phone as mail attachment from being sent to others.

- Downloaded Chara-den with *File restricted* preset cannot be set to *File unrestricted*.

Auto save :

When *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the shot still image/video is automatically saved in the specified memory. When *No* is set, a confirmation screen appears after recording.

Save to :

Select *Terminal* or *microSD*.

Display size :

Set whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display it in the same size.

- This setting takes effect the next time the recording screen is displayed.

Set lighting :

If you set *Terminal settings*, the lighting follows the setting of *Display light time (Normal use)* in Display Light Setting. ◀P114

INFORMATION

- If you shoot or record a Chara-den image for which **Rec.file restriction** of detail information is set to **File restricted**, the still image/video cannot be edited, forwarded or attached to mail (excluding for those for which you set **File restricted** with your FOMA terminal).
- If you shoot or record a Chara-den image for which **Rec.file restriction** of detail information is set to **File restricted**, the still image/video cannot be saved in the microSD memory card (excluding those for which you set **File restricted** with your FOMA terminal). Even when you set the memory to save to **microSD**, the setting is changed to **Terminal**.

Setting preferences for Chara-den

Settings

Default Display size: Large
Set lighting: Terminal settings

1 ► Set each item

Display size : Set whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display it in the same size.

Set lighting : If you set **Terminal settings**, the lighting follows the setting of **Display light time (Normal use)** in Display Light Setting. ◀P114

Menu 57

Displaying Machi-chara

Machi-chara

1 ► Select a folder

i-mode :

Machi-chara downloaded in i-mode

Preinstalled :

Machi-chara preinstalled by default ◀P394

Folder :

Machi-chara moved from another folder
• Not displayed by default. To create this folder ◀P307

2 Select a Machi-chara image

Machi-chara is displayed.

- Press to display the previous or next Machi-chara image.

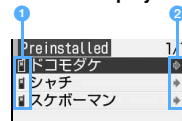
- If you select a Machi-chara image that was downloaded partially, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the remaining data. If you select **Yes**, downloading starts.
 - If an error that will disable re-downloading is detected, the partially downloaded Machi-chara image may be deleted.

Machi-chara list screen and available operations

Thumbnail display



Title display



© NTT DoCoMo/dentsu

- 1 Originated
 : i-mode : Preinstalled

- 2 File restriction
► (gray): With file restriction

- To switch between thumbnail and title displays:



- In the thumbnail display, (upper half is gray) is displayed for Machi-chara images that were partially downloaded, for those having no thumbnail images, and for those for which UIM operation restriction is set.

- To change display names ◀P309

■ Setting Machi-chara to the standby display:

Highlight a Machi-chara image ►

- Note that you cannot set Machi-chara if only part of its data has been downloaded.
- If the display setting of Machi-chara Setting is set to **OFF**, it is changed to **ON** automatically.
- To cancel:
 - The display setting of Machi-chara Setting is changed to **OFF**.

■ Resetting the elapsed time for Machi-chara:

Highlight a Machi-chara image ►

► Yes

The elapsed time information recorded for the Machi-chara image is reset to the state immediately after downloading.

- This is not available for the Machi-chara image partially downloaded.

Setting preferences for Machi-chara

Settings

Set the display format for the Machi-chara list. The thumbnail display appears when setting to **Display 12 icons**, and the title display appears when setting to **List view**.

Default **Display 12 icons**

1 or

Menu 54

Playing melodies

Melody

Play melodies saved in **Melody** of Data Box in the FOMA terminal.

1 ▶ Select a folder

i-mode :
Melodies obtained via i-mode or i-mode Mail

Preinstalled :
Melodies preinstalled in the FOMA terminal
☛P100

Mail attach melody :
Preinstalled melodies for mail attachment
☛P195

Data transfer :
Melodies read by Bar Code Reader, melodies moved/copied from the microSD memory card or melodies received via data communication

Album :
Melodies moved from other folders
• Not displayed by default. To create this folder ☛P307

- To switch to the folder list of the microSD memory card: on the folder list
- To handle the microSD memory card ☛P302

2 Select a melody

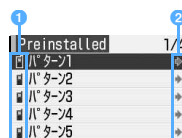
The melody is played.



— Current play position
— Volume

- The following operations are available while playing a melody:
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Play the previous/next melody
 - : Stop playing (Return to the melody list)

Melody list screen and available operations



1 Originated

: i-mode
 : Preinstalled
 : Data transfer

2 File restriction

- ➔ (blue) : Without file restriction
- ➔ (gray) : With file restriction

- To change display names and other items
☛P309

■ Sending mail with melodies attached:

Highlight a melody

The mail composition screen appears with the melody attached.

- If the receiving side is other than the following models*1, the received melody may not be played properly.

*1 D703i, D704i, D903i, D903iTV or D904i

- For melodies that can be attached to mail
☛P195

Setting melodies as ring alert

- Melodies in the **Mail attach melody** folder cannot be set as the ring alert.

1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight a melody

2 Select the type of ring alert

■ **Setting as ring alert for voice call, mail, chat mail, Message R/F or videophone call:** -

■ **Setting as contact alert (call, mail):**

- ① or ▶ Select a party from the phonebook
- ② Check the content

Setting preferences for melodies

Settings

Default **Volume: Level 3**
Light pattern: Sync melody
Light color: Rainbow
Vibrate: OFF
Play position: Play all
Play background: Standard

1 **Set each item**



Volume :

Set the volume for playing melodies.

Light pattern :

Set the lighting pattern of the Enter key in playing melodies. When *Sync melody* is set, *Light color* cannot be set.

Light color :

Set the color of the Enter key in playing melodies.

Vibrate :

Set the vibrator pattern in playing melodies.

Play position :

Set whether to play a whole melody (*Play all*) or part of a melody (*Play portion*).

Play background :

Set the image to be displayed on the screen during playing melodies. To set an image of *My Picture*, set to *Select* and select an image.

INFORMATION

- Even if *Play portion* is set for *Play position*, it may not take effect for some melodies.

microSD memory card

You can use the microSD memory card to save data such as shot still images, videos or melodies or make backup of data such as the phonebook entries or schedules. In addition, you can save music files created with external devices (PC, etc.) in the microSD memory card and play them on your FOMA terminal (P327), or operate the data in the microSD memory card from your PC (P305).

- The microSD memory card is not supplied as standard. You can purchase it at shops and stores dealing with consumer electrics.
- Unformatted microSD memory cards must be formatted with the FOMA terminal before they are used. The operation of the microSD memory card whose formatting is canceled is not guaranteed. P304
- The microSD memory card formatted by a PC may not operate properly on the FOMA terminal (formatting may be unavailable).
- Images, video/i-motion files, melodies or music data in the microSD memory card cannot be set for the standby display, ring alert, incoming image, etc.

- D704i supports commercial microSD memory cards of up to 2 Gbytes (as of July, 2007). For the latest information about the supported microSD memory cards (such as the manufacturers and capacities), refer to the following i-mode site or Internet website. Note that microSD memory cards other than those listed in such sites may not operate properly.

- From the FOMA terminal:

iMenu → メニュー/検索
(Menu/search) → ケータイ電
話メーカー (Mobile phone
manufacturer) → *My D-style* →
クイックマニュアル (Quick
Manual) of *D704i サポート*
(D704i Support) (as of July, 2007)

- From PC:

Mitsubishi Electric Corporation's website at
<http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/mobile/> →
FAQ of FOMA D704i → 外部メモリ (External
memory)

The information described in the above sites is the results of confirming the operation, but it does not mean that all operations are guaranteed.



QR code for
site connection

Precautions for using of the microSD memory card

- Do not remove the microSD memory card, switch off or apply impact while saving or deleting data, checking usage status or formatting. It may damage the data and the saved data may become unavailable.
- Be careful not to drop or give strong impact to the FOMA terminal with the microSD memory card in it. It may cause the microSD memory card to pop out.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the microSD memory card.
- Do not insert the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal if the card has any scratches or dirt on its surface or is deformed. It may cause a failure.
- While data is being copied, moved or deleted, the microSD memory card is being formatted, or the information is being updated,  is indicated at the upper part of the screen and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (same condition as out of service area). In this mode, phone calls, i-mode connection and data communication are disabled. Also you cannot switch to other functions by pressing . You cannot copy, move, or delete data during a call, i-mode or data communication because you cannot use the data transfer mode.
- The microSD memory card cannot be used while All Lock or PIM Lock is on.

- In the microSD memory card in which the data has been written and protected with other devices such as a PC, you cannot save or delete the data. Also, you cannot format the microSD memory card.
- Data saved from other devices into the microSD memory card may not be displayed or played on the FOMA terminal. Similarly, the data saved in the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- Depending on the microSD memory card in use, the saved video may be distorted.
- It is recommended that the data saved in the microSD memory card be separately backed up for storage. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased or changed data.

Folder structure of the microSD memory card

Displaying on the FOMA terminal

The folder structure is as shown below. Saving destinations are classified by the type of data.

Folder structure	Data saved
Data Box	My Picture Still images shot with the camera, still images in JPEG format (DCF standard*1) and images in GIF format
	Other image Still images in JPEG format (non-DCF standard*1) and animation GIF
	Deco-mail pictogram Deco-mail pictograms
	Movie Video/i-motion with images
	Movie i-motion compatible with Movable Contents
	Other movie Video/i-motion without images
	Melody Melodies
	Music Music data played on Music Player (Chaku-Uta Full®, WMA file)
	Phonebook Phonebook data, schedules, received mail,
	Schedule unsent mail, sent mail, notes and bookmarks (i-mode/Full Browser)
PIM	Received message
	Unsent message
	Sent message
	Note
	Bookmark
	My Document PDF data
	ToruCa ToruCa
	i-appli data*3 i-appli data
	Other Documents (Word, Excel and PowerPoint files) and non-viewable files

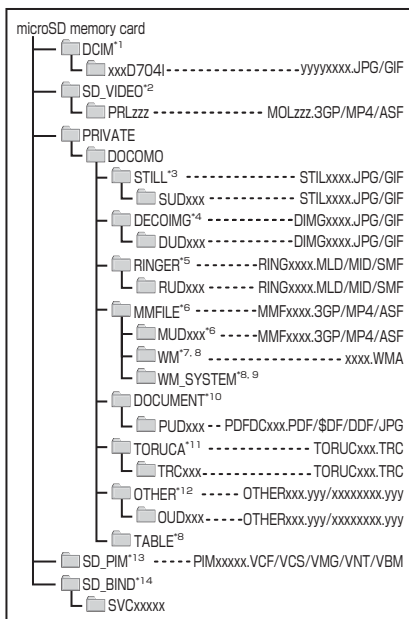
- *1 DCF is an abbreviation of Design rule for Camera File system and it is a standard for file systems.
- *2 Displayed after switching from the *Movie* folder. For displaying procedure ➡P303
- *3 i-appli is used to save data. You can check and delete information from the folders in the microSD memory card. ➡P244
- For each folder, the maximum number of data items that can be saved is as shown below. (It refers to the maximum number of data items that can be saved from the FOMA terminal, irrespective of the capacity of a microSD memory card. The actual number of data items that can be saved differs depending on the capacity or data saved.)

Folder		Maximum number of items
My Picture, Other image, Deco-mail pictogram, Other movie, Melody		9,999 items for each
Movie		4,095 items
Movie		1,000 items
Music	Chaku-Uta Full®	1,000 items
	WMA file	500 items
	Playlist	100 items
Phonebook, Schedule, Received message, Unsent message, Sent message, Note, Bookmark		9,999 items in total
My Document, ToruCa, Other		999 items for each
i-appli data		1,200 items

Displaying on a PC

When the contents of the microSD memory card are displayed on a PC, etc., the structure of the folders and files is as shown below.

- The microSD memory card contains no folders immediately after being formatted by the FOMA terminal. When data is moved or copied to the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal or still images or videos you shot with the camera are saved directly to the microSD memory card, folders corresponding to such files are automatically created.
- When saving data in the microSD memory card from a PC, etc., save it in the folder specified with the file format and file name shown below. If data is saved in a wrong folder or different file format, the data cannot be recognized on the FOMA terminal.



- *1 Shot images, still images in JPEG format (DCF standard) and images in GIF format are saved.
 - In case the still images in JPEG format cannot be displayed after being saved in this folder even though the information is updated, change the file name into the format of "STILxxxx.JPG" (0001 to 9999 for xxxx) and save the file in the folder of **PRIVATE** → **DOCOMO** → **STILL**. Then they may be displayed.
- *2 Video/i-motion files are saved. Files with extension of 3GP or MP4 are treated as MP4 format.
- *3 Still images in JPEG format (non-DCF standard) and animation GIF files are saved (the **Other image** folder when displayed on the FOMA terminal).
- *4 Deco-mail pictograms are saved.
- *5 Melodies in MFI and SMF formats are saved.
- *6 Video/i-motion files with no image are saved directly under **MMFILE** and in **MUDxxx** (the **Other movie** folder when displayed on the FOMA terminal).
- *7 WMA files to be played with Music Player are saved.
- *8 Never delete or rename files in this folder. Otherwise, the FOMA terminal will not be able to display or play data properly.
- *9 This is a hidden folder. This folder may not be shown depending on PC settings.

*10 PDF data is saved. The long file name format up to 64 one-byte characters (including the extension) is supported. If it is found that the same file name already exists when you save a file from the FOMA terminal, the name of the new file may be changed to PDFDCxxx.

The extension "\$DF" means PDF data that failed to be downloaded. When you download and save the remaining data from the site, the extension changes to "PDF". The extension "DDF" means the files for managing the information of i-mode bookmarks or marks, and "JPG" means data for the thumbnail display. The file name (excluding its extension) is the same as the corresponding PDF data.

- *11 ToruCa and ToruCa (details) are saved.
- *12 Files from the **Other** folder are saved.
- *13 The phonebook data, schedules, received mail, sent mail, unsent mail, notes and bookmarks are saved.
- *14 i-motion files downloaded from sites and compatible with Movable Contents, Chaku-Uta Full® files and i-appli applications are saved. The data files are encrypted so that they cannot be displayed or played on PC. Never delete or rename files or subfolders in this folder. Otherwise, the FOMA terminal cannot use the data properly.
- The rule for folder names and file names is as follows (characters are all one-byte):
 - 100 to 999 are placed in xxx of **xxxD704i**.
 - A to Z (capital letter), 0 to 9 and _ (underbar) are placed in yyyy of **yyyyxxxx** and 0001 to 9999 are placed in xxxx.
 - zzz of **PRLzzz** and **MOLzzz** is a hexadecimal value of 001 to FFF. (In hexadecimal notation, one digit is represented with one of 16 alphanumeric characters from 0 to 9 and A to F.)
 - 0001 to 9999 are placed in xxxx of **STILxxxx**, **DIMGxxxx**, **RINGxxxx** and **MMFxxxx**.
 - 001 to 999 are placed in xxx of **SUDxxx**, **DUDxxx**, **RUDxxx**, **PUDxxx**, **PDFDCxxx**, **TRCxxx**, **TORUCxxx**, **MUDxxx** and **OUDxxx**.
 - In **OTHERxxx.yyy**, xxx is a value ranging from 001 to 999 and yyy is an extension.
 - In **xxxxxxxx.yyy**, the xxxxxxxx part is made up of characters including A to Z, 0 to 9 and _ (underbar) while yyy is an extension.
 - 00001 to 65535 are placed in xxxxx of **PIMxxxxx** or **SVCxxxxx**.
- If files with the same file name but different extensions exist in a folder, they may not be displayed.

INFORMATION

- To use the data copied to a microSD memory card with a PC (excluding the i-motion compatible with Movable Contents and music data) on your FOMA terminal, it is necessary to update the information about the microSD memory card by the FOMA terminal. Updating is also required if data cannot be displayed correctly on your FOMA terminal after you edit or delete the data in the microSD memory card using PC. ●P305
- If you change or delete the folder name in the microSD memory card using PC, etc., the FOMA terminal cannot display the data correctly.

Data available to the microSD memory card

File size restrictions or availability for each data format are as shown below.

- For details about mail attachment ●P195

■ Images and video/i-motion

Value: file size (upper cell) and image size (lower cell)

Operation Data (Extension)	Copy/move to microSD memory card	Copy/move to FOMA terminal
Image in JPEG format (JPG)*1	Unlimited	2.6 MB
	Unlimited	1728 x 2304
Image in GIF format (GIF)*1	Unlimited	2.6 MB
	Unlimited	480 x 640
Video/i-motion in MP4 format (MP4, 3GP)	Unlimited	2 MB
	Unlimited	Unlimited
Video/i-motion in ASF format (ASF)	Not supported	Not supported
	Not supported	Not supported

Operation Data (Extension)	Attach to mail	Display or play the data
Image in JPEG format (JPG)*1	2 MB*2	2.6 MB
	Unlimited	1728 x 2304
Image in GIF format (GIF)*1	2 MB	2.6 MB
	Unlimited	480 x 640
Video/i-motion in MP4 format (MP4, 3GP)	2 MB	Unlimited
	Unlimited	48 x 48 - 320 x 240*3
Video/i-motion in ASF format (ASF)	Not supported	Unlimited
	Not supported	176 x 144, 320 x 240

*1 The image size of Deco-mail pictograms that can be copied/moved to the FOMA terminal, attached to mail or displayed is 20 x 20, and the file size of those that can be copied/moved to the FOMA terminal is 90 Kbytes or less.

*2 An image file larger than 2 Mbytes is converted to reduce the size to below 2 Mbytes before being attached.

*3 Even if video/i-motion data exceeds the playable image size, the sound or ticker is played or displayed when the sound format is playable or a ticker that can be displayed exists in the data.

■ Music data, melodies, PDF data, etc.

Value: file size

Operation Data (Extension)	Copy/move to microSD memory card	Copy/move to FOMA terminal
Music data in MP4 format (3GP)*1	Unlimited	5 MB
Melodies (MID, SMF, MLD)	Unlimited	100 KB
PDF data (PDF)	Unlimited	2 MB*2
ToruCa (TRC)	1 KB	1KB
ToruCa (details) (TRC)	100 KB	100 KB
Documents in <i>Other</i> (DOC, XLS, PPT)	Unlimited	2 MB
Non-viewable files in <i>Other</i> (Other than DOC, XLS and PPT)	Not supported	Not supported

Operation Data (Extension)	Attach to mail	Display or play the data
Music data in MP4 format (3GP)*1	Not supported	Unlimited
Melodies (MID, SMF, MLD)	2 MB	100 KB
PDF data (PDF)	2 MB	Unlimited
ToruCa (TRC)	2 MB	1 KB
ToruCa (details) (TRC)	2 MB	100 KB
Documents in <i>Other</i> (DOC, XLS, PPT)	2 MB	Unlimited
Non-viewable files in <i>Other</i> (Other than DOC, XLS and PPT)	2 MB	Not supported

*1 Music Player in D704i does not support AAC format files that can be played by Music Player in the D902iS or earlier models of FOMA D Series. However, such files can be played as MP4 format video/i-motion files, not as music files, on the D704i FOMA terminal.

*2 Even if the size shown in the detail information exceeds 2 Mbytes, the copy and move operations can be performed if the file size excluding the data about i-mode bookmarks and marks does not exceed 2 Mbytes.

PIM data

Value: file size

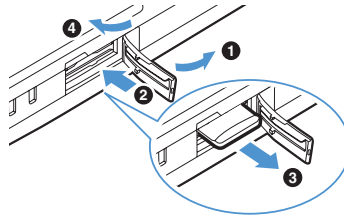
Operation Data (Extension)	Copy/backup to microSD memory card	Copy/restore to FOMA terminal
Phonebook (VCF)	Unlimited	Unlimited
Schedule (VCS)	Unlimited	Unlimited
Mail (VMG)	Unlimited* ¹	Unlimited
Note (VNT)	Unlimited	Unlimited
Bookmark (VBM)	Unlimited	Unlimited

Operation Data (Extension)	Attach to mail	Display the data
Phonebook (VCF)	2 MB	Unlimited
Schedule (VCS)	2 MB	Unlimited
Mail (VMG)	Not supported	Unlimited
Note (VNT)	Not supported	Unlimited
Bookmark (VBM)	2 MB	Unlimited

*¹ If the mail size exceeds 100 Kbytes, the attached file corresponding to the excess will not be copied or backed up.

- ② Insert slowly the microSD memory card into the slot with its printed surface upward.
- ③ Insert the microSD memory card until it clicks.
- ④ Close the microSD memory card slot cover.

Removing the microSD memory card

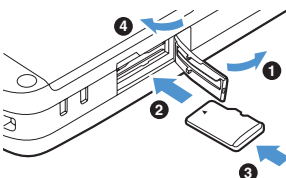


- ① Open the microSD memory card slot cover.
- ② Push the microSD memory card lightly, and leave your finger.
The microSD memory card pops out a bit.
- ③ Pull the microSD memory card out of the slot slowly.
 - Pull it straight out.
- ④ Close the microSD memory card slot cover.

Inserting/removing the microSD memory card

- Be sure to turn the power off before inserting/removing the microSD memory card.
- In the microSD memory card slot, do not insert anything other than the microSD memory card.
- Do not touch metal contacts with your finger when you insert or remove the microSD memory card.
- Insert the microSD memory card properly into the FOMA terminal. You cannot perform operation such as copy or backup of data if the microSD memory card is not inserted correctly.
- Note that the microSD memory card may pop out of the slot when you insert/remove it.

Inserting the microSD memory card



- ① Open the microSD memory card slot cover.

Exchanging the data between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card

You can copy/move data between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card and back up the FOMA terminal data into the microSD memory card. Exchangeable data types and operations are as follows:

Data type		Operations
Data Box	Images (including Deco-mail pictograms), video/i-motion* ¹ , melodies, music data* ¹ in Music	Copying one item Copying multiple items Copying all items Moving one item
	PDF data	Moving multiple items Moving all items
	ToruCa, ToruCa (details)	
	Data in Other (Word, Excel and PowerPoint files only)	
PIM	Phonebook* ²	Copying one item
	Schedule* ³	Backup
	Mail	Recovery
	Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)	
	Note	

*¹ i-motion compatible with Movable Contents and music data cannot be copied.

*² UIM phonebook cannot be copied.

*³ TV program schedules cannot be copied.

Copying/moving data from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card

- The following data cannot be copied or moved:
 - The data prohibited from being output from the FOMA terminal (excluding the data with file restriction set to *File restricted* at your terminal and the data saved in the *Data transfer* folder)
 - Created animation
 - PDF data downloaded partially
- Copying/moving may be unavailable depending on ToruCa files.
- When copying/moving ToruCa (details), it may sometimes be saved as the state before obtaining ToruCa (details).
- To move music files from *Music* ➡ P331

Example When copying/moving images to the microSD memory card

- 1 **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight an image** **or**
- 3
 - **Copying/moving selected items:** **Select images**
 - **Copying/moving all items:**
- 4 **Yes**
Images are copied/moved to the microSD memory card.
 - To cancel copying/moving:

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, document list in *Other* or ToruCa list, press and select *Move/Copy* → *Move to microSD* or *Copy to microSD* → *One item*, *Selected items* or *All items*. When an i-motion file compatible with Movable Contents is moved, a destination folder selection screen appears after Step 3. ➡ P290
- In the phonebook list, press and select *Data backup* → *Copy to microSD*.
- In the schedule day view screen or list of notes, press and select *Ir/iC/microSD* → *Copy to microSD*.
- In the received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press and select *Move/Copy* → *Copy to microSD* → *One item*.
- In the bookmark list, press and select *Move/microSD* → *Copy to microSD* → *Copy one item*.

- When images, video/i-motion or melodies set as the standby display, ring alert, etc. are moved to the microSD memory card, each setting returns to the default. When images, video/i-motion or melodies set in the phonebook data are moved, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or settings for outgoing/incoming images.
- If you copy or move video/i-motion files not compatible with Movable Contents from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, and copy or move them back from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal, such files cannot be set as ring alert or incoming image.
- When an image, video/i-motion, melody or ToruCa file is copied or moved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, the file name is changed to the name for management. In case of PDF data, the file name may or may not be changed to the name for management depending on the data.
- If an image file is copied/moved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, its file size shown for the microSD memory card may be larger than that for the FOMA terminal. In this case, the size shown for the microSD memory card is the actual size.
- When the phonebook data is copied, images saved in the phonebook data are also copied. However, in case of displaying the phonebook data of the microSD memory card, the images are not displayed. When you return the data to the FOMA terminal, the images are displayed.
- Even if the phonebook data is copied, the registered video files are not copied.
- When you copy a received mail, any attachment that is not obtained completely will not be copied.
- The member list registered in the schedule is not copied. Also, images other than those saved in the *Preinstalled* folder of Data Box are not copied.
- Some images, video/i-motion files or melodies saved on D704i may not be displayed or played on other FOMA terminals because of the difference in the data size limit.
- The setting of data protection is not copied to the microSD memory card.
- In case still images are copied/moved to the microSD memory card, they are saved in *My Picture* or *Other image* in Data Box depending on the format. Still images other than those shot with the FOMA terminal may be saved in *My Picture*.
- In case video/i-motion files are copied/moved to the microSD memory card, video/i-motion files with images or tickers are saved in the *Movie* folder in Data Box and video/i-motion files with sound only are saved in *Other movie* in Data Box. i-motion compatible with Movable Contents downloaded from sites is saved in the *Movie* ➡ folder.

Copying/moving data from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

- Maximum number of saved items in the FOMA terminal ➡ P430
- The i-appli data cannot be copied or moved.

Copying/moving data from *Data Box/Other*, PDF data or ToruCa to the FOMA terminal

- To move i-motion files compatible with Movable Contents ➡ P290
- To move music files from *Music* ➡ P331
- From the *Other* folder, only Word, Excel and PowerPoint files can be copied or moved to the FOMA terminal.

- 1 **Select the data type**
 ■ Copying/moving data from *Data Box*: **1**
 ▶ **1** - **6**
 ■ Copying/moving PDF data: **3**
 ■ Copying/moving ToruCa: **4**
 ■ Copying/moving data from *Other*: **6**

2 Select a folder

3 Highlight a file ▶ **3** for data in *Data Box/Other* and PDF data or **2** for ToruCa

- 4 **1** or **4**
 ■ Copying/moving selected items: **2** or **5** ▶ Select files ▶ **11**
 ■ Copying/moving all items: **3** or **6**

5 Yes

- Data is copied or moved to the corresponding *Data transfer* folder (or the first folder in *Other*) of Data Box or the *ToruCa* folder of the ToruCa list.
- Images that can be used as Deco-mail pictograms are copied or moved to the *Deco-mail pict* folder of *My Picture*.
 - To cancel copying/moving: **5**

Copying PIM data to the FOMA terminal

- Backup data (data with , , ,  or ) cannot be copied. Perform recovery to restore the data to the FOMA terminal.

- 1 **6** **6** **2** ▶ **1** - **7**
- 2 **Highlight a data item** ▶ **1** **1** ▶
Yes
 - In case of bookmarks,  appears for i-mode bookmark and  appears for Full Browser bookmark.

Backing up data saved in the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card

Make a backup of PIM data items of the FOMA terminal in a batch.

- 1 **6** **6** **2** ▶ **1** - **7**
- 2 **1** **4** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Yes**
 - To cancel the backup: **5**
 - The data backed up partially will be discarded.

INFORMATION

- Operation is also available from each data list of the FOMA terminal.
 - In the phonebook list, press **6** and select *Data backup* → *Backup to microSD*.
 - On the schedule day view screen or in the list of notes, press **6** and select *Ir/iC/microSD* → *Backup to microSD*.
 - In the received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press **6** and select *Move/Copy* → *Copy to microSD* → *Backup*.
 - In the bookmark list, press **6** and select *Move/microSD* → *Copy to microSD* → *Backup*.
- To back up bookmarks of both i-mode and Full Browser, press **6** **6** **2** **7** and then **1** **4**. In case of operating from the bookmark list of i-mode or Full Browser, only the i-mode bookmarks or Full Browser bookmarks are backed up, respectively.

Restoring backup data saved in the microSD memory card

There are two types of recovery process: recovery by adding and recovery by overwriting.

- If recovery by adding is performed, the data will be saved as new data separately from the one saved in the FOMA terminal.
- Note that when recovery by overwriting is performed, the current data saved in the FOMA terminal are deleted and overwritten by the restored data.

- 1 **6** **6** **2** ▶ **1** - **7**
- 2 **Highlight a backup data item** ▶ **1**
 ▶ **2** or **3**

 : Phonebook	 : Schedule
 : Received mail, sent mail or unsent mail	 : Bookmark

- The sorting order of the phonebook groups restored may be different from the order before backup.
- When you perform recovery by overwriting Bookmark, bookmarks of both i-mode and Full Browser are overwritten even if the backup data does not contain both.

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

- To cancel the recovery:
 - Backup data processed before canceling are restored in the FOMA terminal.

Displaying data in the microSD memory card

- To display the i-appli data

Displaying or playing data in Data Box/Other, PDF data or ToruCa

- To play i-motion compatible with Movable Contents
- To play music data in *Music*
- Among the files in the *Other* folder, only Word, Excel and PowerPoint files can be displayed. However, list display, mail attachment, detail information display and delete operations can be performed for any file in the folder.

1 ▶ Select a data type

- Displaying data in *Data Box*: ▶ -
- Displaying PDF data:
- Displaying ToruCa:
- Displaying data in *Other*:

2 Select a folder

- To switch to the folder list of the FOMA terminal: on the folder list

3 Select a data item

The data is displayed or played.

- See the following pages for the operating procedure of video/i-motion, melody, PDF data, ToruCa or data in *Other* (Word, Excel, PowerPoint).
 - Video/i-motion
 - Melodies • PDF data
 - ToruCa (Details cannot be obtained.)

- Data in *Other* (Word, Excel, PowerPoint)
- The following operations are available while the image is displayed:
 - : Display the detail information
 - : Compose mail
 - : Full-screen display (auto scroll is unavailable.)
 - : Switch between showing/hiding the file name

Operations available on the data list screen

- Switching between thumbnail and title displays (excluding the data in *Melody*, *ToruCa* and *Other*):
- Sending mail with data attached: Highlight a data item ▶
- Displaying the detail information (excluding ToruCa): Highlight a data item ▶
- Deleting one item:
 - ① Highlight a data item ▶ for data in *Data Box/Other* and PDF data or for ToruCa
 - ② Yes
- Deleting selected items:
 - ① for data in *Data Box/Other* and PDF data or for ToruCa
 - ② Select data items
 - ③ ▶ Yes
- Deleting all items:
 - ① for data in *Data Box/Other* and PDF data or for ToruCa
 - ② Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes
- Jumping to the specified page: ▶ Enter the page number
 - When no page number is entered, the first page is displayed.

- Searching for data in the microSD memory card (excluding the data in *ToruCa* and *Other*):
 - ▶ Enter the date ▶
- Continuously playing video/i-motion:

Video/i-motion files in a folder are played continuously. The following operations are available during continuous playing:

 - : Pause/play : Adjust volume
 - : Play the previous or next file
 - : Stop
 - : Stop playing (Return to the video/i-motion list)

■ Setting preferences for video/i-motion:

MENU **(7)** ▶ **Set each item** ▶ **(M)**

- For settings ➡ P289

Playing i-motion compatible with Movable Contents

Play the i-motion compatible with Movable Contents saved in the microSD memory card.

- To play or use the saved i-motion, it is necessary to insert the same UIM that was used for downloading from a site or moving from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card. Note that some i-motion files cannot be played or used on a different FOMA model.
- If the i-appli that uses the microSD memory card is set to the standby display, the i-motion compatible with Movable Contents saved in the microSD memory card may not be able to be played or moved.

1 **MENU** **(6)** **(6)** **(1)** **(4)** ▶ **(M)**

The folder list of *Movie* is displayed.

(Red): 初期フォルダ (initial folder) (for home folder)

(Yellow): Regular folder (for home folder)

- The 初期フォルダ is created automatically. The folder name of 初期フォルダ can be changed.
- To return to the folder list of *Movie*: **(F)**
- To switch to the folder list of *i-motion* of the FOMA terminal: **MENU** **(4)**

2 Select a folder

- To select the home folder: **(M)** ▶ **(H)**

3 Select an i-motion file

i-motion is played.

Operations available on the data list screen

■ Switching between thumbnail and title displays: **(F)**

■ Displaying the detail information of i-motion: Highlight an i-motion file ▶ **MENU** **(2)**

■ Setting i-motion for the standby display, ring alert or incoming image:

- For the conditions of i-motion that can be set, see "Setting video/i-motion to the standby display or phonebook data". ➡ P286
- The set i-motion moves to the FOMA terminal.

① Highlight an i-motion file ▶ **MENU** **(1)**

② Select an item

- To set the i-motion as the standby display:

(1) ▶ **Yes**

- If zooming is available for the i-motion image, select **Yes(Same size)** to maintain the image size or select **Yes(Large size)** to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-appli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel it.
- To play the i-motion set as the standby display ➡ P107
- To set the i-motion as Movie ringtone: **(2)** ▶ **(1)** - **(6)** ▶ **Yes**
- To set the i-motion as contact alert (call, mail): **(2)** ▶ **(7)** or **(8)** ▶ Select a party from the phonebook ▶ **Yes**
- To set the i-motion as incoming image for voice/videophone calls: **(3)** ▶ **(1)** or **(2)** ▶ **Yes**

■ Deleting one item: Highlight an i-motion file ▶ **MENU** **(4)** **(1)** ▶ **Yes**

■ Deleting selected items: **MENU** **(4)** **(2)** ▶ **Select i-motion files** ▶ **(M)** ▶ **Yes**

■ Deleting all items: **MENU** **(4)** **(3)** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Yes**

Using a folder

■ Creating a folder:

- Up to 65,535 folders can be created.
- You can also create folders within a folder.

① **MENU** **(1)** on the folder list of *Movie* or **MENU** **(5)** on the data list of a folder

② Enter a folder name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶ **(M)**

■ Moving i-motion to a folder:

① Highlight an i-motion file ▶

MENU **(3)** **(2)** **(1)**

- To move selected items: **MENU** **(3)** **(2)** **(2)** ▶ **Select i-motion files** ▶ **(M)**

- To move all items: **MENU** **(3)** **(2)** **(3)**

② Highlight a destination folder ▶ **(M)** ▶ **Yes**

- When you select a folder, the list of data within the folder is displayed. If the selected folder contains no folders, a message appears to indicate that there is no selectable folder.

- To select the home folder: **(M)**

■ Changing the folder name:

① Highlight a folder ▶ **MENU** **(2)** on the folder list of *Movie* or **MENU** **(6)** on the data list of the folder

② Enter a folder name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶ **(M)**

■ Setting the home folder: Highlight a folder ▶ Yes

The icon changes to  or .

■ Deleting a folder:

- When a folder is deleted, the data in the folder are also deleted.
- When you delete the folder set as home folder, 初期フォルダ becomes the home folder.
- When highlighting 初期フォルダ and deleting the folder, only the folder and data within 初期フォルダ are deleted. The 初期フォルダ itself is not deleted.

① Highlight a folder on the folder list of Movie or on the data list of the folder

② Yes

- In case an invalid file (not displayed in the list) exists in the folder, i-motion files compatible with Movable Contents in that folder are deleted, but the folder itself remains. In this case, retry to delete the folder after removing the invalid file using PC, etc.

Displaying PIM data

1    

2  - 

3 Select a data item

The data is displayed.

- , , ,  or  is displayed for the backup data. When you select backup data, the list of data contained in backup data is displayed. Select a data item.
- In case of bookmarks,  appears for i-mode bookmark and  appears for Full Browser bookmark.

Operations available on the data list screen

■ Sending mail with data attached (excluding the received mail, unsent mail, sent mail and notes): Highlight a data item

■ Deleting one item: Highlight a data item ▶

   ▶ Yes

■ Deleting selected items: ▶

Select data items  ▶ Yes

■ Deleting all items:

①   

② Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

■ Jumping to the specified page: ▶ Enter the page number

- When no page number is entered, the first page is displayed.

■ Searching data in the microSD memory card:

  ▶ Enter the date 

INFORMATION

- The images saved in the phonebook data are not displayed and  appears instead. When you return such images to the FOMA terminal, they can be displayed.
- Schedules saved in the microSD memory card do not sound an alarm on the set date and time.
- To register new data in the phonebook, highlight the mail address on the mail view screen and press   . To update the data in the phonebook, press   . After highlighting an attachment, press    to switch show/hide, play it or show the content. To check the title or file name, press   . However, you cannot display the details of multiple items in the phonebook, schedule, or Bookmark.

Managing the microSD memory card

Formatting the microSD memory card

Format

Format a microSD memory card when you want to delete all the data saved in the microSD memory card or before using a new microSD memory card.

- Depending on the state, some microSD memory cards may not be formatted.

1 ▶ ▶ Select the formatting method

Quick format :

Only the data management area in the microSD memory card is formatted. This method shortens the formatting period to the minimum. The saved data are all deleted. Use this method only for the microSD memory card which has been formatted and has no problem.

Regular format :

Both the data management and data areas in the microSD memory card are formatted. Use this method to format a new microSD memory card.

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

- To cancel formatting: 

Checking free space in the microSD memory card

Memory Status

1 (MENU) 6 6 (MENU)

Memory status	
Used	: 17,344 KB
Free	: 43,920 KB
Total	: 61,264 KB

The rate of used area to the entire storage area

INFORMATION

- The available space of the microSD memory card is smaller than the capacity specified on the microSD memory card.
- If free space of the microSD memory card is insufficient, data may not be saved. Delete unnecessary data or insert another microSD memory card to save data.

Updating the microSD memory card information

Sync Data Info

Update the information in the microSD memory card if the data in the microSD memory card is changed, added or deleted using the other devices and is no longer correctly displayed.

- If the information is updated, the display name of data is changed as follows:
 - In case of the data in *My Picture*, *Other image*, *Deco-mail pictogram*, or *Other*, the display name is changed to the same as the file name (including the extension for the data in *Other*).
 - In case of the data in *Movie*, *Other movie*, *Melody* or *My Document*, the display name is changed to the same as the title name. When the data has no title, it is changed to the file name.
 - The data within *ToruCa* is changed to the same name as the title name. However, if the data has no title name, it is changed to 無題 (Untitled).

1 (MENU) 6 6 (F5) Select an item

Sync data info 1/2	
1	My Picture
2	Other image
3	Deco-mail pictogram
4	Movie
5	Other movie
6	Melody
7	PIM
8	My Document
9	ToruCa

2 (Ⓜ) Yes

- To cancel information updating: (Ⓢ)

INFORMATION

- If data is saved from any other device to the microSD memory card, available free space may become insufficient to create management information in the FOMA terminal. In this case, data saved in the microSD memory card cannot be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal.
- Sound-only video/i-motion files saved in the *Movie* folder become undisplayable after the information update. It is recommended to move such files to the FOMA terminal or use PC to change the file names and save them in the folder for *Other movie* (PRIVATE≠DOCOMO≠MMFILE) in the microSD memory card before updating the information. P296
- The information about *Movie* (Ⓜ), *Music* and *i-appli data* cannot be updated.
- If many data items are saved in the microSD memory card, updating the information will take some time.

Checking the microSD memory card

Scan Card

You can check the data saved in the microSD memory card and correct it if there is any problem.

- The data may not be corrected depending on the state of the microSD memory card.

1 (MENU) 6 6 (Ⓜ) Yes

Using the microSD memory card from PC

Connect the FOMA terminal to PC with the FOMA USB Cable (optional). Then you can use PC to operate the data of the microSD memory card inserted in the FOMA terminal.

- For the folder structure of the microSD memory card during operation from a PC P296

Setting the microSD mode/MTP mode

USB Mode Setting

The following three USB modes are available. Before operating data in the microSD memory card in the FOMA terminal from a PC, set either the microSD mode or MTP mode.

- microSD mode
This mode enables you to operate data in the microSD memory card from your PC.

- MTP mode

This mode enables you to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC containing an operating system that supports MTP (Media Transfer Protocol). Use this mode to transfer music files from your PC to the microSD memory card of your FOMA terminal. If the operating system of your PC does not support MTP, available operations are the same as with the communication mode.

For transferring music files ➡ P327

- Communication mode

This mode enables you to connect the FOMA terminal to the PC for data communication. See “Manual for Data Communication” in the supplied CD-ROM for details.

Default Communication mode



Yes

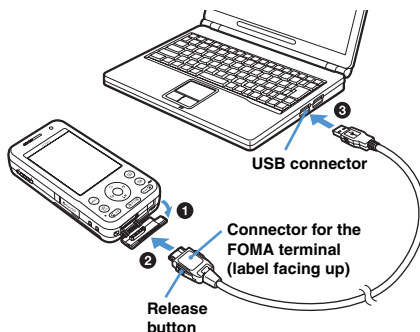
- If you set the microSD mode, (dark blue) appears on the standby display. In the MTP mode, (dark blue) appears on the standby display. If no microSD memory card has been inserted, (gray) or (gray) is displayed.
- In the communication mode, appears when the microSD memory card is inserted.
- No confirmation screen appears if the selected mode is already set.

INFORMATION

- The microSD mode supports the Windows 2000, Windows XP and Windows Vista operating systems; the MTP mode supports the Windows XP Service Pack 2.
- You can change the USB mode setting even while the FOMA terminal is connected with the PC. Note, however, that the microSD mode or MTP mode may not be set if the PC is set to start data communication automatically when the FOMA terminal is connected. The mode cannot be switched while the PC is accessing the microSD memory card.

Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC

- Turn on the power of both the PC and the FOMA terminal before connecting them.



- 1 Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal
- 2 Insert one end of the FOMA USB Cable into the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal until it clicks
- 3 Insert the other end of the FOMA USB Cable into the USB connector of PC

- While the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC in the microSD mode or MTP mode, the Enter key flashes in blue.

Disconnecting the FOMA terminal from PC

Press the release buttons of the connector for the FOMA terminal and pull it straight out. Never pull it out forcibly; it may cause a failure. Pull the connector out of the PC.

INFORMATION

- Even if you connect your PC to the FOMA terminal in the microSD mode or MTP mode, the PC may not recognize the FOMA terminal in the following cases:
 - When *microSD* of *LifeKit* is activated.
 - While data is being copied or moved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card.
 - While still image shooting, video recording, Sound Recorder or Chara-den is active.
 - While the downloaded PDF data or i-motion is being saved directly to the microSD memory card.
 - While Music Player is active.
- When you disconnect the FOMA USB Cable from the PC and the FOMA terminal in the microSD mode, click on the PC's task tray and then click *USB 大容量記憶装置 デバイスドライバ (E:)*1 を安全に取り外します**2 (Release safely the USB large memory device-Drive E:). Check that '*USB 大容量記憶装置 デバイス*' は安全に取り外すことができます。 (Now you can remove the USB large memory device safely) appears.

*1 The character assigned to the drive varies by the system of PC.

*2 For Windows 2000, 停止します (Terminate) is displayed for 安全に取り外します (Release safely).

- Never remove the FOMA USB Cable during the data transmission between the PC and the microSD memory card. It can cause the malfunction or loss of data.
- While the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC in the microSD mode or MTP mode, you cannot operate the data in the microSD memory card (such as saving and displaying data) or activate Music Player on the FOMA terminal.
- When you connect a PC and the FOMA terminal,  appears on the standby display. Press  and select  to display the screen for USB Mode Setting.

Using the album

You can add albums (folders) in *My Picture*, *i-motion*, *Melody*, *My Document*, *Chara-den*, *Machi-chara* or *Other* in Data Box of the FOMA terminal and sort out the data. All the data in an album of *i-motion* or *Melody* can be played at one time.

- In *My Document*, *Chara-den*, *Machi-chara* or *Other*, albums are referred to as “folders”.

Creating albums

- You can create up to 100 albums (folders) in *My Picture* and up to 10 albums (folders) for each of *i-motion*, *Melody*, *My Document*, *Chara-den*, *Machi-chara* and *Other*.

Example Creating an album in *My Picture*

- 1  
- 2  
 - **Changing the album name: Highlight an album**  
 - **Deleting an album:**
When an album is deleted, the data in the album are also deleted.
 - ① **Highlight an album**  
 - When the album to delete contains data, enter the terminal security code.
 - ② *Yes*
- 3 **Enter the album name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** 
 - For *Chara-den* or *Machi-chara*, up to 10 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

INFORMATION

- In the folder list of *i-motion* or *Melody*, press  and select *Create album*, *Rename album* or *Delete album*.
- In the folder list of *My Document*, *Chara-den*, *Machi-chara* or *Other*, press  and select *Create folder*, *Rename folder* or *Delete folder*.
- The fixed folder registered by default cannot be renamed or deleted.
- The name of マイフォルダ (My folder) preinstalled in *Other* by default can be changed and deleted. If, however, the list contains only one folder, you cannot delete it.

Moving/copying data to the album

Moving data to the album

You can move data from a fixed folder to an album (folder) you created, or between albums (folders) you created.

- Data can be moved to the *Deco-mail picture* folder in *My Picture* from other folders.
- Data saved in the *Preinstalled*, *Deco-mail pict*, *1Seg image* or *Mail attach melody* folder cannot be moved.

Example Moving data from *My Picture*

- 1   **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight a data item** 
 -    
 - **Moving selected items:**    
 - ▶ **Select data items**  
 - **Moving all the data in the folder:**
 -    
- 3 **Select a destination album**  *Yes*

INFORMATION

- In the video/*i-motion* list or melody list, press  and select *Move/Copy* → *Move to album* → *One item*, *Selected items* or *All items*.
- In the PDF data list or the document list of *Other*, press  and select *Move/Copy* → *Move to folder* → *One item*, *Selected items* or *All items*.
- In the *Chara-den* or *Machi-chara* list, press  and select *Move* → *One item*, *Selected items* or *All items*.

Returning data from the album to the fixed folder

- Operation of returning data to the fixed folder is unavailable for the data in *Chara-den*, *Machi-chara*, or documents in *Other*.

Example

Returning data from an album in *My Picture* to the fixed folder

- 1 ▶ **Select an album**
- 2 **Highlight a data item** ▶
 - **Returning selected items:**
 ▶ **Select data items**
▶
 - **Returning all the data in the album:**
- 3 **Yes**

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list or PDF data list, press and select *Move/Copy* → *Restore to folder* or *Return to folder* → *One item*, *Selected items* or *All items*.
- Preinstalled images registered in the *Deco-mail picture* folder are moved to the *i-mode* folder by returning data to the fixed folder.

Copying data

You can copy the data in *My Picture*, *i-motion* or *My Document* into the same album or folder.

- The following data cannot be copied:
 - Created animations, item images, images in the *Preinstalled* folder in *My Picture*
 - Video/i-motion whose replay restriction is set or video/i-motion obtained from sites or via mails which can be set as the ring alert
 - Data set to *File restricted* (excluding the data whose file restriction is set to *File restricted* with the FOMA terminal and the data saved in the *Data transfer* folder)

Example

Copying data from *My Picture*

- 1 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Highlight a data item** ▶

The copied data are saved in the same folder as the original data.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list or PDF data list, press and select *Move/Copy* → *Copy*.
- If you return the data copied in an album to the fixed folder, it moves to the fixed folder which contains its original data.

Playing all files in an album

You can play i-motion or melody files in an album continuously.

- The fixed folder data registered by default cannot be played as an album.
- i-motion files for which replay restriction is set cannot be played.

- 1 **for i-motion** or **for melodies**

- 2 **Highlight an album** ▶

- The following operations are available while playing a video/i-motion album:
 - : Pause/play : Adjust volume
 - /: Play the previous or next file
 - : Stop
 - : Stop playing (Return to the folder list)
- The following operations are available while playing a melody album:
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Play the previous or next melody
 - /: Stop playing (Return to the folder list)

Viewing/editing detail information of the data

View/Edit Detail Info

- To view or edit the detail information about music data in *Music* ➤P332
- To view the detail information about Kisekai tool ➤P118

Viewing detail information

Example

Displaying the image detail information

- 1 ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Highlight an image** ▶

- To scroll by pages: or
- To edit detail information:

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list, or document list of *Other*, press and select *Detail info* → *View*.
- This is not available for the Machi-chara image partially downloaded.

Editing detail information

Example Editing the image detail information

1

2 **Set each item**

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list, or document list of **Other**, press and select **Detail info** → **Edit**.
- This is not available for the Machi-chara image partially downloaded.
- For video/i-motion, melody, Chara-den and Machi-chara, selecting **Back to original** returns the display name to the original title preset.

Displayed items and their availability

- Depending on the data, some items cannot be changed even when shown as changeable in the table below.
- : Changeable ○: Displayed only —: Not displayed

Displayed item	Image	Video/ i-motion	Melody	My Document	Chara-den	Machi-chara	Other folder
Display name	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Title (Original)/ Original title	—	○	○	—	○	○	—
File name	●	●	●	○	○	○	○
Type	○	—	—	—	—	—	—
Creator	—	●	—	—	—	—	—
Copyright	—	●	—	—	—	—	—
Description	—	●	—	—	—	—	—
File restriction	●	●	●	○	○	○	○
Rec. file restriction	—	—	—	—	○	—	—
Moved to microSD (Moved to phone)	○	○	○	○	○	—	○
Format/File format	○	○	○	○	—	—	○
Sound	—	○	—	—	—	—	—
Display size	○	○	—	—	○	—	—
File size	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Msg attach size	○	—	—	—	—	—	—
Playing time	—	—	○	—	—	—	—
Saved date & time	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Use as frame	●	—	—	—	—	—	—
Use as stamp	●	—	—	—	—	—	—
Comment	●	—	—	—	●	—	—
Ring alert	—	○	—	—	—	—	—
Receive display	—	○	—	—	—	—	—
Replay restriction	—	○	—	—	—	○	—
Originated	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

Descriptions of displayed items

Display name :

Title to be displayed on the FOMA terminal (if you want to change it, enter up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters for melodies and up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters for others).

Title(Original)/Original title :

Original title preset in data

File name :

File name displayed when attaching data to mail (if you want to change it, enter up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters including ".", "-", and "_").

- "." cannot be used for the first character of the file name.
- The file name of 1Seg image cannot be changed.

Type : Type of image

Creator :

Creator's name (If you want to change it, enter up to 256 one-byte or two-byte characters.)

- The name registered in Own Number appears as a creator for video files you recorded with your FOMA terminal. If no name is registered in Own Number, no name is displayed.

Copyright :

The name of the author and the release date of the production (If you want to change it, enter up to 256 one-byte or two-byte characters.)

Description :

Description of video/i-motion (If you want to change it, enter up to 256 one-byte or two-byte characters.)

File restriction :

When you send data to the other party's mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict the data from being forwarded to other mobile phones from the received party's mobile phone.

- For 1Seg images or i-motion and melodies downloaded from sites, this item cannot be changed.

Rec. file restriction :

Specification of whether or not to set file restriction for the still image/video of Chara-den recorded by the Record Chara-den function.

Moved to microSD (Moved to phone) :

Specification of whether the data can be moved to the microSD memory card

- For the data in the microSD memory card, **Moved to phone** is displayed to indicate whether or not the data can be moved to the FOMA terminal.

Format/File format :

File type ("---" for Flash movie)

Sound :

Sound data type

- *AAC* is displayed when the sound data type is the HE-AAC or Enhanced aacPlus format.

Display size :

- Display size of data (dots)
- Not displayed for Flash movie.

File size : The actual size of a file

Msg attach size :

- File size suitable for attaching to i-mode Mail
- Displayed only when file attachment is possible.

Playing time : Playing time of data

Saved date & time :

Date and time when data was saved

Use as frame :

- Specification of whether the image can be pasted as frame image
- *Yes* cannot be set for images larger than 352 x 288, images merged with item images, 1Seg images, animations, created animations and Flash movies.

Use as stamp :

- Specification of whether the image can be pasted as stamp image
- *Yes* cannot be set for images larger than 240 x 320, images merged with item images, 1Seg images, animations, created animations and Flash movies.

Comment :

Description of data (If you want to change it, enter up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters.)

Ring alert :

Specification of whether the video/i-motion can be set to ring alert

Receive display :

Specification of whether the video/i-motion can be set to incoming image

Replay restriction :

Replay restrictions on video/i-motion

Originated : Origination of data

INFORMATION

- Even if *Yes* is set for *Use as frame* or *Use as stamp* in the image detail information, images are saved in the original folder and are not displayed in the *Item* folder.
- Detail information saved in the microSD memory card may differ from the information displayed on the FOMA terminal.
- *Ring alert* is set to *Available* for video files recorded with the recording type of *Video + Voice* by your FOMA terminal, sound files recorded via Sound Recorder and video/sound clipped from those files. However, for video files whose display size is 320 x 240 and video/sound files with inserted tickers, *Ring alert* is set to *Unavailable*.

- If *Ring alert* or *Receive display* is *Unavailable* for i-motion compatible with Movable Contents saved in the microSD memory card, the setting may be changed to *Available* when the i-motion is moved back to the FOMA terminal.

Deleting data

- The data saved in the *Preinstalled* folder of *My Picture*, *i-motion*, *Melody* or *My Document* or in the *Mail attach melody* folder of *Melody* cannot be deleted.
- To delete music data in *Music* ➡ P331
- To delete Kisekai tool ➡ P118

Example Deleting data from *My Picture*

- 1 ➡ **Select a folder**
- 2 **Highlight a data item** ➡
 - **Deleting selected items:** ➡
Select data items ➡
 - **Deleting all the data in the folder:**
 ➡ **Enter the terminal security code**

3 Yes

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list or document list of *Other*, press and select *Delete* ➡ *One item*, *Selected items* or *All items*.
- If data set for the standby display or ring alert are deleted, each setting returns to the default. When data set to the phonebook are deleted, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or settings for outgoing/incoming images.
- If you delete a created animation, the images composing the animation are also deleted.
- If the Chara-den, Machi-chara, Deco-mail pictures, Deco-mail pictograms and frames registered by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from the i-mode site "My D-style". ➡ P391

Sorting data

Sort

You can change the order of data items on the list screen.

- To sort music files in **Music** ➔ P331

Default By: **Saved date & time** Order: **Descending**

Example Sorting data in **My Picture**

1

2 **Set each item**

By : Set the sorting method.

Order : Set the sorting order of data.

INFORMATION

- In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list, or document list of **Other**, press and select **Sort**.
- If one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed in the display name, the sorted result may not correspond to Japanese syllabary.

Checking the memory status of the FOMA terminal

Memory Status

The memory status is displayed for each data item in Data Box of the FOMA terminal and the data storage for i-appli.

1

Memory status	1/2
My Picture	
Music	
i-motion	
Melody	
My Document	
Used :	2,311 KB
Free :	8,309 KB
Total :	10,620 KB

Usage rate of storage area

INFORMATION

- The total size includes the size of space shared with other data. Therefore, depending on the saved amount of other data, the total size may differ.

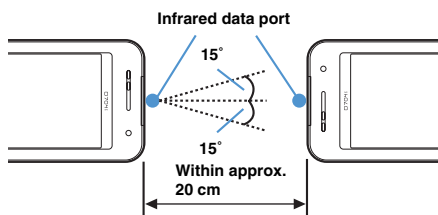
Infrared communication

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs supporting infrared communication. Also, by using the i-appli compatible with infrared communication, you can operate equipment supporting infrared communication.

- Data prohibited from going out of the FOMA terminal cannot be sent/received. However, this excludes the data whose file restriction is set to **File restricted** with your FOMA terminal and the data in the **Data transfer** folder.
- During infrared communication or saving received data, is displayed at the top of the screen and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (the same status as outside the service area). In this mode, phone calls, i-mode connection and data communication are disabled. Also you cannot switch to other functions by pressing . Note that you cannot use infrared communication during a call, i-mode or data communication because you cannot use the data transfer mode.
- The infrared communication function of the FOMA terminal conforms to IrMC 1.1.
- Even if the terminal of the other party conforms to IrMC 1.1, some data may not be sent/received depending on the data type.
- The data including pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to mobile phones not supporting i-mode. Even when being sent to i-mode terminals, the data including pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly depending on receiving terminals.

Using infrared communication

The maximum communication range is about 20 cm and the angle is within 15 degrees from the center. Keep the FOMA terminal pointing at the other device's infrared data port and do not move it until all the data have been sent or received.



- Infrared communication may not work properly in a place with direct sunlight or right under fluorescent lamps.

Sending data by infrared communication

Send Ir Data

You can send data by selecting one item at a time or send all data items for a specified function in a batch. The following data are available for sending:

☐ : Sending all data is available

Data type	Remarks
Phonebook	• When sending one item, a phonebook entry for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent only when Secret Mode is on. • Own Number data is also sent when sending all is performed. • Phonebook data cannot be sent when Keypad Dial Lock is on. • In <i>Ph.book image sending</i> of Data Exchange Setting, you can set whether to send still images registered in the phonebook entry when sending all is performed. • Images saved in the phonebook may not be received depending on the receiving device. • The sorting order of groups may be displayed differently on the receiving device.
Schedule	• When sending one item, a schedule entry for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent only when Secret Mode is on. • TV program schedules cannot be sent. • Date and Time Setting is required.
Received mail Sent mail Unsent mail	• Attached data in the text (links to activate i-appli) are deleted. • Mails larger than 10,000 bytes may fail to be sent correctly depending on the receiving device. • An attached file will not be sent if downloading of the file has not completed yet. • If the mail size exceeds 100 Kbytes, the attachment corresponding to the excess will not be sent.
Note	—
Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)	• Folder settings may not be reflected depending on the receiving device. • When sending all items, bookmarks are sent from the end of the list.

Data type	Remarks
Image	• A display name of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted. • Data of over 500 Kbytes cannot be sent.
Video/i-motion	
Melody	• A title of up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters can be sent.
PDF data	• PDF data which is over 512 Kbytes*¹ or downloaded partially cannot be sent.
ToruCa	• When sending one file, you can select whether to include details in a ToruCa (details) file to send. When sending all files, details are included. For some ToruCa (details) files, however, they may sometimes be sent in the state before obtaining the details, irrespective of sending one file or all files. • Depending on IP (Information Provider) settings, ToruCa may not be sent. • Depending on the type of the receiving device, ToruCa (details) may not be sent.
Own Number	• Images may not be received depending on the receiving device. • Own Number data cannot be sent when Keypad Dial Lock is on.

*1 Even if the size shown in the detail information exceeds 512 Kbytes, the files can be sent if the file size excluding the i-mode bookmarks and marks does not exceed 512 Kbytes.

- Data may not be transferred correctly when communication is performed with the terminals other than D704i or the infrared communication devices. Items that cannot be registered on the receiver side are discarded.
- Because of the difference in the data size limit, the receiving side may not save images, video/i-motion or melodies sent to the FOMA terminal.

Sending one data item

Example Sending a phonebook entry

- 1 Make the receiving side FOMA terminal ready to receive**
- 2 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a phonebook entry ▶    ▶ Yes**
 - To cancel sending data: 

INFORMATION

- In the bookmark list, received mail list, sent mail list, unsent mail list, image list, video/i-motion list, melody list or PDF data list, press **[MENU]** and select *Send via Ir/iC* or *Send Ir/iC* → *Send Ir data*.
- In the schedule day view screen or list of notes, press **[MENU]** and select *Ir/iC/microSD* → *Send Ir data*.
- In the ToruCa list, press **[MENU]** and select *Send Ir data*. When you send ToruCa (details), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to send details as well. For ToruCa (details) that does not allow to send details, a confirmation screen appears to indicate that the details are not included.
- On the Own Number screen, press **[MENU]**. The name, reading, first phone number and first mail address are sent. To send all items, show the details screen and press **[MENU]**, and then select *Send all own info* → *Send Ir data*.

Sending all data items

You can send all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note, bookmark and ToruCa.

- To send all data items, the sending and receiving parties must enter the same authentication password. Determine a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

- 1 Make the receiving side FOMA terminal ready to receive**
- 2** **[MENU]** **[6]** **[3]** **[2]** **▶ Select a data type**
▶ Enter the terminal security code
- 3 Enter the authentication password ▶ Yes**
 - To cancel sending data: **[END]**

INFORMATION

- In the phonebook list, bookmark list, received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press **[MENU]** and select *Send via Ir/iC* or *Send Ir/iC* → *Send all Ir data*.
- In the schedule calendar screen, day view screen or list of notes, press **[MENU]** and select *Ir/iC/microSD* → *Send all Ir data*.
- In the ToruCa folder list, press **[MENU]** and select *Send all Ir data*.
- When all the data items are sent, the order of data items may change on the receiving FOMA terminal.
- Press **[MENU]** **[6]** **[3]** **[2]** and select *Bookmarks* to send all bookmarks for both i-mode and Full Browser. If you operate from the bookmark list of i-mode or Full Browser, all the bookmarks of either i-mode or Full Browser are sent.

Communication receiving data by infrared

Receive Ir Data

You can receive one data item at a time or all data items for a specified function in a batch. Received data are saved directly in the FOMA terminal, or saved temporarily in INBOX of Receive Ir Data and checked before being saved in the FOMA terminal. The following data can be received:

☐ : Receiving all data is available

Data type	Storage after receiving
Phonebook	Phonebook
Schedule	Scheduler
Received mail	Inbox
Sent mail	Outbox
Unsent mail	Unsent messages
Note	Notepad
Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)	Bookmark of i-mode/Full Browser
Image	Data transfer folder*1 of <i>My Picture</i>
Video/i-motion	Data transfer folder of <i>i-motion</i>
Melody	Data transfer folder of <i>Melody</i>
PDF data	Data transfer folder of <i>My Document</i>
ToruCa	ToruCa folder of the ToruCa list
Own Number	Phonebook

*1 Images that can be used as Deco-mail pictograms are saved in the *Deco-mail pict* folder.

- Received data items are saved as follows:
 - Phonebook data and Own Number data are saved in the smallest free phonebook No.
 - Schedules and mails are saved in order of date/time.
 - Notes, images, video/i-motion, melodies and PDF data are added in accordance with the sort settings.
 - Bookmarks and ToruCa are added to the top of the list.
- If you receive and overwrite all phonebook data, Own Number data except your phone number is overwritten.
- Phonebook data and Own Number data cannot be received when Keypad Dial Lock is on.
- For information about saving data, see INFORMATION in "Saving received data".

➡P315

Receiving one data item

- You cannot receive data that exceeds 512 Kbytes.

1     

The *Select receive method* screen appears.

2  or 

Confirm & save :

Received data are saved temporarily in INBOX. You cannot select this if INBOX has no free space. After receiving is finished, the INBOX data list appears.

Save :

Received data is saved in the FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the *Select receive method* screen reappears without displaying INBOX.

3 *Yes*

The FOMA terminal becomes ready to receive data.

4 Sending side sends one data item

When *Confirm & save* is selected in Step 2, the INBOX screen appears upon completion of receiving the data. For saving data, follow the procedures from Step 2 in "Saving received data" (P314). When *Save* is selected, the *Select receive method* screen reappears upon completion of receiving the data.

- To cancel receiving data: 

Receiving all data items

You can receive all data items of phonebook, schedule, mail, note, bookmark and ToruCa.

- To receive all data items, the sending and receiving parties must enter the same authentication password. Determine a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1     

The *Select all recv method* screen appears.

2  or 

Confirm & save :

Received data are saved temporarily in INBOX. You cannot select this if INBOX has no free space. After receiving is finished, the INBOX data list appears. *Add* or *Overwrite* can be selected when you save data from INBOX.

- If you select *Confirm & save*, go to Step 4.

Overwrite :

Received data overwrites the data saved in the FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the *Select all recv method* screen reappears without displaying INBOX.

- Note that the original data in the FOMA terminal are all deleted by overwriting and replaced by new data.

3 Yes ► Enter the terminal security code

4 Enter the authentication password ► Yes

The FOMA terminal becomes ready to receive data.

5 Sending side sends all data items

When *Confirm & save* is selected in Step 2, the INBOX screen appears upon completion of receiving the data. For saving data, follow the procedures from Step 2 in "Saving received data" (P314). When *Overwrite* is selected, the *Select all recv method* screen reappears upon completion of receiving the data.

- To cancel receiving data: 

INFORMATION

- It may take time when you receive large data or a large number of items.

Saving received data

Save the data temporarily stored in INBOX to the FOMA terminal.

- When *Confirm & save* is selected for receiving one data item or all data items, the INBOX screen appears upon completion of receiving the data.
- The data saved in the FOMA terminal is deleted from INBOX.

1    

2 Select the data

 /  : Single item/multiple items of phonebook data



Single data item of i-mode Bookmark/
single data item of Full Browser
Bookmark/Multiple items of Bookmark
data

Single item/multiple items of mail data

Single item/multiple items of schedule
data

Single item/multiple items of notes

Image

Video/i-motion

Melody

PDF data

Single item/multiple items of ToruCa

■ **Deleting one item: Highlight a data item** ►

► Yes

■ **Deleting all items:** ► **Enter the terminal security code** ► Yes

3 Yes

■ **When multiple items are selected: Enter the terminal security code** ► **Add to add data or Overwrite to overwrite data**

- Note that the original data in the FOMA terminal are all deleted if you select **Overwrite** and replaced by new data.

INFORMATION

- Depending on the size of data to save, the maximum number of items that can be saved/registered in the FOMA terminal may be fewer.
- ToDo data (items in the ToDo list for managing business activities) cannot be saved on D704i. When all items of ToDo data and schedule data are received in a batch from a mobile phone other than D704i, only the schedule data is saved. Note that when all items of only ToDo data are received, all the schedule data registered in D704i are deleted if you select to overwrite the existing data.
- When you select **Overwrite** to save all data items received in a batch, the protected data in the FOMA terminal are also deleted.
- When you select **Overwrite** to save multiple items of Bookmark data, bookmarks of both i-mode and Full Browser are overwritten even if the data to save does not contain both.
- The folder name that was set by the other terminal may not be taken over even if you receive all items of mail from the FOMA terminal.
- When you receive all bookmarks from the FOMA terminal, you will also receive the folders created to save the bookmarks in that terminal. Depending on the other terminal, however, bookmarks may be saved in the first folder.
- Images, video/i-motion or melodies received from the FOMA terminal other than D704i may be saved as notes.

- If the received data includes invalid characters, they are replaced by blanks or removed.
- Mail data received from such a device that has a function to sort mails to folders may be saved in the Message i-appli folder. To check the saved mail data, highlight the Message i-appli folder in which the data is saved and press .

Activating infrared communication mode

Infrared Communication Mode

In this mode, you can activate an i-appli application by receiving the i-appli activation data from an infrared communication device having the i-appli activation function.

- It is necessary to download the specific software from sites, etc. in advance.
- If i-appli is set not to respond to the i-appli To from an external device, i-appli cannot be activated.

1 ► Yes

The FOMA terminal becomes ready to receive data.

2 Receive the i-appli activation data from an infrared communication device

i-appli is activated.

- To cancel receiving data:

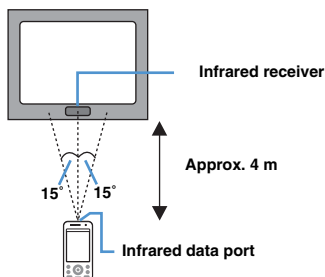
Using the infrared remote control function

The FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller if you download the i-appli for infrared remote control.

- Download the i-appli corresponding to your equipment.
- If you activate the preset i-appli “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller), you can use your FOMA terminal as an infrared TV remote controller. ◀P237
- Control may be affected by nearby devices that support infrared communication or ambient luminance.
- Some equipment cannot be operated even if it supports infrared remote control.

Remote control operation

Point the infrared data port of the FOMA terminal at the infrared receiver of the equipment and perform remote control operation (operation differs depending on i-αppli). Effective angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and the distance is about 4 m at the maximum. However, the angle and distance effective for the operation differs depending on the type of devices to operate and the level of ambient brightness.



Setting operations for data transfer

Data Exchange Setting

Set operations for data transfer by infrared communication, iC communication and USB connection.

Default End alert: OFF Auto authentication: OFF
Ph. book image sending: ON

1 ▶ Set each item

End alert :

Set whether to sound a beep at the end of communication.

Auto authentication :

Set whether to automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party during USB connection to use DoCoMo keitai datalink. If you set **ON**, it eliminates the need to enter the authentication password every time.

- To set **ON**, enter the terminal security code and the 4 to 8-digit authentication codes for the mobile phone terminal (the FOMA terminal) and for PC (the other party), and then press .

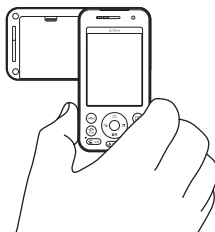
Ph. book image sending :

Set whether to send images saved in the phonebook when you send all items of the phonebook data in a batch.

iC communication function

iC Communication

Data is exchanged between the FOMA terminals equipped with the iC communication function by overlapping the FeliCa marks () of both terminals.



Overlap the FeliCa marks so that the distance between them is 1 cm or less. Also take care not to move them while data is being exchanged.

- When you overlap FeliCa marks, be careful not to give shocks to the FOMA terminals.

- The type of data that can be sent or received is the same as with infrared communication.
➡ P312, P313
- Data prohibited from being output from the FOMA terminal cannot be sent/received. However, this excludes the data whose file restriction is set to **File restricted** with your FOMA terminal and the data in the **Data transfer** folder.
- During iC communication or saving received data, is displayed at the top of the screen and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (the same status as outside the service area). In this mode, phone calls, i-mode connection and data communication are disabled. Also you cannot switch to other functions by pressing . Also, you cannot use iC communication during a call, i-mode or data communication because you cannot use the data transfer mode.
- Depending on the other party's FOMA terminal, it may be difficult to send or receive data. Try adjusting the distance between the FeliCa marks or moving either terminal slightly up, down, right or left.

Using iC communication to send data

You can send data by selecting one item at a time or send all data items for a specified function in a batch.

Sending one data item

Example Sending a phonebook entry

1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight a phonebook entry ►    ► *Yes*

2 Overlap the FeliCa marks of the FOMA terminals

- To cancel iC communication: 

INFORMATION

- In the bookmark list, received mail list, sent mail list, unsent mail list, image list, video/i-motion list, melody list or PDF data list, press  and select *Send via Ir/iC* or *Send Ir/iC → iC transmission*.
- In the schedule day view screen or list of notes, press  and select *Ir/iC/microSD → iC transmission*.
- In the ToruCa list, press  and select *iC transmission*. When you send ToruCa (details), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to send details as well. For ToruCa (details) that does not allow to send details, a confirmation screen appears to indicate that the details are not included.
- On the Own Number screen, press . The name, reading, first phone number and first mail address are sent. To send all items, show the details screen and press , and then select *Send all own info → iC transmission*.

Sending all data items

You can send all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note, bookmark and ToruCa.

- To send all data items, the sending and receiving parties must enter the same authentication password. Determine a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1    ► **Select a data type ► Enter the terminal security code**

2 Enter the authentication password ► Yes

3 Overlap the FeliCa marks of the FOMA terminals

- To cancel iC communication: 

INFORMATION

- In the phonebook list, bookmark list, received mail list, sent mail list and unsent mail list, press  and select *Send via Ir/iC* or *Send Ir/iC → Send all via iC*.
- In the schedule calendar screen/day view screen or list of notes, press  and select *Ir/iC/microSD → Send all via iC*.

- In the ToruCa folder list, press  and select *Send all via iC*.
- When all the data items are sent, the order of data items may change on the receiving FOMA terminal.
- Press    and select *Bookmarks* to send all bookmarks for both i-mode and Full Browser. If you operate from the bookmark list of i-mode or Full Browser, all the bookmarks of either i-mode or Full Browser are sent.

Using iC communication to receive data

- Data cannot be received while you are using other functions. Return to the standby display and receive data.
- For information about saving data, see INFORMATION in "Saving received data".
➡P315

Receiving one data item

- You cannot receive data that exceed 512 Kbytes.

1 Sending side sends one data item

2 Show the standby display on the receiving side and overlap the FeliCa marks of the FOMA terminals

The INBOX screen appears upon completion of receiving. For saving data, follow the procedures from Step 2 in "Saving received data". ➡P314

- To cancel receiving data: 

Receiving all data items

You can receive all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note, bookmark and ToruCa.

- To receive all data items, the sending and receiving parties must enter the same authentication password. Determine a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1 Sending side sends all data items

2 Show the standby display on the receiving side and overlap the FeliCa marks of the FOMA terminals

3 Enter the authentication password

4 Overlap the FeliCa marks of the FOMA terminals again

The INBOX screen appears upon completion of receiving. For saving data, follow the procedures from Step 2 in "Saving received data". ◀P314

- To cancel receiving data: (⏏)

INFORMATION

- It may take time when you receive large data or a large number of items.

Recording sound with Sound Recorder

Sound Recorder

Recorded sound can be played on the FOMA terminal or saved to the microSD memory card. Also it can be sent via i-mode Mail as attachment or via infrared/iC communication.

- Recorded sound is saved as video/i-motion without image.

File name/File format

The date and time recorded is used as the file name, display name and the title of the sound file.

(Example) In case of 12:34:56 on December 5, 2007
→20071205123456

The file format is as follows:

Item	Contents
File format	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	AMR
Extension	3GP

- After recording, the file name and display name can be changed. ◀P309

Recording time of sound

The sound recording time varies depending on the settings of quality and size restrictions.

■ Single recording time/total recording time (D704i terminal)

The estimated maximum time for a single recording and the total time of recordings that can be saved in D704i are as shown below:

Item	Quality	File size restrictions	
		Msg attach: Small	Msg attach: Large
Single recording time	STD	482 sec.	32 min.
	HQ	318 sec.	21 min.
Total recording time	STD	194 min.	194 min.
	HQ	127 min.	127 min.

■ Total recording time (microSD memory card)

The estimated total time of recordings that can be saved in the 64-Mbyte microSD memory card is as shown below:

Quality	File size restrictions		
	Msg attach: Small	Msg attach: Large	None
STD	988 min.	989 min.	989 min.
HQ	650 min.	650 min.	650 min.

- Recording time of *Msg attach: Small* and *Msg attach: Large* for a single recording is the same as that for saving in D704i.
- In case of *None*, up to the total time is available for a single recording.

The recording screen



Sound Recorder is activated.

1 Setting guide

Use (⏏) to change settings for recording.
◀P320

2 Memory to save ◀P152

- 📱: FOMA terminal
- 💿: microSD memory card

3 Type

Indicates recording of sound.

4 Counter

During standby for recording

Indicates the estimated maximum recording time of sound that can be saved in the FOMA terminal or the microSD memory card with the current settings.

During recording/pause

Indicates the estimated elapsed/remaining time (duration until the recording stops).

5 Indicator

During standby for recording

Indicates the usage rate of the storage area in the memory to save.

- The usage rate of the microSD memory card storage area may not be 0 even when no recorded sound is saved.

During recording/pause

Indicates the ratio between the size of recorded sound and the file size limited by size restrictions (or the available file size when *None* is set).

6 Quality

7 Size restrictions

- For auto-saving without displaying a confirmation screen 

5 or

The recorded sound is saved in the *Camera* folder of i-motion.

- When the microSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the sound is saved in the *Other movie* folder of the microSD memory card.

■ Checking the recorded sound: ▶ Select the sound

- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, press  to select a folder and select a sound.

Recording the sound

- Record the sound in as quiet a place as possible with no or little noise.
- Even when *silent* is set for the ring alert volume or when Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is active, the recording confirmation sound (shutter sound) is heard. The volume of the shutter sound cannot be changed.
- The Enter key lights in blue when Sound Recorder is activated. While recording, the camera indicator flashes in red and the Enter key flashes in several changing colors. During pause, the camera indicator lights in red and the Enter key lights in green. The setting not to light/flash is unavailable and the lighting pattern and color cannot be changed.

1

2 or

Recording is started after the shutter sound is heard.  appears at the bottom of the screen.

- The sound is recorded through the microphone.
- Press  to pause recording.  changes to . To resume recording, press  or .

3 or

The shutter sound is heard and recording is finished. A confirmation screen for the recorded sound appears.

- If the file size exceeds the limit while recording, recording ends automatically.
- Press  to end the recording during pause.

4 Confirm the recorded sound

- To record again without saving: 
- To replay the sound: 

Operations available on the confirmation screen

The following operations are available on the confirmation screen in Step 4.

■ Sending mail with the recorded sound attached: ▶ *Yes*

The recorded sound is saved and the mail composition screen appears.

- Even if the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the recorded sound is saved in the FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 1.99 Mbytes, it cannot be attached.

■ Changing the title: ▶ Enter the title (up to 31 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶

- The changed title becomes valid after the sound is saved.

■ Inserting tickers: ▶ *Yes*

The recorded sound is saved and the ticker setting screen appears. Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Inserting tickers". 

- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, a ticker cannot be inserted.

■ Switching the memory to save between the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card:

- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 1.99 Mbytes, the memory to save cannot be switched.
- After saving the sound, the memory to save returns to the setting before switching.

■ Displaying a list of saved sounds: (MENU) (6) ▶ (1) or (2)

- When displaying a list of the sounds saved in the microSD memory card, select a folder.

INFORMATION

- You can also activate Sound Recorder by pressing (MENU) on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and selecting **Switch mode** → **Sound recorder**.
- For the information about using Sound Recorder, refer to INFORMATION in "Recording videos". ▶P151
- If Sound Recorder is activated from mail, some functions and some setup items are unavailable.
- For the procedure of playing the recorded sound, see "Playing video/i-motion". ▶P284

Changing the settings for recording

- You can also use Recording Setting to change the settings. ▶P151

Setting the sound quality

1 (🔄) on the recording screen to highlight a quality icon (STD, HQ)

- You can also press (B) to highlight.

2 (🔍) to highlight an item to set ▶ (🔍)

HQ **HQ** : The sound quality is enhanced, but the available recording time becomes shorter.

STD **STD** : The standard sound quality.

Restricting the file size

1 (🔄) on the recording screen to highlight an icon of size restrictions (1M, 2M, ∞)

- You can also press (9) to highlight.

2 (🔍) to highlight an item to set ▶ (🔍)

- The meaning of each setting item is the same as for size restrictions for Movie Camera. ▶P156

- You can also display PDF data saved to the microSD memory card from a PC, etc.
- For details about the file name and stored location of PDF data in the microSD memory card ▶P296
- To display PDF data saved in the microSD memory card ▶P302

1 (🔍) (5) ▶ Select a folder

i-mode :

PDF data obtained by i-mode, Full Browser or i-mode Mail

Preinstalled :

PDF data preinstalled by default

Data transfer :

PDF data moved/copied from the microSD memory card or received via data communication

Folder :

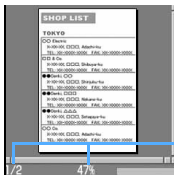
PDF data moved from other folders

- Not displayed by default. To create this folder ▶P307

- To switch to the folder list of the microSD memory card: (🔄) on the folder list
For operations on the microSD memory card ▶P302

2 Select a PDF file

PDF data is displayed.



- Scroll bar (indicating displayed portion within a page)
- Status (page No./total number and display magnification)

PDF display screen

- If a password is set for PDF data, enter the password and press (🔍).
- When you select the PDF data (with a file type of 📄) which failed to be downloaded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the rest of the data. If you select **Yes**, downloading starts.
- To download the rest of PDF data (with a file type of 📄) which was partially downloaded, press (MENU) (6) while the PDF data is on the screen. When the operation requires downloading of data (for example, when you try to view a page not downloaded), a confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to download. (You need to select **Yes** only once. The subsequent pages are downloaded without being asked by the confirmation screen).
- The rest of the data may not be downloaded depending on the PDF data.

Menu 55

Displaying the PDF data

PDF Viewer

View the PDF data saved in **My Document** of Data Box in the FOMA terminal.

- 辞典機能 (Dictionaries) is preset in the **Preinstalled** folder by default.

-  is displayed on a page where a mark is registered.

■ Terminating the display: (2UP) ▶ Yes

- If the PDF data have been changed, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the change. To save it, select *Yes* and press (Y). The original PDF data is overwritten.
- When you edit the PDF data, you can also save it by pressing (MENU) (2) on the PDF display screen.

PDF data list screen and available operations

Thumbnail display



Title display



1 Originated

-  : i-mode
-  : Preinstalled
-  : Data transfer

2 File type

-  : PDF data downloaded completely
-  : PDF data downloaded partially
-  : PDF data that failed to be downloaded because the communication is disconnected or for any other reason.
-  : PDF data with UIM operation restriction

3 File restriction

- ➡ (blue) : Without file restriction
- ➡ (gray) : With file restriction

- To switch between thumbnail and title displays:



- If thumbnail images of PDF data cannot be shown, the following images appear in thumbnail display:

-  : PDF data which has no thumbnail images or PDF data never displayed
-  : PDF data downloaded partially
-  : PDF data that failed to be downloaded
-  : PDF data with UIM operation restriction

- To change display names ▶ P309

■ Sending mail with PDF data attached:

Highlight a PDF file ▶ (Y)

The mail composition screen appears with PDF data attached.

- For information about PDF data that can be attached to mail ▶ P195

Operations while displaying PDF data

■ Scrolling: (4-way arrow)

- Hold down the key to scroll continuously.

■ Switching pages:

Page to display	Operation
Previous page	(←)
Next page	(→)
First page	(1)
Last page	(6)
Specified page	(MENU) (1) (3) ▶ Enter a page number

■ Changing display magnification:

Function	Operation
Zoom in	(3)
Zoom out	(1)
Show the entire page	(2)
Show in the actual size	(MENU) (6) (2) ▶ (2)
Fit the page to the screen width	(MENU) (6) (2) ▶ (3)
Specify magnification	(MENU) (6) (3) ▶ Enter a magnification

■ Rotating the display: (MENU) (6) (4) ▶ (1) - (3)

- Three modes of rotation are available: 90 degrees clockwise, 90 degrees counterclockwise, and 180 degrees.
- You can also rotate the display 90 degrees clockwise by pressing (7).
- To scroll up and down the pages, press (4) regardless of the page orientation.

■ Switching between the standard and full-screen displays: (X)

- In the full-screen display, the scroll bar, status and guide row are hidden.
- To select show/hide of the scroll bar and status for the standard display: (MENU) (7) in the standard display ▶ Set each item ▶ (11)

■ Using the toolbar:

1 (1) (2)

The toolbar and the guidance are displayed.

- In the full-screen display, no guidance is displayed.



2 (4-way arrow) to highlight an icon ▶ (Y)

-  : Zoom out
-  : Fit page
-  : Zoom in
-  : First page
-  : Search
-  : Last page

- : Right 90 degrees : Display link
- : Capture screen
- : Document information

- Keys of **[1]** - **[9]** and **[0]** are assigned for each icon from the left. Icons can also be selected by pressing the corresponding keys.
- If you press **[ZUP]** while the toolbar is selected, the guidance disappears, enabling you to operate the PDF data (such as scrolling). Press **[F]** to select the toolbar again.
- To hide the toolbar: **[#]**
 - While the toolbar is selected, press **[ZUP]** and then **[#]**.
 - To show the hidden tool bar, press **[#]**.

■ Switching the page layout: **[MENU]** **[6]** **[5]** **[▶]** **[1]** - **[3]**

- You can select from *Single page* (pages are displayed one by one), *Continuous* (pages are displayed continuously) and *Continuous-facing* (pages are displayed in 2-page spread).
- This setting is unavailable for PDF data containing only one page or downloaded partially.

■ Searching for the character strings:

- When only a part of the PDF file is downloaded, only the displayed page is searched.

① **[5]** **[▶]** **The entry field for the character string ▶ Enter the string (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)**

- To search for a completely matching word, set the search method to *Exact match*.
- To distinguish between upper and lower case alphabets in a search, select *Yes* in *Case-sensitive*.

② **[F]**

Searching is executed and the words matching to the entered character string are highlighted.

- To search the next matching word: **[F]**
- To search the previous matching word: **[F]**
- To end the search: **[MENU]**
- To show Help: **[F]**

■ Using the link:

To use links in PDF data, switch the link display to ON.

- Note that you cannot scroll or move the page on the screen after switching the link display to ON. Show the part containing the link on the screen before switching.

① **[B]** **[▶]** **Select a link**

- To end the link display: **[MENU]**

■ Saving page images (Capture screen): **[9]**

The content on the current screen is saved as a JPEG image in the *Camera* folder of *My Picture*.

- Screen capturing may not be available depending on the PDF file.
- Whether the captured image can be sent out of the FOMA terminal depends on the setting of the original PDF file.
- The size of a captured image depends on the size of the screen on which PDF data is displayed.

■ Viewing Help (description of keys): **[F]**

■ Viewing the document information: **[0]**

- You can check the title, author name, file size, etc.

INFORMATION

- Some PDF files may take some time to appear.
- If the PDF file includes a style not supported by PDF Viewer or a complicated design, the data may not be displayed properly.

Using bookmarks or marks

Use bookmarks and marks to show quickly the page you want to view. Bookmarks and marks are available in the following three types:

Type	Description
Bookmark	Preset bookmarks that cannot be added, changed or deleted. They may not be contained in PDF files.
i-mode bookmark	Bookmarks you can add later. You can use them as contents or notes by registering the description of pages as the bookmark information.
Mark	You can add these marks later in the PDF data. The information cannot be registered. The page numbers are displayed on the list screen.

- In an i-mode bookmark, the position and the current display status (magnification and the direction of rotation) are also registered. In a mark, only the position is registered.
- i-mode bookmarks or marks may be preset in PDF files.
- i-mode bookmarks or marks can be registered up to 10 items for each (including those preset in the PDF file). Depending on the PDF file, however, fewer i-mode bookmarks or marks can be registered.

- If you view a PDF file on a PC, i-mode bookmarks or marks may not be displayed.

Using bookmarks

- 1 **Display the page to register an i-mode bookmark** ▶ **Select a bookmark**

Using i-mode bookmarks

Registering i-mode bookmarks

- 1 **Display the page to register an i-mode bookmark** ▶ **Select a bookmark**
- 2 **Enter the information (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters)** ▶ **OK**

Displaying i-mode bookmarks

- 1 **Display the page to register an i-mode bookmark** ▶ **Select the i-mode bookmark**

The registered bookmark position in the corresponding page is indicated in the same state (magnification, the direction of rotation) as when registered.

- **Editing: Highlight an i-mode bookmark** ▶ **Enter the information** ▶ **OK**
- **Deleting one item: Highlight an i-mode bookmark** ▶ **Yes**
- **Deleting selected items: Select i-mode bookmarks** ▶ **Yes**
- **Deleting all items: Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Yes**

Using marks

Registering marks

- 1 **Display the page to register a mark** ▶ **A mark is registered and displayed in the center of the current display range.**

Displaying marks

- 1 **Display the page to register a mark** ▶ **Select the mark**
- The registered mark position in the corresponding page is displayed.

- **Deleting one item: Highlight a mark** ▶ **Yes**

- **Deleting selected items: Select marks** ▶ **Yes**

- **Deleting all items: Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Yes**

Setting preferences for PDF Viewer

Settings

Select the display format for the PDF data list. The thumbnail display appears when setting to *Display 12 icons*, and the title display appears when setting to *List view*.

Default **Display 12 icons**

- 1 **Display 12 icons** ▶ **OK** ▶ **1 or 2**

Menu 59

Displaying Word, Excel and PowerPoint files

Document Viewer

Use Document Viewer to display Word, Excel or PowerPoint files saved in *Other* of Data Box.

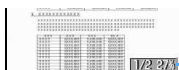
- You can obtain documents using Full Browser to download from websites or via i-mode Mail.
- A document saved in the microSD memory card from a PC can also be displayed.
 - For details about the file name and stored location of documents in the microSD memory card ➡P296
 - To display the document in the microSD memory card ➡P302
- Word 2007, Excel 2007 and PowerPoint 2007 files cannot be viewed.

- 1 **Select a folder**

- *マイフォルダ* (My folder) is registered by default. To create a folder ➡P307
 - To switch to the folder list of the microSD memory card: **OK** on the folder list
- For operations on the microSD memory card ➡P302

2 Select a document

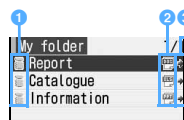
A document is displayed.



Status (page No./total number and display magnification)

Document display screen

Document list screen and available operations



1 Originated

: Full Browser, i-mode Mail

: Data transfer

2 File type

: Word

: Excel

: PowerPoint

: Data with UIM operation restriction

3 File restriction

➔ (blue) : Without file restriction

- To change display names ➔ P309

■ Sending mail with documents attached:

Highlight a document ▶

The mail composition screen appears with the document attached.

- For documents that can be attached to mail ➔ P195

Available operations while displaying documents

- Some operations are disabled during reading of data.

■ Scrolling: ⏮ ⏭

- Hold down the key to scroll continuously.

■ Switching pages:

Page to display	Operation
Previous page	⏮
Next page	⏭
First page	1
Last page	6
Specified page	MENU 1 3 ▶ Enter a page number

■ Changing display magnification:

Function	Operation
Zoom in	3
Zoom out	1
Show the entire page	2

Function	Operation
Fit the page to the screen width	8
Specify magnification	MENU 3 3 ▶ Enter a magnification*1

*1 You cannot display the document at a smaller magnification than showing the entire page.

■ Rotating the display: MENU 4 ▶ 1 - 3

- Three modes of rotation are available: 90 degrees clockwise, 90 degrees counterclockwise, and 180 degrees.
- You can also rotate the display 90 degrees clockwise by pressing 7.

■ Switching between the standard and full-screen displays: *

- In the full-screen display, the guide row is hidden.

■ Switching between show/hide of the status: 0

■ Searching for a character string:

1 5 ▶ Character entry field ▶ Enter a character string (up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters)

- To search for a completely matching word, select *Exact match*.

2 11

Searching is executed and the words matching to the entered character string are highlighted.

- To search the next matching word: 12
- To search the previous matching word: 10
- To end the search: MENU
- To show Help: 11

■ Viewing Help (description of keys): 11

INFORMATION

- Some documents may take some time to appear.
- Documents with a style not supported or complicated design may not be displayed properly.
- You cannot display any document in which the IRM (Information Rights Management) function is set.

Music Playback

How to play music	326
Music Player	326
Saving music data	327
Folders and screens of Music Player	328
Playing music data	330
Managing or using music data	331
Managing the playlist	333
Setting Music Player.....	Settings 334

How to play music

You can enjoy music on your FOMA terminal in the following two ways:

- Playing music on Music Player
You can play Chaku-Uta Full[®] music downloaded from sites and any other music files (WMA files) stored on the microSD memory card which were originally obtained from Internet websites or music CDs.
- Playing music as i-motion
You can play sound-only i-motion files which are obtained in i-mode and saved in Data Box of the FOMA terminal. You can also play such i-motion files from the microSD memory card if you saved them on the card.

This section explains how to play music on Music Player.

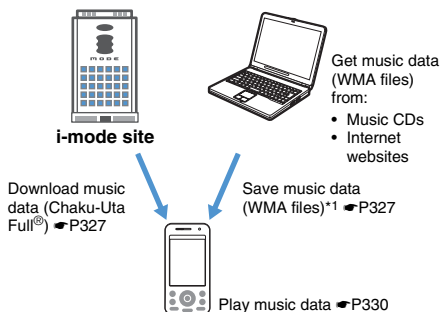
- Playing i-motion ➡P284, P302

INFORMATION

- In this manual, both the Chaku-Uta Full[®] files and the WMA (Windows Media[®] Audio) files are referred to as “music files” or “music data”.

Music Player

Music Player plays Chaku-Uta Full[®] downloaded from sites or WMA files obtained from music CDs or Internet websites via the PC.



*1 To save WMA files, the microSD memory card is required.

Notes on handling of music data

- With the FOMA terminal, you can play WMA files and Chaku-Uta Full[®] files protected by the copyright protection function.
- Before downloading music files from Internet websites, read carefully the terms and conditions of use (permitted/prohibited acts).
- WMA files protected by the copyright protection function are played using the information specific to the FOMA terminal. If the FOMA terminal specific information changes because of failure, repair or changing to another model, the existing WMA files may become unplayable.
- DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for handling Copy Control CDs (CCCDs) or failed conversion of music files into WMA files.
- Music files saved in the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card are for personal use only. You must not infringe on the rights of third parties including copyright and any other intellectual property rights. Music files saved in the FOMA terminal or the microSD memory card must not be copied or moved into other media such as PCs.

Background playing

While you are listening to music by Music Player, you can use the Multitask function to display or create mail or display an i-mode site.

- For details about Multitask combinations ➡P406
- In the following cases, playing pauses and resumes upon completion of a call, communication or function.
 - While dialing, receiving, talking or communicating of a voice/videophone call
 - When a mail or Message R/F is received (in case Display Priority is set to *Show message*)
 - When Check i-mode Message is performed
 - When an alarm sounds to notify that the items saved by Voice Mail Service increases
 - When the time set by Timer has passed or the time set for the alarm clock or schedule reminder arrives
 - When a function that cannot be used together with Music Player (such as camera shooting and downloading i-appli, melody or video/i-motion) is performed
 - During packet communication with a PC connected
- Playing the music may be interrupted if you use multiple functions at the same time.

Saving music data

Downloading Chaku-Uta Full®

- Maximum total size of items saved in the FOMA terminal ➡P429
- Some Chaku-Uta Full® files can be saved to the microSD memory card.
- The downloadable size of a Chaku-Uta Full® file is up to 5 Mbytes.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a Chaku-Uta Full® file

- To stop downloading: (⏏)

2 Save

- To play: *Play*
During play, the following operations are available:
 - Pause/play: (⏸) • Adjust volume: (🔊)
 - Rewind: (⏮) (for over a second)
 - Fast forward: (⏭) (for over a second)
- To display detail information: *File property*
- To cancel saving: *Back ▶ No*

3 Enter a display name (up to 50 one- or two-byte characters) ▶ (Ⓜ)

- By default, the title name and artist name of the Chaku-Uta Full® file are used as a display name in the form of “title name-artist name”.
- When (📁) is indicated in the guide row, press (Ⓜ) and then (Ⓜ) to save it to the microSD memory card.

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete data saved in the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete music files.
- If you stop downloading or the network connection breaks while downloading a Chaku-Uta Full® file, the data is saved incompletely. You can download the file again by selecting it from Music Player. Some Chaku-Uta Full® files may not be downloaded again.

Transferring music data from PC to microSD memory card

Download or obtain WMA files to PC from Internet websites or CDs and transfer them to the microSD memory card. Use Windows Media Player 10 to obtain and transfer WMA files.

- Maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P296
- To transfer WMA files by Windows Media Player 10 to the microSD memory card, the following is required:
 - Operating system of PC: Windows XP Service Pack 2 or later version
 - Windows Media Player 10: Version 10.00.00.3802 or later
- Before connecting your PC to the FOMA terminal, be sure to check the version of Windows Media Player.
- The FOMA USB Cable (optional) is required for connecting the FOMA terminal to PC.
- You can transfer a playlist from your PC. The number of WMA files in a playlist must not exceed 400 if you want to transfer it.
- WMA files cannot be saved in the FOMA terminal.

1 Save WMA files in a PC using Windows Media Player 10

- For details about Windows Media Player 10, refer to Help of Windows Media Player 10.

2 Insert the microSD memory card in the FOMA terminal and change USB Mode Setting to *MTP mode*

- For details about USB Mode Setting ➡P305

■ **Switching the mode to MTP while Music Player is active:** (MENU) (2) on the folder list screen of Music Player ▶ *Yes*

The MTP mode is set and Music Player stops.

3 Activate Windows Media Player 10

4 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable

- For details about connecting a PC to the FOMA terminal ➡P306

5 Transfer WMA files from the PC to the microSD memory card of the FOMA terminal using Windows Media Player 10

6 Remove the FOMA USB Cable after completion of transfer

- For details about removing the FOMA USB Cable ➡P306

Napster® application

You can use the Napster® application to save music files.

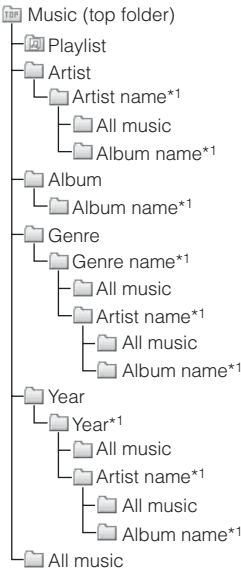
- Download the Napster® application from the web page shown below. You can also access the following web page from the supplied CD-ROM.
<http://www.napster.jp/>
- If you have any questions about the Napster® application, visit the following web page.
<http://www.napster.jp/support/>

INFORMATION

- It is recommended that Windows XP and Windows Media Player 10 be updated to the latest versions. Without the latest versions, some problems may occur such as slow operation or display of the transferred WMA files.
- WMA files saved in the microSD memory card by another FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on your FOMA terminal.
- Music Player in D704i does not support AAC format files that can be played by Music Player in the D902iS or earlier models of FOMA D Series. However, such files can be played on D704i if they are saved in the *Other movie* folder of Data Box in the microSD memory card. When you copy such files to the microSD memory card, specify the copy destination as PRIVATE¥DOCOMO¥MMFILE ¥MUDxxx, where xxx is 001 to 999 (➡P296). When you update the information of the microSD memory card after copying, the copied files are displayed. However, files with a name other than "MMFxxxx" (xxxx is 0001 to 9999) or with an extension ".m4a" cannot be displayed or played even if they are copied to the microSD memory card.

Folders and screens of Music Player

Folder structure of Music Player



*1 The name or year assigned to the music file is used as the folder name. If no name or year is assigned, a folder named *Unknown artist* or *Unknown year* is displayed.

Description of folders

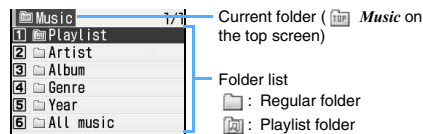
Folder	Description
Music	Top folder of Music Player. The folder list of this folder is displayed when you activate Music Player for the first time or when the information at the end of the previous playing does not exist.
Playlist	Playlists are saved into this folder. ➡P333
Artist/Album/Genre/Year	Music files are sorted into folders according to the artist name, album name, genre and year. Selecting a folder displays the music files sorted in it.
All music	All the music data are displayed.

INFORMATION

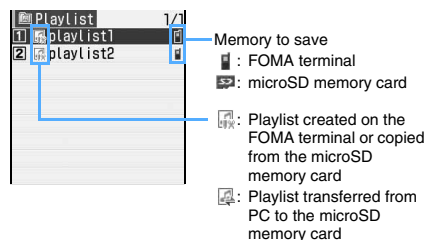
- The actual structure of folders saved in the FOMA terminal memory or microSD memory card differs from the folder structure displayed by Music Player.

Viewing the Music Player screens

The folder list screen



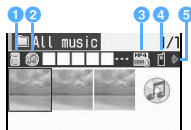
The playlist list screen



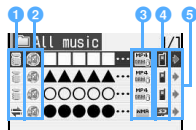
The music list screen

Each time you press , the thumbnail display and title display are switched.

Thumbnail display



Title display



1 Originated

 : i-mode  : Transferred from PC

2 Status/replay restriction

 : No restriction
 : Partially downloaded data
 : Restricted by the number of times*1
 : Restricted by expiration date*1
 : Restricted by period*1
*1 Displayed only for Chaku-Uta Full®

3 File format and Digital Rights Management (DRM)

 : Chaku-Uta Full®, DoCoMo
 : WMA file, Windows Media Digital Rights Management (WMDRM)
 : WMA file without DRM

4 Memory to save

 : FOMA terminal
 : microSD memory card

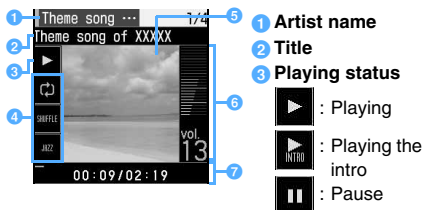
5 File restriction

◆ (gray): With file restriction

- In the thumbnail display, the jacket images included in the music files are shown. The following images appear depending on the music file.

-  : Data with no jacket image
-  : Partially downloaded data
-  : Data with UIM operation restriction

The player screen



4 Mode display area P334

- Repeat play

 : Play all  : Play one

 : OFF

- Shuffle

 : ON  : OFF

- Equalizer

 : Normal  : Bass1
 : Bass2  : Rock
 : Jazz  : Vocal
 : Classic  : Pop
 : In-a-train

5 Jacket image

If the music file contains a CD jacket image, the image is displayed.

6 Volume

7 Play progress bar and the playing time/total playing time

INFORMATION

- The name of a music file on a playlist changes to "..." when you delete the file registered to the playlist of the FOMA terminal or remove the microSD memory card containing the file. When you delete a music file, remove it also from the playlist. When you remove the microSD memory card, reinserting the card makes the registered music names appear again, thus enabling you to play the music.

Playing music data

- Use the optional Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set. However, you cannot operate Music Player by the switch of the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set.
- To play a saved Chaku-Uta Full[®] music, it is necessary to insert the same UIM that was used for downloading it from a site. Some types of Chaku-Uta Full[®] cannot be played on a different model of the FOMA terminal.
- Note that Music Player consumes a lot of battery power when being used.

Playing continuously music files of a folder

1

The top screen appears.

- If you stopped playing music while music data was being played or paused, activating Music Player next time displays the player screen and plays the stopped music from the beginning. If the information at the end of the previous playing does not exist, however, because of turning off and on the power of the FOMA terminal or the like, the top screen appears.

2 Select a folder or playlist

3 Select a music file to start playing

The selected music file starts to play.

- The following operations are available.

 : Pause/play

 : Adjust volume

 : Return to the beginning of the current music file or return to the previous one

 : Move to the next music file

 (for over a second): Rewind

 (for over a second): Fast forward

- Pressing  during playing returns you to the music data list without interrupting the playing, and you can select a music file. To return to the player screen, press  in the music data list.
- The Enter key lights or flashes when playing starts or stops. You cannot set the Enter key not to light or flash. Also you cannot change the lighting pattern and color.
- The music stops if you display a submenu on a screen other than the player screen during playing.

■ Playing the music file with a replay restriction:

A confirmation screen appears. The content of the confirmation screen is the same as that for i-motion. Within an expiration period, however, the music file is played with no confirmation screen appearing. 

■ Downloading the remaining data of a Chaku-Uta Full[®] file that was partially downloaded before: Select the Chaku-Uta Full[®] file Yes

Music Player stops and downloading starts.

- Partially downloaded Chaku-Uta Full[®] files cannot be played.
- If the playable period has expired or the replay expiration date has passed, the remaining data cannot be downloaded. A confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the file. Select *Yes* to delete it.
- If an error that will disable re-downloading is detected, the partially downloaded Chaku-Uta Full[®] file may be deleted.

4 to stop playing

- Pressing  in the top screen stops Music Player.

INFORMATION

- When the remaining battery power falls below Level 2, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to continue playing.
- If the microSD memory card is not inserted, pressing      cannot start Music Player.
- To enable playing of a WMA file that cannot be played because the expiration period was reached or cannot be confirmed, use a PC to check that the data is within the expiration period. Then connect the FOMA terminal to the PC and synchronize them.

Playing continuously only the beginning of music files

Intro Playing

This function sequentially plays only the beginning part (for about 7 seconds) of each music file.

1 Highlight a music file in the music data list



The intro playing starts from the selected music file.

- To switch to the normal play mode, press  during intro playing.

Managing or using music data

Moving music files

If the Chaku-Uta Full[®] music downloaded from a site is compatible with Movable Contents, it can be moved between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card.

- You cannot move any item of Chaku-Uta Full[®] that is not permitted by the data provider. Refer to View Detail Info to check whether the music item is movable. ➡P332
- You cannot move WMA file to the FOMA terminal.

Example

When moving music data from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card

1 Highlight a music file ➡



- To move selected items:     ➡
Select music files ➡ 
- To move all items:    
- This operation is unavailable for the music files of a playlist.

■ Moving from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal: Highlight a music file

➡    

- To move selected items:     ➡
Select music files ➡ 
- To move all items:    

2 Yes

INFORMATION

- If a music file that is set as the ring alert is moved to the microSD memory card, the ring alert setting returns to the default setting.

Deleting music files

1 Highlight a music file in the music data list

➡   

- To delete selected items:    ➡
Select music files ➡ 
- To delete all items:    ➡ Enter the terminal security code
- This operation is unavailable for the music files of a playlist.

2 Yes

INFORMATION

- If you delete music data that is set as ring alert, etc., such setting returns to its default.

Changing the order of music files on the screen

Sort

The order of music files in the music data list can be changed.

 By:  Order: 

1 in the music data list

- This operation is unavailable for the music files of a playlist.

2 Set each item ➡

By : Set the sorting method.

Order : Set the sorting order of data.

Setting a music file as ring alert

Music data can be set as ring alert for voice call, videophone call, mail, chat mail or Message R/F.

- Ring alert can be set in two ways: full song ring tone and point ring tone. Full song ring tone enables the whole of a music to be set as ring alert. Point ring tone enables a predetermined part of a music to be set as ring alert.
- WMA files, music files with replay restriction or partially downloaded music files cannot be set as ring alert.
- Some music files cannot be set as ring alert while others can be set as either the full song ring tone or point ring tone. Refer to View Detail Info to check whether the music file can be set as ring alert.

Example Setting full song ring tone

1 Highlight a music file in the music data list

➡   ➡  - 

2

- When you select a music file in the microSD memory card, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to move it to the FOMA terminal. Selecting *Yes* moves the music file to the FOMA terminal. Selecting *No* disables the setting of ring alert.
- To set as contact alert (call, mail): Select the other party from the phonebook ➡ Confirm the contents ➡ 

- **Setting point ring tone:** (2) ▶ **Select a part of a music**

- To play and check: Select the part to play from the list ▶ (11)

Viewing/editing detail information

View/Edit Detail Info

Viewing detail information

1 Highlight a music file in the music data list



- To switch between the music information, copyright information, file information or availability information: (3)
- To change the detail information (for Chaku-Uta Full® only) : (11)
- If the file information contains a URL, press (MENU) on the file information screen and select *Yes* to connect to the site.
- Some items of information are different between Chaku-Uta Full® and WMA files.
- The track number of the music information indicates the music number and the total number of music files in the album.
- The file type of Chaku-Uta Full® is indicated as *Music*.
- The *Permit* screen allows you to check the availability of following items.

For Chaku-Uta Full®

Item	Description
<i>File restriction</i>	Whether the music file can be sent out of the FOMA terminal
<i>Replay restriction</i>	Details of replay restriction
<i>Full song ring tone</i>	Whether the whole music can be set as ring alert, etc.
<i>Point ring tone</i>	Whether a part of the music can be set as ring alert, etc.
<i>Savable Jacket image</i>	Whether the jacket image can be saved to the FOMA terminal
<i>Savable Image</i>	Whether the image for the standby display can be saved to the FOMA terminal
<i>Savable Lyric</i>	Whether the lyrics can be saved to the FOMA terminal
<i>Moved to the microSD (Moved to the phone)</i>	Whether the music can be moved to the microSD memory card or the FOMA terminal

For WMA files

Item	Description
<i>DRM</i>	Whether or not Digital Rights Management is applied

INFORMATION

- The detail information can also be displayed by pressing (MENU) (1) on the player screen. However, you cannot change the information.

Changing detail information

- The detail information of WMA files cannot be changed.

1 Highlight a music file in the music data list



2 Set each item ▶ (11)

Display name :

Enter the name to be displayed in the music data list (up to 50 one- or two-byte characters).

Title :

Enter the title to be displayed on the player screen (up to 128 one- or two-byte characters)

Artist/Album/Genre/Comment :

Up to 128 one- or two-byte characters can be entered.

Year/Track number/Total track number :

Enter a 4-digit number.

- When you select *Auto create disp name*, the display name changes to "title name-artist name".
- When you select *Back to original* for each item, the setting returns to the default when the music file was downloaded.

Displaying and saving images of music data

If music data contains an image for a jacket, the standby display or lyrics, you can display the image and save it in your FOMA terminal.

- Images in JPEG and GIF format can be displayed. The maximum number of images that can be displayed is 1 jacket image, 2 images for standby display and 7 images of lyrics.
- Depending on the type of music data, you cannot save the image even if you can display it.
- For a WMA file, only the jacket image embedded in the data can be displayed. You cannot save the image.
- The image is saved in the *i-mode* folder in *My Picture*.

1 Highlight a music file in the music data list



The image is displayed.

- If there are multiple images, use to display the previous or next image.
- To display in the full-screen mode: while displaying an image
 - To quit the full-screen display:
- To save images: while displaying an image

Deleting all music files

Delete All Music

This function deletes all music files and playlists saved in the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card at a time.

1 1 on the top screen ► Enter the terminal security code ► Yes

INFORMATION

- When you delete all music files, the WM folder and the WM_SYSTEM folder of the microSD memory card are deleted together with the data contained. Note that the data not used by Music Player is also deleted.

Managing the playlist

In the playlist, you can register the order of playing music files. Register your favorite choices among the music files stored in the FOMA terminal or the microSD memory card. The playlist plays them one after another sequentially.

- The maximum number of playlists that can be saved and the maximum number of music files per playlist are shown below.

Memory to save	Maximum number of playlists that can be saved	Maximum number of music files per playlist
FOMA terminal	20	100
microSD memory card	100	400

- On the FOMA terminal you can save the playlists created on the FOMA terminal or copied from the microSD memory card.
- You can transfer the playlists created by your PC to the microSD memory card together with music files.
- You cannot save playlists to the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal. You cannot also

edit (register/unregister or sort music files or change playlist names) the playlists in the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal.

- Partially downloaded music files cannot be added to a playlist.

Creating a playlist

Creating an empty playlist

1 Top screen ► Playlist ► 1

- If there is no playlist at all, selecting *Playlist* displays a confirmation screen asking whether to create a playlist. Select *Yes* and go to Step 2.

2 Enter a display name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ►

Creating a playlist after selecting music files to be added

1 Highlight a music file in the music data list



- This operation is unavailable for the music files of a playlist.

■ Adding selected items: 3 1 2

► Select music files ►

■ Adding all items: 3 1 3

2 Enter a display name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ►

INFORMATION

- When the number of playlists exceeds the maximum allowable number, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete saved playlists. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete playlists.

Adding music files to a playlist

1 Highlight a music file in the music data list



- This operation is unavailable for the music files of a playlist.

■ Adding selected items: 3 2 2

► Select music files ►

■ Adding all items: 3 2 3

2 Select a playlist to add music files

Selected music files are added to the end of music files in the playlist.

Editing a playlist

1 Top screen ▶ Playlist

■ Changing the playlist name:

- ① Highlight a playlist ▶  ④
- ② Enter a display name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ 

2 Select a playlist

A list of music files in the playlist is displayed.

- If the playlist contains no music file, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to register some. To register a music file, select *Yes*, select a folder, select a music file and press .

3 Edit a playlist

■ Adding music data: ③ ① ① ▶

Select a folder ▶ Select a music file

- To register selected items:
 ③ ① ② ▶ Select a folder ▶
Select music files ▶ 
- To add all music files in a folder:
 ③ ① ③ ▶ Select a folder ▶
Unselect music files to exclude ▶ 

■ Unregistering music files from a playlist:

- Only the registration of music files is deleted from the playlist. The music files remain in your FOMA terminal or microSD memory card.

① Highlight a music file ▶ ③ ②

- To unregister selected files:
 ③ ② ② ▶ Select music files
▶ 

- To unregister all files:  ③ ② ③

② *Yes*

■ Sorting music files:

- ①  ③ ③
- ② Highlight a music file to be moved ▶
 or  to move
- ③  after the sorting is completed

Deleting a playlist

1 Top screen ▶ Playlist ▶ Highlight a playlist ▶ ③ ▶ *Yes*

Copying a playlist

1 Top screen ▶ Playlist ▶ Highlight a playlist ▶ ②

- A confirmation screen appears when you copy a playlist from the microSD memory card.
- The copied playlist is saved in the FOMA terminal.
- When you copy the playlist from the microSD memory card, up to 100 information items registered for the music files can be copied.

Setting Music Player

Settings

Default Show thumbnails: No Volume: Level13
Repeat play: Play all
Shuffle: OFF Equalizer: Normal

1 ⑧ in the music data list

- To operate in the music data list of a playlist:
 ⑤

2 Set each item ▶

Show thumbnails :

Set *Yes* to show the thumbnail display or *No* to show the title display.

Volume :

Set the volume of playing music data.

Repeat play :

Select from *OFF*, *Play one* and *Play all*.

Shuffle :

If you set *ON*, the music data is played in random order.

- If repeat play is set to other than *OFF*, shuffle play is not available.

Equalizer :

- Setting *Bass1* stresses the low-pitched sounds.
- Setting *Bass2(headset)* makes up for deep bass, which tends to be insufficient when you use the headset. When the headset is not connected, the effect is the same as *Normal*.
- Setting *Rock*, *Jazz*, *Vocal*, *Classic*, or *Pop* causes the music data to be played according to the setting suitable for the property of each genre.
- Setting *In-a-train* reduces sound leaks when you are listening through an earphone.

Other Convenient Functions

Multiaccess	Multiaccess 336
Multitask	Multitask 336
Having an edit screen displayed when the FOMA terminal is opened	Edit by Slide 337
Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time	Auto Power ON/OFF 337
Alerting with alarms after the specified time period has passed....	Timer 338
Ringing the alarm clock at the set time	Alarm Clock 338
Setting to turn power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm	Alarm Auto Power ON 340
Managing schedules	Scheduler 340
Registering often-used functions	Custom Menu 347
Using Speed Menu	Speed Menu 349
Registering your own name and mail address	Own Number 350
Recording the voice and image	Voice Memo/Video Memo 351
Checking the call duration and the call cost	Call Duration/Call Cost 352
Resetting the call cost automatically	Reset Call Cost 353
Setting to notify the limit of call cost	Call Cost Limit 353
Using Calculator	Calculator 354
Composing notes	Notepad 354
Using electronic dictionaries	356
Using the Earphone/Microphone with Switch	Earphone/Microphone with Switch 357
Reducing the start-up time after power-on	Quick Start-up 359
Checking current settings of functions	Confirm Settings 359
Resetting functions	Reset 359
Deleting registered data collectively	Delete All Data 359

Multiaccess

Multiaccess

Multiaccess enables you to use 3 functions (the voice call, packet communication, SMS) at the same time.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- The following functions can be used simultaneously:
 - Voice call: 1 line
 - i-mode, i-appli, i-mode Mail or packet communication with PC connected: 1 line
 - SMS: 1 line
- Multiaccess combinations ◀P404

INFORMATION

- During Multiaccess, you are charged separately for each communication.

Operations available during Multiaccess

Receiving a voice call during communication

Example Receiving a voice call during i-mode

1 A voice call arrives during i-mode

- The screen displayed when a voice call is received depends on the setting of Priority Comm Mode.

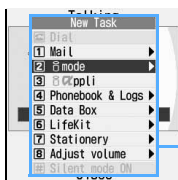
2

- To end the call:  on the talking screen
- To quit the site display:  ► Switch to the site screen ►  ► *Yes*

Performing communication during a voice call

Example Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

1 during a voice call ►



- To quit the site display:  on the site screen ► *Yes*
- To end the call:  ► Switch to the talking screen ► 

New Task menu

Example Sending i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 during a voice call ►

When transmission of i-mode Mail is completed, the talking screen returns.

- To quit the mail composition:  on the mail composition screen
- To end the call:  ► Switch to the talking screen ► 

Multitask

Multitask

Multitask allows you to execute multiple functions at the same time and perform operations by switching screens.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- Up to 2 functions can be performed simultaneously. However, the function of *Dial*, *Own number* or *Silent mode ON/OFF* can be activated even when 2 other functions are already active.
- Some functions may be restricted or unable to start simultaneously with one another.
- Multitask combinations ◀P406

Executing a new function

Example Displaying/registering a schedule during a voice call

1 during a voice call ►

2 View or register a schedule

- To quit the schedule:  on the schedule screen
- To end the call:  ► Switch to the talking screen ► 

INFORMATION

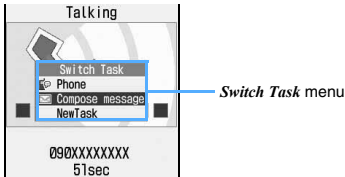
- If many functions are executed at once, for example, a mail arrives while video or animation is being played or the camera is operated, the image displayed on the screen may not appear smoothly or the sound may be disrupted during play.
- If you press  in the first level of the *New Task* menu, *Own number* is displayed. However, it may not be displayed depending on the current function or condition.

Switching functions to operate

Pressing while you are using multiple functions, the *Switch Task* menu appears, which allows you to switch screens and perform your desired operation.

Example Switching to the mail composition screen during a voice call

1 during a voice call ► *Compose message*



- To return to the talking screen: ► *Phone* from the *Switch Task* menu
- You can start a new function by pressing in the *Switch Task* menu to display the *New Task* menu. Press again to return to the *Switch Task* menu.

INFORMATION

- The item names displayed in the *Switch Task* menu may differ from the menu item names.

Quitting all running operations

You can quit all functions running in Multitask at a time.

1 during Multitask ► *Yes*

Having an edit screen displayed when the FOMA terminal is opened

Edit by Slide

If you set this function to *ON*, you can automatically display the mail composition screen, schedule edit screen and other screens when you open your FOMA terminal.

Default ON (all)

1 ► **Set each item** ►



- Setting *ON* makes the following actions for each item:

Inbox :

Displays the quick reply message selection screen when opening the FOMA terminal from the received mail list screen or the received mail view screen.

- Displays the mail composition screen for reply when a quick reply message is not registered or Quick Reply Setting is set to *OFF*.

Outbox :

Displays the mail composition screen for editing by opening the FOMA terminal when the sent mail list/view screen is displayed.

Unsent message :

Displays the mail composition screen for editing by opening the FOMA terminal when the unsent mail list is displayed.

Chat mail :

Displays the screen where you can enter the message by opening the FOMA terminal when the chat mail screen is displayed.

Schedule :

Displays the schedule registration screen by opening the FOMA terminal when the calendar screen/day view screen is displayed. The edit screen is displayed by opening the FOMA terminal when the schedule details screen is displayed.

Notepad :

Displays the notepad edit screen by opening the FOMA terminal when the list of notes or the notepad view screen is displayed.

Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time

Auto Power ON/OFF

- Default** ● Auto power ON: OFF
● Auto power OFF: OFF

Example Setting Auto Power ON

1

■ **Setting Auto Power OFF:**

2 **Set each item** ►

Auto power ON :

Set or cancel Auto Power ON.

Time :

Set the time to automatically turn the power on.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with zero(0).

Repeat :

Set Auto Power ON to repeat.

INFORMATION

- Even if Auto Power OFF is set to **ON**, when the specified time arrives while the FOMA terminal is in any mode except standby, the power is not turned off. The power is turned off after the running function completes each job. However, if the specified time arrives while the terminal security code entry screen is displayed following the standby display or the PIN1 code or PIN2 code entry screen is displayed when the FOMA terminal is turned on, the power is turned off.
- Besides turning off the FOMA terminal, set Auto Power ON to **OFF** in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Alerting with alarms after the specified time period has passed

Timer

1 Enter time period ▶ or

The countdown screen of the timer appears and countdown starts.

- Enter the period from 1 to 60 minutes. For 1 to 9 minutes, do not enter the preceding zero(0).
- Countdown continues even if a call arrives or  is pressed to start another function during countdown.
- If you press  or  during countdown, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to stop countdown. Countdown continues even while the confirmation screen is displayed.

After the specified time has passed

1 The alarm sounds



The alarm (アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)) sounds at the volume set for the call alert volume, and the Enter key flashes. If the vibrator is set for incoming calls in Vibrator Setting, it operates according to the setting.

2 to stop the alarm

The standby display reappears.

- Also the alarm stops when a minute passed without any operation or any key or button other than  or  is pressed.

Alarm indication while another function is being used

Function	Alarm indication
During a call	A warning tone sounds. The Enter key does not flash and the vibrator does not work.
On-hold	The above operation takes place after the end of the on-hold state.
During data transfer*1, while dialing, calling, receiving or terminating a call	The alarm is issued after the end of the operation in the left column. • If the schedule data is received via data communication, the schedule does not operate when the scheduled date and times comes.

*1 Sending/Receiving by packet communication is excluded.

Ringling the alarm clock at the set time

Alarm Clock

Setting the alarm clock time and sound

- When Alarm Clock is on, the default settings are as follows; **Time: 00:00, Repeat: None, Snooze: ON**
Alarm sound: Terminal setting, Volume: Terminal setting, Vibrate alert: Terminal setting, Light pattern: Terminal setting, Light color: Terminal setting.
- Up to 9 alarms can be set.

Default not set

1 ▶ -

-  is displayed on the left of the title of the alarm set.

■ Canceling: Highlight a title from the alarm clock list

- To set the canceled alarm again: Repeat the same procedure

2 Set each item

Time :

Enter the time to set an alarm.

Repeat :

Select the repeat setting.

- If **None** is set, the alarm is activated only once.
- If **Every day** is set, the alarm is activated everyday.
- If you select **Day of week**, select **Day/Week** to select the days of the week and press .

Title :

Up to 14 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters can be entered.

Snooze :

- When **Snooze** operation is set to **ON**, the snooze operation repeats 1-minute ringing and 4-minute interval until 30 minutes pass. ➡P339

3 to switch to **Set sound screen** ▶ **Set each item**

Alarm sound :

Set the alarm clock sound to be issued at the specified time.

- When **i-motion**, **Melody**, or **Music** is selected, set the alarm clock sound. Setting music data ➡P99
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting ➡P99
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the alarm sound conforms to the setting of Alarm Clock Sound of Sound Setting.

Volume :

Set the volume.

- For details of operation when **Set** is selected ➡P62
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the alarm volume conforms to the setting of Adjust Volume.

4 to switch to **Set others screen** ▶ **Set each item**

Vibrate alert :

Set the vibration used at the set time.

- If you select **Select**, select a vibrator pattern.
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the vibration conforms to the setting of Vibrator Setting.

Light pattern :

Set the lighting pattern of the Enter key for the set time.

- When you select **Select**, select a lighting pattern.
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the lighting pattern conforms to the setting of Light Alert Setting.

Light color :

Set the color of the Enter key for the set time.

- When you select **Select**, select a lighting color.
- If you select **Terminal setting**, the lighting color conforms to the setting of Light Alert Setting.

5



 or  (when a schedule alarm is also set) appears on the standby display.

INFORMATION

- If you delete the data specified as an alarm clock sound, **Terminal setting** is assumed.
- When you select **Sync melody** in **Light pattern**, the Enter key may not light /flash, depending on which melody you selected.

When the set time comes

1 The alarm clock rings



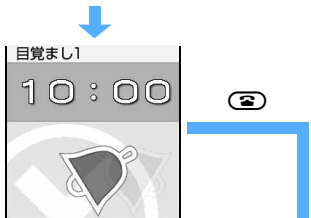
The alarm clock operates according to the settings. If video/i-motion is set for the alarm clock, it is displayed.

- If more than 1 alarm is set for the same time, the one with the lowest item number in the alarm clock list takes effect.
- For alarm indication while another function is being used ➡P338

2 to stop the alarm

■ When **Snooze** is set to **ON**:

When the set time comes



- Leave the alarm clock ringing for 1 minute
- Press any keys other than , 

Snooze operation starts*1
(The alarm sound stops)

Return to the screen
before the alarm rings

*1 If you do not turn off the alarm clock, the alarm sound continues for 1-minute after 4-minute pause until 30 minutes pass.

- When you receive a call while the alarm clock is ringing, the snooze operation starts.

■ When Snooze is set to OFF:

When the set time comes



- Leave the alarm clock ringing for 1 minute
- Press any keys other than or to stop the alarm.

- When you receive a call while the alarm clock is ringing, the alarm sound stops.

When alarm clock does not ring at the set time

- When All Lock or PIM Lock is activated, the alarm clock does not ring.
- When a Chara-den image is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds later.
- When an alarm clock and a schedule alarm are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock operates first and then the schedule alarm is issued. After the schedule alarm operation is finished, the snooze operation is continued when you set the snooze of the alarm clock to **ON**. When you set it to **OFF**, the screen displayed while alarm clock sound stops appears.

Setting to turn power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm

Alarm Auto Power ON

Set to automatically turn the power on and issue the schedule alarm or alarm clock sound in case the power is off at the date and time specified by Scheduler or Alarm Clock.

Default OFF

1 8 6 1 5 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- Set this function to **OFF** in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.
- If Alarm Auto Power ON and PIN1 Code ON/OFF are set to **ON**, when the set date and time for the schedule alarm or alarm clock arrives, the power is turned on and the following operation starts:
 - For TV program schedules, if **Alarm before time** is set to **15 sec.**, **30 sec.** or **45 sec.**, an alarm sounds after the PIN1 code entry screen appears. If you enter the PIN1 code before the alarm starts to sound, the standby display appears and then the alarm sounds.
 - For the schedule, the alarm clock or TV program schedule for which **Alarm before time** is set to other than the above, an alarm sounds and then the PIN1 code entry screen appears after pressing to stop the alarm.
 - The default melody sounds as the schedule alarm or alarm clock sound even when the downloaded melody, i-motion or music is set for the alarm sound. The default melody is アラーム・女性ボイス(Alarm, female voice) for the schedule alarm and アラーム・メロディ(Alarm, melody) for the alarm clock. As for TV program schedules, the default melody, which is アラーム・女性ボイス, sounds as well. However, the downloaded melody, i-motion or music will be used for the alarm if you enter the PIN1 code before the alarm starts to sound.

Menu 71

Managing schedules

Scheduler

Save various schedules, such as business meetings or TV program schedules. You will be notified of it with the display and alarm sound at the set date and time.

Displaying the calendar

Schedules can be displayed from the calendar screen.

1 (for over a second)

2007/12						
Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
25	26	27	28	29	30	1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31	1	2	3	4	5

Item icon

The calendar screen appears.

The date is displayed in pink for the current day, blue for Saturday, and red for Sunday and national holidays (the displayed color depends on the setting of Color Scheme).

- For a day with multiple schedules set, the item icon for the schedule planned for the earliest hour is indicated. Even if the time of the item set at the earliest time of the day is passed, the item icon set next is not displayed.
- Press to move the date. Pressing displays the day view screen.
- Pressing displays the previous month and displays the next month.
- The calendar appears as the display format which you quit last time.

■ Specifying a particular day to display:

in the calendar screen ►

Enter the year, month, and day

• To return to today:

• In the day view screen, press

. Pressing restores the current date display.

INFORMATION

- The national holidays on the calendar are based on the law to amend the part of the Law Concerning National Holidays (law no. 43, May 20, 2005) (as of July 2007). However, the Vernal Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may be different from the date in a calendar because they are based on the announcement from an official gazette on February 1 of the previous year. The above law went into effect on January 2007, however, the date and the name of some national holidays and substitute holidays before the end of 2006 are displayed as they are displayed after amendment to the law.
- The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.

Setting display style for the calendar

Calendar View Mode

Default Scroll mode: Monthly mode
Display mode: Normal mode

1 (for over a second) ►
► Set each item ►

Scroll mode :

Set the calendar display mode when you move between dates by pressing .

- Set *Monthly mode* to switch the display every month and set to *Slide mode* to scroll the screen for each week.

Display mode :

Set the beginning of the week.

- Set *Normal mode* to be Sunday and set *Business mode* to be Monday.

Setting days off

Day Off Setting

You can set days off from the office or school. They can be set by specifying the date or day of the week.

- The maximum number of items that can be registered (by specifying dates) ►P430

Example Setting days off by specifying dates

1 (for over a second)

2 Highlight the date ►

The color of the date specified as a day off changes.

- To set a day off yearly: Highlight the date to set to days off ►

■ Canceling: Highlight the date ►

- To cancel all:

■ Setting days off by specifying the day of the week:

① ► -

- *Reset* is indicated in the guide row when a day of the week other than Sunday is selected or the selection of Sunday is canceled. Pressing restores the default setting.

②

- If you register the calendar without selecting the day of the week, it returns to the default state.

Setting national holidays

Holiday Setting

- The maximum number of items that can be registered ►P430

1 (for over a second) ►

2

■ Changing: Select the holiday after Step 1

► Go to Step 3

■ Deleting: Highlight the holiday after Step 1

► ► Yes

- You cannot delete holidays set by default.

3 Set each item ►

Holiday :

Enter the holiday name (up to 22 one-byte or 11 two-byte characters).

- You cannot change the holiday name set by default.

Mark on calendar :

Specify whether to display the set holiday.

- If *ON* is set, the color of the day set to the holiday is changed and the name of the holiday which you highlight is displayed next to the date in the calendar screen. In the day view screen,  and the name of the holiday is displayed.

Date :

Enter a date to set as a holiday.

- To change the date of holiday set by default, select **Change** and enter the date.

Registering the schedule

You can register multiple schedules for the same day.

- The maximum number of items that can be registered P430
- To register TV program schedules P263

1 (for over a second)

2 Highlight the date on which you want to register the schedule

- In the day view screen, also press .

3 Set each item

things Main(New) Select	
Schedule	
All day	OFF
Start time	2007/12/05(Wed) 10:00
End time	2007/12/05(Wed) 10:00
Note	

(Item icon) :

Select an icon.

- The selected icon is indicated on the schedule heading.

Schedule (Description input column) :

The description equivalent for the selected icon is displayed. Change the description as required (up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters).

- The entered description is not changed if you replace the icon by another after changing the description.

All day :

Set whether to set the schedule to a day long event without specifying the time.

- If *ON* is set, the time and date display of the schedule is marked with *AllDay* on the day view screen. If *ON* is set for the long-term schedule, the date is followed by *AllDay*.

Start time :

Enter a start date and time for the schedule.

- You can set dates up to December 31, 2060.
- You cannot set the time if you set *All day* to *ON*.

End time :

Enter an end date and time for the schedule.

- If you set this later than the start date (Long-term schedule),  is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen. Also,  appears under the item icon on the day view and schedule details screens.

Note :

Enter schedule details (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters).

4 to switch to **Select members screen**

5 <Select member list> **Select members to register**

- Up to 5 members can be registered. You can make a call and send mail.
- The first phone number, mail address or URL in the phonebook data is registered.

Deleting: Highlight the member

6 to switch to **Reminder screen** **Set each item**

Alarm on time (Schedule alarm) :

Set whether to sound an alarm.

- If you select *Yes* and select *i-motion*, *Melody* or *Music*, set the alarm sound. Setting music data P99
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting P99
- If you select *Yes* and *Terminal setting*, the alarm conforms to the setting of Schedule Reminder.

Alarm in advance :

Set whether to sound an alarm prior to the scheduled start time.

- The alarm sound selection method is the same as for *Alarm on time*.

Alarm before time :

Set how many minutes before the scheduled start time you want the alarm to sound.

7 to switch to **Other settings screen** **Set each item**

Repeat :

Set the details of the repeating schedule.

- When you set a 31st day or February 29 in a leap year as the schedule start date and **Every month** or **Every year** is selected in the repeat setting, the schedule repeating date becomes the last day for the month without the specified date (that is, 30th or February 28).
- If **None** is selected, the schedule alarm is activated only once.
- If **Day of week** is selected, select **Day/Week** field. And select a day of the week when the alarm is sounded, then press .
- When you set a repeat for the schedule (Repeat schedule),  is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen. However, the item icon appears only on the first repeating date on the calendar. Also,  appears under the item icon on the day view and schedule details screens.

Image :

Set the image to be displayed on the schedule alarm screen.

- When you select **Yes**, select **Image**, and then select an image. Flash movies cannot be set for images.
- If **No** is selected, the default image is displayed.

8

- When a schedule set with an alarm or advance alarm is registered,  or  (when an alarm clock is also set) is indicated on the standby display.

Registering a schedule from the standby display

1 Enter the date and time (8 digits) to register schedule

The schedule registration screen is displayed.

Example: For 3 p.m. on December 5: Enter "12051500"

- If you enter the hour and minute in 4 digits without the date, the registration screen for the current date appears. However, if you enter hour and minute earlier than the current time, the registration screen for the next day appears.

2 Register the schedule

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Registering the schedule" P342

INFORMATION

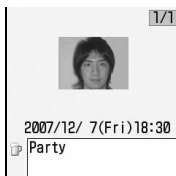
- If you delete the data specified as a schedule alarm or alarm in advance (video/i-motion, melody or music), **Terminal setting** is assumed.

- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of the contents of Scheduler.

Schedules can be saved using the microSD memory card (P299). The DoCoMo keitai datalink and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) can be used to send and save the data to the PC.

When the set time comes

1 The alarm sounds



Schedule alarm screen

The schedule alarm operates according to the settings. If an image or video/i-motion is set for the schedule alarm, it is displayed. If a created animation is set for the image, the first frame is displayed.

2 to stop the alarm

- The alarm stops when a minute has passed without any operation or any key or button other than  or  is pressed. The displayed screen depends on the setting as follows:

Setting	Display
Image	Set image
Video/i-motion	First frame

- When multiple schedules are set for the same date/time, you can check other schedules by  after stopping the alarm.
- Press  after the alarm stops and then schedule details screen appears. You can change the contents of the schedule. Follow Step 3 in "Checking the schedule". P344
- For alarm indication while another function is being used P338
- The schedule does not operate when Privacy Mode is on (with **Schedule** set to **Authorized access**). When Secret Attribute is set, you need to set Secret Mode to enable the schedule. If the schedule alarm is not issued at the set date/time in any cases other than the above, see "When alarm clock does not ring at the set time". P340

INFORMATION

- The alarm sounds at the volume set by **Schedule reminder** of Adjust Volume.
- If a schedule alarm is set in Light Alert Setting or Vibrator Setting, lighting and vibration occur according to the settings.

- An alarm in advance, when set, sounds before the schedule start time.
- When you set schedule with *All day*, the alarm operates at 00:00 on the set date.

Setting defaults for the schedule alarm

Reminder Option

- If you change the defaults, it does not affect the settings of the registered schedules.

Default all Alarm:Yes

1 (for over a second) ► 6 5

► Set each item ►

Set by scheduler :

Set the default values of the schedule alarm for registering schedules from the calendar screen and *Booking program list* of 1Seg.

Set by quick-schedule :

Set the default of the schedule alarm for registering schedules from the standby display.

Checking the schedule

1 (for over a second)

- **Displaying TV program schedules only:**

 3 1 on the calendar screen

The TV program schedule list is displayed.

For the TV program schedule list ►P264

- In the day view screen, press  4 1.

- **Displaying schedules for the specific item only (Display by type):**

①  3 3 on the calendar screen

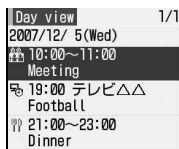
- To show all items:  3 2 on the calendar screen

- In the day view screen, press  4 3. To restore the all items display, press  4 2.

② **Select an item icon**

The selected item icon appears on the upper right of the calendar screen and day view screen. Only the schedules for which the icon is set are displayed.

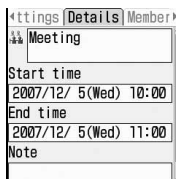
2 Select the date of the schedule



Day view screen

- Pressing  in the day view screen switches dates.

3 Select the schedule to check



Details screen

- **Changing:**

①  on the schedule details screen

- On the day view screen, highlight a schedule and press  2.

② **Change the schedule data** ►  ► Yes

INFORMATION

- If the displayed schedule contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.

Copying/Pasting schedules

- When a long-term or repeat schedule is copied and pasted, the entire schedule is pasted in all the corresponding days.
- The copied schedule is memorized until Scheduler is ended and can be pasted on another date any number of times. However, only one item can be memorized and copying new schedule overwrites the retained item.
- The TV program schedules cannot be copied.

1 (for over a second) ► Select the date of the schedule

2 Highlight the schedule to copy ►

 6 1

3

4 Highlight the date to paste the schedule to

►  5

- In the day view screen, press  6 2.

Composing mail

The schedule can be sent as an i-mode mail message.

- The number of schedule items that can be sent depends on the screen operated.

○: Available ×: Unavailable

Sending type	Send selected item	Send selected day/ Send all*1
Calendar screen	×	○
Day view screen	○	○
Details screen	○	×

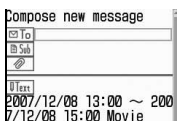
*1 Sends all saved schedules (including past schedules).

- The schedule is formed by the Date To format in a mail message. P356
- The TV program schedule is formed by the start date, start time and channel name in a mail message.
- If schedule data exceeds the mail message capacity, the excessive part is deleted.
- When schedules are displayed in the display mode by type, only the displayed items are inserted in the mail message.
- To send schedules for which Secret Attribute is set, set Secret Mode on.

Example Sending a schedule from the day view screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 Highlight the schedule to send ▶



- To send all schedules registered for the selected day: MENU 7 1 2
- To send all saved schedules at once: MENU 7 1 3
- On the calendar screen, press MENU 8 1 and then press 1 or 2.
- On the schedule details screen, press (M).

Attaching the schedule data to the mail

You can send the mail attaching one schedule.

- You cannot perform the same operation from the calendar screen.
- The TV program schedules cannot be attached to the mail.

Example Attaching a schedule from the day view screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 Highlight the schedule to send ▶ (MENU)

7 1 4

- Press (MENU) 4 2 on the schedule details screens.
- For composing/sending i-mode mail P191

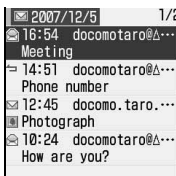
Searching mail

You can search mail sent and received on the day you select by using the schedule.

Example Searching received mail from the calendar screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ Highlight the date in which you want to search mail

2 (MENU) 8 2 1



- To display sent mail: (MENU) 8 2 2
- On the day view screen, press (MENU) 7 2 1 to display received mail. To display sent mail, press (MENU) 7 2 2.
- How to view received/sent mail P207
- To cancel mail search: (MENU) 0

Deleting schedules

- The number of schedule items that can be deleted depends on the screen operated.

○: Available ×: Unavailable

Deleting type	Selected item	One day/ Before date/ Delete all
Calendar screen	×	○
Day view screen	○	○
Details screen	○	×

- If a long-term or repeat schedule is deleted, the schedule is deleted from all the days that include a long-term or repeat schedule in addition to the current day. Even when **Before date** is selected, if a long-term schedule includes the day before, all days of the schedule after the selected date are also deleted.
- The TV program schedule is also deleted.

Example

Deleting a schedule from the day view screen

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule ▶  

2  - 

- When *One day* or *Before date* is selected if a long-term schedule including the selected date is registered, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the long-term schedule too.

■ Deleting all:  ▶ Enter the terminal security code

- If you delete the schedules without setting to Secret Mode, schedules with Secret Attribute set are not deleted.

3 Yes

INFORMATION

- On the calendar screen, press  and select *Delete* → *One day*, *Before date* or *Delete all*.
- On the details screen, press  and select *Delete entry*.

Using the member list

Make calls or compose i-mode Mail by selecting a member from the member list recorded in a schedule.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 Select the schedule to use ▶  to display the member list screen



Recorded members

The first phone number, mail address and URL of the selected member

- For members with Secret Attribute set, the name and detail information are masked with “*” unless Secret Mode is on. When Privacy Mode is activated (with *Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), the name and detail information of all members are also masked with “*”.

3 Use the phonebook data

■ Making a voice/videophone call: Highlight a member ▶  for a voice call, or  for a videophone call

■ Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a member ▶ 

The selected mail address of the member is set for the receiver and the schedule is saved in the message in the Date To format.

- Press    to send i-mode Mail to all the members.

■ Displaying a site: Highlight a member ▶

  ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- To use the second or subsequent phone number and mail address registered in the phonebook data, select a member from the member list screen to display the phonebook details screen. You can make a call or compose i-mode Mail by highlighting the phone number or mail address. Note that, if i-mode Mail is composed from the phonebook details screen, the schedule is not entered in the message and the Date To function cannot be used.
- Press  on the member list screen to add or delete members on the member selection screen.

Protecting secret schedules

Secret Attribute

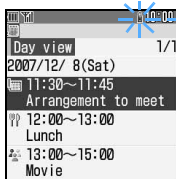
Once Secret Attribute is set, data can be displayed only in Secret Mode.

- Secret Attribute cannot be set or canceled when Secret Mode is not set.
- Secret Attribute cannot be set for the TV program schedules.

1 Activate Secret Mode ◀P138

2  (for over a second) on the standby display ▶ Select the date of the schedule

3 Highlight the schedule ▶  



 blinks when Secret Attribute is set for the highlighted schedule.

- To cancel: Highlight the schedule set to Secret Attribute ▶  
- To set or cancel on the schedule details screen, press  .

INFORMATION

- Secret Attribute is automatically set for schedules registered while Secret Mode is on.

Checking the number of registered schedule items

Check No. of Items

1 (for over a second) 7

INFORMATION

- The number of registered items includes the schedules for which Secret Attribute is set.

Menu 8222

Registering often-used functions

Custom Menu

In addition to the normal menu displayed by default by pressing , you can create your own menu by registering the functions you often use and menu items like a phonebook data (Custom Menu).

Reading a template

- The 4 types of preset templates are provided.
- When a template is read, all custom menu items are replaced.
- After reading a template, you can add, delete or replace menu items.

Default Standard

1

The custom menu is displayed.

- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press on the standby display.

2 7 1 1 - 4

Standard :

Alarm clock, Dictionaries, Calculator, Notepad, Activate 1Seg, Receive Ir data, Display new mail, Compose message, Read templates

Data/Security :

My Picture, i-motion, My Document, Music, microSD, Privacy mode, Key lock timer, Lock/Unlock, IC card lock setting

User data :

Phonebook, Access Data Center, microSD, Bookmark, Scheduler, Notepad, Save word, Save phrase, Memory status

Customize :

Style theme, Image/i-appli, Machi-chara setting, Call ring alert, Font size, Call alert volume, Listen volume, Info/calendar layout, Clock display format

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

A template is read and set in the custom menu.

- When all menu items in the custom menu are deleted, the template is read after the terminal security code is entered.

Creating the custom menu

- Up to 9 menu items can be registered in a single level of the custom menu.

1 Read a template

- When you newly register all menu items, delete all the existing items in the custom menu before adding new items. To delete all ◀P349

2 Add menu items

- When you overwrite a group, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite. Selecting *Yes* deletes all menu items in the group.
- Delete items before adding menu items ◀P348

■ Registering people:

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite ▶

2 1

- To add an item: 1 1

② Select the person to register

- When the phonebook data with no image or the phonebook data that contains Flash movie or video/i-motion is registered in the custom menu, a pre-registered icon is displayed on the menu screen.

■ Registering functions:

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite ▶

2 2

- To add an item: 1 2
- The screen for selecting functions is displayed in the format of the normal menu set in Menu Setting. However, when the normal menu is set to *Animation* or *Simple display*, *Tile display* is applied.

② Highlight the menu item to register ▶

- A menu item that does not have submenus can be registered by pressing a key corresponding to the item number or by selecting the menu item.

■ Registering groups:

Create group folders to save phonebook entries and functions grouped by purpose.

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite ▶

MENU (2) (3)

• To add an item: MENU (1) (3)

② Enter a group name (up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters) ▶ (11)

■ Registering in a group:

① Select a group

- When items are already registered in the group, the menu items in the group are displayed. Highlight an item to overwrite or add a new item.

② Phonebook entry, Function or Group ▶ Register an item

The item is added to the group and all the menu items in that group are displayed.

- On the third level of the menu, you cannot create a group.

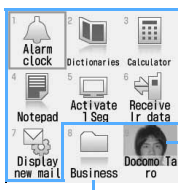
③ Add other menu items

Using the custom menu

You can execute functions registered in the custom menu or make a call to a person registered in it.

Example Executing functions

1 Display the custom menu ▶ Select the menu item



- When the submenu exists for the selected function, the submenu items are displayed.
- To select a function from a group: Select the group ▶ Select a function in the group

■ Operating to a selected person: Highlight a person ▶ Press keys listed below

Operations	Keys
Making a call*1, *2	(☎) or (☎) (1)
Making a videophone call*1, *2	(☎) or (☎) (1)
Composing i-mode mail*1	(✉) or (☎) (2)
Composing SMS*1	(✉) (for over a second) or (☎) (3)
Displaying a site*3	(☎) (4) ▶ Yes
Displaying a phonebook details screen	(☎) (5)

*1 When several phone numbers or mail addresses are registered, the phonebook details screen appears. Highlight a phone number or mail address and press (☎).

*2 Press (☎) (1), then the screen for setting Call Option appears. ▶P54

*3 To display the site by Full Browser, press (☎) (4) after (☎) (4).

To execute registered functions quickly

A function registered in the first level of the custom menu can be started by holding down the corresponding key ((1) - (5)) for over a second on the standby display. However, when the menu item is a person, group or a menu that has submenus, the function is not activated.

INFORMATION

- For a person to whom Secret Attribute is set in the phonebook, the name is displayed as " * * *" unless Secret Mode is on. (M) is displayed for the icon.
- Persons cannot be selected when PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (with *Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*). The icon of the person changes to (M) and the name of the person is displayed as " * * *".
- When Secret Attribute is set together with PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (with *Phonebook & Logs* set to *Authorized access*), the operations and icon display are the same as for PIM Lock or Privacy Mode.

Editing the custom menu

1 Display the custom menu ▶ Highlight a menu item

- To edit menu items in a group: Select a group

2 Perform each operation

■ Rearranging menu items: MENU (4) ▶ Select the destination item ▶ Yes

■ Changing icons: MENU (5) ▶ Select an icon
• To restore the icon: MENU (5) ▶ (11)

■ Changing group names: MENU (6) ▶ Enter the group name ▶ (11)

■ Deleting menu items: MENU (3) ▶ Yes

- When the group is deleted, menu items in the group are also deleted.

Deleting all items in the custom menu

This operation is performed to create a new custom menu.

1 Display the custom menu ▶

 **7** **2** ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

- Pressing  displays the item selection screen.

Using Speed Menu

Speed Menu

Speed Menu allows you to select and get started quickly the functions below. You can use your voice or the keypad to select the function.

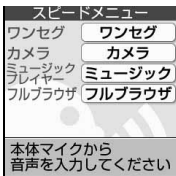
- 1Seg
- Camera
- Music Player
- Full Brower

Selecting the function using the voice command

The voice command for Speed Menu is only available for the Japanese display using the Japanese keywords. Switch to the Japanese display before performing following operations.

1 (for over a second)

Speed Menu is displayed.



- To select the functions by using the keypad:  Follow Step 2 in "Selecting the function using the keypad". ◀P350

Voice command input screen

2 Say the keyword in Japanese to select the function within 5 seconds

Here is information on the keywords to select the function by using the voice command and subsequent operations after the keywords are recognized.

Function	Keyword	Operation
ワンセグ (1Seg)	ワンセグ (wansegu), チデジ (chideji), テレビ (terebi)	1Seg is activated. ◀P259

Function	Keyword	Operation
カメラ (Camera)	カメラ (kamera), サツエイ (satsuei), サツエー (satsue), カメラサツエイ (kamasatsuei), カメラサツエー (kamasatsue)	Still Camera is activated. ◀P147
ミュージックプレイヤー (Music Player)	オンガク (ongaku), ミュージック (myujikku), オンガクサイセイ (ongakusaisei), オンガクサイセー (ongakusaise), ミュージックプレイヤー (myujikkupureiya)	Music Player is activated. ◀P330
フルブラウザ (Full Browser)	ブラウザ (buraazu), フルブラウザ (furuburaazu)	The home page registered by Home URL is displayed.*1 ◀P270

*1 When **No** is set for Access Setting, the screen for Access Setting appears. If the home page has not been registered yet, the registration screen for the home page appears.

- To cancel the voice command: 
- When English display is set in Select Language, the keypad input screen is displayed instead of the voice command input screen if you press  for over a second. Select the function by tapping the keypad.
- When **headset microphone** is set in Microphone Setting and the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected, the voice is sent through only the microphone of the FOMA terminal on the voice command input screen. Use the microphone of the FOMA terminal for the voice command.
- When you do not say the keyword in a quiet environment, the message, “もう一度静かな場所
で音声を入力してください (Please try again to
verify voiceprint in a quiet place.)” appears. Press  and say it again.
- When the voice command is not recognized correctly, the message appears to alert you. Press  and say the keyword again.
- Hold the FOMA terminal within 10 cm away from the front of your face or close it to your ear and mouth in a same way as an usual call.
- The voice command may not be recognized in a noisy environment. You should say to the FOMA terminal closer.
- Say clearly and carefully in a natural tone. Too slow, quick, small or big voice will be unrecognizable.
- You should not cough, haw, click your tongue or breath into the FOMA terminal during a voice command operation.
- Make sure not to put your hand over the microphone.
- You need to keep talking and avoid saying nothing during the voice command.

Selecting the function using the keypad

1

Speed Menu is displayed.



Keypad input screen

- To select the function by using the voice: Follow Step 2 in "Selecting the function using the voice command".
- P349

2

Each function is started.

Menu 48

Registering your own name and mail address

Own Number

Default My phone number: subscribed phone number
Other than that: not recorded

1

Own number
Name
My phone number
090XXXXXXXX
Mail address

- **My phone number** shows the phone number of the UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal.

2

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Set each item ▶

Edit own number	1/2
[Name]	
[Reading]	
[Select/Shoot image]	
090XXXXXXXX	
[Phone number]	
[Mail address]	
[Birthday]	

- Press to switch pages.

- For the setting procedure for each item, follow Step 3 of "Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook". •P79
Note that phonebook No. and group cannot be set.
- The subscribed phone number (**My phone number**) is displayed in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

INFORMATION

- Changing the mail address in Own Number does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not change the mail address in Own Number. For details on how to check and change an i-mode Mail address, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- Your phone number (**My phone number**) is registered in the UIM. If you enter other items, they are registered on the FOMA terminal.

Displaying Own Number details

1

2 ▶ Enter the terminal security code



- You can switch the display by pressing .

- If Caller ID Setting is enabled for registered phone numbers, appears on the right side of **Own info**.
- From the submenu of the Own Number details screen, the following operations can be performed as with the phonebook details screen:
 - Composing mail •P84
 - Composing SMS •P84
 - URL access (Display sites) •P84
 - Call Option*1 (except the call to your phone number) •P54
 - Copy items •P89
 - Caller ID Setting*1 •P91
 - Mail address exchange •P89
 - User information •P87
 - View Preference •P88
- *1 Except when your phone number is displayed

■ Editing registered data: ▶ Edit registered data and press

■ Resetting registered data: ▶ Yes

Recording the voice and image

Voice Memo/Video Memo

Your voice can be recorded in standby as a voice memo (Standby Voice Memo) or the other party's voice and image can be recorded during a voice or videophone call (Talking Voice Memo/Video Memo).

- Talking Voice Memo and Standby Voice Memo can be recorded up to 30 seconds long for each message and up to 4 messages in total.
- Video Memo can be recorded for up to 30 seconds per message.
For the maximum number of saved video memos ➡ P430
- The recorded voice or image of Talking Voice Memo or Video Memo may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Guidance messages such as out-of-service area notice or number change information cannot be recorded.

Recording voice or image of the other party while talking

Only the voice of the other party is recorded during a voice call. During a videophone call, the voice and image of the other party is recorded.

1 [TV] during a call (for over a second)

Recording starts.

An indication of the allowable recording time



Voice Memo during a voice call



Video Memo during a videophone call

- While a video memo is recorded, the image is sent to the other party according to the setting for the video memo image in Videophone Image Setting.
- Each time you press [TV] while recording a video memo, indication is switched between the allowable recording time and the call duration.
- When the remaining time reaches 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of message recording is approaching. A long beep is also heard at the end of the recording (this sound

is not heard at the beginning of the recording).

Both the beeps are not recorded.

- To stop recording: [TV] (for over a second)
- Video memos are saved in the *Camera* folder of *i-motion*.

How to replay the video/i-motion ➡ P284

- Actions when you close your FOMA terminal while recording a talking voice/video memo ➡ P61

Menu 463

Recording your own voice during standby

1 [TV] [3]

After about 3 seconds, a beep is heard and the recording starts.

- When the remaining time reaches 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching. A long beep is heard at the end of the recording. Both the beeps are not recorded.
- To cancel recording: [TV], [END], or [OFF]

Menu 464

Playing voice memos

1 [TV] [4]

The list of voice memos is displayed.

Both talking and standby voice memos are on it.

2 Select a voice memo



An indication of the elapsed playing time

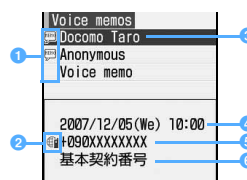
The voice memo is played.

- To stop playback: [TV]
- To adjust the volume: [VOL+]
- To switch between on and off of speakerphone: [SPK]

3 Yes or No

- When you select *Yes*, the voice memo you played is deleted.

The list of voice memos and available operations



1 Status icon



Talking memo

No icon: Standby voice memo

2 Talking voice memo during an international call

3 Phone number/Name (when registering phone number in the phonebook)/Reason for no caller ID/Voice memo (standby voice memo)

4 Date and time recorded of a voice memo highlighted

5 Phone number/Reason for no caller ID

6 The name of multi-number (when the Multi Number service is subscribed)

■ Deleting a voice memo from the list of voice memos: Highlight the voice memo ▶



2 **1** ▶ Yes

- To delete all: **2** **2** ▶ Yes

■ Registering phone number in the phonebook from the list of voice memos:

① Highlight the talking voice memo to save

▶ **4**

- To add the number to the existing phonebook data: Highlight the talking voice memo to save ▶ **5**

② **1** or **2** ▶ Save the name and mail address ➡P79, P81

- To add the data to the existing phonebook data: **1** or **2** ▶ Select a party ▶ Edit phonebook data ➡P88

INFORMATION

- Maintain the contents of voice/video memos in some other form. Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change to new model or other handlings of the FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

- You can make calls by using talking voice memos. Highlight a party in the list of voice memos and press **6** to make a voice call and **5** to make a videophone call.

Checking the call duration and the call cost

Call Duration/Call Cost

The call duration and the call cost of the last and total of voice/videophone call can be checked.

- The duration includes the voice call, videophone call and 64K data communication, and the both of incoming and outgoing calls/communications are counted for each.

- The call cost data is counted only for outgoing calls/communications. However, when calling the toll-free number or the directory assistance service (104), "0 YEN" or "***** YEN" is displayed.
- The call cost is stored in the UIM, so stored total cost is displayed (starting from December 2004) when using the current UIM to the FOMA terminal you newly purchased.
 - For the FOMA terminals released before 901i series, call cost data is stored in the UIM, but cannot be displayed.
- The displayed call duration and call cost can be reset.
- The displayed call duration and call cost are estimates and may be different from the actual. Note that the call cost does not include consumption tax.

Checking the call duration

1

8 **6** **7** **1**

- If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the duration of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call :

The duration of the last voice/videophone call or of the last data communication

Total voice calls :

The total duration of voice calls made

Total videophone calls :

The total duration of videophone calls made

Total data sessions :

The total duration of data communication established

Reset:day&time(Voice) :

The last date and time when **Total voice calls** was reset

Reset:day&time(VP) :

The last date and time when **Total videophone calls** was reset

Reset:day&time(Data) :

The last date and time when **Total data sessions** was reset

■ Resetting the total calls duration:

① **8** **6** **7** **2** **1** on the call duration screen ▶ Enter the terminal security code

② **1** - **4** ▶ Yes

- To return to the call duration screen: **8**

Checking the call cost

1

8 **6** **7** **2** **1**

- If the total cost of calls was reset in the past, the cost of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call cost: Voice :

The cost of the last voice call

Last call cost: VP :

The cost of the last videophone call

Last call cost: Data :

The cost of the last data communication

Total call cost :

The total cost of voice/videophone call and data communication

Reset: day & time :

The last date and time when **Total calls cost** was reset

- **Resetting the total call cost:**  **on the call cost screen** ▶ **Enter the PIN2 code** ▶ **Yes**

INFORMATION

- The cost for sending Chaku-moji is not counted.
- The call cost for the international call services is not counted, except for WORLD CALL.
- No last charge information appears as "***** YEN".
- When you switch between the voice and videophone calls during a call, the last call cost shows the total amount of each call respectively. During switching, no call cost is required.
- When the last or total duration of voice/videophone call or data communication exceeds 9,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is restarted from 0 seconds.
- When the FOMA terminal is turned off, the last call duration is stored, but the last call cost is displayed as "***** YEN".
- The duration of receiving a call and ringing time are not counted.
- The call duration and communication fee is not counted for i-mode and packet communication. For details of those usage fees, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" you received when you subscribed to the i-mode service.

Resetting the call cost automatically

Reset Call Cost

Total call cost is set to zero automatically on the 1st day of each month.

Default OFF

1      

2 **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ 

- To cancel: Enter the terminal security code ▶ 

3 **Enter the PIN2 code**

INFORMATION

- Even if the setting is **ON**, the setting is canceled when the UIM different from the one used during the setting is inserted and then turn the power on. It doesn't return to the previous setting even if the UIM used when setting it is inserted again.
- When the setting is **ON**, the call cost will be reset if you change the date and time to the next month in Date and Time Setting.
- When the setting is **ON**, if the terminal is not turned on or you are talking on the terminal at 00 o'clock of the first day of the month, a reset will take place when you turn the power on or end the call.
- If the setting is **ON**, the PIN2 code is required to turn the power on and the terminal security code is required to set the date and time.

Setting to notify the limit of call cost

Call Cost Limit

Set the maximum limit of call cost. An alarm or icon alerts you that the total call cost exceeds the set amount.

- The amount shown in Call Cost Limit is only an estimate and should not be regarded as the actual amount for billing.

Default Alert: OFF

1      

2 **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Set each item** ▶ 

Alert :

Set whether to notify when the total call cost exceeds the set amount.

Limit :

Set the maximum amount of call cost (10 to 100,000 yen, 10 yen unit).

Alert method :

Select the alarm with icon or the icon only.

Alert sound :

Select an alarm sound from the melody list when **Sound + icon display** is selected in **Alert method**.

- Playing and checking a melody when selecting 

Alert time :

Specify how many seconds alarm sound should ring (1 to 60 sec.). Available when **Sound + icon display** is selected in **Alert method**.

INFORMATION

- If the call cost exceeds the maximum limit while talking or during communication, ¥ is displayed at the top of the display.
- When **Sound + icon display** is set for **Alert method**, the alarm sounds and message informing that the call cost exceeds the maximum limit is displayed on the standby display after a call/communication. In the general silent mode, a message appears but the alarm does not sound. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the call alert volume set for Customize Silent Mode. If the call cost exceeds the limit during a call or communication at 00 o'clock of the first day of the month when Reset Call Cost is set to **ON**, neither the alarm sounds nor the message appears.
- The alarm sounds at the volume set for the call alert volume.
- If any key is pressed or other function is started while an alarm is sounding, the alarm sound stops. If Key Lock is temporarily canceled, closing the FOMA terminal also stops the alarm.
- Even if the UIM is replaced after Call Cost Limit is set to **ON**, the setting is stored.

Removing the icon of alert

Hide Call Cost Icon

- 1 **MENU** **8** **6** **7** **2** **3** **▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes**

Using Calculator

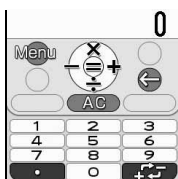
Calculator

You can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication and division (+, -, ×, ÷) on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use Calculator from the entry fields for schedules and notes, and paste the result of a calculation into the entry field of the original screen. ▶P367

- 1 **MENU** **7** **4**

- 2 **Calculate using** **0** **-** **9** **and** **↕** **(+ , - , × , ÷)**



- To delete the last digit entered: **ⓧ**
- To delete all: **⓪⓪⓪**
- To enter a decimal point: **ⓧ**
- To switch the displayed value between the positive and negative: **ⓧ**

3

The calculation result is displayed.

- Pressing **⓪⓪⓪** deletes the calculation result.

■ Copying the calculation result: **MENU** **1**

- To paste the copied value: **MENU** **2**
- Only one number can be saved. Copying a new number overwrites the saved number. The copied number is saved until copying a new number or the FOMA terminal is turned off.
- A copied number can be pasted in the entry field of notes, the mail composition screen, etc. any number of times. You can also copy up to the first 8 one-byte digits of a number in the entry field of notes, the mail composition screen, etc. and paste them on the calculator screen.
- You cannot enter additional digits after the number pasted on the calculator screen.

INFORMATION

- An error is generated and "E" is displayed when division by 0 is attempted or the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits. To cancel, press **⓪⓪⓪**. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded up or rounded down.

Composing notes

Notepad

- Notes can be recorded up to 50 items.

- 1 **MENU** **7** **2** **▶** **ⓧ**

- 2 **Set each item** **▶** **ⓧ**

Catg icons :

Select an category icon.

- The selected icon is displayed on the list of notes or notepad view screen.

Note content :

- You can enter up to 2,000 one-byte or 1,000 tow-byte characters.
- You must enter the contents of note to register the note.

Due date :

- Select whether to set a due date on notes. Select **ON** and enter the due date for notes in the **Due date** field. You can switch between completed/uncompleted items on the list of notes.
- You can set dates up to December 31, 2050.

INFORMATION

- Maintain the contents of notes in some other form (e.g. written copy). Notes can be saved using the microSD memory card (P299). If you have a PC, you can also save notes on the PC using DoCoMo keitai datalink and FOMA USB Cable (optional).

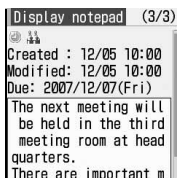
Checking notes

1

The list of notes is displayed. You can select 1-row or 2-row display on the list.

2 Select a note to check

The notepad view screen is displayed.



- If the note data contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.

 **Editing notes:**  **Edit each item** 

Composing mail from the note:  

Switching between completed/uncompleted items: **Highlight the note** 

Switching between 1-row/2-row displays: 

Displaying by category icons (List by category):    **Select a category icon**

• To return to display all:   

Displaying by status for the notes which due date is set on:   **Select a category icon**  - 
You can select from *Display all*, *Completed* or *Uncompleted*.

Sorting notes:   **Set each item** 

By : Set the way to sort.

Order : Set the order to sort.

INFORMATION

- To switch between completed/uncompleted items on the notepad view screen, press  and select *Completed* or *Uncompleted*.
- To edit notes from the list of notes, press  and select *Edit*.
- To compose mail from the list of notes, highlight the note to use for a mail message, press  and select *Compose message*.

Registering schedules from notes

You can register the content of notes to Scheduler from the submenu in Notepad or from the note written in Date To format.

Registering a schedule from the submenu

1 **Select a note**

The contents of the note is registered to the item of schedule as shown below:

Note content :

Registered to **Note**. Up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters can be registered.

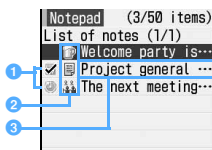
Due date : Registered to **Start time/End time**.

If the due date is not to set, the date of schedule is set as current day.

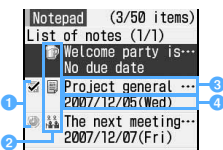
- Category icon/completed icon/uncompleted icon are not registered.

The list of notes and available operations

1-row display



2-row display



1 Status icon

 : Completed

 (Yellow):

Uncompleted (more than 2 days before the due date)

 (Yellow):

Uncompleted (1 day before or on the due date)

 (Red):

Uncompleted (after the due date)

No icon: No due date

2 Category icon

3 Note content

4 Due date

Registering a schedule from Date To format

Date To format is formed by the letter string below. All items are required.

Start date Start time End date

2007/12/05 10:00 ~ 2007/12/05

11:00 Meeting

End time Description A line feed is regarded as the end of a description.

- represents a one-byte space. It is not actually displayed.
- Only one-byte characters can be used for date and time. The description can contain up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters. Any character exceeding the maximum number is deleted.
- The year is based on the Christian era and the time is in the 24-hour format. For a month and day from 1 to 9 or an hour and minute from 0 to 9, the preceding zero(0) can be omitted.

1 [MENU] [7] [2] ▶ Select the note written in Date To format

2 Select the string written in Date To format ▶ Save it as schedule

Display notepad (1/4)

Created : 12/05 10:00
Modified: 12/05 10:00
No due date
Meeting is scheduled as follows:
2007/12/05 10:00 ~ 2007/12/05 11:00 Meeting

→

<tings Main(New) Select>

Meeting
All day OFF
Start time 2007/12/05(Wed) 10:00
End time 2007/12/05(Wed) 11:00
Note

INFORMATION

- To register a schedule from the list of notes, highlight a note to save to schedule, press [MENU], and select *Add to schedule*.

Deleting notes

1 [MENU] [7] [2]

2 Highlight a note ▶ [MENU] [3] [1] ▶ Yes

■ Deleting selected notes: [MENU] [3] [2] ▶ Select notes ▶ [F1] ▶ Yes

■ Deleting all notes: [MENU] [3] [3] ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

■ Deleting completed notes: [MENU] [3] [4] ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- To delete a note from the notepad view screen, press [MENU], and select *Delete*.

Using electronic dictionaries

- The following electronic dictionaries are stored:
 - Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary
 - G-Mobile Japanese-English Dictionary
 - G-Mobile English-Japanese Dictionary
- You can also select a word to search for from the search record (a list of words previously searched for). Up to 20 words are recorded in the search record. When you search for more than 20 words, the oldest recorded word in the search record will be overwritten.
- For more details, see 辞典機能 (Dictionaries) stored in the *Preinstalled* folder of *My Document*.
 - ▶ P320

Example

Looking up “修める (cultivate)” in Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary

1 [MENU] [7] [5] ▶ Meikyo Mobile JpnDic

2 The entry field ▶ Enter “おさめる”

The search result is displayed.

Meikyo Mobile JpnDic

おさめる

おさめる [収める・納める]

おさめる [治める]

おさめる [修める]

おさらい [お渡し・おさ]

おさらば [おさらば]

[動] (一) [他] ① [収・納] きちんと入れる。しまう。また、きちんとするようにする...

Word entry field

Search result

- The “reading” of words are shown together with “words”. In case of *G-Mobile EJ Dic*, only words are displayed.

The first part of the description of the selected word

- Up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters can be entered.
- To enter another word to search for while highlighting a word from the search result, press [F1].
- A long word may be shown incompletely due to layout limitation.
- Some words may not be searched for correctly.

■ Searching from the search record:

[MENU] [1] ▶ Select a word

Search record 1/1

おさめる

せいさく

かわせみ

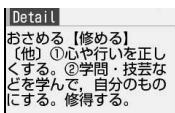
かく

- To delete one word: Highlight a word ►
 ► Yes
- To delete selected words: ►
 Select words ► ► Yes
- To delete all words: ► Enter the terminal security code ► Yes

- **Searching other dictionaries:** ►
 Select another dictionary ► Search

3 Select “おさめる【修める】”

4 Check detail information



- To return to the search screen:
- To show the detail information of the previous and next words:

■ Copying:

-
- Select a start position of the copying range ► Select an end position**
 - Press to select all the text.
 - Press to cancel the start position for selecting a new position.
 - After specifying the start position, pressing or moves the cursor to the beginning or end of the text.

INFORMATION

- To search another dictionary in the detail screen, press and select *Search other dict.*

Using the Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Earphone/Microphone with Switch

By connecting the optional Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (including the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set) to the earphone/microphone jack, it is possible to make or receive calls simply by pressing the switch.

- It is not possible to make a videophone call by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.
- Use the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 (optional) for the existing earphone/microphone.

Connecting the Earphone/Microphone with Switch

To connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch to the FOMA terminal, open the cover of the earphone/microphone jack and insert the connection plug of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch. ◀P24

- Do not wrap the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch around the FOMA terminal. Reception level of radio waves may deteriorate.
- When the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is near to the antenna of the FOMA terminal, a noise may be emitted.
- Insert the plug firmly. If it is not inserted completely, there may be audio disruption.

Making voice calls by pressing the switch

You can make a voice call by pressing the switch on the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch when registering a phone number to the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Key Control.

1 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear two short beeps

A voice call will be made to the first registered phone number of the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Key Control.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end the call

INFORMATION

- If Secret Attribute has been set for the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Key Control, Secret Mode should be activated before operating.
- Even if Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you cannot make another call during a call by entering the number of a third party and pressing the switch. Note that pressing the switch terminate the first call.
- While transferring or copying data between the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card, you cannot make a call by pressing the switch.

Receiving calls by pressing the switch

1 When a call arrives, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear two short beeps

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end the call

INFORMATION

- For operations when the FOMA terminal is closed during a call using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch connected 
- When Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you can receive an incoming voice call during a call by holding down the switch for over a second.

Setting the earphone/microphone switch operation

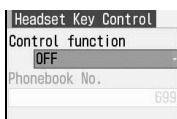
Headset Key Control

Set the number you call using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch by selecting the phonebook No. of the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Default OFF

1     

2 **Control function field** ▶ 



• To cancel:  ▶ 

3 **Phonebook No. field** ▶ **Select the receiver** ▶ 

INFORMATION

- When the phonebook data of the phonebook No. set by this function is deleted or overwritten with other data, or the Phonebook No. is changed, this setting is canceled.

Answering a call automatically with the earphone/microphone connected

Auto Answer

When using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, this sets whether to receive an incoming call automatically.

When a voice or videophone call is automatically received, the voice of the other party is heard through the connected earphone/microphone.

- If an incoming call is received during a call, this function is not activated.
- This function does not work in Public mode (Driving mode).

Default OFF

1     

2 **Auto answering field** ▶ 

• To cancel: **Auto answering field** ▶  ▶ 

3 **Delayed time(Sec) field** ▶ **Enter the time (0 to 120 sec) before answering automatically** ▶ 

INFORMATION

- When a videophone call is answered by Auto Answer, the substitute image set in Videophone Image Setting is sent and a videophone call is automatically started.
- When this function and Answer Machine, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service are set simultaneously, the set ringing time determines which function will be used.
- The same time period cannot be set for both the delayed time of Auto Answer and the response time of Answer Machine.
- When the value set for the delayed time is within the time set by Mute Ring Time Setting, Auto Answer does not answer a call coming from a party not saved in the phonebook.

Hearing the ring alert only through the earphone

Alert Preference

When connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, you can set to hear the ring alert or alarm only through the earphone of the headset.

Default Headset only

1      ▶  or 

INFORMATION

- Even when you set to **Headset only**, you will also hear the ring alert or alarm through the speaker when 20 seconds pass without answering a call or turning off the alarm.
- Even when **Headset + speaker** is set, you will hear the sounds listed below from the earphone of the headset. You will not hear the sound from the speaker.
 - Melody, video/i-motion, reproduce sound of music data

Sending the voice through the earphone/microphone

Microphone Setting

When connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, you can set to send your voice through the microphone of the headset.

Default headset microphone

1      ▶  or 

INFORMATION

- When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is not connected, the voice is sent through the microphone of the FOMA terminal regardless of this setting.

Reducing the start-up time after power-on

Quick Start-up

Default ON

1 (MENU) 8 6 5 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- Even when you set to *ON*, it takes the normal time to start up in the following cases:
 - When the remaining battery level is lower than 2
 - When the battery pack is replaced
 - When 24 hours pass after the power was turned off
 It may also take the normal time to start up after you turn the power off with any other screen than the standby display or while [] is being displayed just after power-on.

Checking current settings of functions

Confirm Settings

- During PIM Lock, the specific setting of the item being locked is displayed as “---”.

1 (MENU) 8 6 7 4

2 () to confirm the settings

- Press () to switch between pages.

Resetting functions

Reset

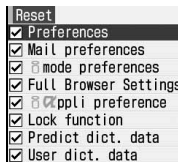
You can reset functions to their default settings.

- For the functions to be returned to the default settings by resetting, see “Menu list”. The following functions and data that are not mentioned in “Menu list” are also reset to the default settings.
 - When *Preferences* is selected:
 - Silent Mode, Public mode (Driving mode), Call cost icon, Input history of face marks, pictograms and symbols

- When *Full Brower Settings* is selected:
 - Cookie information, Pointer mode, View position setting, Search setting
- When *Predict dict. data* is selected:
 - Data recorded using the input prediction function

1 (MENU) 8 6 7 6

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select the item



3 () ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- If you reset *i-mode preferences*, i-Channel information is not displayed in a ticker on the standby display. When this happens, if the i-Channel information is automatically updated or if you press () on the standby display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and you can display it in a ticker on the standby display.

Deleting registered data collectively

Delete All Data

Delete the saved data and return the settings of the functions to the default.

- Protected data are also deleted.
- Delete All Data should be done with battery fully charged. If the battery power is not enough, the data may not be deleted collectively.
- The following data preinstalled by default are deleted:
 - i-appli other than Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller), ケータイクレジット [iD (アイディ)] (iD credit payment service) and 「DCMX」 クレジットアプリ (DCMX credit application)
 - Chara-den
 - Images in the *Deco-mail picture*, *Deco-mail pict* and *Item* folders in Data Box
 - Machi-chara · Kisekae tool
- The following data saved or registered are deleted:
 - Chaku-moji message (including history of sent messages)

- Mail template • Mail group • Bookmark
- Entered URL • URL history • Screen memo
- Last visited URL
- i-Channel (received info)
- i-appli • i-appli display history
- Phonebook data
- Phonebook communication log of Data Security Service
- Received call history
- Redial data • Voice memo
- Data read by Bar Code Reader
- ToruCa • Notepad • Call duration
- Saved word/fixed phrase
- Registered USSD
- Recorded answering message
- Own Number data (except *My phone number*)
- Search record of dictionaries
- Created folders/albums
- Message R/F • i-mode Mail
- Chat mail • SMS message
- Recorded message (including the greeting)
- Data in folders other than the *Preinstalled* and *Mail attach melody* folders in Data Box
- Downloaded dictionaries • Schedule
- Sound data with IC Card Lock on
- Machi-chara • Kisekae tool
- Original certificate
- 1Seg channel list
- Broadcast storage area
- TV link • TV program schedule
- The functions*1 to be returned to the default by Reset and the following functions return to the default:
 - Sort Criteria • Answer Machine
 - Settings made in the chat mail screen
 - Still Camera • Movie Camera
 - Sound Recorder • Terminal security code
 - Privacy Mode Setting
 - Date and Time Setting
 - External Device
 - Reset Call Cost
 - Arrival call act • Menu Setting
 - Changed folder name
 - Custom Menu
 - i-mode Shortcut for bookmark
 - Settings made on the i-appli software list screen
 - Settings made on the phonebook screen
 - *Sync setting* of Data Security Service
 - Settings made with Scheduler
 - Settings for *My Picture/i-motion/Melody/Charaden/My Document*
 - Data Exchange Setting by infrared communication

- Settings for Music Player
- Alarm Clock
- Software Update (Reserved Update)
- *1 SMS settings other than *SMS report request* and the settings in Manage Certificate other than CA certificate 1 to 11 do not return to the default.

1 ➤ Enter the terminal security code ➤ Yes

Data is deleted all together during restart.

INFORMATION

- The following data is not deleted. The default settings cannot be restored either.
 - Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli and related data
 - The data saved, registered or set in the UIM or the microSD memory card
 - Data communication setting set via a PC
- If there are large capacity data to be deleted, about 1 minute may be required to restart. Make sure not to turn off the power before completing the operation.
- If you perform Delete All Data, i-Channel information is not displayed in a ticker on the standby display. If the i-Channel information is automatically updated or if you press  on the standby display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and you can display it in a ticker on the standby display.
- If the data or i-appli applications preinstalled by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from the i-mode site "My D-style" (P391). Packet communication fee is required separately to download.

Character Entry

Entering characters	362
Setting input method	Input Method Setting 363
Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method...	5-touch Input Method 363
Registering fixed phrases	Save Phrase 367
Copying/cutting and pasting characters	Copy Character 367
Entering characters using codes	KUTEN Code Input 368
Registering frequently used words	Save Word 368
Using the downloaded dictionary	Downloaded Dictionary 369
Entering characters using Slot Input Method	Slot Input Method 369

For “Kuten Code List”, see the list in PDF format in the attached CD-ROM. To view “Kuten Code List” (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If it is not installed in your PC, you can install from the attached CD-ROM.

Entering characters

The FOMA terminal has many functions such as phonebook and mail that require entering characters.

- There are 5-touch Input Method and Slot Input Method for entering characters.
In 5-touch Input Method, several characters are assigned to each key, and at each press the character switches. ●P395
In Slot Input Method, select characters from the upper and lower slots on the input board. ●P369
- There are two character types: one-byte characters and two-byte characters. 1 two-byte character, 1 two-byte blank or line feed is counted as 2 one-byte characters. For one-byte characters, voiced sound and semi-voiced sound characters are also counted as 1 character.
- JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a changed or simplified form.
- In this manual, to enter characters including the operation of pressing Ⓜ is referred to as “enter”.

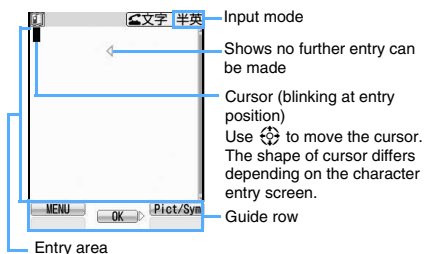
Character entry screen

There are two types of character entry methods: full-screen entry and in-line entry.

- Some entry fields may only be able to use either character entry method.

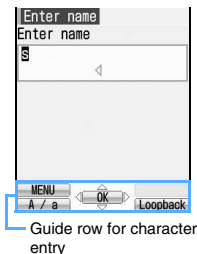
Full-screen entry

Highlight the entry field and press Ⓜ to display the full-screen entry area.



In-line entry

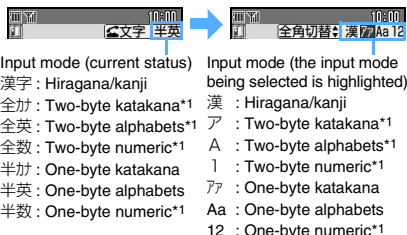
Highlight the entry field and press [0] - [9], *, or (#) and enter characters directly. Press Ⓜ to fix the characters in the hiragana/kanji or two-byte katakana mode.



Switching input modes

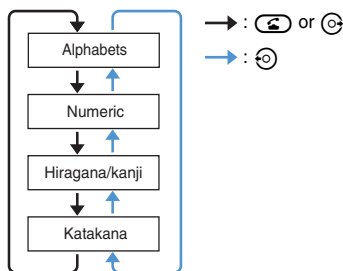
Example Switching from one-byte alphabet mode to two-byte alphabet mode

1 Ⓜ on the character entry screen



*1 Switching cannot be made in Slot Input Method.

2 Ⓜ or Ⓜ repeatedly to highlight “Aa”



3 Ⓜ to highlight “A” ▶ Ⓜ

INFORMATION

- The available input modes are different depending on the character entry screen.
- 全かな is displayed for input mode when only hiragana can be entered.

Setting input method

Input Method Setting

Default Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON
Auto cursor: Normal

1 ► Set each item

Input method:

Specifies *5-touch* or *Slot*. When *Slot* is set, items below are disabled.

Input prediction:

Specifies whether to display predictive conversion options.

Auto cursor:

Sets the time period before the cursor automatically moves to the right.

- Setting *Slow* moves the cursor in about 1.5 seconds.
- Setting *Normal* moves the cursor in about 1 second.
- Setting *Fast* moves the cursor in about 0.5 seconds.

Changing the setting during character entry

1 on the character entry screen ► Set input method

- To switch between *Use Kana input* and *Use Slot input*: 
- To switch between *Prediction ON* and *Prediction OFF*: 
- To set the time period before the cursor automatically moves:  ►  - 

Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method

5-touch Input Method

Entering characters

Kana/Kanji Conversion

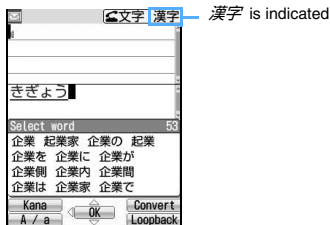
Example Entering “企業” in the message text

1 ► Highlight ►

The character entry screen appears.

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press  repeatedly to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.

2 Enter “きぎょう”



“き” →  twice ►  (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)

“ぎ” →  twice ► 

“よ” →  3 times ► 

“う” →  3 times

- To delete characters: 
- To switch upper/lower case: 
- To enter “ ” and “ ”: Enter the character ►



For example, after entering “ほ”, each pressing of  changes the character to: ほ→ほ→ほ. For characters that do not accept “ ” or “ ”, they are entered as two-byte characters.

Returning to the previous character:

Pressing  immediately after entering a character brings back to the previous character. The character appears in the reverse order of character switching every time  is pressed (e.g. …→ 1 →お→え→う→い→あ→ 1 →…). However, when voiced or semi-voiced sounds are entered or upper and lower cases are switched, you cannot switch characters.

Fixing hiragana without conversion:

Go to Step 4 after entering the hiragana.

Converting to katakana or alphanumeric:

Pressing  displays the list of conversion options in katakana (one-byte/two-byte), alphabets or numeric characters (one-byte/two-byte). Highlight a conversion option and go to Step 4.

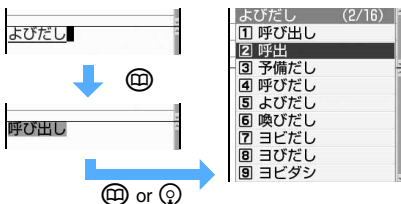
3



-  also converts text to kana/kanji when predictive conversion options are not displayed. Predictive conversion ◀P364
- Press  to restore the entry before conversion.

■ Displaying the list of conversion options:

When pressing (㊦) fails to display the desired character, a list of conversion options is displayed by pressing (㊦) or (㊧) again. If the list of conversion options has multiple pages, you can switch to the next page and the previous page by pressing (㊨) and (㊩), respectively. Highlight a conversion option by (㊦) and press (㊫), or press (1) - (9) assigned for the number of each option to select.



4 (㊫)

The characters are fixed.

- When **Input prediction** of Input Method Setting is **ON**, select 閉じる (Close).

■ Inserting characters:

Move the cursor to the insertion point by (㊬) and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

■ Deleting characters:

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string (Example: ドコモ太郎)
 - (㊭): Delete a character at the cursor position
 - (㊭) (for over a second): Delete the character at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string (Example: ドコモ太郎)
 - (㊭): Delete a character at the left of the cursor
 - (㊭) (for over a second): Delete all the entered characters

■ Entering line feed: (㊮)

- Line feed may not be possible depending on the entry field.

5 (㊮)

Character entry is exited.

INFORMATION

- In the following input modes, when the specified time elapses without pressing any key while entering, the automatic cursor function automatically moves the cursor to the right. You can change the time setting for move and disable the automatic cursor function. ◀P363
 - Hiragana/kanji
 - One-byte/two-byte katakana
 - One-byte/two-byte alphabets
- You can perform the following operations even after the automatic cursor function has moved the cursor to the right.
 - (㊯): Add voiced/semi-voiced sound
 - (㊰): Switch between upper/lower cases
 - (㊱): Return to the previous character

Block conversion of multiple clauses

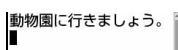
- Up to 24 two-byte characters can be converted.

Example Entering “動物園に行きましょう。”

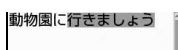
1 Enter characters (㊦)



■ Fixing all the characters: (MENU)

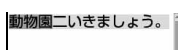


■ Fixing converted portion: (㊫)



■ Changing conversion range: (㊬)

When pressing (㊬)



Entering characters using input prediction function

The input prediction function is to display a list of predictive conversion options that match the head of the reading when characters are entered.

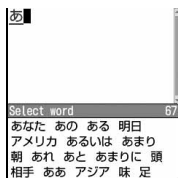
This function automatically registers previously entered words as predictive dictionary data; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

- The following words and character strings are displayed as options:
 - Standard words
 - Pictogram phrases ◀P403
 - Words entered by kana/kanji conversion
 - Character strings converted and entered by Downloaded Dictionary
 - Character strings registered by Save Word

- Only the hiragana/kanji mode can be used in predictive conversion. However, predictive conversion is not available during in-line entry and when entering with Slot Input Method.

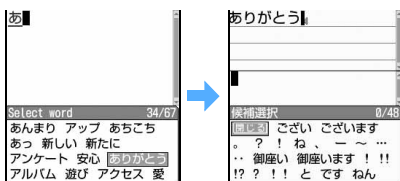
1 Enter characters

A list of predictive conversion options is displayed.



- The more characters are entered, the less the number of predictive conversion options are available.

2 to highlight an option



- While the predictive conversion option is highlighted, the following operations are enabled:
 - or : Switch to the previous/next page
 - : Enable Kana/Kanji Conversion (Predictive conversion options disappear)

Entering characters:

The highlighted predictive conversion option is fixed and the next option is displayed.

3 閉じる

The predictive conversion options disappear.

Resetting the predictive dictionary data

Reset the predictive dictionary data which is registered as the predictive conversion options.

1 on the character entry screen

Enter the terminal security code Yes

Entering face marks and fixed phrases

Enter face marks, previously registered sentences, or pictogram words.

Example Entering face marks

1 on the character entry screen

Symbol/Smiley

- To enter fixed phrases: on the character entry screen Phrase/Kuten/Quote

1 - 9

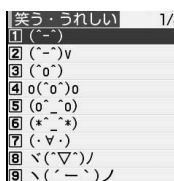
- For fixed phrases: 1 - 7



- You can select by pressing 1 when input history of face marks is available.
- When a fixed phrase is created, you can select by pressing 7.

1 - 9

- For fixed phrases: 1 - 8



- To check details: Highlight a fixed phrase
- For input history of face marks, up to 18 items can be displayed. When the number of items exceeds 18, the oldest one is deleted.

INFORMATION

- Face marks can be converted by entering the readings in the hiragana/kanji mode. P398
- List of fixed phrases P396

Entering pictograms and symbols

1 on the character entry screen

The list of pictogram 1 is displayed.



Input history area (displayed only on the first pages of pictogram 1 and 2, or one-byte and two-byte symbols.)

- Each pressing of changes the mode as follows: Pictogram 2 → pictogram D → pictogram 1... However, pictogram D is displayed only for character entry screens for mail message and signature edit.

- To switch one-byte/two-byte symbols:  
- To switch multiple pages:  or 
- Up to 10 pictograms (except for pictogram D) or symbols can be displayed at the input history area. When the characters exceed the maximum number, the oldest one will be deleted.
- Pictogram D is displayed when registered in the *Deco-mail pict* folder of *My Picture*.

2 Select a pictogram or symbol

- The pictogram or symbol can be entered in succession.

3

INFORMATION

- You can also enter by pressing  and selecting *Pict/Symbol/Smiley* → *Pictogram* or *Symbol* on the character entry screen.
 - Press  on the list screen of pictograms or symbols to switch between pictogram 1, 2 and D (for character entry screen for mail message and signature edit only) or between one-byte and two-byte symbols.
 - Press  to enter continuously on the list screen of pictograms or symbols, except pictogram D. The continuous input area appears above the input history area, and up to 10 pictograms can be entered and up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte symbols can be entered continuously. Press  to fix the characters. However, pictogram D cannot be entered continuously, and if you select pictogram D, all the characters are fixed. Also, when the left element in the following brackets is selected, the right element is also automatically selected: e.g. selecting “{” also selects “}”.

() [] {} [] () [] [] { } < > < > 「 」
『 』 【 】

- Some symbols can be converted by entering readings in the hiragana/kANJI mode.

Readings	Symbols you can enter
ギリシア	Greek characters
ロシア	Russian characters
すうじ	① to ⑳, I to X
けいせん	Ruled line symbols
きごう	Two-byte symbols other than above

- Pictogram can be converted by entering readings in the hiragana/kANJI mode. ➡P401
- Entered pictograms and symbols may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- While in Privacy Mode (with *Authorized access* set for My Picture), the downloaded Deco-mail pictograms are not displayed even when pressing  on the character entry screen. Only the Deco-mail pictograms registered by default are displayed. To display the downloaded Deco-mail pictograms, select  on the decoration selection screen and cancel Privacy Mode temporarily.

- When you insert pictogram D on the entry screen for mail message, it will be Deco-mail.

Quoting data to enter characters

You can enter characters by quoting phonebook data, Own Number information, the result of calculation with Calculator or text information of the data scanned with Bar Code Reader.

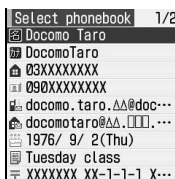
- On the character entry screen in which characters cannot be quoted, the operation is unavailable because the menu items are dimmed or not displayed.
- Switch the character entry screen to full-screen entry depending on the entry field.

Quoting phonebook data

- The phonebook data is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of the phonebook.

1 on the character entry screen Phrase/Kuten/Quote ➡ ➡ Select phonebook data

2 Select the phonebook information



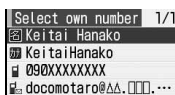
- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, highlight the content and press . Press  to quote.

Quoting Own Number data

- The Own Number data is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of Own Number.

1 on the character entry screen Phrase/Kuten/Quote ➡

2 Enter the terminal security code ➡ Select the Own Number information



- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, highlight the content and press . Press  to quote.

Quoting a result calculated with Calculator

- The result can be quoted only on the character entry screen of Scheduler and Notepad.

- 1 **on the character entry screen** ▶ **Phrase/Kuten/Quote** ▶ ▶ **Make calculation** ▶

Quoting data scanned with Bar Code Reader

- The data can be quoted on the URL entry screen or the character entry screen displayed during i-mode or Full Browser.

- 1 **on the character entry screen** ▶ **Phrase/Kuten/Quote** ▶ ▶ **Switch the macro mode switch to** **(Macro) and scan the JAN code or QR code** ▶

The string of the scanned data is entered.

Registering fixed phrases

Save Phrase

- Up to 50 phrases can be registered.
- Fixed phrase with blank spaces only cannot be registered.

In addition, blank spaces included in the fixed phrase are identified as follows:

- Blank spaces before and after a character string:
Blank spaces after a character string is invalid*1
- Blank spaces between characters:
Blank spaces are also valid

*1 In the registration while entering characters, blank spaces before and after a character string are ignored.

- 1

- 2 **<New phrase>**

The fixed phrase edit screen appears.

- To edit the registered fixed phrase: Select a fixed phrase to edit
- To check the registered fixed phrase: Highlight a fixed phrase ▶ ▶ to edit

- **Deleting fixed phrases: Highlight a fixed phrase to delete** ▶ ▶ **Yes**

- 3 **Message field** ▶ **Enter the fixed phrase (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters)**



Fixed phrases are registered in *My phrase*.

- When you edit a registered fixed phrase, a confirmation screen appears.
 - To overwrite: *Yes*
 - To cancel: *No*

Registering during character entry

Select entered characters and register as a fixed phrase.

- 1 **on the character entry screen** ▶ **Save word/phrase** ▶

- 2 **Place the cursor at the start point** ▶

- To select the whole sentence: ▶ Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message: ▶ Go to Step 4

- 3 **Place the cursor at the end point** ▶

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the fixed phrase edit screen.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:



- To select from the start point to the end:

- 4

INFORMATION

- If you perform the registration operation when conversion is not fixed while entering characters, the fixed phrase edit screen appears.
- When the number of phrases reaches the maximum number of items that can be registered, if you register a new item, you must either delete a phrase from this list or edit a registered phrase.

Copying/cutting and pasting characters

Copy Character

Characters copied or cut from a character entry screen are pasted elsewhere. They can also be pasted into another character entry screen.

- Copied and cut characters are retained until new item is copied/cut or the FOMA terminal is turned off, and you can paste them in other locations any number of times.

Copying/cutting characters

Example Copying characters

- 1 **on the character entry screen**
 - To cut the characters: on the character entry screen
 - On the entry screen for mail message, press and select *Copy* or *Cut*.
- 2 **Place the cursor at the start point**
 - To select the whole sentence:
 - To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message:
- 3 **Place the cursor at the end point**

The characters in the selected range are copied.

 - To select from the start point to the beginning:
 - To select from the start point to the end:

Pasting characters

- 1 **Place the cursor at the location to paste on the character entry screen**
 - On the entry screen for mail message, press and select *Paste*.

INFORMATION

- When the type of the copied/cut characters does not match with the character type used in the destination field, pasting is disabled.
- When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into an entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.
- When pasted characters or fixed phrases are entered exceedingly, they are truncated and fit to the input characters limit.

Entering characters using codes

KUTEN Code Input

To enter characters whose readings you do not know, characters, numbers and symbols on the kuten code list are entered using 4-digit code.

- For codes, see "Kuten Code List" in PDF format in the attached CD-ROM.

- 1 **on the character entry screen** **Phrase/Kuten/Quote** **Enter the 4-digit code**

- Press on the entry screen for mail message.

Registering frequently used words

Save Word

Using registered readings makes it easy to convert characters.

- Up to 200 words can be registered.

- 1

2 <New word>

- To edit the registered word: Select a word to edit
- To check the registered word: Highlight a word to edit

■ Deleting words:

- ① **Highlight a word to delete**
- ② **Delete**
 - To delete all: *Delete all*

- 3 **Word field** **Enter the word to register (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)**

- 4 **Reading field** **Enter the reading (up to 8 two-byte characters)**

- You can enter only hiragana.

- 5

- When you have edited registered words:
Overwrite or *New*

Registering during character entry

You can select entered characters and register them as a word.

- 1 **on the character entry screen** **Save word/phrase**

- 2 **Place the cursor at the start point**

- To select the whole sentence: Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message: Go to Step 4

- 3 **Place the cursor at the end point**

The characters in the selected range are displayed in the *Word* field.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:



- To select from the start point to the end:

4 Enter the reading to register

- Follow the procedure from Step 4 in "Registering frequently used words". P368

INFORMATION

- If you perform the registration operation when conversion is not fixed while entering characters, the word edit screen appears.
- Blank spaces can be entered for reading, but deleted after registration.
- Readings that contain characters other than hiragana, prolonged sound, voiced or semi-voiced sound characters cannot be registered.
- When the following characters are the head of the reading, the characters cannot be registered:
を, ん, あ, い, う, え, お, つ, や, ゆ, よ, わ,
"ー" (prolonged sound), "ゝ" (voiced sound), "ゑ" (semi-voiced sound)
- Up to 5 words with the same reading can be registered. To register additional words, change the reading of new words.
- When the number of words reaches the maximum number of items that can be registered and if you register a new item, you must either delete a word from this list or edit a registered word.

Using the downloaded dictionary

Downloaded Dictionary

Make the dictionaries downloaded from i-mode site, etc., available to use for conversion.

- Up to 5 dictionaries can be used.
- Downloading procedure for dictionaries P172

1 Select the dictionary to use

■ Displaying the information of the downloaded dictionary:

Highlight the dictionary

■ Deleting the downloaded dictionary:

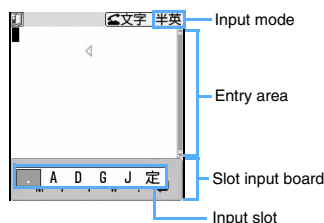
Highlight the dictionary

Entering characters using Slot Input Method

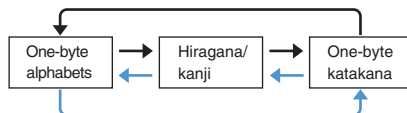
Slot Input Method

You use to select characters displayed on the slot input board (upper/lower slot).

- Slot Input Method must be set up before using this function. P363
- The predictive conversion function cannot be used in Slot Input Method.
- List of input slots and character assignments P396



- After pressing , the input mode switches as shown below by the following operations:



→ : or → :

- Even when Slot Input Method is set, the screen for 5-touch Input Method will appear during in-line entry.
- When you are using the slot input board and want to use the entry area (for deleting characters, moving the cursor, etc.), press . Press again to use the slot input board.

Example Entering “企業” in the mail message

1 Highlight Enter “きぎょう”

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.



“き”:

“ぎ”: 4 times

“よ”: twice twice

“う”: 4 times twice

- To switch upper slot/lower slot:
- To fix the characters as hiragana:
- If you press - , or , slot input board appears.

2

The characters are converted.



- Characters are converted in the same way as in 5-touch Input Method.
- Press to restore the entry before conversion.

3

The characters are fixed.

4

Character entry is exited.

- You can also perform the same operation by pressing and selecting *Exit*.

Network Services

Available network services	Network Service	372
Using Voice Mail Service	Voice Mail	372
Using Call Waiting Service	Call Waiting	373
Using Call Forwarding Service	Call Forwarding	374
Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Nuisance Call Blocking	374
Using Caller ID Request Service	Caller ID Request	375
Using Dual Network Service	Dual Network	375
Switching languages for the guidance	English Guidance	375
Using Service Dialing Number	Service Dialing Number	376
Setting actions to receive incoming calls during a call	Arrival Call Act	376
Setting Remote Control	Remote Control	377
Using Multi Number	Multi Number	377
Using OFFICEED	OFFICEED	378
Registering new network services	Added Service (Register USSD)	378

In this manual, the description of each network service is explained by the operation procedure using the menu of the FOMA terminal. For details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]”.

Available network services

Network Service

You can use network services provided by DoCoMo listed below on your FOMA terminal. For overview and usage of each service, see each page in the table below.

Service	Application	Monthly fee	Page
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	P372
Call Waiting Service	Required	Charged	P373
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	P374
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Required	Free	P374
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free	P375
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged	P375
English Guidance	Not required	Free	P375
Multi Number	Required	Charged	P377
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	P64
Public mode (power off)	Not required	Free	P65
OFFICEED	Required	Charged	P378

- Network services are not available when you are outside of the service area or the area where radio waves reach.
- For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- For applications and inquiries, contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed on the back of this manual.
- Application is required for using the OFFICEED service. For more information, visit the DoCoMo website for business customers at <http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/> (in Japanese only).

Using Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail

This service allows you to answer incoming voice/ videophone calls with an answering message. Callers can leave their messages at the Voice Mail Service Center when you are outside of the area where radio waves reach, turn off your FOMA terminal or cannot answer the call.

- When both Answer Machine (P66) and Voice Mail Service are used simultaneously, set the ringing time for Voice Mail Service shorter than the response time for Answer Machine to give priority to Voice Mail Service.
- When Voice Mail Service is activated, unanswered voice/videophone calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history and  1 is indicated on the standby display.

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service

Step 1 : Activate the service

Step 2 : The caller records a voice/videophone message

Step 3 : Play back the voice/videophone message

Operation procedure

1  8 7 1

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Voice Mail service; Activate	  ► Yes ► Yes ► Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)
Voice Mail service; Set ring time	  ► Yes ► Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)
Voice Mail service; Deactivate	  ► Yes
Voice Mail service; Check setting	  ► Yes • You can change the setting from the submenu. Activate Voice Mail :  1 Deactivate Voice Mail :  2 Set ring time :  3
Voice Mail service; Play messages	When a new message arrives,  1 is indicated on the standby display.   ► Yes ► Follow the voice guidance
Voice Mail service; Voice Mail setting	  ► Yes ► Follow the voice guidance
Voice Mail service; Check messages	  ► Yes When a new message arrives,  1 is indicated on the standby display.

Item	Operation procedure
Tone/Vibration message notification Default Voice Mail alert: ON Notification melody: メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	You can set alert for when the caller left a new message or the number of messages is increased at the time you check for voice mail. ① 2 ▶ Voice Mail alert field ② 1 • To disable the alert tone: 2 ▶ Go to Step ④ ③ Notification melody field ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody ④ 11
Notify missed call; Activate	When the FOMA terminal is turned on or within the service area, this function notifies you of the calls received with the FOMA terminal turned off or outside the service area using SMS. 3 1 ▶ Yes ▶ Yes or No Yes: Notifies only the incoming calls with caller ID. No: Notifies all the incoming calls.
Notify missed call; Deactivate	3 2 ▶ Yes
Notify missed call; Check setting	3 3 ▶ Yes
Hide Voice Mail icon	4 ▶ Yes The icon that indicates the number of voice messages disappears.

INFORMATION

- New messages can be played quickly from the standby display. ➡P32
- The number of messages displayed shows the number of new messages provided by guidance when the messages are played, which does not include the number of saved voice messages.
- Dial "1412" on a voice call to use Voice Mail Service for a videophone call.
- When you are connecting to the Voice Mail Service Center while sending Chara-den on the videophone, switch to Send DTMF by selecting from the submenu to operate this service. ➡P47
- When a new videophone message is kept, you are informed it by SMS.

Using Call Waiting Service

Call Waiting

Call Waiting Service notifies you of incoming calls with the call waiting ring alert while you talk on the phone. You can put the current call on hold while you answer an incoming call. Also you can make another call while putting the current call on hold.

- You need to set **Arrival call act** (➡P376) to **Answer** before using Call Waiting Service. When **Arrival call act** is set to any items other than **Answer**, you cannot answer incoming voice calls during a voice call even after activating Call Waiting Service.

1 **MENU** **8** **7** **2** **1**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	1 ▶ Yes
Deactivate	2 ▶ Yes
Check setting	3 ▶ Yes

Putting the current call on hold to answer an incoming call

1 **during a call**

The current call is put on hold and the second call can be answered.

- **Multi connecting** appears on the screen.
- To switch the other parties: **⇄**
- You can put your current call on hold by pressing **⏸**. Press **⏸** again to release the hold.
- To end the call on hold: **MENU** **1** during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

2 **when you finish talking to the other party**

The call is ended and the ring alert sounds.

- To resume talks with the other party on hold:



Answering an incoming call after finishing the current call

1 **during a call**

A ring alert sounds to indicate there is an incoming call.

2

You can answer a new call.

Holding the current call and making another call

1 **Enter the phone number during a call**

- You can select the other party's phone number from the received call history by pressing **⏮**, from the redial data by pressing **⏮** or from the phonebook by pressing **11** instead of entering the phone number.

2

Your current call is automatically put on hold and you can begin talking to the other party you called.

- **Multi connecting** appears on the screen.
- To switch the other parties: 
- You can put your current call on hold by pressing . Press  again to release the hold.
- To end the call on hold:   during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

3 when you finish talking to the other party you called

The call is ended and the ring alert sounds.

- To resume talks with the other party on hold:



INFORMATION

- During multi-connection, you cannot receive another incoming call. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.

Using Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding Service forwards automatically incoming voice/videophone calls to another phone number even when you are outside of the area where radio waves reach, turn off your FOMA terminal or cannot answer the call within the ringing time you have set.

- When both Answer Machine (P66) and Call Forwarding Service are used simultaneously, set the ringing time for Call Forwarding Service shorter than the response time for Answer Machine to give priority to Call Forwarding Service.
- When Call Forwarding Service is activated, unanswered voice/videophone calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history and   is indicated on the standby display.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

Step 1 : Set the forwarding destination phone number

Step 2 : Activate Call Forwarding Service

Step 3 : Calls come in to your FOMA terminal

Step 4 : The unanswered calls are automatically forwarded to the previously-specified destination

Operation procedure

1     

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	 ▶ Yes ▶ Yes ▶ Enter the forwarding destination phone number (up to 26 digits) ▶  ▶ Yes ▶ Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec) • Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook by pressing  from the redial data by pressing  or from the received call history by pressing .
Deactivate	 ▶ Yes
Register The Forwarding Number	 ▶ Enter the forwarding destination number ▶  ▶ Yes
Setting if forwarding number busy	Set Voice Mail Service to handle calls when the forwarding destination is busy.  ▶ Yes or No
Check setting	 ▶ Yes

Setting the forwarding guidance on/off

1      ▶ Follow the voice guidance

Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Nuisance Call Blocking

You can register to prevent nuisance calls such as crank calls. After registering a phone number as nuisance caller, you can automatically reject the call from the phone number registered and answer it with voice guidance.

- The calls from the phone number registered as nuisance callers are not recorded in the received call history and your FOMA terminal does not ring even when you receive them.

1     

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Register the caller</i>	The phone number of the last call response is registered as nuisance caller. The phone numbers you did not answer such as missed calls cannot be registered. (1) ▶ Yes
<i>Register selected No</i>	(2) ▶ Yes ▶ Enter the phone number to reject (up to 22 digits) ▶ (1) ▶ Yes • Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook by pressing (MENU), from the redial data by pressing (2) or from the received call history by pressing (3).
<i>Delete all entries</i>	(3) ▶ Yes
<i>Delete last entry</i>	The last registered phone number is deleted. Repeating the same operation, you can delete the registered phone number one by one from the last. (4) ▶ Yes
<i>Check the number of entries</i>	(5) ▶ Yes

Using Caller ID Request Service

Caller ID Request

For incoming voice/videophone calls without the caller ID, you can answer with the voice guidance to request the callers to notify their caller ID and then automatically end the call.

- The calls which have been blocked by Caller ID Request Service are not recorded in the received call history and (1) is not displayed on the standby display.

1 (MENU) (8) (7) (4) (2)

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Activate</i>	(1) ▶ Yes
<i>Deactivate</i>	(2) ▶ Yes
<i>Check setting</i>	(3) ▶ Yes

Using Dual Network Service

Dual Network

This service allows you to use a mova terminal with the phone number of your FOMA terminal. You may choose to use the FOMA or mova terminal depending on which service area you are in.

- The FOMA and mova terminal cannot be used at the same time.
- You can perform operation to switch Dual Network Service from the FOMA or mova terminal which is not currently used.

Enabling the mova terminal to use

1 Dial "1540" on the mova terminal

2 Follow the voice guidance

Enabling the FOMA terminal to use

Switch Dual Network Service that is being used by the mova terminal to the FOMA terminal.

1 (MENU) (8) (7) (6) (5)

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Dual Network Switching</i>	(1) ▶ Yes ▶ Enter the network security code
<i>Check setting</i>	(2) ▶ Yes

Switching languages for the guidance

English Guidance

You can set the English voice guidance for setting network services such as Voice Mail Service or for informing that you are outside of the service area.

1 (MENU) (8) (7) (6) (4)

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Guidance setting	① 1 ▶ Yes ② 1 or 2 Japanese: Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to Japanese. English: Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to English. ③ Yes ▶ 1 - 3 Japanese: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese. Japanese+English: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese followed by English. English+Japanese: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to English followed by Japanese.
Check setting	2 ▶ Yes

Using Service Dialing Number

Service Dialing Number

With Service Dialing Number, you can make a call to DoCoMo for Repairs or DoCoMo for General Inquiries.

- Different item or no item may be displayed on your FOMA terminal depending on the type of UIM.

1 **(MENU)** **8** **7** **6** **6**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
ドコモ故障問合せ (DoCoMo for Repairs)	1 ▶ Yes A call is made to DoCoMo for Repairs.
ドコモ総合案内・受付 (DoCoMo for General Inquiries)	2 ▶ Yes A call is made to the DoCoMo Information Center.

Setting actions to receive incoming calls during a call

Arrival Call Act

If you have subscribed to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting Service, you can set which service you use to receive the incoming voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication while you are on the phone.

- If you set **Answer** or **Voice Mail** for this function, it is not activated when you receive 64K data communication during a call.
- If you set **Answer** for this function, it is not activated when you receive a videophone call during a call.
- If you have not subscribed to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting Service yet, you cannot respond the incoming calls while you are on the phone.
- To use **Arrival call act**, you need to set **Set arrival act** to **Activate**.

1 **(MENU)** **8** **7** **6**

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Arrival call act Default Answer	Set how incoming calls are handled while talking on the phone. 9 ▶ 1 - 4 Answer: If Call Waiting Service is set to Activate, it is activated. If Call Waiting Service is set to Deactivate, following operations are available. • You can finish a voice call or 64K data communication and then answer the incoming voice call. • You can use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service for voice calls during a voice call or reject receiving them from the submenu. • If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to Activate, each service is activated. Voice Mail: Incoming voice/videophone calls received during a call are handled by Voice Mail Service. Call Forwarding: Incoming voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication received during a call are forwarded. • The 64K data communication received during 64K data communication cannot be forwarded. Call Rejection: Incoming voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication received during a call are rejected.

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Set arrival act; Activate</i>	Activate the response method selected by <i>Arrival call act.</i> (8) (1) ► Yes
<i>Set arrival act; Deactivate</i>	(8) (2) ► Yes
<i>Set arrival act; Check setting</i>	(8) (3) ► Yes

INFORMATION

- Even if *Arrival call act* is set to any of the above, calls will be recorded in the received call history.

Setting Remote Control

Remote Control

This service allows you to control Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone general subscriber phones, payphones or DoCoMo mobile phones.

1 (MENU) (8) (7) (6) (2)

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Activate</i>	(1) ► Yes
<i>Deactivate</i>	(2) ► Yes
<i>Check setting</i>	(3) ► Yes

Using Multi Number

Multi Number

Up to 2 additional numbers (*Additional No1* and *Additional No2*) can be used besides *Basic Number* for the phone number of your FOMA terminal.

- If you pull out the UIM or replace it by another UIM, the settings of name or phone number for Multi Number saved in the FOMA terminal may be deleted. In this case, you can register them again.
- The names corresponding to the multi-numbers (*Basic Number/Additional No1/Additional No2*) are displayed on the screen while you are dialing/receiving calls.

- When you make a call from the redial data or received call history, the multi-numbers which have been used for the previous incoming/outgoing calls are displayed and you make the call from the numbers.

1 (MENU) (8) (7) (6) (7)

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Set Multi Number</i>	You can set a number for making calls by switching multi-numbers in this setting. (1) ► (1) - (3) ► Yes
<i>Check setting</i>	(2) ► Yes
<i>Number Setting</i>	Set the phone number subscribed to Multi Number. (3) ► Set each item ► (ID)
<i>Basic Number:</i> 基本契約番号/my phone number <i>Additional No1:</i> 付加番号1/ Not recorded <i>Additional No2:</i> 付加番号2/ Not recorded <i>Multi number call:</i> Disable	<i>Name:</i> Setting is available for each <i>Additional No1/Additional No2</i> (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters). For <i>Basic Number</i> , the name set in Own Number is displayed. <i>Phone number:</i> Set the subscribed phone number in <i>Additional No1/Additional No2</i> . <i>Multi number call:</i> If set to <i>Enable</i> , you can make a call by selecting the number to be shown to the receiver from the submenu.
<i>Incoming calls melody setting</i> Default OFF	Set the ring alert etc. for each additional number. (4) ► (1) or (2) ► Set each item ► (ID) <i>Individual setting:</i> Select whether to set the incoming call setting individually. <i>Ring alert, Show image:</i> Setting procedure ➡ P96

Making calls by selecting the number to notify the other party

When making a call, you can select the number you want to show to the other party.

- When *Multi number call* is set to *Disable* in *Number Setting*, multi-numbers cannot be selected.

1 Enter a phone number ► (MENU) (4)

- To make a call from the redial data: (C) ► Highlight a party ► (MENU) (3)
- To make a call from the received call history: (O) ► Highlight a party ► (MENU) (3)



INFORMATION

- In the redial data, the names corresponding to the multi-numbers used when dialing are displayed.
- In the received call history, the names corresponding to the received multi-numbers are displayed.
- When making a call from the redial data or received call history and the name corresponding to the multi-number which was used for dialing/receiving is not displayed, the multi-number specified in *Set Multi Number* will be used.

Using OFFICEED

OFFICEED

OFFICEED is the flat rate service in a group provided by specified IMCS (Inbuilding Mobile Communication System). You need to separately subscribe to use OFFICEED.

For more information, visit the DoCoMo website for business customers at <http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/> (in Japanese only).

1 MENU 8 7 5

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Area display setting Default OFF	Set whether to display OFFICEED on the standby display when you are in the OFFICEED service area. 1 1 or 2
Start forwarding	2 Yes
Stop forwarding	3 Yes
Check fwd setting	4 Yes

Registering new network services

Added Service (Register USSD)

When a new network service is added by DoCoMo, you can use the service by registering it in the menu.

1 MENU 8 7 6 1

2 Perform the following operations

Item	Operation procedure
Register USSD	Registering: 1 Highlight the number to record/change the service 11 USSD code field Enter Name field Enter service name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) 11 • Up to 10 services can be registered. • Enter the service code provided by DoCoMo in the <i>USSD code</i> field. The service code is a code used to make the settings for network services. It is registered as the USSD code in the FOMA terminal. Using the services: 1 1 - 8 The registered code is transmitted to the Service Center. Deleting the registered services: 1 Highlight a service MENU 1 (To delete all the services: MENU 2) Yes
Record reply message	Register the message corresponding to the code that will be returned from the Service Center when an added service is executed. This message is displayed when the recorded code is returned as a reply. Registering: 2 1 - 8 USSD code field Enter Reply message field Enter (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) 11 • Up to 10 messages can be registered. Deleting the registered messages: 2 Highlight a message MENU 1 (To delete all the messages: MENU 2) Yes

Data Communication

Data communication	380
Before usage	380
Flow of setup for data communication	381
AT command	382
CD-ROM	382
DoCoMo keitai datalink	382

For data communication, see the PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication” in CD-ROM attached for details. To see the PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication”, Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, please install Adobe Reader in CD-ROM mentioned above beforehand. For details on how to use, refer to the Help menu of Adobe Reader.

Data communication

The data communication modes available from the FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained.

- The FOMA terminal does not support fax communication or the Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be executed by connecting the FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA, "musea", "sigmarion II" or "sigmarion III". To use "musea" or "sigmarion II" update is required. For details on update, etc., visit the DoCoMo website.
- This FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.

Supported data communication via FOMA terminal

The FOMA terminal supports 3 communication modes: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.

These communications become available by installing the related software onto a PC from the attached CD-ROM, connecting the FOMA terminal to the PC and making required settings.

■ Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which make it suitable for high-speed exchange of relatively small amounts of data such as sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384 kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64 kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as DoCoMo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service. These are offered by the best-effort connection which allows transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion.

Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

■ 64K data communication

The 64K data communications allow data transfer/reception at stable communication rate of 64 kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which make it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. You need to use access points that support FOMA 64K data

communication such as DoCoMo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64K access points.

Note that communicating for long time will require high charges.

■ Data transfer

It is the mode of non-charged communication in which various data including the phonebook, mails and bookmarks are transferred/exchanged.

- Data can be transferred to another FOMA terminal, mobile phone or PC via the infrared communication/iC communication as well.

Before usage

Checking operating environment

For data communication, the operating environment of PC is as follows:

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS*2	The Japanese version of Windows 2000, Windows XP or Windows Vista
Memory requirements	Windows 2000: 64 MB or more Windows XP: 128 MB or more Windows Vista: 512 MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required.

*2 The operation from OS upgrading is not covered by the warranty.

INFORMATION

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described above or by upgrading the OS and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for operation under such conditions.

Required devices

The following hardware and software are required in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC:

- FOMA USB Cable (optional) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA D704i"

INFORMATION

- Purchase a dedicated "FOMA USB Cable" or "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01" for a USB cable*1. A USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector does not fit.

*1 In this manual, FOMA USB Cable is used for explanation.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charge

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter called provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera. The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. It allows you to use broadband Internet connection services. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service. The mopera service allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately. For details on charges, etc., visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS or DoPa access points.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the provider or network administrator of in-house LAN, etc. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication when using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, see “[簡易操作マニュアル](#) (Simple User's Manual) (FirstPassManual.pdf)” in the CD-ROM.

To view “[簡易操作マニュアル](#) (FirstPassManual.pdf)” (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, please install Adobe Reader in CD-ROM mentioned above beforehand. For details on how to use, refer to the Help menu of Adobe Reader.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from the FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which may use a FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires an access point that supports FOMA 64K or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

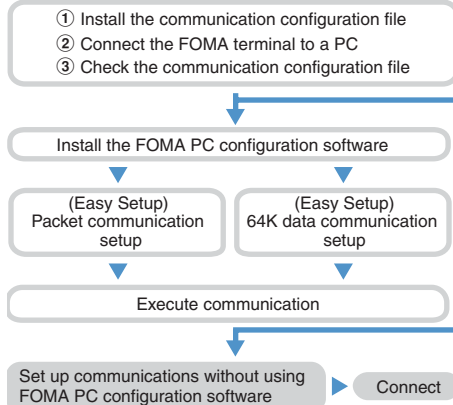
However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of data communication

- Administrator privilege
A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions. There must be at least 1 user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and software.
- APN (Access Point Name)
String to identify a provider, etc. to connect by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is “mopera.net” and mopera is “mopera.ne.jp”.
- cid (Context Identifier)
The registration number when writing packet communication dialup connection (APN) information to the FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for the FOMA terminal. By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is registered in cid1, and “mopera.net” in cid3.

Flow of setup for data communication

The setup work needed to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:



Communication configuration file (USB driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC from the attached CD-ROM, before connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the attached CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication via connection between the FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC.

FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

For details of AT command, see “Manual for Data Communication” in CD-ROM attached.

CD-ROM

The attached CD-ROM contains the software used for the data communication via FOMA terminal and the PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication” and “Kuten Code List”.

For details, refer to the attached CD-ROM.

■ Contained software/PDF

- D704i communication configuration file
- FOMA PC configuration software
- FOMA byte counter
- Guidance of DoCoMo keitai datalink
- FirstPass PC software
- Guidance of mopera U (mopera U start up tool/ mopera U connection & setting tool/mopera U requesting original data)
- Guidance of Napster®
- PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication”
- PDF version of “Kuten Code List”
- Adobe® Reader® 8.0

When the warning screen appears

When the attached CD-ROM is inserted into the PC, the following warning screen may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, but this will not cause a problem.

Click **はい** (Yes).

- The screen shown below is for the case of using Windows XP. It may differ depending on the PC environment.



- For Windows Vista, when the attached CD-ROM is inserted into the PC, the auto play screen may appear. Click **rundll32.exe の実行** (Execute rundll32.exe).

DoCoMo keitai datalink

“DoCoMo keitai datalink” is software which edits the data of the phonebook or mail messages in your mobile phone after backing up to PC. It is provided on the DoCoMo website and you can see the website below for details and downloading. In addition, you can access the website below from the attached CD-ROM as well.

<http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (in Japanese only)

For details on how to download, transferable data, operation environment including supported OS, installation, operating procedure and restrictions, refer to the website above. Besides, for the operating procedure after installation, refer to Help within the software. In addition, the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is required to use DoCoMo keitai datalink.

Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Menu list	384
Data set by default	391
List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)	395
List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)	396
List of fixed phrases	396
List of face marks	398
List of symbols	400
List of pictograms/pictogram phrases	401
Combination of operations during Multiaccess	404
Combination of functions during Multitask	406
Services available for the FOMA terminal	409
Options and related devices	409
Data Interchange using external devices	
About Video playing software	410
Troubleshooting	
Troubleshooting	410
Example of Error messages	Error Message 413
Warranty and After-Sales Service	421
Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble	422
Updating software	Software Update 423
Protecting the FOMA terminal from hazardous data	Virus Scan Function 427
Main specification	429
Number of saved, registered and protected items in D704i	430
SAR certification information	431

Menu list

- The menu differs depending on the menu display style (Menu Setting).
 - One-byte and two-byte characters shown on the display may differ from those below.
- ☐ : When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by performing Reset.

Mail

Menu item	Default	Page
[1][1] Inbox	_____	P207
[1][2] Compose message	_____	P191
[1][3] Chat mail	_____	P222
[1][4] Unsent messages	_____	P207
[1][5] Outbox	_____	P207
[1][6] Check new message	_____	
[1][6][1] i-mode message	_____	P202
[1][6][2] SMS	_____	P227
[1][6][3] Receive option	_____	P202
[1][6][4] Message retrieval	selected (all)	P218
[1][7] SMS		
[1][7][1] Compose SMS	_____	P225
[1][7][2] Received SMS	_____	P228
[1][7][3] Sent SMS	_____	P228
[1][7][4] SMS settings	Font type: Japanese SMS report request: Not request Keep in SMS center: 3 days SMSC: DoCoMo Address: 81903101652 Type of Number: international	P227
[1][8] Read templates	_____	P198
[1][9] Mail settings		
[1][9][1] Mail alert	Ring alert: Melody/ メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A) Light alert: Glimmer/Green Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P96
[1][9][2] Chat mail alert	Alert setting: Customize Ring alert: Melody/ メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B) Light alert: Glimmer/Green Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P97
[1][9][3] Sort criteria	ON (all)	P216
[1][9][4] Signature	Auto add: ON Edit signature: not recorded	P218
[1][9][5] Reply setting		
[1][9][5][1] Reply format	Quote: Yes Quote characters: >	P219
[1][9][5][2] Activate quick reply	ON	P220

Menu item	Default	Page
[1][9][5][3] Quick reply template	OKです。(OK) NGです。(No good) ありがとう！(Thank you！) ゴメンなさい！(Sorry！) 後ほど連絡します。 (Get in touch later.)	P220
[1][9][6] Mail group	_____	P219
[1][9][7] Display settings		
[1][9][7][1] Display priority	Show message	P222
[1][9][7][2] Receive option	OFF	P218
[1][9][7][3] Incoming msg. attach	selected (all)	P220
[1][9][7][4] Attachment auto-play	Auto play	P221
[1][9][7][5] Message list	Display 2 rows	P220
[1][9][7][6] Only view	OFF	P220
[1][9][8] Display new mail	OFF	P218

i-mode

Menu item	Default	Page
[2][1] iMenu	_____	P162
[2][2] Bookmark	_____	P167
[2][3] Go to location		
[2][3][1] Enter URL	_____	P166
[2][3][2] URL history	_____	P166
[2][3][3] Last visited URL	_____	P163
[2][4] Screen memo	_____	P169
[2][5] i-mode message	_____	P202
[2][6] MessageR&F		
[2][6][1] MessageR	_____	P178
[2][6][2] MessageF	_____	P178
[2][6][3] Message settings		
[2][6][3][1] Auto-display	MessageR preferred	P177
[2][6][3][2] Message retrieval	selected (all)	P218
[2][6][3][3] Attachment auto-play	Auto play	P221
[2][6][3][4] Message alert		
[2][6][3][4][1] MessageR	Ring alert: Melody/ メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C) Light alert: Glimmer/Green Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P97
[2][6][3][4][2] MessageF		
[2][7] i-Channel		
[2][7][1] i-Channel list	_____	P185
[2][7][2] i-Channel ticker	Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal	P185
[2][7][3] Reset i-Channel	_____	P186
[2][8] i-mode settings		
[2][8][1] i-mode shortcuts	Not recorded	P167

Menu item	Default	Page
[2][8][2] Connection timeout	60 seconds	P175
[2][8][3] Display light	Terminal setting	P176
[2][8][4] Certificate		
[2][8][4][1] Manage certificate*1	valid (all)	P179
[2][8][4][2] Certificate download	_____	P180
[2][8][4][3] Certificate host	DoCoMo	P181
[2][8][4][4] Skip password	Yes	P180
[2][8][5] Image & Effect	Image, Animation: Display Use phone information: Yes Sound effect setting: ON	P176
[2][8][6] i-motion	Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON i-motion type setting: Normal type	P183
[2][8][7] Host selection	i-mode(UIM)	P175
[2][9] Full Browser		
[2][9][1] Home	_____	P270
[2][9][2] Bookmark	_____	
[2][9][3] Go to location		
[2][9][3][1] Enter URL	_____	P270
[2][9][3][2] URL history	_____	
[2][9][3][3] Last URL	_____	
[2][9][4] Browser settings		
[2][9][4][1] Home URL	not recorded	P275
[2][9][4][2] Cookie set/delete	Valid	P275
[2][9][4][3] Script setting	Script Setting: Valid Window Open Guard: Invalid	P275
[2][9][4][4] Display mode setting	Mobile mode	P276
[2][9][4][5] Image display	Display (all)	P276
[2][9][4][6] Access setting	No	P276
[2][9][4][7] Referer setting	Send	P276
[2][9][4][8] Screen view setting	With menu icon view	P276

■ i-appli

Menu item	Default	Page
[3][1] Software list	_____	P233
[3][2] i-appli settings		
[3][2][1] Sort software	By download time	P243
[3][2][2] Auto start	ON	P240
[3][2][3] Software info disp.	OFF	P233
[3][2][4] Display light	Terminal setting	P235
[3][2][5] Vibrate effect	ON	P235
[3][2][6] i-appli shortcuts	Not recorded	P240
[3][3] Display history	_____	P234 P241 P242

■ Phonebook & Logs

Menu item	Default	Page
[4][1] Phonebook	Show all names	P83
[4][2] Phonebook new entry	_____	P79
[4][3] Phonebook(UIM) new entry	_____	P81
[4][4] Received calls	_____	P49
[4][5] Redial	_____	P49
[4][6] Ans.Machine & Voice memo		
[4][6][1] Answer machine	Deactivate	P66
[4][6][2] Recorded messages	_____	P68
[4][6][3] Record voice memo	_____	P351
[4][6][4] Voice memos	_____	P351
[4][7] Mail logs		
[4][7][1] Sent msg log	_____	P215
[4][7][2] Received msg log	_____	P215
[4][8] Own number	My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded	P42 P350

■ Data Box

Menu item	Default	Page
[5][1] My Picture	_____	P278
[5][2] Music	_____	P330
[5][3] i-motion	_____	P284
[5][4] Melody	_____	P294
[5][5] My Document	_____	P320
[5][6] Chara-den	_____	P290
[5][7] Machi-chara	_____	P293
[5][8] Kisekai Tool	not set	P118
[5][9] Other	_____	P323

■ LifeKit

Menu item	Default	Page
[6][1] Music player	_____	P330
[6][2] Bar code reader	_____	P158
[6][3] Ir/IC/PC connection		
[6][3][1] Receive Ir data	_____	P313
[6][3][2] Send all Ir data	_____	P313
[6][3][3] Send all via IC	_____	P317
[6][3][4] Save received data	_____	P314
[6][3][5] Data exchange settings	End alert: OFF Auto authentication: OFF Ph.book image sending: ON	P316
[6][3][6] USB mode settings*2	Communication mode	P305
[6][4] ToruCa	_____	P249
[6][5] IC card		
[6][5][1] IC card content	_____	P247
[6][5][2] Lock/Unlock	OFF	P252
[6][5][3] Timed lock	OFF	P254
[6][5][4] IC lock(power-off)	Remain lock status	P254

*1 Certificates saved in the UIM are also reset to the default (all valid) by performing Reset.

*2 In case the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected, the default settings are not restored by performing Reset.

Menu item	Default	Page
[6][5][5] IC card lock setting	Security code	P253
[6][6] microSD	_____	P302
[6][7] Camera	_____	
[6][7][1] Still camera	_____	P147
[6][7][2] Movie camera	_____	P150
[6][8] Sound recorder	_____	P318
[6][9] Data Center	_____	
[6][9][1] Access Data Center	_____	P94
[6][9][2] Synchronization log	_____	P94
[6][9][3] Sync setting	OFF	P94

■ Stationery

Menu item	Default	Page
[7][1] Scheduler	_____	P340
[7][2] Notepad	_____	P354
[7][3] Alarm clock	not set	P338
[7][4] Calculator	_____	P354
[7][5] Dictionaries	_____	P356

■ Settings & NW services

Menu item	Default	Page
[8][1] Alerts & Sounds		
[8][1][1] Set sound		
[8][1][1][1] Call ring alert		
[8][1][1][1][1] Call ring alert	Melody/Vivaldism	P98
[8][1][1][1][2] V.phone ring alert	Melody/電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A)	
[8][1][1][1][3] Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	P139
[8][1][1][2] Mail/Msg ring alert		
[8][1][1][2][1] Mail ring alert	Melody/メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A)	P98
[8][1][1][2][2] Chat M ring alert	Melody/メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	
[8][1][1][2][3] Msg.R ring alert	Melody/メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)	
[8][1][1][2][4] Msg.F ring alert	Melody/メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)	
[8][1][1][3] Alarm sound		
[8][1][1][3][1] Alarm clock sound	Melody/アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)	P101
[8][1][1][3][2] Schedule reminder	Alarm on time: Melody/アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice) Alarm in advance: Melody/パターン4 (Pattern 4)	
[8][1][1][4] System sound		
[8][1][1][4][1] Keypad sound	Keypad sound1	P101
[8][1][1][4][2] Shutter sound	Shutter sound1	P102
[8][1][1][4][3] Movie camera sound	Shutter sound1	
[8][1][1][4][4] Slide sound	Open slide: Melody/スライド・オープン音1 (Slide opening sound1) Close slide: Melody/スライド・クローズ音1 (Slide closing sound1)	P102
[8][1][1][5] Charge alert	ON	P104
[8][1][1][6] Call session		

Menu item	Default	Page
[8][1][1][6][1] Status message	Standard	P63
[8][1][1][6][2] On-hold tone	保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)	P63
[8][1][1][6][3] Quality alarm	High alarm	P104
[8][1][1][6][4] Reconnect alarm	High alarm	P57
[8][1][1][6][5] Low Battery alert	ON	P39
[8][1][2] Adjust volume		
[8][1][2][1] Call alert volume	Level 4	P102
[8][1][2][2] Mail/Msg alert vol.	Level 4	
[8][1][2][3] Listen volume	Level 4	
[8][1][2][4] Alarm volume		
[8][1][2][4][1] Alarm clock sound	Level 4	P102
[8][1][2][4][2] Schedule reminder	Level 4	
[8][1][2][5] i-appli effect sound	Level 4	
[8][1][2][6] ToruCa receive alert	Level 4	
[8][1][3] Vibrate alert/effect		
[8][1][3][1] Call vibrate alert		
[8][1][3][1][1] Call vibrate alert	OFF	P103
[8][1][3][1][2] V.phone vibrate alert	OFF	
[8][1][3][2] Mail/Msg vibrate alert		
[8][1][3][2][1] Mail vibrate alert	OFF	P103
[8][1][3][2][2] Chat M vibrate alert	OFF	
[8][1][3][2][3] Msg.R vibrate alert	OFF	
[8][1][3][2][4] Msg.F vibrate alert	OFF	
[8][1][3][3] Alarm vibrate		
[8][1][3][3][1] Alarm clock	OFF	P103
[8][1][3][3][2] Schedule reminder	OFF	
[8][1][3][4] i-appli effect	ON	P103
[8][1][4] Silent mode	General	P105
[8][1][5] Set mute ring time	OFF	P140
[8][2] Display		
[8][2][1] Stand-by display		
[8][2][1][1] Image/i-appli	use Style Theme setting	P106
[8][2][1][2] Clock format	Style: use Style Theme setting Time format: 24 hour Clock layout: use Style Theme setting Day: English	P123
[8][2][1][3] Battery icon	use Style Theme setting	P117
[8][2][1][4] Signal level icon	use Style Theme setting	P117
[8][2][1][5] Info/calendar layout	Pattern 1 (Set Area1 is not registered)	P109
[8][2][1][6] i-Channel ticker	Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal	P185

Menu item	Default	Page
[8][2][2] Menu preference		
[8][2][2][1] Menu setting*3	Normal: Animation Custom: Tile display Describe function: ON Type of animation: use Style Theme setting Icon display effect: OFF Default MENU: Normal Active shortcut: Custom	P115
[8][2][2][2] Customize shortcut	Standard	P347
[8][2][3] Color & Action image		
[8][2][3][1] Color scheme	use Style Theme setting	P115
[8][2][3][2] Call image		
[8][2][3][2][1] Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P111
[8][2][3][2][2] Incoming call	Standard image	P112
[8][2][3][2][3] Videophone dialing	Display image: Default	P111
[8][2][3][2][4] Videophone receiving	Standard image	P112
[8][2][3][2][5] Contact image	ON	P113
[8][2][3][2][6] Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	P139
[8][2][3][3] Mail image		
[8][2][3][3][1] Outgoing message	Display image: Default	P113
[8][2][3][3][2] Incoming message	Display image: Default	P113
[8][2][3][3][3] Image message alert	Display image: Default	P113
[8][2][3][3][4] Message retrieval	Display image: Default	P113
[8][2][3][4] Receive display	Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display	P113
[8][2][3][5] Videophone image	Substitute image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default	P74
[8][2][4] Display light		
[8][2][4][1] Display light time	Normal use: 10 sec AC adapter connected, i-mode session: Terminal setting Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion: Always on i-appli: Terminal setting	P114
[8][2][4][2] Key light	AUTO	P114
[8][2][4][3] Backlight settings	AUTO(Normal)	P114

Menu item	Default	Page
[8][2][5] Light alert		
[8][2][5][1] Light alert	Incoming Videophone, Incoming call: Flash/Blue Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail: Glimmer/Green ToruCa receive: ON/Blue	P120
[8][2][5][2] Call session light	OFF	P120
[8][2][5][3] IC card light	ON/Blue	P120
[8][2][5][4] Alarm/Other light	Alarm clock, Schedule: Flash/Blue-Green-Red Play melody: Sync melody Open slide, Close slide: Glimmer/Blue-Green Easy selector plus: ON	P120
[8][2][6] Indicator light	ON	P121
[8][2][7] Font & Language		
[8][2][7][1] Font size	Standard (all)	P122
[8][2][7][2] Select language	Japanese	P40
[8][2][8] Style theme	White: ClearLine Brown: GoldShadow Red: RedSquare Pink: ShiningCrystal	P117
[8][2][9] Machi-chara setting	ON/ドコモダケ (docomodake)	P119
[8][3] Security & Locks		
[8][3][1] Locks		
[8][3][1][1] All lock	not set	P130
[8][3][1][2] PIM lock	OFF	P132
[8][3][1][3] IC card lock		
[8][3][1][3][1] Lock/Unlock	OFF	P252
[8][3][1][3][2] Timed lock	OFF	P254
[8][3][1][3][3] IC lock(power-off)	Remain lock status	P254
[8][3][1][3][4] IC card lock setting	Security code	P253
[8][3][1][4] Keypad dial lock	OFF	P133
[8][3][1][5] Key lock		
[8][3][1][5][1] Key lock setting	OFF when slide open	P137
[8][3][1][5][2] Key lock timer	OFF	P137
[8][3][2] Privacy mode	Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My Picture, i-motion, Schedule, i-appli: Show all Auto start: OFF	P134
[8][3][3] Secret mode	not set	P138
[8][3][4] UIM	PIN code, PIN2 code: 0000 PIN code ON/OFF: OFF	P128
[8][3][5] Change security code	0000	P127

*3 If Reset is performed, *Normal* and *Type of animation* return to the default settings. And *Type of tile icons*; *Customized 1* and *Customized 2*, when an image is set, the image setting is canceled.

Menu item	Default	Page
8 3 6 Scanning function		
8 3 6 1 Update	_____	P428
8 3 6 2 Set auto-update	_____	P427
8 3 6 3 Set scan	Valid (all)	P427
8 3 6 4 Version	_____	P429
8 4 Call & Answer		
8 4 1 Sound & Image		
8 4 1 1 Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P111
8 4 1 2 Call alert	Ring alert: Melody/Vivaldism Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: Flash/Blue	P96
8 4 2 Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	P139
8 4 3 Any key answer	ON	P60
8 4 4 Headset		
8 4 4 1 Alert preference	Headset only	P358
8 4 4 2 Auto answer	OFF	P358
8 4 4 3 Headset key control	OFF	P358
8 4 4 4 Microphone	headset microphone	P358
8 4 5 Reject/Accept call		
8 4 5 1 Specified caller	Cancel settings	P138
8 4 5 2 Unregistered caller	OFF	P141
8 4 6 Make/Receive call		
8 4 6 1 Priority comm mode	No Set Up	P62
8 4 6 2 Prefix dialing	009130010	P56
8 4 6 3 Sub address	ON	P56
8 4 6 4 Open answer	OFF	P61
8 4 7 Call session		
8 4 7 1 Noise reduction	ON	P57
8 4 7 2 Close settings	Continue	P61
8 4 8 Self mode	OFF	P132
8 5 Videophone & ToruCa		
8 5 1 Videophone		
8 5 1 1 V.phone dialing img.	Display image: Default	P111
8 5 1 2 Videophone alert	Ring alert: Melody/電話・メロディ A(Phone, melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: Flash/Blue	P96
8 5 1 3 Operation	Auto redial as voice: OFF Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Visual preference: Normal Display light: Always on(normal) Speakerphone: ON	P73
8 5 1 4 DataSession av. act	V.phone priority	P75

Menu item	Default	Page
8 5 1 5 Image setting	Substitute image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default	P74
8 5 1 6 External device	Terminal	P76
8 5 1 7 Notify switchable mode		
8 5 1 7 1 Indication ON	_____	P75
8 5 1 7 2 Indication OFF	_____	P75
8 5 1 7 3 Check Indication	_____	P75
8 5 2 ToruCa		
8 5 2 1 ToruCa alert	Light alert: ON Light color: Blue Receive alert volume: Level4	P97
8 5 2 2 ToruCa settings	ToruCa receive, Duplication check: ON Auto-sort, Auto-display: OFF	P251
8 5 2 3 ToruCa auto-read	ON	P252
8 5 2 4 ToruCa sort rule	_____	P251
8 6 Other		
8 6 1 Clock		
8 6 1 1 Date & time*4	Auto time adjust: ON Offset: +, 00h00m	P41
8 6 1 2 Auto power ON	OFF	P337
8 6 1 3 Auto power OFF	OFF	P337
8 6 1 4 Clock display format	Style: use Style Theme setting Time format: 24 hour Clock layout: use Style Theme setting Day: English	P123
8 6 1 5 Alarm auto power ON	OFF	P340
8 6 2 Other		
8 6 2 1 Save word	_____	P368
8 6 2 2 DL dictionary	_____	P369
8 6 2 3 Reset prediction	_____	P365
8 6 2 4 Save phrase	_____	P367
8 6 2 5 Text input method	Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON Auto cursor: Normal	P363
8 6 3 Font size	Standard (all)	P122
8 6 4 Software update	_____	P424
8 6 5 Quick start-up	ON	P359
8 6 6 Edit by slide	ON (all)	P337
8 6 7 Info. & Reset		
8 6 7 1 Call duration	_____	P352
8 6 7 2 Call cost		
8 6 7 2 1 Last call cost	_____	P352
8 6 7 2 2 Call cost limit	Alert: OFF	P353
8 6 7 2 3 Hide call cost icon	_____	P354
8 6 7 2 4 Reset call cost	OFF	P353
8 6 7 3 Memory status	_____	P311

*4 After performing Reset, *Auto time adjust* and *Offset* return to the default.

Menu item		Default	Page
[8][6][7][4]	Confirm	_____	P359
[8][6][7][5]	Battery level	_____	P39
[8][6][7][6]	Reset	_____	P359
[8][6][7][7]	Delete all data	_____	P359
[8][7] NW Services			
[8][7][1] Voice Mail			
[8][7][1][1] Voice Mail service			
[8][7][1][1][1]	Activate	_____	P372
[8][7][1][1][2]	Set ring time	_____	
[8][7][1][1][3]	Deactivate	_____	
[8][7][1][1][4]	Check setting	_____	
[8][7][1][1][5]	Play messages	_____	
[8][7][1][1][6]	Voice Mail setting	_____	
[8][7][1][1][7]	Check messages	_____	
[8][7][1][2]	Tone/Vibration message notification	Voice Mail alert: ON Notification melody: メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	
[8][7][1][3]	Notify missed call	_____	
[8][7][1][3][1]	Activate	_____	
[8][7][1][3][2]	Deactivate	_____	
[8][7][1][3][3]	Check setting	_____	
[8][7][1][4]	Hide Voice Mail icon	_____	
[8][7][2] Call waiting/forward			
[8][7][2][1] Call waiting			
[8][7][2][1][1]	Activate	_____	P373
[8][7][2][1][2]	Deactivate	_____	
[8][7][2][1][3]	Check setting	_____	
[8][7][2][2] Call forwarding			
[8][7][2][2][1]	Activate	_____	P374
[8][7][2][2][2]	Deactivate	_____	
[8][7][2][2][3]	Register The Forwarding Number	_____	
[8][7][2][2][4]	Setting if forwarding number busy	_____	
[8][7][2][2][5]	Check setting	_____	
[8][7][3] Chaku-moji			
[8][7][3][1]	Create message	_____	P52
[8][7][3][2]	Message display settings	Only with Caller ID	P52
[8][7][4] Caller ID			
[8][7][4][1] Caller ID notification			
[8][7][4][1][1]	Activate/Deactivate	_____	P42
[8][7][4][1][2]	Check setting	_____	P42
[8][7][4][2] Caller ID request			
[8][7][4][2][1]	Activate	_____	P375
[8][7][4][2][2]	Deactivate	_____	
[8][7][4][2][3]	Check setting	_____	

Menu item		Default	Page
[8][7][5] OFFICEED			
[8][7][5][1]	Area display setting	OFF	P378
[8][7][5][2]	Start forwarding	_____	
[8][7][5][3]	Stop forwarding	_____	
[8][7][5][4]	Check fwd setting	_____	
[8][7][6] Other			
[8][7][6][1] Additional service			
[8][7][6][1][1]	Register USSD	_____	P378
[8][7][6][1][2]	Record reply message	_____	
[8][7][6][2] Remote control			
[8][7][6][2][1]	Activate	_____	P377
[8][7][6][2][2]	Deactivate	_____	
[8][7][6][2][3]	Check setting	_____	
[8][7][6][3] Nuisance call barring			
[8][7][6][3][1]	Register the caller	_____	P374
[8][7][6][3][2]	Register selected No	_____	
[8][7][6][3][3]	Delete all entries	_____	
[8][7][6][3][4]	Delete last entry	_____	
[8][7][6][3][5]	Check the number of entries	_____	
[8][7][6][4] English guidance			
[8][7][6][4][1]	Guidance setting	_____	P375
[8][7][6][4][2]	Check setting	_____	
[8][7][6][5] Dual network			
[8][7][6][5][1]	Dual Network Switching	_____	P375
[8][7][6][5][2]	Check setting	_____	
[8][7][6][6] Service numbers			
[8][7][6][6][1]	ドコモ故障問合せ (DoCoMo for Repairs)	_____	P376
[8][7][6][6][2]	ドコモ総合案内・受付 (DoCoMo for General Inquiries)	_____	
[8][7][6][7] Multi number			
[8][7][6][7][1]	Set Multi Number	_____	P377
[8][7][6][7][2]	Check setting	_____	
[8][7][6][7][3]	Number Setting	Basic Number: 基本契約番号 (Basic Number)/ my phone number Additional No1: 付加番号1/Not recorded Additional No2: 付加番号2/Not recorded Multi number call: Disable	
[8][7][6][7][4]	Incoming calls melody setting	OFF	

Menu item	Default	Page
[8][7][6][8] Set arrival act		P376
[8][7][6][8][1] Activate	_____	
[8][7][6][8][2] Deactivate	_____	
[8][7][6][8][3] Check setting	_____	
[8][7][6][9] Arrival call act	Answer	
[8][8] Int'l call assist		P55
[8][8][1] Auto switch	Intn'l prefix: ON	
[8][8][2] Auto assist setting	Name: World Call, Intn'l prefix No.: 009130010	

■ 1Seg

Menu item	Default	Page
[9][1] Activate 1Seg	_____	P259
[9][2] Program guide	_____	P262
[9][3] Booking program list	_____	P263
[9][4] TVlink	_____	P265
[9][5] Channel setting	_____	P258

■ Menu list of the simple menu

[1] でんわ
[1] 電話帳検索
[2] 電話帳登録
[3] リダイヤル
[4] 着信履歴
[5] 伝言メモ一覧
[6] メール送受信履歴
[7] 自局番号
[2] メール
[1] 受信メール
[2] 送信メール
[3] 未送信メール
[4] 新規メール
[5] i モード問合せ

[3] ワンセグ/カメラ
[1] ワンセグ視聴
[2] カメラ
[3] マイピクチャ
[4] 待受画面設定
[4] i モード
[1] i メニュー
[2] ブックマーク
[3] ラストURL
[4] 画面メモ
[5] i チャネル一覧
[6] テロップ表示設定

Menu item	Default	Page
[9][6] 1Seg settings		
[9][6][1] 1Seg backlight	AUTO(Nomal)	P266
[9][6][2] Unlock key lock	Not unlock	P267
[9][6][3] Display image	ON	P267
[9][6][4] Sound effect	ON	P267
[9][6][5] Delete storage area	_____	P267
[9][6][6] Reset permissionDisp	_____	P267
[9][6][7] Confirm settings	_____	P267
[9][6][8] Reset settings	_____	P268

■ Own number

Menu item	Default	Page
[0] Own number	My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded	P42 P350

[5] i アプリ
[1] ソフト一覧
[2] 待受画面設定
[3] i アプリ設定
[6] データBOX
[1] マイピクチャ
[2] i モーション
[3] メロディ
[4] マイドキュメント
[5] キャラ電

[7] 設定/ステーションリー
[1] 音/パイプ
[2] ディスプレイ
[3] 目覚まし
[4] 電卓
[5] 伝言メモ設定
[6] 情報表示/リセット
[7] 留守番電話
[0] 自局番号

Data set by default

- In case of deleting the following data, you can download from the i-mode site “My D-style”.
 - Image for Deco-mail picture • Deco-mail pictogram • Frame • Chara-den • Machi-chara
 - Kisekai tool

How to access i-mode site “My D-style” (in Japanese only)

To access “My D-style”, select **iMenu** → **メニュー／検索** (Menu/search) → **ケータイ電話メーカー** (Mobile phone manufacturer) (as of July 2007).

- Scanning QR code shown right with Bar Code Reader allows you to connect to “My D-style”.



QR code for
website connection

Image/i-motion for the standby display

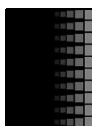
Image



Clear line



Gold
shadow



Red
square



Shining
crystal



Leaf



Polka dot



Roundabout



Castle

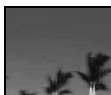


Guidance*1

i-motion



Many monitors



The Ocean*2

*1 If *Style* is set to **Digital 1** and *Clock layout* is set to **Top** in Clock Display Format, the clock does not overlap with the operation guidance.

*2 It can also be set to Movie ringtone.

Normal menu

Tile display



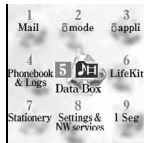
Type1



Type2



Type3



Type4



Type5

Animation



Type1



Type2



Type3



Type4



Type5

Image for Deco-mail picture

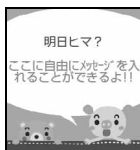
The following images are stored in the *Deco-mail picture* folder of *My Picture* in Data Box.

- The design of some images may be unclear when the background color is set to white.
- Some of the following images may be different from those on the screen, because the background color is changed to make the design clear. In addition, the size of the image is different from that of the image to be inserted actually.



Mail template

明日ヒマ？
(Are you available tomorrow?)



あまぁ～い
(Sweet)



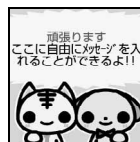
はいは～い！
(O.K.)



ゴメン！
(Sorry!)



頑張ります
(I will do my best.)



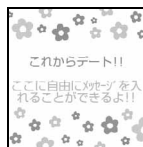
まだ仕事中～。
(Still working...)



Happy Birthday !



これからデート!!
(I have a date!!)



ラッキー!
(Lucky!)



*1

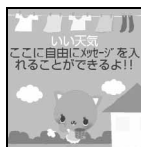
ただ今急行中!!
(Going in a hurry!!)



*夢*みたいな
(Like dream)



いい天気
(Nice weather)



メリークリスマス
(Merry Christmas)



*1

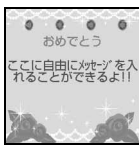
うそよ!!
(Lie!!)



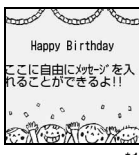
ありがとう!
(Thanks!)



おめでとう
(Congratulations!)

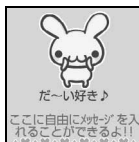


Happy Birthday

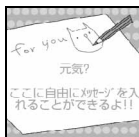


*1

だ～い好き♪
(Crazy about you♪)



元気?
(How are you?)



キラキララインストーン
(Sparkle in stones)



ラブラブ
(Love)



*1

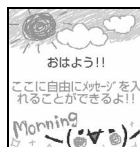
☆おやすみ☆
(Good night)



おつかれさま
(See you.)



おはよう!!
(Good morning!!)



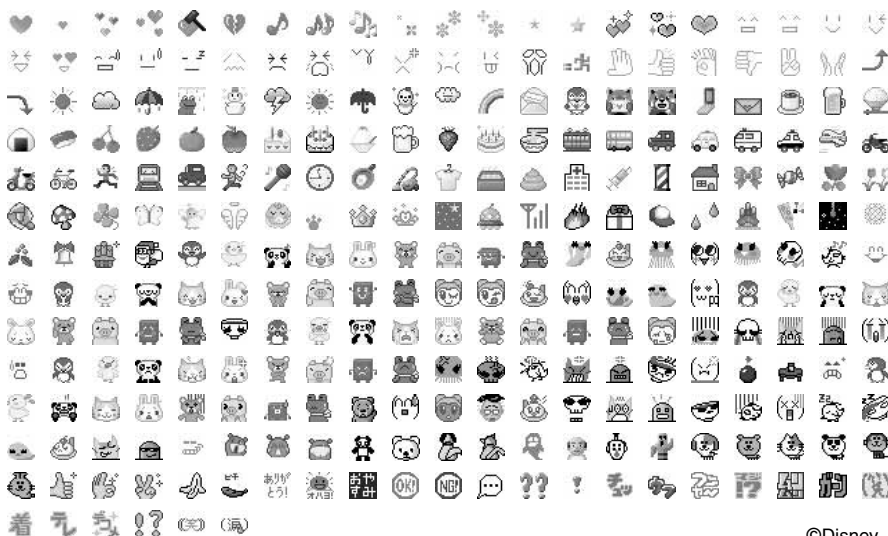
I'm sad...



*1

*1 Melody is attached.

Deco-mail pictogram



©Disney

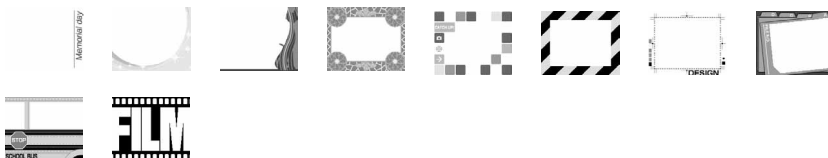
Frame

■ Standby size (240 x 320)



*1 The actual screen is a white background and has no frame.

■ QCIF size (176 x 144)



Stamp



Chara-den

Dimo



女の子(Girl)



男子(Boy)



Machi-chara

ドコモダケ
(docomodake)



シャチ
(Orca)



スケボーマン
(Skateboarder)

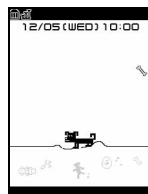


© NTT DoCoMo/
dentsu

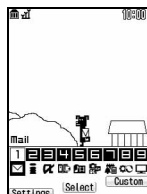
Kisekae tool

■ ドットドッグ(Dot Dog)

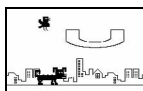
Stand-by display



Animated menu



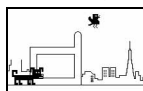
**Outgoing call
image**



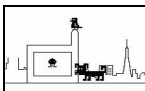
Incoming call
image



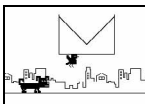
Videophone dialing



Videophone receiving



Message sending



Message receiving

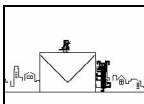
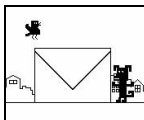
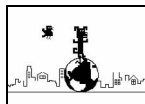


Image message alert



Message retrieving



Item	Contents
Battery icon	→ →
Antenna icon	→ →
Call ring alert	電話・黒電話 (Phone, phone retro)
Videophone ring alert	電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A)
Mail ring alert	メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)

Item	Contents
Chat mail ring alert	メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)
MessageR/F ring alert	メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)
Alarm clock sound	アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)
Color theme	SuperWhite

List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)

Key	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)*1	Katakana mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Alphabet mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Numeric mode (one-byte/two-byte)*2
①	あ い う え お 1	アイウエオ 1	. / @*3 _ : _ [¥] _ ' _ { } 1	1
②	か き く け こ 2	カ キ ク ケ コ 2	a b c 2	2
③	さ し す せ そ 3	サ シ ス セ ソ 3	d e f 3	3
④	た ち つ て と 4	タ チ ツ テ ト 4	g h i 4	4
⑤	な に ぬ ね の 5	ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ 5	j k l 5	5
⑥	は ひ ふ へ ほ 6	ハ ヒ フ ヘ ホ 6	m n o 6	6
⑦	ま み む め も 7	マ ミ ム メ モ 7	p q r s 7	7
⑧	や ゆ よ 8	ヤ ユ ヨ 8	t u v 8	8
⑨	ら り る れ ろ 9	ラ リ ル レ ロ 9	w x y z 9	9
⑩	わ を ん ー、。 ・ ? ! 「 」 □ 0	ワ*4 ラ ン ー、。 ・ ? ! 「 」 □ 0	! " # \$ % & ' () * + _ ; < = > ? □ 0	0 +*5
* Ⓢ	* .	* .	The following character strings can be entered only in one-byte alphabet mode: @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	* P*5
#*6	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed	# T*5

□: Indicates blank space. : Press Ⓢ after entering a character to switch between upper and lower cases.

*1 Numeric characters other than those entered in the two-byte numeric mode are entered as one-byte characters.

2 In numeric mode, “”, “#”, “P”, “T” and “+” can only be entered in the entry field that supports them.

*3 This character is entered as “~” in the one-byte alphabet mode.

*4 Upper and lower cases are switched in case of two-byte characters only.

*5 Hold down the relevant key for over a second to enter the character.

*6 Line feed may not be possible depending on the entry field.

List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)

Input slot		Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)	Input slot		Katakana mode (one-byte)	Input slot		Alphanumeric mode (one-byte)
Upper slot	あ	あいうえおあいうえお 1	Upper slot	ア	アイウエオアイウエオ 1	Upper slot	.	/ 0 ~ — : [¥] ^ { } 1
	か	かきくけこ 2		カ	カキクケコ 2		A	ABC abc 2
	さ	さしすせそ 3		サ	サシスセソ 3		D	DEF def 3
	た	たちつとっ 4		タ	タチツツトツ 4		G	GHI ghi 4
	な	なにぬねの 5		ナ	ナニヌネノ 5		J	JKL jkl 5
	..	..		.	..		定	@docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm
Lower slot	は	はひふへほ 6	Lower slot	ハ	ハヒフヘホ 6	Lower slot	M	MNO mno 6
	ま	まみむめも 7		マ	マミムメモ 7		P	PQR S pqr s 7
	や	やゆよ やゆよ 8		ヤ	ヤユヨ ャュョ 8		T	TUV tuv 8
	ら	らりるれる 9		ラ	ラリルレロ 9		W	WXYZ wxyz 9
	わ	わをんー、。?!「」 □ 0		ワ	ワヲンー、。?!「」 □ 0		!	! " # \$ % & ' () * + , ; < = > ? □ 0
	↵	Line feed		↵	Line feed		↵	Line feed

□: Indicates two-byte space in hiragana/kanji mode and one-byte space in katakana, alphanumeric mode.

- “.” and “.” are switched with every press of (.) in hiragana/kanji mode.
- Numeric characters are displayed as one-byte characters.

List of fixed phrases

Common (20 items)

おはよう	おやすみ
おはよう！今日も一日がんばりましょう。	昨日は、とっても楽しかったです。どうもありがとう。
連絡下さい。	今から電話してもいいですか？
ごめんなさい、遅れます。	今日は〇〇の日です。早く帰って来てね。
〇〇まで迎えに来て！お願いします。	〇〇について知っている人は〇〇までに〇〇に教えて下さい。
もう少し待って！	
いってらっしゃい。	留守電にメッセージをお願いします。
〇〇で待ってます。	ただいま電話にすることができません。メールでご用件をお知らせ下さい。
集合時間は〇〇、集合場所は〇〇です。	
今日は外で食べて帰ります。ご飯はいりません。	メールありがとう。
〇〇の写真送ります。	最近の〇〇の写真です。

Pleasure (20 items)

今なにしてるの？連絡下さい☆	今日、あいてる？
遊びに行かない？	今すぐ電話してーo(°o°)o
ごめんなさい、遅れます(>_<)	今、どこにいるの？(p_-)
ただいま到着ー(*´д`*)	着いたら連絡下さい
大変(>_<)	今から会わない？('-**)
飲みに行かない？	今日〇〇しない(？_?)
〇〇は〇〇時に〇〇でよろしく(°0°)/	今度誘ってよ(°0°)v
今日〇〇と〇〇行くけど、来る？	

今度みんなで〇〇に行かない？〇〇までに都合のいい日教えて	
みんなでどっか行かない？行きたいところあったら教えて～☆	
残念だけど無理なんだ(TOT)	メールしてね(o^_^o) 待ってます☆
写真送ります q(^_^)P	

■ Business (20 items)

本日の〇〇会議は、〇〇となりました。	本日の〇〇訪問は、〇〇となりました。
〇〇へ直行します。	〇〇へ直帰します。
電車遅延のため、〇〇遅れます。	至急TEL下さい。
予定変更！ TEL下さい。	待ち合わせ変更！ 場所：〇〇、時間：〇〇
〇〇頃まで、携帯電話の電源を切ります。	振込口座：〇〇銀行〇〇支店、口座番号〇〇、名義
〇〇の件、よろしくお願い致します。	人名〇〇です。
今日、一杯どうですか？連絡下さい。	FAX確認願います。
次の指示を待て。	変更します。
延期します。	中止します。
〇〇での写真送ります。	今わかりません。
あとで連絡します。	

■ Answer (20 items)

Thank you!	Good!	OKです。	NGです。
いいよ。	行きます。	了解。	ダメ！
ごめんネ・・・	スミマセン、無理です。	本当？	おまかせっ！！
関係ないね！	うらやましー。	お疲れさま。	反対。
賛成。	待ってました！	それは残念。	写真届きました。

■ Others (20 items)

またねー！	今どこ？	お誕生日おめでとう。	おめでとう。
まじでー！？	まかせなさい！！	キャンセル。	いってきます。
頑張って！	ありがとう！	www.	.ne.jp
.co.jp	.or.jp	.ac.jp	.net
.com	.org	.html	http://

■ Pictogram words (20 items)

☎	☎	☎	☎	☎	☎
×=3	☎×	☎	☎	☎ zzz	☎
♥♥♥	☎=3=3=3	☎	☎	☎	☎
☎	☎	☎	☎	☎	☎

- Pictogram words can be displayed by entering readings as well.
For readings, refer to "Pictogram phrases". ➡P403

■ My phrase (up to 50 items)

- The registered fixed phrases are displayed.

List of face marks

Entering one of the following readings in hiragana/kanji mode and pressing  allows you to convert it. Entering “かお” or “かおもじ” also allows converting for face marks shown as .

挨拶・返事(Greetings/Answer)

Face mark	Readings
(^-^)/^^	ばい あいさつ
(^ ^)/シ	ばいばい あいさつ
(^_^)/~	ばいばい あいさつ
ヾ(^_^) byebye!!	ばいばい あいさつ
(^^)/	おーい じゃあ どーも よろしく あいさつ
(^-^)/	おーい じゃあ どーも よろしく あいさつ
(^^)/^^~	ばいばい あいさつ
(^_^)/	おーい あいさつ
(//〰〰//) ∫°	にこっ あいさつ
~('-'*)	やあ あいさつ
(*^-^)/	ちわっ あいさつ
ヾ('ω`='ω`)/	おはよう あいさつ
(o^-')b	ぐっ ぐー へんじ
(≥ω≤) b	ぐっ ぐー へんじ
(・∀・n)	はい へんじ
('-'*)ok	おっけー へんじ
(`_')ゞ了解!	りょうかい へんじ
(。_。)/	やあ あいさつ
(=° ω°)/	やあ あいさつ

笑う・うれしい(Smile/Glad)

Face mark	Readings
(^-^)	にこっ わらう
(^-^)v	にこっ うれしい
(^o^)	うほほ にこっ わーい うれしい
o(^o^o)	うきうき うれしい
(o^_^o)	にこっ うれしい
(*^_^*)	にこっ うれしい
(・∀・)	きたー にこっ わらう
ヾ(^▽)/	わーい うれしい
ヽ('ー')ノ	わーい うれしい
(*▽*)	にこっ うれしい
(☆▽☆)	きらーん うれしい
(^^)v	やったね びーす にこっ ぶい うれしい
(=〰=)	にこっ うれしい
('∀')	にこっ うれしい
(≥▽≤)	うれしい
:-)	にこっ すまいる わらう

Face mark	Readings
V(^o^)	びーす うれしい
(^o^)/チュ	ちゅっ にこっ わらう
((o(^-^o))	わくわく うれしい
(^^)	にこっ わらう
v(^o^)	いえい ぶい びーす うれしい
(^_^)v	やったね びーす にこっ ぶい うれしい
(^.^)	にこっ わらう
(^o^)	わーい わらう
(^o^)/	おーい はーい わらう
(^o^v	やったね びーす にこっ ぶい わらう
)^o^(	ほっぺがおちる わらう
ヽ(^o^)/	わーい わらう
:-)	にこっ すまいる わらう
ヽ(≥▽≤)/	きゃー うれしい
d=(^o^)=b	ぐー うれしい
ε=ヾ(*^▽^)/	きゃー うれしい
(@^o^@)	うれしい
(' 艹 ')	むふふ うれしい

照れる・怒る(Shy/Angry)

Face mark	Readings
(^^ゞ	ぼりぼり てれる
f(^_^)	てへ てれる
(#.^.#)	にこっ ぼっ てれる
(*^.^*)	えへっ てれる
(//▽//)	てれ てれる
(*'-')	てへっ てれる
(=° ω° =)	てへっ てれる
(*´ 旦 `*)	こまる てれ てれる
!p	てへっ てれる
('▽')	うぶふ てれる
ヽ(*´ 旦 ´)ノ	こら ござあ ござあ おこる
o-_-)=☆	ばんち おこる
(ノ-")ノ ^{└─┘}	ちゃぶだい おこる
(_-#)	こらっ おこる
:-)	ふまん おこる
ψ(´◇´)ψ	こら おこる
(ノ´ 旦 ´)ノ	こらっ おこる

Face mark	Readings
(● ` ε ´ ●)	ぶんぶん むかつ おこる

■ 泣く・悲しい(Cry/Sorrow)

Face mark	Readings
(>_<)	あいた いたい いてー ひえー なく
(T^T)	うるうる なく
(T_T)	しくしく なく
(/_;)	しくしく なく
(+_+)	びくっ かなしい
(x_x;)	がっくり かなしい
(/_..)	くすん なく
(つД`)	ぐすん なく
○ ￣ __	がっくし かなしい
(´・ω・`)	しょぼん かなしい
(;D;)	しくしく なく
(>_<)	なく
(;_;)	しくしく なく
(T-T)	なき うるうる なく
(TOT)	なき うるうる なく
(/_..)	いたい なく
:<	なく かなしい
(; ´Д`)	なき ぐすん なく
°・(ノД`´)°・	えーん なく

■ 驚き(Surprised)

Face mark	Readings
(*_*)	びくっ おどろき
(..?)	めがてん おどろき
(..;)	めがてん おどろき
(°-°)	うーん おどろき
(@_@)	びくっ おどろき
(--;)	ぎくっ おどろき
(_☆)	きらーん おどろき
(□□;)!!	がーん おどろき
(° o° ;)	ぼかーん おどろき
Σ(□□)!	びっくり がーん ぎく おどろき
(◇◇;)	えっ おどろき
\ (° □° ;) ノ	えっ おどろき
(;° □°)	えっ おどろき
(((((° Д° ;))))	がくがく おどろき
(=_;)	ぎくっ てつや おどろき
(.·;)	めがてん おどろき
(° o°)	ぎくっ ぎょ おどろき
(° o° ;)	ぎくっ ぎょ おどろき
@_@.	びくっ ぎょっ おどろき
(° Д°)	ぼかーん おどろき

Face mark	Readings
(°_°)	うーん おどろき
(°o°;	めがてん おどろき
(°_°)	めがてん おどろき
(°_°;	めがてん おどろき
(°o°)	めがてん おどろき
(° o°)/	おおー びっくり おどろき
(° o°;;	ぎくっ おどろき
Σ(°□°;)	がーん おどろき

■ 疑問・焦り(Question/Impatient)

Face mark	Readings
(^^;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(?_?)	なぜ ぎもん
(-_-;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
w=(° o°)=w	ばたばた ぎもん
σ(°_°;)?	えっ ぎもん
(;_¬_)ジ°	じー ぎもん
0(>);(><)0	あたふた あせり
(° Д° ;≡;° Д°)	あたふた あせり
^^;	ぎくっ あせり
(^^;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(°_°;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(°-°;	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(°~°;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(¥_¥;)	ぎくっ あせ ぎもん
(*_*;	びくっ あせり
°_°;	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(?_?;	ぎくっ なぜ ぎもん
ε=└(°_°)┘	にげる あせり
(° ▽° ;)	ぎくっ あせ えっ あせり
((O(>_<)O))	じたばた あせり
(;° 0°)	ぎくっ あせ あせり

■ その他(Others)

Face mark	Readings
(~▽~@)♪♪♪	うたう
(´◇´)s	りょうかい おっけー らじゃ
m(_ _)m	ぺこり
_(_)_	ぺこり
<(_ _)>	ありがと おねがい ごめん ぺこり
≡≡≡^(*--)/	いそぐ にげる
(°_°;))))))コソコソ...	こそこそ
p(°~°)q	がんばれ ふあいと
;)	ういんく
(°_°)	ういんく
(・∀・)イイ	いい

List of pictograms/pictogram phrases

Entering one of the following readings in hiragana/kanji mode and pressing  allows you to convert it.

- Entering “えもじ” also allows converting for Pictogram 1.
- Entering “えもじに” also allows converting for Pictogram 2.
- In case of sending i-mode Mail including pictograms to mobile phones of other companies (au/SoftBank/Tu-Ka), they are converted to similar pictograms on the recipient's phones automatically.
 - Pictograms may not be displayed correctly depending on the model or function of the mobile phone used by the recipient.
 - In case there are no corresponding pictograms in the recipient's, they are converted to any character or “■”.
- Pictogram 2 or pictogram phrases including pictogram 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some other terminals.
- When you send SMS,  is replaced by  and pictograms other than ,  or  are replaced by one-byte space.

Pictogram 1

Pictogram	Readings
	はーと
	はーと
	しつれん はーと
	はーと
	うれしい にこ かお
	おこる いかり むか かお
	がっかり かなしい かお
	かなしい かお
	ぶらぶら かお
	いぬ どうぶつ
	ねこ どうぶつ
	はれ てんき たいよう
	くもり てんき くも
	あめ てんき かさ
	ゆき てんき
	かみなり てんき
	たいふう てんき うずまき
	きり てんき
	こさめ てんき かさ
	るんるん おんぷ おんがく
	むーど おんぷ おんがく
	おんせん ふろ おふる
	かわいい はな
	きすまーく きす くち
	びかびか きらきら
	ひらめき でんきゅう びかびか
	むか いかり おこる
	ばんち て ぐー
	ばくだん

Pictogram	Readings
	ねむい ねむり すいみん ねる
	びっくり
	びっくり はてな
	びっくり
	どん しょうげき
	あせ
	あせ
	だっしゅ
	ちょうおん
	ちょうおん
	けってい おーけー おっけー
	みぎうえ みぎななめうえ やじるし
	みぎした みぎななめした やじるし
	ひだりうえ ひだりなな めうえ やじるし
	ひだりした ひだりなな めした やじるし
	ぐっど やじるし
	ばっど やじるし
	め
	みみ
	ぐー て
	ちょき びい ぴーす て
	ばー て
	あし
	はーと とらんぷ
	すぺーど とらんぷ
	だいや とらんぷ

Pictogram	Readings
	くらぶ くろーばー とらんぷ
	でんしゃ のりもの てつどう
	ちかてつ のりもの
	しんかんせん のりもの
	くるま のりもの じどうしゃ
	くるま のりもの じどうしゃ
	バス くるま のりもの
	ふね のりもの
	ひこうき のりもの くうこう
	りぞーと よっと のりもの
	くりすます つりー
	いえ じたく
	びる かいしゃ
	ゆうびんぎょく ゆうびん
	びょういん
	ぎんこう
	えーていーえむ ぎんこう
	ほてる
	こんびにえんすすとあ こんびに
	がそりんすたんど がそりん がすた がすた
	ちゅうしゃじょう ばーきんぐ ばーく
	しんごう
	といれ
	れすとらん しょくじ ごはん

Pictogram	Readings
	きつさてん こーひー かつぷ かふえ
	ばー かくてる さけ
	びーる さけ
	ふあーすとふーど はんばーがー
	ぶていっく くつ ひーる
	びよういん はさみ とこや
	からおけ まいく
	えいが
	ゆうえんち もくぼ
	おんがく へっどほん
	あーと
	えんげき
	いべんと
	ちけっと きつぷ
	すぼーつ しゃつ
	やきゅう すぼーつ ぼーる
	ごるふ すぼーつ
	てにす すぼーつ
	さっかー すぼーつ ぼーる
	すきー すぼーつ
	ばすけっとぼーる ばすけ ばすけっと すぼーつ
	もーたーすぼーつ ふらっぐ はた すぼーつ
	ぼけっとべる ぼけべる
	きつえん たばこ
	きんえん たばこ
	かめら
	かばん ばっぐ
	ほん
	りぼん
	ふれぜんと
	ばーすでー ろうそく たんじょうび

Pictogram	Readings
	でんわ
	でんわ けいたいでんわ けいたい けーたい
	めーる
	めも
	てれび
	げーむ
	しーでいー おんがく
	くつ すにーかー
	めがね
	くるまいす
	おひつじざ せいざ
	おうしざ せいざ
	ふたござ せいざ
	かにざ せいざ
	ししざ せいざ
	おとめざ せいざ
	てんびんざ せいざ
	さそりざ せいざ
	いてざ せいざ
	やぎざ せいざ
	みずがめざ せいざ
	うおざ せいざ
	しんげつ つき
	つき
	はんげつ つき
	みかづき つき
	まんげつ つき
	でんわ けいたいでんわ けいたい けーたい
	めーる
	ふあつくす
	あいもーど
	あいもーど
	どこも
	どこも

Pictogram	Readings
	ゆうりょう えん おかね かね
	むりょう ふりー
	あいでいー
	ばすわーど かぎ ろくく
	りたーん えんたー
	くりあ
	さーち むしめがね
	にゅー
	いちじょうほう はた ふらっぐ
	ふりーだいやる
	しゃーぶだいやる
	もばきゅー
	いち すうじ
	に すうじ
	さん すうじ
	よん し すうじ
	ご すうじ
	ろく すうじ
	なな しち すうじ
	はち すうじ
	きゅー きゅう く すうじ
	ぜろ れい すうじ
	かちんこ えいが
	ふくろ
	べん
	ひとかげ ひと
	いす
	よる つき
	すーん
	おん
	えんど おわり
	とけい じかん

Pictogram 2

Pictogram	Readings
	じてんしゃ のりもの
	れんち こうぐ しゅうり
	ばそこん ぴーしー
	えんぴつ
	くりっぷ

Pictogram	Readings
	さいゅう やじるし
	じょうげ やじるし
	りさいくる
	えぬじー
	まるひ ひみつ

Pictogram	Readings
	きんし
	こうしつ こうせき こうしゃ あき
	ごうかく
	まんしつ まんせき まんしゃ まん

Pictogram	Readings
	きけん けいこく びっくり
	こびーらいと しー
	とれーどまーく ていえむ
	れじすたーどとれーどまーく あーる
	あいあぶり
	あいあぶり
	どるぶくろ おかね かね
	うでどけい とけい じかん
	すなどけい とけい
	おにぎり おむすび
	しょーとけーき けーき
	ばん
	どんぶり らーめん
	ゆのみ おちゃ
	とっくり にほんしゅ さけ
	わいんぐらす わいん さけ
	ばなな くだもの
	りんご くだもの
	さくらんぼ くだもの
	くろーばー よつば は はっぱ
	ちゅーりつぷ はな

Pictogram	Readings
	め は はっぱ
	もみじ は はっぱ
	さくら はな
	かたつむり どうぶつ
	ひよこ とり どうぶつ
	ぺんぎん どうぶつ
	さかな どうぶつ
	うま どうぶつ
	ぶた どうぶつ
	ていーしゃつ しゃつ
	じーんず じーばん すぽん
	けしょう くちべに
	ゆびわ りんぐ
	おうかん
	ちゃべる べる あらーむ
	どあ とびら
	がっこう
	なみ うみ
	ふじさん やま
	すのぼ すのーぼーど
	はしる ひと だっしゅ
	うーん かお
	ほっ にこ かお

Pictogram	Readings
	あせ かお
	あせ かお
	むっ むか かお
	ぼけ かお
	はーと かお
	あっかんぺー ペー かお
	ういんく かお
	うれしい にこ かお
	がまん かお
	ねこ どうぶつ かお
	えーん かなしい なく かお
	なみだ かなしい なく かお
	うまい おいしい かお
	うっしっし うれしい かお
	げっそり さげび かお
	おーけー ぐっど て おっけー
	らぶれたー てがみ めーる
	さいふ おかね かね

Pictogram phrases

- Entering one of the following readings allows you to select among the predictive conversion options.
Converting is unavailable by pressing

Pictogram phrases	Readings
	あげ るん
	いくぞ
	いそぎ それー
	いためし いたりあん めし
	いやー わーん
	ういんく ういんく きらー
	えっ
	おこった
	おちこむ
	おはー おはよう
	からおけ
	がんばれ
	くるま どうらいぶ
	こんぱ ごうこん

Pictogram phrases	Readings
	ごきげん
	ごめん
	さがり はー
	ざっかー
	しゃしん
	だっしゅ
	ちどりあし ぶらぶら
	ちゅうか めし
	ちゅっ
	つかれた ぶー
	どうしよう
	どきどき
	ねる
	のみ のみかい

Pictogram phrases	Readings
	ばーんち むかつく
	ばい ばいばい
	ばにつく
	はろー またね
	ばんざい ばんざーい
	ひとりぼっち
	ひーす
	ぶんぶん
	めろめろ
	よろ よろしく らっきー
	らぶらぶ
	るんるん

Combination of operations during Multiaccess

The following table shows whether or not a process that is generated or to be performed can be operated when any other operation is in progress:

Processes that occur or are performed Current status	Voice call		Videophone call		i-mode	Full Browser	i-mode Mail	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Connect	Connect	Send	Receive
During a voice call	△*1	△*1, 2	×	△*3	○	○	○	○*4
During a videophone call	×	△*3	×	△*3	×	×	×	×
During i-mode	○	○	○*5	△*6	×	○*5	○	○
Connecting to Full Browser	○	○	○*7	△*6	×	×	○*7	○
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○	○	○*5	△*6	○	○*8	○*9	○*9
During SMS reception/transmission	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*9	○*9
During i-αppli operation	○*10	○*10	○*10	○*10	×	×	○	○*4
During packet communication connecting to PC	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	△*2, 12	×	△*3	×	×	×	×
Connecting to the Data Center	○*13	○	○*14	△*6	×	×	×	×

Processes that occur or are performed Current status	SMS		Packet communication connecting to PC		64K data communication		Data transmission	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive
During a voice call	○	○*4	○	○	×	△*3	×	×
During a videophone call	×	○*4	×	×	×	△*3	×	×
During i-mode	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
Connecting to Full Browser	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	○*9	○*9	×	×	×	×	×	×
During SMS reception/transmission	○*9	○*9	○	○	○*15	○	×	×
During i-αppli operation	○	○*4	○	○	○	○	○	×
During packet communication connecting to PC	○*16	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	○*4	×	×	×	△*3	×	×
Connecting to the Data Center	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

○: Another communication is available. △: Another communication is available depending on conditions.

×: Another communication is unavailable.

- * In case a videophone call is made connecting with the external device, the operation during 64K data communication is applied.
- * During i-mode (i-mode connection) includes i-Channel communication (except receiving information).
- * Receiving i-mode Mail includes receiving Message R/F and receiving the information of i-Channel.
- * Data transmission includes the infrared communication and iC communication.

*1 In case Call Waiting Service is active, you can make a call to another party or receive from another party during a call.

*2 Subscribers to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.

*3 In case Call Waiting Service or Call Forwarding Service is active, the call is recorded as missed call in the received call history. In addition, when *Set arrival act* is activated, the call is recorded as missed call in the received call history even if Call Waiting Service or Call Forwarding Service is deactivated.

*4 The ring alert does not sound.

*5 i-mode communication is disconnected if active.

*6 Depends on the setting of Data Session Arrival Act.

*7 In case of connecting to Full Browser, Full Browser connection is disconnected.

*8 Connecting is available after finishing sending/receiving i-mode Mail.

*9 Sending while sending or receiving while receiving cannot be performed. Sending and receiving may not be allowed at the same time.

- *10 Melody of i-appli is stopped. When i-appli is using i-mode, i-mode is disconnected.
- *11 The call is recorded as missed call in the received call history.
- *12 In case Call Waiting Service is active, you can select answering a call after finishing the current communication or rejecting the incoming call.
- *13 In case of connecting to the Data Center, dialing via the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is not available.
- *14 Communication to the Data Center is disconnected if active.
- *15 Sending may not be available during sending SMS.
- *16 You can compose and send SMS from the phonebook.

Combination of functions during Multitask

Whether or not selections made in the *New Task* menu can be combined with the currently run or set function is described in the following table:

○ : can be selected × : cannot be selected

New Task menu item	 Dial	[1] Mail										[2] i-mode																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																	
		 Inbox	 Compose message	 Chat Mail	 Unsent messages	 Outbox	[6] Check new message			[7] SMS			 Read templates	 i Menu	 Bookmark	[3] Go to location			 Screen Memo	 Message retrieval	[6] Message R&F																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
							 i-mode message	 SMS	 Receive option	 Compose SMS	 Received SMS	 Sent SMS				 Enter URL	 URL history	 Last visited URL			 MessageR	 MessageR																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							
Function in progress																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																													

○ : can be selected × : cannot be selected

New Task menu item

○ : can be selected × : cannot be selected

New Task menu item	[5]Data Box					[6]LifeKit							[7]Stationery				[8]Adjust volume				[9]
	[5]	[6]	[7]	[8]	[9]	[1]	[2]	[3]	[4]	[5]	[6]	[7]	[1]	[2]	[3]	[4]	[1]	[2]	[3]	[4]	[1]
Function in progress																					
Phone call	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	×
Dial input		○	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○
Videophone call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	×
64K data communication	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○
PPP data communication	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages/Received or Sent SMS (I/M)/Read mail templates	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Compose i-mode Mail/SMS	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Chat mail	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message R/F list	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Message R/F view screen	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Check i-mode Message	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Check SMS	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
iMenu/i-Channel	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Full Browser	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Enter URL/URL history/Bookmark/Last Visited URL	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Screen Memo list	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Screen Memo display screen	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-αppli/Software list/IC card list	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-αppli download	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-motion (Play video/music)	○	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Melody	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
My Picture	○	×	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
My Document (PDF data list)	×	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
My Document (PDF display screen)	×	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Chara-den	○	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Machi-chara	○	○	×	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Kisekae tool	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Other	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Still Camera	○	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Movie Camera/Sound Recorder	○	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Bar Code Reader	○	×	○	×	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
ToruCa	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Music Player	×	×	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Phonebook	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Notepad	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Scheduler	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Calculator	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dictionaries	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○
Received Calls/Redial	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Sent Msg. Log/Received Msg. Log	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Own Number	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Receiving i-mode Mail	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Receiving SMS	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Answer Machine/Voice Memo	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Alarm clock/Schedule alarm	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Timer	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
microSD memory card	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Videophone call by external device	○	○	○	×	○	×	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○
Connecting to the Data Center	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Display communication log in Phonebook	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Activate 1Seg	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
TV link	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

• Some functions which can be selected may be unavailable depending on the status of activation or lock settings, etc.

Services available for the FOMA terminal

Services available for the FOMA terminal	Phone number
Directory assistance (Service/call charges apply) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104 (no area code)
Telegrams (charges apply)	115 (no area code)
Time (charges apply)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charges apply)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charges apply)	171 (no area code)
Collect call (Service/call charges apply)	106 (no area code)

INFORMATION

- If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen with tax included) per call. (as of July 2007)
- If you use the directory assistance service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen with tax included) is billed together with the call charge. Note that this service is available free from charge for those who are under special conditions. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone. (as of July 2007)
- A general subscriber phone, when it is set for "Call Forwarding", can forward an incoming call to a mobile phone. In this case, even when the receiver's side is busy, is outside the service area, is in Self Mode or is not turned on, the caller may still hear ringing alert. It is due to some optional setting applied to the caller's or receiver's side.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q², Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone/payphone to the FOMA terminal.
- This FOMA terminal supports "Emergency Location Report".
When you make emergency calls (110, 118 or 119), your current location information is automatically notified to the emergency organization such as the police.
The emergency organization may not be able to confirm your correct location depending on your location or the condition of radio waves received.
In addition, If you have not sent caller ID for each call by

attaching "184" before the phone number, your location information and phone number are not notified, but the organization may obtain the location information and phone number regardless of your settings in case of necessity because of the protection of lives.
In addition, areas or the time for introduction of "Emergency Location Report" differs depending on the circumstances of preparation for each emergency organization.

- In case of calls to 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal, since the police or fire department authorities may call you to confirm, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number and detailed information of your whereabouts. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, stay in one place when you make the call and do not turn off the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or general subscriber phone if you cannot get in touch with the local authorities.

Options and related devices

Combining the FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the region. For details, contact DoCoMo Shops.

For details about the optional accessories, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Battery Pack D07
- Back Cover D19
- Desktop Holder D14
- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use*1
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001*2/P002*2
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*2
- Earphone Terminal P001*2
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*3
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- In-Car Holder 01
- Carry Case S 01
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver

- *1 When using your FOMA terminal overseas, you need a conversion plug adapter meeting the specifications for the country to which you are to visit.
- *2 The Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.
- *3 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required for USB connection/charging with FOMA D704i.

About Video playing software

Playing videos (MP4 file) on a PC requires QuickTime Player (free of charge) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer Inc.

QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the website below:

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operation instructions, visit the website shown above.
- Downloading the software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.

Troubleshooting

Check if updating software is required first and perform Software Update if necessary. ◀P423

Power supply and charging

The FOMA terminal cannot be turned on (the terminal cannot be used).

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ▶P35
- Is the battery depleted? ▶P39
- When the FOMA terminal is on when using Dual Network Service, the FOMA terminal service is not available. Check whether or not the FOMA terminal is on. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

The icon on the top of the display flashes and a rapid beep alarm is heard.

The battery is almost discharged. Charge the battery. ◀P36, P39

The FOMA terminal cannot be charged.

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ▶P35
- Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean the terminal with dry cotton swab, etc.
- Is the AC adapter (optional) connector securely inserted to the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal or the Desktop Holder (optional) connection terminal? ▶P38
- Is the FOMA terminal correctly mounted on the Desktop Holder (optional)? ▶P38
- In case the temperature of the FOMA terminal is high, charging may not work. When some functions are used, terminate them and charge again later after the temperature of the FOMA terminal is low.

The Enter key flashes in red during charging.

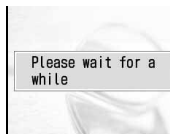
End any calls or communications immediately.

Disconnect the optional AC adapter (Desktop Holder) or DC adapter from the FOMA terminal. Then connect all the devices correctly and start over. ▶P38, P39

If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" listed on the back of this manual.

Phone call

Please wait for a while is displayed and does not go out.



- The voice line/packet communication equipment is damaged or the voice line network/packet communication network is so congested. Please retry later. The message can be deleted by pressing a dial key.
- You can call the number 110, 119 and 118. However the call may not be connected depending on the status.

Calls cannot be made using the dial keys.

- Have you set All Lock? ▶P130
- Have you set Keypad Dial Lock? ▶P133
- Have you set Self Mode? ▶P132
- Have you set Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)? ▶P131

圏外 (outside service area) is indicated on the display and you hear busy signals.

Are you outside the service area or in an area with poor signal strength? ▶P40

After dialing a number, you hear busy signals and cannot establish your call.

- Have you dialed the area code?
- Did you hear the dial tone before entering a phone number?
- Is  indicated? ➡P40

The ring alert does not sound.

- Is Ring Alert Volume set to *silent*? ➡P62
- Is the following function set?
 - Reject/Accept Call ➡P138
 - Anonymous Caller ➡P139
 - Mute Ring Time Setting ➡P140
 - Reject Unregistered Caller ➡P141
- Have you set Public mode (Driving mode)? ➡P64
- Have you set Silent Mode? ➡P105
- Have you set Self Mode? ➡P132
- Is the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service set to *0 Sec.* ➡P372, P374
- Is Response Time Setting set to *0 Sec.*? ➡P67
- Is *Delayed time(Sec)* in Auto Answer set to 0? ➡P358

During a voice call, the other party's voice is hard to listen or too loud.

Has the earpiece volume setting been changed? Adjust it appropriately. ➡P61, P102

When there is an incoming call, a name recorded in the phonebook is not displayed or the ring alert registered in the phonebook is not generated.

- Is the phone number notified by the other party? ➡P59
- Does the phone number of the other party match the phone number registered in the phonebook?
- Is more than 1 phone number registered in the same FOMA terminal phonebook or is the same phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook? ➡P78
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

When there is an incoming call, a ring alert not set sounds.

- The ring alert set in multiple functions sounds depending on the priority levels. ➡P100
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

When there is an incoming call, an image not set appears.

- When video/i-motion containing sound and image is set as ring alert for Call Alert, the set video/i-motion is used as the image.
- When call images are set in multiple functions, the image appears depending on the priority levels ➡P112
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

When there is an incoming call, the Enter key lights/flashes in a lighting pattern and lighting color not set.

- If a lighting pattern or lighting color is set for multiple functions, the Enter key lights/flashes depending on the priority levels. ➡P121
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

Settings and operations

** is displayed instead of menu icon or characters are dimmed and icon cannot be selected.**

In case some functions cannot be activated because of various lock functions or the UIM not inserted, their icons change to  or characters are dimmed and cannot be selected.

The keypad sound is not generated.

- Is Keypad Sound set to *OFF*? ➡P101
- Have you set Silent Mode? ➡P105

A message *Insert UIM.* is displayed when the FOMA terminal is powered on.

The UIM may not be properly attached or may be damaged. Check to see if the UIM is properly attached. ➡P33

***All locked.* appears on the display.**

All Lock is set. Cancel All Lock. ➡P130

***Omakase Lock activated.* is displayed and cannot operate the terminal.**

Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is set. ➡P131

Nothing is indicated on the display.

- Is *Normal use of Display light time* in Display Light Setting set to other than *Always*? Screen display disappears after about 90 seconds have elapsed without any operation. ➡P114
Display reappears by any key operation.
- Have you set Key Lock? Display on the screen disappears while Key Lock is on. ➡P136

The display is indicated by a dim color and hard to be viewed.

Is Only View set to *ON*? ➡P220

Pressing keys has no effect.

The keys cannot be used because Key Lock is set. Cancel Key Lock. ➡P136

The day of the week appears in Japanese.

- Is *Day* for Clock Display Format set to *Japanese*? ➡P123
- Is Select Language set to *日本語* (Japanese)? ➡P40

The display is dim.

Is *Brightness* in Display Light Setting set to *Low*? ➡P114

The lighting for the display and dial keys does not go on.

- Is *Normal use of Display light time* in Display Light Setting set to *0 sec*? ➡P114
- Have you set Key Lock? ➡P136
- When *Key light* is set to *AUTO* in Display Light Setting, the lighting for dial keys may not go on depending on the level of ambient brightness. ➡P114

Date and time has been deleted.

When automatic time correction in Date and Time Setting is set to *OFF*, if the battery pack is removed or is not charged for a while after the battery has been depleted, date and time may be deleted. Please make the setting of date and time again. ➡P41

When Auto Power ON is set, the FOMA terminal cannot be turned on at the specified time.

If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.

Even if Alarm Clock or the schedule is set, the alarm does not operate at the specified date and time when the power is turned off.

- If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.
- Set Alarm Auto Power ON to *ON*. ➡P340

Call cost has not been charged.

The total cost for the UIM may exceed the limit (about 16,770,000 yen).

You can reset to 0 yen. ➡P352

Mail and data

Still images and video taken with the camera are blurred.

When shooting an object nearby, use macro mode and switch to normal mode when shooting an object at a distance. ➡P153

Names are not displayed or ring alert does not sound at the time of mail reception even though they have been registered in the phonebook.

- Does the mail address or number of the other party match that registered in the phonebook?
Register correct phone numbers and mail address in the phonebook. ➡P78
- Is more than 1 mail address or phone number registered in the same FOMA terminal phonebook, or is the same mail address or the phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook? ➡P78
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

Mail reception is announced by other ring alert than that set for incoming mail.

- When the mail ring alert is set for multiple functions, the ring alert sounds depending on the priority levels. ➡P100
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the mail ring alert sounds depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

When mail is received, the Enter key lights/ flashes in other lighting pattern and lighting color than those set for incoming mail.

- When the incoming mail lighting pattern and color are set for multiple functions, the Enter key lights/ flashes depending on the priority levels. ➡P121
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the Enter key lights or flashes in the incoming mail lighting pattern and color corresponding to the last mail received.
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➡P134

The image and video is displayed as and .

If the data has been destroyed, it cannot be correctly displayed and  or  appears.

The screen reacts slowly when a key is pressed.

While transferring large-size data between the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card, reactions on the FOMA terminal screen may have a delay.

Other

Function of IC card is disabled.

- Have you set IC Card Lock ➡P252, P254
- If the battery pack is not connected properly or removed, the function of IC card is disabled regardless of IC Card Lock Setting. Check if the battery pack is connected properly and turn power off and then back on. ➡P35

Main error messages displayed on the FOMA terminal are shown in the alphabetical order as follows:

- The “(number)” or “(XXX)” in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from the i-mode Center.

Address is not valid. (451)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail messages. Make sure if the address is correct.

Authentication interrupted.

Displayed when you stop authentication on the screen.

Authentication type is not supported. (401)

The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified i-mode sites or websites are disabled.

Cannot execute because of other tasks.

Please retry after the running function is finished.

Can not open any more window.

Cannot open a new window because the number of windows or frames is too many. It may be displayed when closing the open windows.

Cannot save to a microSD. Saving to phone memory.

The still image/video with recorded Chara-den downloaded for which *Rec.File Restriction* has already been set to *File Restriction* cannot be saved to a microSD memory card. The *Rec. File Restriction* setting cannot be changed.

Caution ! This SMS includes Phone Nos. or URLs. Be careful if you do not recognize the sender.

In case *Message scan* is set to *Valid* in Scanning Setting, when received SMS messages contain the phone number or URL, this message appears when the SMS message is tried to be displayed first.

Certificate is rejected.(tampered)

The site certificate is altered. Connection is suspended.

Check address.

Failed to transmit SMS. Make sure if the address is correct.

Check address.

The mail address in the mail group contains error or no mail address is entered.
Check the mail address.

Check SMS center setting.

SMS setting at *S/MSC* is incorrect. Check the setting. ➡P227

Connection failed.

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Connection failed. (403)

Failed to connect due to some cause such as connection to the specified i-mode sites or websites were rejected.

Connection failed. (503)

Failed to connect because of the maintenance of the server or congestion of the line. Please retry after a while.

Connection failed. (562)

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Connection interrupted.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

Contains bad data.

i-appli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar Code Reader.

Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion.

Reception was suspended because the i-motion data exceeded the maximum size.

Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion.

Reception was suspended because the i-motion data exceeded the maximum size.

Continue using i-appli and transmit data?

i-appli tried to transmit again after the message *Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?* was displayed. Select *Yes* to use i-appli successively, *Terminate i-appli* to quit i-appli.

Data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Cannot be started without restoring the default setting.

Data in IC card is full. Unable to download. Delete service?

New Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be downloaded if Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli registered already is deleted because the data in IC card is full. Select *Yes* and the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli which registered already appears.

- In case the message *IC card software full. Delete software.* appears on the list, select i-appli to be deleted. When highlighting i-appli, in case *Start* is shown in the upper right part of the guide row, select after activating i-appli by pressing  and delete the data in IC card.
- In case the message *xxxx byte need to delete.* appears on the list, the data size used in IC card is shown for i-appli respectively. Activate i-appli and delete the data in IC card.

Data in IC card is full. Unable to run. Delete service?

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be started because the data in IC card is full. Select *Yes* and the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli which registered already appears. Follow the instructions on the screen and start i-appli and then delete the data in IC card.

Data in IC-card is full. Unable to start.

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be started because the data in IC card is full. Delete Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli services registered already until free disk space required for IC card is secured.

Data in IC card is full. Unable to update. Delete service?

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be updated unless Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli registered already is deleted because the data in IC card is full. Follow the procedure described in the message of "Data in IC card is full. Unable to download. Delete service?"

Data or microSD damaged.

The microSD memory card cannot be accessed because the data saved in the microSD memory card or the microSD card has a problem. Initialize the microSD memory card or insert a new microSD memory card. ➡P304, P299

Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?

Displayed in case the number of transmission is extremely large within the specified duration when using i-appli. Select *Yes* to use i-appli successively, *No* to continue i-appli after terminating i-appli transmission or *Terminate i-appli* to quit i-appli.

Delete software and IC card data?

Among the i-appli to delete, there is Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli of which the data within IC card are also deleted by deleting the i-appli. Select *Yes* to delete the i-appli and the data in IC card.

Dial callout restricted.

This prohibited operation is unavailable with Keypad Dial Lock on.

Download failed.

Communication was interrupted during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. However, in case the data contains an error, it cannot be downloaded even though you retry. Contact the provider of the data.

Error in IC card data. Unable to delete software.

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli containing errors within IC card data cannot be deleted.

Error in image. Does not work correctly.

Flash movie cannot be displayed because of the error in the image data.

Error in storage area. Recovering ...

Cannot access Kisekai tool due to the error in the memory of Kisekai tool. Press  to recover the memory.

Exceeded number of maximum characters. Failed to quote partly.

SMS message exceeded 70 characters (160 characters for the font type of English) for reply, so some characters cannot be quoted.

Failed to clear call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ➡P33

Failed to copy.

- When copying selected items or all items, some data cannot be copied.
- An attempt has been made to copy PIM data in an uncopyable format.
- PDF data cannot be copied because the memory space is insufficient. Retry after returning to the standby display.

Failed to move.

Some data could not be moved.

Failed to read call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ➡P33

Failed to refer to ToruCa.

Failed to display ToruCa. Retry the operation. In case the same error occurs again, displaying may be unavailable due to the damaged data.

Failed to save.

- Cannot be saved due to an error.
- Failed to save because PDF data is too large, etc.

Failed to view message data.

- The object mail data cannot be referenced because the mail or folder is used for another processing. Retry later.
- Mail data cannot be referenced in chat mail. Retry later.

Folder is full.

Unable to receive Message R/F because the memory space is insufficient. Please read unread Message R/F, release protection of Message R/F or delete.

Frame number of this page is not supported.

Cannot display because the number of frames is too many. In the multi-windows mode, it may be displayed when closing the open windows.

i-appli stand-by display canceled due to security error.

i-appli standby display has exited due to unpermitted operation.

iC transmission Connection interrupted

Error has occurred during iC communication. Keep overlapping the FeliCa marks during communication.

**iC transmission
Failed to connect via
authentication.**

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. Enter the same authentication password between the sender and receiver.

**iC transmission
No response. Retry data
exchange?**

The specified time has elapsed with no response from starting iC communication. Select *Yes* and overlap the FeliCa marks.

**iC transmission
No UIM. Unable to start
requested software.**

Because the different UIM is inserted or no UIM is inserted, the specified i-appli cannot be started even when i-appli To is set in the data received by iC communication.

**iC transmission
Unable to switch to data
transfer mode.**

The FOMA terminal is in data communication. Processing cannot be performed because switching to data transfer mode is unavailable. Terminate the communication or retry the operation later.

**Inbox full. Unable to retrieve
new messages.**

Unable to receive SMS because of insufficient storage space in the Inbox of the FOMA terminal or UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete.

**Inbox full. Unable to retrieve
new messages.**

Unable to receive all SMS messages because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of the FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete and execute Check SMS again.

Inbox is full.

Unable to receive i-mode Mail because there is insufficient memory space in the Inbox. Please read unread i-mode Mail, release protection or delete.

**Incoming message data
damaged. Restore default
settings?**

The received data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting.

**Infrared
Connection interrupted.**

An error occurred during infrared communication. During infrared communications, do not move the FOMA terminal pointed at the other terminal's infrared data port before data sending and receiving is complete. ➡P311

**Infrared
Failed to connect via
authentication.**

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. Enter the same authentication password between sender and receiver.

**Infrared
No response. Retry data
exchange?**

After entering into the infrared communication state, the specified time has elapsed with no other terminals for communications found. Point the FOMA terminal at the other terminal's infrared data port with a distance of 20 cm or less and select *Yes*. ➡P311

**Infrared
No UIM. Unable to start
requested software.**

Because the different UIM is inserted or no UIM is inserted, the specified i-appli cannot be started even when i-appli To is set in the data received by infrared communication.

**Infrared
Unable to switch to data
transfer mode.**

The FOMA terminal is communicating. Processes cannot be performed because switching to data transfer mode is unavailable. Terminate communicating or retry again later.

Input error (205)

Input data for i-mode sites or websites contain error. Check the input data for errors.

Insufficient memory.

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory.

**Insufficient memory. Unable
to edit signature. Delete
signature.**

When editing the signature is started, memory shortage occurs. Delete the data of signature.

**Insufficient memory. Unable
to open window.**

Windows cannot be opened because the memory is insufficient. Executing may be available by closing the windows opened already or terminating other running functions.

**Invalid content. Change
i-motion type for replay.
Change now?**

You tried to download a streaming type i-motion file with the i-motion type setting *Normal type*. Select *Yes* to change the i-motion type setting. Select *No* if you don't change the setting. ➡P183

**Invalid content. Download
failed.**

Cannot download because the object contents to be charged are invalid.

Invalid data.

The data you tried downloading contains an error.

**Invalid data. Connection
cannot be established. (400)**

- Cannot be connected because of the error in i-mode sites or websites. The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Within service area, sending auto send mail was unsuccessful.

Invalid data. Failed to save.

Attached melodies or video/i-motion files cannot be played because of the incorrect data.

Invalid data. Unable to save.

Data received through infrared/iC communications cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with the FOMA terminal.

Invalid data. Unable to save.

The downloaded data cannot be saved because the data is invalid.

Invalid File. (493)

Cannot be obtained due to an invalid file.

Invalid microSD. Unable to use Digital Rights Management function.

The authentication area in the microSD memory card could not be referred due to some cause. The data of Movable Contents cannot be saved in the microSD memory card in which an error has occurred.

Invalid UIM. Download not possible.

This message appears in case the information of UIM inserted is different from the UIM information registered on IC card.

Invalid UIM, incorrect display.

Cannot be displayed correctly because of inserting a UIM different from the one you were using when you stored mail templates. Use the same UIM as the one you were using when downloading or saving.

Invalid UIM or phone type. Unable to use.

Video/i-motion cannot be played because the different UIM from that used when saved is inserted or the model is different.

Invalid UIM, requested service not available.

Operation is unavailable due to the function of UIM operation restrictions. Insert the same UIM as used when those data or files were saved to use it.

Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start.

The specified i-appli cannot be started due to the function of UIM operation restrictions. Insert the same UIM as used when the i-appli was downloaded to use it.

Invalid UIM. start not possible.

This message appears in case the information of UIM inserted is different from the UIM information registered on IC card.

Invalid UIM. Upgrade not possible.

This message appears in case the information of UIM inserted is different from the UIM information registered on IC card.

Is the ToruCa automatic reading function in a mobile phone used through the reader/writer?

ToruCa Auto-read is set to *OFF*. Select *Yes* and set to *ON* and you can use the auto read function.

Memory is full. Unable to save.

The FOMA terminal does not have enough memory space and cannot be saved. Delete i-mode Mail or SMS.

Memory shortage. Quit application.

The running function is terminated due to insufficient memory.

Memory shortage Return to Main Menu.

The processing is interrupted due to insufficient memory.

Message kept in center.

SMS messages have already been sent.

microSD damaged. Saving to phone memory.

When *microSD* has been set as the destination for saving still images or videos but the microSD memory card cannot be accessed, the destination automatically switched to *Phone*.

microSD full. Saving to phone memory.

When the microSD memory card becomes full with *microSD* set as the destination for saving still images or videos recorded with the camera or Chara-den, the destination is automatically switched to *Terminal*.

microSD memory full.

Copying, moving, backup of data and update of information are not allowed because the storage space in the microSD memory card is not enough. Perform the operation to display the data of microSD memory card and delete unnecessary data. **➡P302**

New pattern definitions for scanning function available. Please update.

Auto-update of the pattern definition was unsuccessful. Update the pattern definition manually. **➡P428**

No assigned channel.

The channel cannot be viewed because the service is suspended, etc.

No content is available. (204)

Could not find data at the specified site.

No microSD.

Data cannot be saved or operated because a microSD memory card is not inserted to the FOMA terminal. Insert the microSD memory card before operating. **➡P299**

No requested software.

The i-appli specified by the mail and external equipment is not stored in your FOMA terminal.

No response. (408)

Communication was disconnected because there was no response from i-mode sites or websites within the specified time. Retry later.

No space to attach file.

Exceeds the maximum number of files attachable to 1 mail.

No space to attach signature.

- The signature cannot be inserted because of exceeding the maximum characters.
- The signature cannot be inserted in SMS because it is decorated.
- The signature cannot be inserted when *English* is set for *Font type* in SMS Setting. Change *Font type* to *Japanese*. **➡P227**

No UIM. Unable to start requested software.

The specified i-αppli cannot be started due to the function of UIM operation restrictions. Insert the same UIM as used when the i-αppli was downloaded to use it.

Number of characters exceeds limit.

i-mode Mail message exceeded 10,000 one-byte (5,000 two-byte) characters for reply. Please send after decreasing the number of characters.

Out of service area.

Unable to execute because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

Outgoing message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The sent data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting.

Page is not found. (404)

Unable to find i-mode site, etc. Make sure that the URL is correct.

Password is not correct. (401)

The user name or password entered in the authentication screen of i-mode sites or websites is incorrect. Please try again.

Please wait.

The voice line/packet communication equipment is damaged or the voice line network/packet communication network is so congested. Please try again later.

Please wait for a while (Packet)

The packet communication equipment is damaged or the packet communication network is so congested. Please try again later.

PUK blocked.

Inquire at DoCoMo Shops.

Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion

Reception has not been completed because the i-motion data exceeded the maximum size.

Receiving data exceeds playable size for i-motion

Reception or replay has not been completed because the i-motion data size exceeded the maximum size.

Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because an error occurred during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and execute Check SMS again. ◀P227

Registration is in progress. (554)

User registration with i-mode is in process. Please try again later.

Remotely Controllable services denied.

Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service has not subscribed yet. It is required to subscribe to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

Replay period has not yet started.

Unable to play because of the term prior to the playback period specified. Please try again after the playback period has started.

Requested software unavailable.

The i-αppli cannot be started because of an error in i-αppli. Starting specified i-αppli by i-αppli To function from a site, mail or an external device is disabled if there is a problem in i-αppli operation settings or start-up conditions.

Root certificate has expired. Connect?

The term of validity of CA certificate is premature or overdue. Select *Yes* to connect or *No* not to connect. ◀P179 This message may be displayed when the date and time have not been set or are incorrect. Set the date and time correctly. ◀P41

Root certificate is not valid.

The certificate in the FOMA terminal is invalid. To establish a connection, change the setting. ◀P179

Run software and delete data on IC card. Then delete software.

This i-αppli cannot be deleted without deleting the data in IC card. Delete the i-αppli after activating the i-αppli and deleting the data in IC card.

Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.

The number of infrared/iC communications saved in INBOX is full. Save the data in Inbox into the FOMA terminal or delete it. ◀P314

Scheduled software update canceled. Retry update software.

Reservation for updating software is canceled because the battery has not been charged for a long while, etc. Start updating software and operate for reservation again. ◀P424, P425

Service is not registered.

- You are not an i-mode subscriber. Apply to use the i-mode service.
- If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing the FOMA terminal, once turn the FOMA terminal power off and then turn on.

Service is used by the previous software. Unable to download. Delete a service?

In case the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli has been downloaded, a new Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be downloaded unless the corresponding Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli registered already is deleted. Select *Yes* to display the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli to be deleted and delete the registered Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.

Service is used by the previous software. Unable to update. Delete a service?

In case the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli has been downloaded, updating is unavailable unless the corresponding Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli registered already is deleted. Select *Yes* to display the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli to be deleted and delete the registered Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

Service unavailable.

SMS is not available.

Signature, template and sort settings data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data of signature, template and sort settings contain the error. Select *Yes* to return to default settings. Cannot be activated without returning to default settings.

Size of this page is not supported.

- Downloading has stopped because the size of i-mode sites or websites was larger than the limit size. Press  to display the data already downloaded normally.
- Reception was interrupted because the data size exceeds maximum size while downloading.

Software already updated.

The i-appli cannot be upgraded because it has already been upgraded to the latest version.

Software ended due to security error.

i-appli has exited due to unpermitted operation. It is recorded in Security Error History.

SSL session cannot be established.

SSL communication was interrupted due to an SSL communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

SSL session failed.

A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL communication. Connection is suspended.

SSL/TLS session cannot be established.

SSL/TLS communication was interrupted due to a SSL/TLS communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

SSL/TLS session failed.

A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL/TLS communication. Connection is suspended.

Syntax error. (XXX)

- Dose not support the specified i-mode sites or websites.
- The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.
- Within service area, sending auto send mail was unsuccessful.

This certificate has expired. Connect?

The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue. To connect, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*.

This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?

CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name. To connect, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*. P179

This data cannot be saved. Download?

This data cannot be saved. Select *Yes* to download; select *No* not to download.

This data may not be replayed.

Video/i-motion file format not supported by the FOMA terminal. Or the video file may be damaged.

This site is not certified. Connect?

The site certificate is not supported by the FOMA terminal. Select *Yes* to connect or *No* not to connect.

This software contains an error.

Unable to download because the i-appli data contains an error.

This software contains an error. Unable to download.

Unable to download because the i-appli data contains an error.

This software is currently unavailable for use.

Using the i-appli is stopped by IP (Information Provider).

This software is not supported by this phone.

The i-appli cannot be downloaded because it is not compatible with the FOMA terminal.

This UIM cannot be recognized.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check if the UIM is installed correctly. P33

This UIM is not supported. Download canceled.

Cannot be downloaded because the version of UIM is not supported.

Time out

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

Time reset. Unable to download data. Set auto time adjustment ON in Date & Time and restart phone.

When you set *Auto time adjust to OFF* in Date and Time Setting and set the date and time, the date and time may be deleted in case the battery pack is removed or has not been charged for a long while. Set the date and time and download again.

Time reset. Unable to play data. Set auto time adjustment ON in Date & Time and restart phone.

When you set *Auto time adjust to OFF* in Date and Time Setting and set the date and time, the date and time may be deleted in case the battery pack is removed or has not been charged for a long while. Set the date and time and replay.

Too much data was entered.

Unable to transmit data because too many characters were entered in the entry field of i-mode sites or websites. Please reduce the number of characters and retry transmission.

**Too much text entered.
Entry uncompleted.**

When registering an item selected from the display of a site, etc. to the phonebook, the number of characters has exceeded the specified value. Pressing  causes the phonebook registration screen to be displayed, with characters exceeding the limit deleted.

**ToruCa limit reached.
Unable to download. Delete a ToruCa.**

ToruCa cannot be saved because the storage space for ToruCa is not enough. Delete unnecessary ToruCa.

**ToruCa limit reached.
Unable to receive. Delete ToruCa.**

ToruCa cannot be downloaded because the number and the memory for saving ToruCa is full. Delete unnecessary ToruCa.

Transmission failed.

Failed to transmit the SMS. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry transmission.

Transmission failed. (552)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail due to the error of i-mode Center. Please try to send again later.

UIM full.

UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved. Delete SMS from the UIM or move to the FOMA terminal. P228

UIM not inserted. Requested service unavailable.

The UIM is not inserted. Please use your FOMA terminal after inserting the UIM. P33

UIM not recognized. Unable to use.

Cannot be executed because UIM is not inserted. To play the video/ i-motion, insert the same UIM as that used when saved.

Unable to acquire remaining data, Delete data.

The data was deleted because the remaining data cannot be acquired.

Unable to call.

A voice/videophone call cannot be made during voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication.

Unable to check new messages.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

Unable to connect during outgoing call barring active.

Cannot connect because the outgoing call is restricted. Retry to operate later.

Unable to connect to server now.(502)

The equipment of the Data Center is damaged or the Data Center is congested. Retry to operate later.

Unable to delete some applications on IC card. Delete others?

Among the i-appli to delete, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli which cannot be deleted exists because the data within IC card cannot be deleted. Select Yes to delete other i-appli than that.

Unable to display image.

Unable to display because the image contains error. Check the image.

Unable to display this Chara-den.

Chara-den cannot be displayed because of insufficient memory.

Unable to display version info.

The pattern definition version cannot be checked.
Update the pattern definition again.
P428

Unable to download content for Frame tag.

Downloading is unavailable because the data is specified in the format not supported by Full Browser.

Unable to download data.

Failed to download ToruCa (details). Retry the operation. In case the same error occurs again, downloading may be unavailable due to the error in ToruCa data, etc.

Unable to download. Data exceeds maximum size. (452)

Reception is disabled because the size of i-mode sites or websites exceeds the maximum size.

Unable to download remaining data, Delete data.

The data was deleted because the remaining data cannot be downloaded.

Unable to move specified page.

When an i-motion ticker contains a link to a site (Web To), etc., in case the URL contains more than the specified number of characters or downloading was interrupted, the linked page cannot be displayed.

Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.

Cannot obtain because the replay restriction data is incorrect.

Unable to play.

Cannot be played because the data of i-motion or melodies is incorrect.

Unable to play. To play this track, sync your phone to your PC.

Cannot be played because the replay expiration of the data has expired or it cannot be confirmed. To play, confirm that it is within the replay expiration on PC and synchronize by connecting the FOMA terminal to PC.

Unable to record.

The video memo cannot be recorded because the communication of image and sound is disconnected.

Unable to retrieve the requested URL. (504)

Failed to connect to the requested URL due to some cause. Please try again later.

Unable to save.

Cannot be saved due to an data error.

Unable to save specified image.

The image cannot be saved because the image contains error.

Unable to shoot serially.

You cannot shoot continuously because memory or the number of items to be saved in *Image* is full. Continuous shoot is canceled automatically.

Unable to switch to data transfer mode.

The FOMA terminal is in data communication. Processing cannot be performed because switching to data transfer mode is unavailable. Terminate the communication or retry the operation later.

Unable to update pattern definitions.

Updating the definition file has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

Unable to use data partly. Save?

Part of the data of Kisekae tool cannot be used. Select *Yes* to save and in case you do not save it, select *No*.

Unable to use data type.

Data in a file format incompatible with the FOMA terminal cannot be copied or moved from a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal or searched for.

Unable to use during preview.

The bookmark or the link you have selected cannot be used during preview when selecting the attachment.

Unavailable channel.

Cannot be received because of being outside of the broadcasting area.

Unavailable channel.

Cannot be viewed because broadcasting has been suspended.

Unavailable program.

It is unavailable program because the terminal which can receive is specified.

Unsent message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The unsent data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting.

Unsupported Content.

Operation is unavailable because the contents are not compatible with the FOMA terminal.

Unsupported format.

The data cannot be displayed because it cannot be recognized by the FOMA terminal.

Unsupported microSD format.

The microSD memory card format is unavailable on the FOMA terminal.

URL address changed. (301)

i-mode sites or websites forward URL automatically or URL is changed.

URL is too long to register.

Unable to register as a bookmark because the URL exceeds the number of characters that can be registered.

Usage is currently restricted. Try again later.

Displayed in case extremely large data communication is executed within the specified duration only when using i-mode packet fixed sum service. Connection may be unavailable for a certain period of time, so use i-mode/ Full Browser a little while later.

Voice data damaged and unable to start. Please record voice data.

The voice cannot be authenticated because the registered voice data is damaged. Please register the voice data again. ◀P252

You have no certificate. Connect?

The user certificate has not been downloaded. To continue the connection, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*.

Your certificate has expired. Connect?

The user certificate has expired. To continue the connection, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*. ◀P179

以下の宛先にはメール送信できませんでした (561) Mails could not be sent to following address. (561) ●●@△△△.ne.jp

* Displayed mail address differs depending on the receiving device.

Sending i-mode Mail is failed for some receivers. Pressing ☺ displays the receiver that the transmission failed. Check to see if the address of the receiver is correct and retry transmission at another location with good radio wave condition.

“●▲■.ne.jp”宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信することができません(555) Unable to send. “●▲■.ne.jp” is not available temporarily. (555)

* Displayed domain name differs depending on the receiving device.

Mails addressed to the displayed domain name are congested. Please try again later.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- A written warranty is provided with every FOMA terminal; make sure that you receive it. Store the warranty in a safe place when you have read it and checked that it contains the “shop name/date” you purchased it. If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of 1 year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Data registered in the phonebook, etc. may be lost or become corrupted due to failure, repair or other handlings of the FOMA terminal. It is recommended that you make a note of the data in the phonebook, etc. When your FOMA terminal is repaired and so on, downloaded information via i-mode or i-appli (except some data) are not forwarded to a repaired FOMA terminal according to the copyright laws.
 - * In this FOMA terminal, the phonebook data, etc. can be saved in the microSD memory card.
 - * In this FOMA terminal, i-motion files or i-appli data can be saved to the microSD memory card.
 - * In this FOMA terminal, the phonebook data, etc. can be saved in Data Center by subscribing to Data Security Service (which is a pay service and requires a subscription).
 - * If you have a PC, you can use DoCoMo keitai datalink (P382) and FOMA USB Cable (optional) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) to transfer and store the contents registered in the phonebook, etc. on a PC.

After-Sales Service

■ When problems occur

Before requesting service, read the section “Troubleshooting”. P410

If the problem still persists, contact “Repairs” on the back of this manual.

■ If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the opening hours of the repair office before you go. Note that you must present the warranty.

● In the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The written warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber will be charged for the repairs without presentation of the written warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident or neglect, etc. even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.

● Repairs may not be possible in the following cases:

Repair may not be possible when corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

● After expiration of the warranty

All repairs that are requested are charged.

● Replacement parts

Basically, FOMA terminal's replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. Please keep in mind that it may not be possible to repair your phone depending on the nature of the required repair because of a lack of parts, etc. It may still be possible to repair your phone depending on the nature of the required repair even after this period. Contact “Repairs” listed on the back of this manual.

■ Notes

- Do not modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
- Fire, injury or damage may result.
- In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, the FOMA terminal and UIM are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Do not use FOMA terminals or UIMs that do not meet these standards.
- If the FOMA is modified (part replacement, modification, painting, etc.) it will be repaired only after the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.

- Repair of failures or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to your FOMA terminal.

The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.

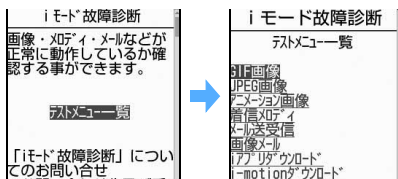
- The function settings, the information of total calls duration, etc. may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or other handling processes. Should this happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and speaker of the FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- If your FOMA terminal becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring it to a repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of your FOMA terminal.

■ Phonebook data or downloaded data

- Maintain a separate record of the data you registered or saved in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may become corrupted or be lost when changing the model or repairing the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any responsibility for that. Also, DoCoMo may, at its option, repair the FOMA terminal by replacing it. Regarding this FOMA terminal, the downloaded data in the FOMA terminal including images and incoming melodies and the data you have created can be transferred only when repairing (some data cannot be transferred and transferring may be unavailable depending on the degree of malfunctions.)
- * It may take some time to transfer or transferring may be unavailable depending on the capacity of the data stored in the FOMA terminal.

Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble

You can check your FOMA terminal about whether sending/receiving mail or downloading images/melodies operates correctly.



TOP screen

Test menu list screen

■ To access “iモード故障診断サイト” (Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble) (only in Japanese)

i-mode site: **iMenu** → お知らせ(Notice) →

サービス・機能 (Services/Function) →

i モード(i-mode) → i モード故障診断
(Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble)



QR code for website connection

- Packet communication for the diagnosis of i-mode trouble is free of charge.
 - Access overseas will be charged.
- Test items differ depending on the model of the FOMA terminal. In addition, test items may be changed.
- When checking the operation by test items, read carefully the precautions described on the site before testing.
- When connecting to the diagnostic site of i-mode trouble or executing the test of sending mail, your private information concerning the FOMA terminal (model name, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the diagnostic site of i-mode trouble). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than the diagnosis of i-mode trouble.
- In case there is the possibility of malfunctions after checking, contact “Repairs” indicated on the back of this manual.

This function checks connecting to the network for the necessity for updating FOMA terminal software and downloads part of the software as required through packet communication*1 to make updates of the software.

When software update is required, the information will be posted on the DoCoMo website or お知らせ (Notice) in iMenu.

*1 Packet communication for software update is free of charge.

- Software may be updated in the following two methods:

- Immediate Update :

Update on the spot as desired.

- Reserved Update :

Reserve a day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time.

INFORMATION

- Never remove the battery pack while updating software. Update fails.
- Software update can be done while various data, such as the phonebook entries registered in the FOMA Terminal, camera images, downloaded data are retained; however, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured depending on the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DoCoMo recommends backing up necessary data. However, note that some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.

Usage precautions

- Software cannot be updated in the following cases:
 - During All Lock
 - While executing other functions
 - When the date and time are not set
 - When the UIM is not inserted
 - When the battery is not fully charged
 - When PIN1 code is being entered
 - When PIN1 code is locked
 - When 圏外 is indicated
 - During PIM Lock
 - The power is off
 - In Self Mode on
 - While talking
 - During Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)
 - During packet communication connecting with a PC

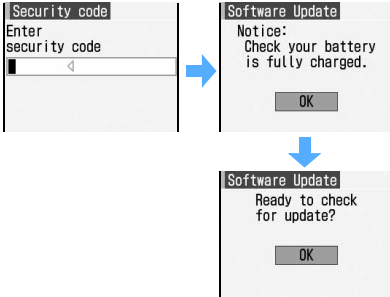
- During 64K data communication
- At the time of updating software, the unique information of your mobile phone terminal (model or serial number, etc.) will be automatically sent to the server (the server for updating software managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than software update.
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- If software update is executed when **ON** is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
- While software is being updated, making/receiving calls, various communication functions or other functions are not available (Incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading).
- Any incoming videophone call cannot be answered during download. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in the received call history.
- Even if an alarm clock or any alarm is set while software is being updated, the updating continues without activating the alarm clock or the alarm.
- For software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Enable SSL certificate in Manage Certificate. Configured as valid by default. ●P179
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power ().
- It is recommended that software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, 3 bars of the antenna icon () are displayed and the terminal is not being moved.
 - If radio wave signals become weaker during software downloading or downloading has stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave signals.
- A displayed icon for the message stored at i-mode Center disappears after software update. If Receive Option Setting is set to **ON** and mail arrives during software updating, the screen that notifies an arrival of mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update being completed.
- When software update has failed, the message **Rewrite failed** appears and all the operations are unavailable. In such a case, please bring the FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo.

- In case updating is not required, when checking the necessity of software update, a message is displayed indicating update is not necessary, so use as it is.
- Software update is available even if Host Selection is set to other than i-mode.

Starting software update

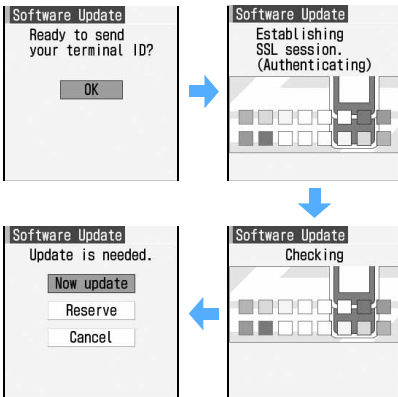
1

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Check notice and



- The terminal security code by default is set to "0000".

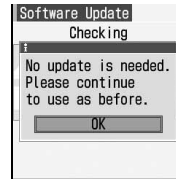
3 ▶ Confirm whether software update is required



Selection screen for the update procedure

- Pressing on the confirmation screen for sending terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When updating is not necessary:



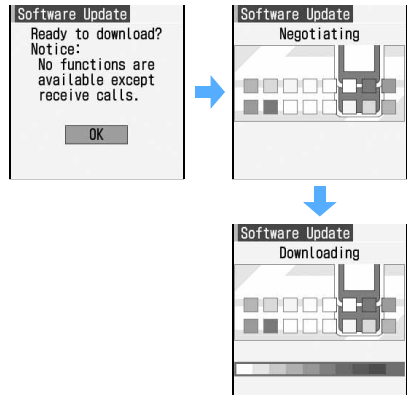
If software updating has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the screen as shown on the left is displayed. Press to use the FOMA terminal as it is.

Updating software immediately Immediate Update

- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

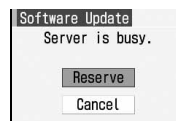
1 Now update on the selection screen for the update procedure (◀P424) ▶

Downloading is started and the Enter key flashes.



- Downloading starts in about 5 seconds without pressing .
- Press to cancel downloading during communication. If downloading is canceled halfway, the data downloaded up to then is deleted.
- After starting downloading, updating process is executed without the operation of selecting the menu.

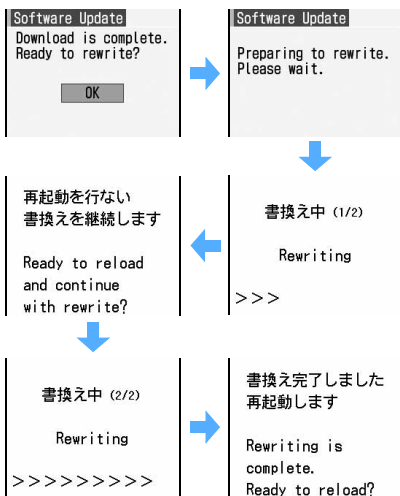
When the server is busy:



- Select **Reserve** and reserve a date and time for update.

2 after completion of downloading

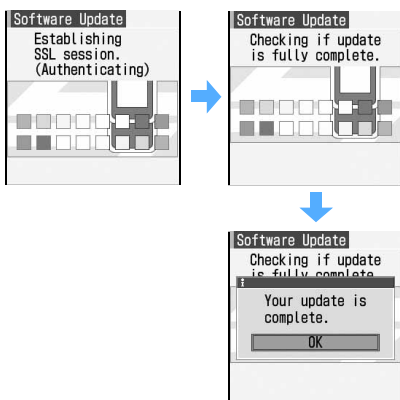
During rewriting, the Enter key flashes.



- Rewriting is started in about 5 seconds without pressing  after downloading.
- All key operations are disabled while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.

3 Automatically reloaded after the completion of rewriting

After reload, wait while communicating again with the server.



4

Update is completed and the standby display appears.

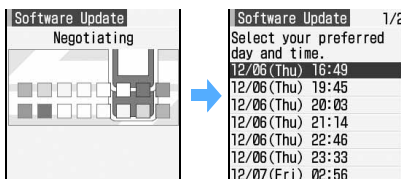
Updating software at pre-specified time

Reserved Update

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can choose to set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

1 Reserve on the selection screen for the update procedure (P424)

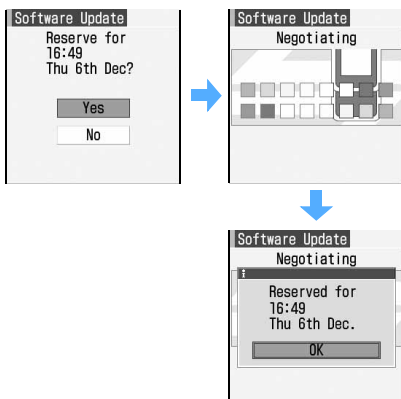
Inquire the options for preferred day and time by communicating with the server.



- Available date and time for reservation will be shown by the time of the server.

2 Select preferred day and time

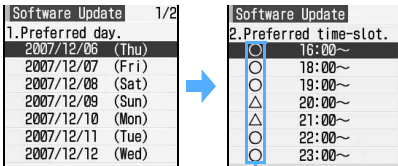
- Selecting from the options displayed:
Select preferred day and time ▶ Yes



- If there are more than 1 option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with .

■ Selecting from other than options displayed:

- ① Select *Others*
- ② Select preferred day



Availability for reservation at each time-slot will be shown:
 ○: Available
 △: Barely available

③ Select preferred time-slot

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

- If there are more than 1 option page for preferred time-slot, switch to the next or previous page with .
- Press to display the description of the symbol on the left of time-slot.

④ Select preferred day and time ▶ Yes

- If there are more than 1 option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with .

3

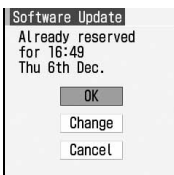
Reservation is completed and the menu is displayed.

- is shown on the standby display when reservation is made.

Checking/changing/canceling reservation

1

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Check the contents



- To stop checking:
Select *OK*

■ Changing reservation:

① Select *Change*

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

②

The option selection screen is displayed.

- Follow the procedure from Step ② in "Selecting from other than options displayed".

- Pressing on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

■ Canceling reservation:

① *Cancel* ▶ *Yes*

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

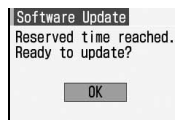
②

The reservation is canceled and the menu is displayed.

- Pressing on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When the reserved time arrives

When the reserved time arrives, the screen as shown below is displayed and updating software is started automatically in about 5 seconds. Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and the handset is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the standby display. When downloading is completed, rewriting software is automatically started, followed by reload.



- To cancel the software update: ▶ *Yes*

INFORMATION

- Note that updating software may not be activated even though the reserved time arrives in case of using the other functions. In case the reserved time arrives while talking or receiving messages, updating software starts after finishing talking or receiving messages.
- If software update is executed when *ON* is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
- If an alarm clock or any alarm is set for the same time, the alarm clock or the alarm takes precedence and the software update may not be started.
- In case Delete All Data (P359) is executed after completing reservation, software update is not started even though the reserved time arrives. Make a reservation for software update again.

Protecting the FOMA terminal from hazardous data

Virus Scan Function

Update pattern definition first to keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or program downloaded via a website or received i-mode Mail/SMS, this function detects data that may cause troubles and then deletes it or inhibits activation of applications in order to protect the FOMA terminal from viruses.

- Pattern definition is used for checking. Update pattern definition because it is updated whenever a new trouble is detected. In case Auto-update Setting is set to **Enable**, updating is performed automatically when pattern definition is updated.
- Virus Scan Function is for preventing the data that cause some problem to mobile phone from invading when viewing websites or receiving mail. Please note that if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent the trouble from happening.
- Pattern definition is different depending on the model of mobile phone. Please keep in mind that DoCoMo may stop distributing the pattern definition for the models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.
- When updating pattern definition, your private information concerning the mobile phone (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the scan function managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than the scan function.

Setting Virus Scan Function

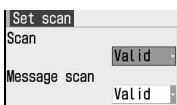
Scanning Setting

If this setting is set to **Valid**, data or program is checked automatically when it is displayed or executed.

Default Valid (all)

1 (MENU) 8 3 6 3

2 Select each item ▶ 1 ▶



Scan :

When setting to **Valid**, in case of detecting the data that may cause troubles, a message is displayed in one of 5 warning levels. ●P428

Message scan :

When setting to **Valid**, in case SMS contains a phone number or URL, a warning message indicating a phone number or URL is contained appears when the SMS is displayed first.

- In case the missed call notice of mopera mail or Voice Mail is received in SMS, a confirmation screen does not appear.
- To cancel: 2 ▶

3 Yes

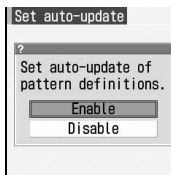
Updating pattern definition automatically

Auto-update Setting

Pattern definition can be set to be updated automatically.

1 (MENU) 8 3 6 2

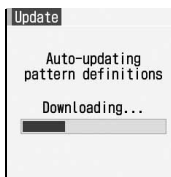
2 Enable ▶ Yes ▶ Yes



- To cancel: Disable ▶ Yes

3

When a new pattern definition is distributed



- When a new pattern definition is distributed, the above screen appears and updating pattern definition is performed automatically. In case of succeeding updating, ☺ is displayed on the standby display. Select an icon and select **OK** after confirming a message.
- In case of failing updating, ☹ appears on the standby display. Update a pattern definition manually after selecting an icon, confirming a message and selecting **OK**.

- To stop updating pattern definition: ► Yes

Updating pattern definition Immediately

Update Definition

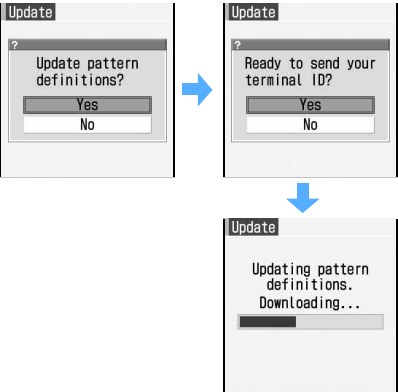
Update a pattern definition manually in case Auto-update Setting is set to **Disable** or Auto-update fails.

- Set the date of the FOMA terminal correctly.

1

2 Yes ► Yes

The pattern definition is updated.



3

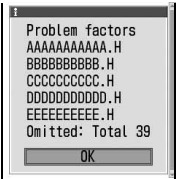
- If pattern definition update has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the message meaning that the pattern definition is up-to-date is displayed. Please use the FOMA terminal as it is.

INFORMATION

- Updating pattern definition is stopped with a voice call arrived. When there is a videophone call or data is received using an external device or the infrared communication function, updating is not interrupted.
- If the date/time set for an alarm clock or a schedule alarm is reached, the screen for notifying the date and time is displayed during updating of pattern definition and the alarm clock or the alarm sounds, but updating is continued.

Displaying the scan result

When displaying a list of detected problem elements



1 Detail while a warning message is being displayed

The list of the name of problem elements detected by scan is displayed.

- When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem elements are omitted and the total count of the detected problem elements is displayed.

Display of the scan result

Warning level/ Message	Handling method
Warning Level 0 	OK : Continues processing of the started application. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 1 	Yes : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. No : Continues processing of the started application. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 2 	OK : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.

Warning level/ Message	Handling method
Warning Level 3 	Yes : Deletes data that may cause troubles. No : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 4 	OK : Deletes data that may cause troubles. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.

INFORMATION

- In case some problem is detected through scan in the i-αppli set as the i-αppli standby display and activating i-αppli is stopped, the i-αppli standby display is canceled.
- **Detail** may not be displayed depending on the problem elements.

Checking the pattern definition version

Scan Version

1



Main specification

Item	FOMA D704i
Size	99 mm (H) x 49 mm (W) x 18.6 mm (D) (when closed)
Weight	Approx. 111 g (with battery pack)
Continuous standby time	While standing still: Approx. 600 hours While moving: Approx. 420 hours

Continuous call time		During a voice call: Approx. 180 minutes During a videophone call: Approx. 110 minutes
1Seg viewing time		Economy mode: Approx. 330 minutes Normal mode: Approx. 300 minutes
Charging time		AC adapter: Approx. 140 minutes DC adapter: Approx. 140 minutes
LCD (liquid crystal display)	System	TFT 262,144 colors
	Size	Approx. 2.4 inches
	Pixels	76,800 (240 x 320 dots)
Image device	Type	CMOS
	Size	1/4 inches
	Effective pixels	Approx. 1.3 M
Camera	Recorded pixels (Max.)	Approx. 1.2 M
	Zoom (digital)	Still image Approx. up to 10.0 times, Video Approx. up to 6.0 times
Recording part	Still images to save	Approx. 504*1
	Still image continuous recording	2 to 6
	Still image file type	JPEG
	Video recording time	For saving to phone: Approx. 502 seconds*2 For saving to microSD memory card (64MB): Approx. 251 minutes*3
	Video file type	MP4
Playing music	Continuous playing time	WMA file: Approx. 670 minutes*4 AAC file format: i-motion: Approx. 450 minutes Chaku-Uta Full®: Approx. 650 minutes*4
	Storage space	
	Chaku-Uta®	Approx. 23.3 MB*5
	Chaku-Uta Full®	

*1 Image size: Sub-QCIF (128 x 96 dots)
Quality: Standard File size: 10 Kbytes

*2 Maximum video recording time for 1 item that can be saved in the following conditions:
image size: Sub-QCIF (128 x 96 dots)
File size restrictions: Msg attach (Large)
Quality: Standard Type: Video + voice

*3 Maximum video recording time for 1 item that can be saved in the following conditions:

image size: Sub-QCIF (128 x 96 dots)

File size restrictions: None

Quality: Standard Type: Video + voice

*4 Supports the background playing.

*5 Maximum storage space for Chaku-Uta Full® is about 15.0 Mbytes.

- Continuous call time is an estimate of call time of the FOMA terminal when it can send or receive signals normally.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of operation time of the FOMA terminal when it is closed and able to receive signals normally. The call/standby time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication)/standby time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call (communication)/standby time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail, or starting downloaded i-appli software or the i-appli standby display.
- Continuous standby time (while standing still) is the average operation time of the FOMA terminal when it is standing still, closed and able to receive signals normally.
- Continuous standby time (while moving) is the average operation time of the FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the service area when it is closed and able to receive signals normally.
- If you perform data communication or Multiaccess, use the camera or play video/i-motion (including music data), the call (communication)/standby time will be reduced.
- 1Seg viewing time is an estimate of viewing time connecting a stereo earphone to the FOMA terminal.
- The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether the FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power turned on.

Number of saved, registered and protected items in D704i

Type		Max number of saved/registered items	Max number of protected items
Phonebook	FOMA terminal*1	700	—
	UIM	50	—
Scheduler	Schedule	300	—
	Days off	30	—
	Holidays	5	—
Mail	Received mail*1, *2	1,000	500
	Sent mail*1, *2	200	100
	Unsent mail*1, *2	200	100
	Template*1	100	—
SMS in the UIM*3		20	—
Message R*1		100	50
Message F*1		50	25
Bookmark	i-mode	100	—
	Full Browser	100	—
Screen memo*1		100	50
i-appli*4		100	100
Image*1		1,000	—
Video/i-motion, sound recorded with Sound Recorder*1		100	—
Melody*1		500	—
Chara-den*1		50	—
PDF data*1		100	—
Kisekae tool*1		36	—
Machi-chara*1		16	—
Word, Excel, PowerPoint*1		100	—
ToruCa*1, *5		100	—

*1 Depending on the size of data, the actual number of items that can be saved and registered may be fewer.

*2 The total number of i-mode Mail and SMS.

*3 The total number of sent and received SMS. The number of delivered report is not included.

*4 Up to 5 items of Message i-appli (included in the 100 items, maximum number of i-appli that can be saved) can be saved. Depending on the i-appli size, the actual number of items that can be saved may be fewer.

*5 The number does not include used ToruCa.

INFORMATION

- Because the data saved in the FOMA terminal may be lost due to failure, repair or other handlings of the FOMA terminal, it is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the important data. Please note that we are not responsible for any lost data.
- Depending on the function, the displayed size of data in the FOMA terminal may differ slightly.
- It is recommended that you save the data stored in the FOMA terminal such as mail, bookmarks, images, melodies or video/i-motion to the microSD memory card. Exchangeable data ●P299
- If you have a PC, you can use the DoCoMo keitai datalink and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to transfer and save the data such as mail, bookmarks, images and video/i-motion to your PC.

SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA D704i meets the MIC's*1 technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and through evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)*2 averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP*3.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone, FOMA D704i is 0.647 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC) and the test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value. For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO):

<http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC: <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm>

TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/>

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC:

<http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/mobile/>

*1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

*2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

MEMO

This image shows a full page of blank, lined paper. It features approximately 20 evenly spaced horizontal blue lines across its entire width, providing a guide for handwriting or typing. The background is a clean, solid white color.

MEMO

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

MEMO

[illegible]

MEMO

This image shows a full page of blank white paper with horizontal blue lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page, providing a template for writing or drawing. There are no margins, text, or other markings present.

MEMO

[illegible]

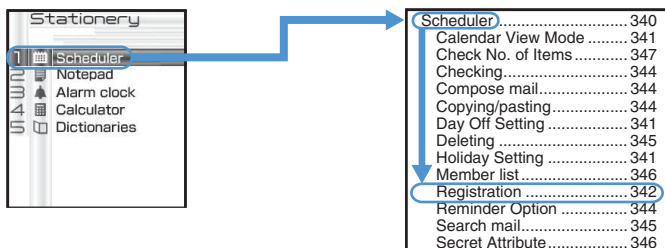
Index/Quick Manual

Index	438
Quick Manual	444

Using the index

Use the index if you want to search for a page from a function name displayed on the FOMA terminal screen or you have already known a function or service name.

Example When you want to register a schedule



A	
Access Setting	276
Add Address.....	192
Added Service.....	378
Adjust Volume.....	102
After-Sales Service	421
Alarm Auto Power ON.....	340
Alarm Clock.....	338
Alarm Clock Sound	101
Album.....	307
Alert Preference	358
Alert/Image by Group.....	82
All Lock.....	130
Anonymous Caller	139
Answer Machine.....	66
Greeting Message Setting ...	68
Play/delete messages.....	68
Quick Record Message	66
Response Time Setting	67
Any Key Answer	60
Arrival Call Act.....	376
AT command.....	382
Attachment.....	195
Auto-play.....	221
Changing/removing.....	198
Deleting.....	206
Display and save from	
Message R/F.....	178
Display/Play/Save Attachment	203
Incoming Msg. Attach.	220
Auto Answer	358
Auto authentication	316
Auto Power ON/OFF	337
Auto-display	177
Automatic time correction.....	41
Auto-send.....	199
AV Phone To (☛Phone To)	

B	
Background playing	326, 430
Bar Code Reader	158
Battery Icon	117
Battery Level	39
Battery pack.....	35
Bookmark.....	167
Attach to mail.....	168
Create/delete folders	168
Deleting	168
Display sites	167
Display sites by shortcut.....	167
i-mode Shortcut	167
Moving	168
Register from mail	214
Register from site	167
Renaming.....	168
Sort	168

C	
Cache.....	164
Calculator.....	354
Calendar (☛Scheduler)	
Call Alert	96
Change images (Incoming Call)	112
Call Cost	
Call Cost Limit	353
Checking.....	352
Hide Call Cost Icon.....	354
Reset Call Cost.....	353
Call Duration	
Checking.....	352
Continuous call time	37
Call Forwarding Service	374
Call Image.....	111
Priority of incoming images	112
Priority of outgoing images	111

Call Option.....	54
Call Ring Alert.....	98
Call Waiting Service.....	373
Caller ID Notification	42
Set for each call.....	53
Caller ID Request Service	375
Caller ID Setting.....	91
Camera	144
Adjust All	157
Attach images to mail	148
Auto timer	153
Brightness	155
Color density	155
Continuous shoot	149
File name/format	146
Flicker adjustment	157
Four-frame shooting	149
Frame	155
Image size	156
Macro	153
Movie Camera	150
Number of saved still images	146
One-shot Message	158
Quality	156
Recording Setting.....	151
Recording time of video.....	147
Restore default settings.....	157
Scene mode/effect	154
Shake reduction	155
Shooting/recording screen	145
Size restrictions	156
Still Camera	147
Still Image Setting	151
White balance.....	155
Zooming	153
Camera indicator	24
Certificate operation	179
Certificate Host.....	181
Downloading.....	173
Manage Certificate	179

Set FirstPass (Certificate Download)	180
Skip Password	180
Chaku-moji	51
Message Display Setting	52
Chaku-Uta®	98
Chaku-Uta Full®	
Downloading	327
Playing	330
Character Encode	166
Characters entry	362
Character assignments	395
Copying	368
Cutting	368
Delete	364
Downloaded Dictionary	369
Enter face marks	365
Enter fixed phrases	365
Enter pictograms	365
Enter symbols	365
Full-screen entry	362
In-line entry	362
Input Method Setting	363
Input prediction function	364
Kana/Kanji Conversion	363
KUTEN Code Input	368
Line feed	364
Pasting	368
Quote data	366
Reset predictive dictionary data	365
Save Phrase	367
Save Word	368
Slot Input Method	369
Switch input modes	362
5-touch Input Method	363
Chara-den	290
Action list	291
Deleting	310
Displaying	290
Downloading	172
Moving	307
Record Chara-den	291
Set as videophone substitute image	291
Settings	293
Sort	311
Still Image Setting/Video Setting	292
Use folders	307
Videophone call	69
View/Edit Detail Info	308
Charge Alert	104
Charging	36
Charging time	37
Chat Mail	
Broadcast address	224
Chat Mail Alert	97
Chat Member Setting	222
Compose Chat Mail	222
Deleting	224
Quitting	225
Receive Chat Mail	224
Sending	223
Check i-mode Message	202
Setting	218
Check <i>My phone number</i>	42

Check new message	
Check i-mode Message	202
Check SMS	227
Message Retrieval Setting	218
Clock Display Format	123
Close Setting	61
Color Scheme	115
Column Search	86
Confirm Settings	359
Connection Timeout Setting	175
Contact Image	113
Cookie Setting/Deleting	275
Copying	367
Custom Menu	347
Custom standby display	110
Customize Silent Mode	105
Cutting	368

D

Data communication	380
Data Exchange Setting	316
Data Security Service	141
Image	283
Mail	214
Phonebook	91, 93
Data Session Arrival Act	75
Data set by default	391
Date and Time Setting	41
Date To format	356
Deco-mail	192
Template	198
Deco-mail pictogram	
Entering	365
List	393
Delete All Data	359
Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble	422
Dictionary	
Downloading	172
Using	369
Dictionary (preinstalled)	356
Display	24
Guide row	27
Reading	26
Task bar	28
Display Address	210
Display Light Setting	114
i-mode	176
i-appli	235
Display Mode Setting	276
Display New Mail	218
Display Priority	222
Display sites by shortcut	167
DoCoMo keitai datalink	382
Document Viewer	323
Deleting	310
Sort	311
Use folders	307
View/Edit Detail Info	308
Download	170
Chara-den	172
Dictionary	172
Image	170
i-motion	182

i-appli	231
Kisekai tool	172
Machi-chara	173
Mail template	172
Melody	171
Original certificate	173
PDF data	171
ToruCa	172
Driving mode	64
Dual Network Service	375

E

Earphone/microphone	357
Earphone/microphone jack	24
Earphone/Microphone with Switch	24
How to use	357
Earpiece	24
Easy Selector Plus	25
Edit by Slide	337
Electronic dictionaries	356
English display	40
English Guidance	375
Enter characters (☛ Characters entry)	
Enter key	25
Error Message	413
External connection terminals	24
External Device (for videophone)	76

F

Face mark	
Entering	365
List	398
FeliCa	246
FirstPass	180
Fixed phrase	
Entering	365
List	396
Save phrase	367
Flash movie displays	164
Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (☛ Earphone/Microphone with Switch)	
Focus Mode	32
FOMA card (☛ UIM)	
Font Size Setting	122
Font Size (for mail)	221
Forward Mail	203
Full Browser	270
Browser Setting	275
Functions of keys	25

G

Group Search	84
Group Setting	82

H

Headset Key Control	358
Home URL	275
Host Selection	175

Certificate Host	181
I	
IC card function	246
IC Card Lock	252
IC Card Lock Setting	253
IC Lock (power-off)	254
Timed Lock	254
Voiceprint authentication	252
iC Communication	316
iC transfer service	247
i-Channel	183
Channel List	185
i-Channel Ticker	185
Reset i-Channel	186
Image	
Adjusting	283
Attach to mail	279
Change brightness and tone	
.....	281
Change size	281
Clipping	281
Created animation	280
Cutting out	282
Deleting	310
Display	278
Editing	280
Effects	281
Frame	282
Moving/copying	307
Paste Text	282
Reversing/rotating	282
Save Image	170
Set to standby display	279
Settings	283
Shooting	147
Size limitation	282
Slide show	279
Sort	311
Stamp	282
View/Edit Detail Info	308
Image Display	276
Image & Effect Setting	176
i-melody	171
i-mode	162
i-mode FeliCa	246
i-mode Mail (✉Mail)	
i-mode password	126
Change i-mode Password	166
i-mode Setting	175
i-mode Shortcut	167
i-motion	181
Downloading	182
Setting	183
i-motion (in Data Box)	284
Deleting	310
Sort	311
Use albums	307
Inbox	207
In-car Handsfree	57
Incoming Msg. Attach	220
Indicator Light	121
Info/Calendar Layout	109
Infrared communication	311
INBOX	314

Receive Ir Data	313
Remote control function	315
Send Ir Data	312
Infrared Communication Mode	
.....	315
Infrared data port	311
Input Method Setting	363
Input prediction function	364
International call	54
Internet Connection	166
Int'l Call Assist	55
ISP Connection Communication	
.....	175
i-appli	230
Auto Start	240
Auto Start Info Setting	240
Check number of items	244
Create/delete folders	242
Deleting	243
Detail Info	234
Display Light	235
Downloading	231
i-appli To	241
microSD Data	244
Moving	242
Preinstalled i-appli	236
Protecting	243
Quitting	233
Security Error History	234
Settings	234
Software in Folder	244
Software Info Display	233
Software Information	244
Software list screen	233
Sort Software	243
Start Failure History	241
Starting	233
Trace display	234
Upgrade	242
Use Bar Code Reader	244
Use infrared communication	
.....	244
Use the camera	244
Vibrate Effect	235
i-appli DX	230
i-appli Standby Display	
Abnormal Exit History	241
Operation	241
Setting	108

K	
Kana/Kanji Conversion	363
Key Lock	136
Setting	137
Timer	137
Keypad switch	25
Keypad Dial Lock	133
Keypad Sound	101
Kisekae tool	118
Downloading	172
KUTEN Code Input	368

L	
Light Alert Setting	120
Priority of lighting	121

Light setting (☛Display Light Setting)	
Listen Volume	61
Low Battery Alert	39

M	
Machi-chara	
Deleting	310
Displaying	293
Downloading	173
Machi-chara Setting	119
Settings	294
Sort	311
Use folders	307
View/Edit Detail Info	308
Mail	188
Add Address	192
Add/delete folders	209
Attachment	195
Auto Receive	200
Auto-send	199
Change read/unread status	
.....	211
Check i-mode Message	202
Check number of items	210
Compose from phonebook	
.....	84
Compose from schedule	344
Compose Message	191
Copy message text	213
Deco-mail	192
Delete Attachment	206
Delete Mail	212
Delete Msg. Log	216
Display Priority	222
Display Type	221
Editing	200
Folder list screen	207
Font Size	221
Forward Mail	203
Inbox/Outbox	207
List screen	208
List Setting	220
Move Mail	210
Msgs. in Folder	210
Phone Call	213
Protect Mail	211
Quick Mail	200
Quick Reply Setting	220
Quick Reply Template	220
Received Msg. Log/	
Sent Msg. Log	215
Receiving	200
Register items in phonebook	
.....	214
Register URL in Bookmark	
.....	214
Reply to Mail	202
Save Mail	199
Search	210
Search from phonebook	84
Search from schedule	345
Set ring alert	98
Sort	211
View screen	209
Mail address	188

Display Address	210	microSD mode	305	Original certificate	
Mail Alert	96	Missed call	50	Downloading	173
Mail Group		Movable Contents		Manage Certificate	179
Enter addresses using group		Chaku-Uta Full®	331	Osaifu-Keitai	246
Setting	191	i-motion	289	Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli	
Setting	219	MTP mode	305	Starting	231
Mail Image	113	Multi Number	377	Starting	247
Mail List Setting	220	Multiaccess	336	Other folder	
Mail Reply Format	219	Combination	404	Data Box	323
Mail Setting (in FOMA terminal)		Multi-address transmission	192	microSD memory card	296
.....	216	Multitask	336	Outbox	207
Mail Setting (in i-mode Center)		Combination	406	Outgoing Call (Call Image)	111
.....	188	Music playback	326	Own Number	42
Mail template	198	Music Player	326	Registration	350
Mail To (from mail)	213	Delete All Music	333		
Mail To (from site)	173	Deleting	331		
Mail/Msg Ring Alert	98	Display/save images	332		
Make calls (☎Phone)		Folder structure	328		
Media To (from mail)	213	Intro Playing	330		
Media To (from site)	173	Music Player screens	329		
Melo-deco	195	Playing	330		
Melody	294	Playlist	333		
Attach to mail	294	Save music files	327		
Deleting	310	Set as ring alert	331		
List	100	Settings	334		
Moving	307	Sort	331		
Playing	294	View/Edit Detail Info	332		
Saving	171	Mute Ring Time Setting	140		
Set as ring alert	294	My Menu	165		
Settings	294	My Picture	278		
Sort	311	Deleting	310		
Use albums	307	Sort	311		
View/Edit Detail Info	308	Use albums	307		
Member list	346				
Memory Status	311				
Menu	29				
Create design	116				
Describe function	31				
List	384				
Setting	115				
Submenu	31				
Message Alert	97				
Message i-appli	231				
Message R/F	176				
Auto-display	177				
Check i-mode Message	202				
Delete Message	179				
Display by Type	179				
Display Priority	222				
Displaying	178				
Message Alert	97				
Protect Message	178				
Receive Message R/F	176				
Set ring alert	98				
Microphone	24				
Microphone Setting	358				
microSD memory card	295				
Backup	301				
Copying/moving	300				
Displaying	302				
Folder structure	296				
Format	304				
Inserting/removing	299				
Memory Status	305				
Scan Card	305				
Sync Data Info	305				
Use from PC	305				
microSD memory card slot	24				

microSD mode	305
Missed call	50
Movable Contents	
Chaku-Uta Full®	331
i-motion	289
MTP mode	305
Multi Number	377
Multiaccess	336
Combination	404
Multi-address transmission	192
Multitask	336
Combination	406
Music playback	326
Music Player	326
Delete All Music	333
Deleting	331
Display/save images	332
Folder structure	328
Intro Playing	330
Music Player screens	329
Playing	330
Playlist	333
Save music files	327
Set as ring alert	331
Settings	334
Sort	331
View/Edit Detail Info	332
Mute Ring Time Setting	140
My Menu	165
My Picture	278
Deleting	310
Sort	311
Use albums	307

N

Name displays	78
Name Search	85
Names of parts	24
Network security code	126
Network Service	372
Noise Reduction	57
Non-viewable file	206
Normal menu	29
Notepad	354
Notify Switchable Mode	75
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	
.....	374
Number of saved, registered and protected items in D704i	430
Number Search	86

O

OFFICEED	378
Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)	
.....	131
One-key Shortcut	239
One-shot Message	158
On-hold	
On-hold while talking	46
Response and Hold	62
On-hold Tone	63
Only View	220
Open Answer	61
Options and related devices	
.....	409

Original certificate	
Downloading	173
Manage Certificate	179
Osaifu-Keitai	246
Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli	
Starting	231
Starting	247
Other folder	
Data Box	323
microSD memory card	296
Outbox	207
Outgoing Call (Call Image)	111
Own Number	42
Registration	350

P

Packet communication	380
Pasting	368
Pause	48
PDF data	
Bookmark/mark	322
Deleting	310
Displaying	320
Downloading	171
Moving/copying	307
Sort	311
Use folders	307
View/Edit Detail Info	308
PDF Viewer	320
Settings	323
Personalized silent mode	105
Ph Book No. Search	86
Phone	
Call Option	54
Make calls	45
Priority of caller ID notification	
.....	42
Receive calls	58
Send tone signals	47
Switch to videophone call	48
Phone To (from mail)	213
Phone To (from site)	173
Phonebook	78
Alert by Contact	80
Caller ID Setting	91
Change the order	89
Check No. of Items	93
Check phonebook details	87
Copy phonebook entry	90
Copy registered items	89
Delete Phonebook	90
Display in Japanese syllabary	
.....	84
Edit Phonebook	88
Group Setting	82
New Entry (to FOMA terminal)	
.....	79
New Entry (to UIM)	81
Quick Dial	93
Register from mail	114
Register from site (Add to Phonebook)	174
Reject/Accept Call	138
Search	83
Secrecy Search	92
Secret Attribute	92

Secret Code Setting.....	91
Specify seaching method.....	87
View Preference	88
Pictogram	
Entering	365
List	401
Pictogram phrase	
Entering	364
List	403
Pictogram word	
Entering	365
List	397
PIM Lock	132
PIN Unblocking Key	127
PIN1 Code ON/OFF	128
PIN1 code/PIN2 code.....	127
Change PIN1/PIN2 Code...	128
Power ON/OFF	40
Auto Power ON/OFF.....	337
Predictive conversion	364
Prefix Dialing	56
Priority	
Caller ID notification.....	42
Incoming image	112
Lighting	121
Mail sorting	217
Outgoing image	111
Ring alert	100
Vibrator	104
Priority Comm Mode	62
Privacy Mode Setting	134
Public mode	
Driving mode.....	64
Power off.....	65
PUK (PIN Unblocking Key) ...	127

Q

Quality Alarm.....	104
Quick Dial.....	93
Quick Mail	200
Quick Manual	444
Quick Record Message.....	66
Quick Start-up	359

R

Random Display Image.....	108
Ranking Search.....	85
Reason for no caller ID	59
Receive calls (☎Phone).....	
Receive Display	113
Receive Option.....	202
Setting.....	218
Received Calls	49
Deleting.....	50
Received mail (✉Mail).....	
Reconnect Alarm.....	57
Redial.....	49
Deleting.....	50
Referer Setting	276
Register USSD.....	378
Reject Unregistered Caller....	141
Reject/Accept Call	138
Remote Control.....	377
Remote control function	315
Reply to Mail	202

Reset.....	359
Response and Hold	62
Ring alert.....	98
Priority of ring alerts.....	100
Ring Alert Volume	62

S

SAR (Specific Absortion Rate)	431
Save Word	368
Schedule Reminder	101
Scheduler.....	340
Calendar View Mode	341
Check No. of Items	347
Checking.....	344
Compose mail.....	344
Copying/pasting.....	344
Day Off Setting	341
Deleting	345
Holiday Setting	341
Member list	346
Registration	342
Reminder Option	344
Search mail.....	345
Secret Attribute.....	346
When the set time comes	343
Screen Memo.....	169
Screen View Setting.....	276
Script Setting.....	275
Secrecy Search.....	92
Secret Attribute	
Phonebook	92
Schedule	346
Secret Code Setting.....	91
Secret Mode.....	138
Security code	126
Security Scan (☛Virus Scan Function).....	
Select Language	40
Self Mode.....	132
Send DTMF.....	47
Sent mail (✉Mail).....	
Service Dialing Number	376
Set arrival act	377
Short Message (☛SMS).....	
Shortcut operations.....	30
Show All Names.....	84
Shutter key	25
Shutter Sound.....	102
Signal Level Icon.....	117
Signature.....	218
Silent Mode.....	105
Simple menu	115
List	390
Site	
Connect to SSL page	163
Display URL of site	165
Displaying	162
Last Visited URL.....	163
Location information	174
Operating.....	164
Reload	165
Scrolling.....	165
Slide Sound.....	102
Slot Input Method.....	369

SMS	190
Check SMS	227
Compose from phonebook	84
Compose SMS	225
Delete from UIM	228
Delete Mail	212
Delivered report.....	190
Display Priority	222
Insert signature.....	225
List screen	208
Quick Mail.....	200
Receive SMS	226
Save SMS to UIM.....	227
Setting	227
Sort Criteria	216
View screen	209
Software Update	423
Immediate Update	424
Reserved Update	425
Sort Criteria	216
Priority	217
Sound Recorder.....	318
Sound Setting	98
Speaker	24
Speakerphone function.....	47
Setting (Videophone).....	73
Specification	429
Speed Menu	349
SSL communication	
Connecting	163
Standby display	40
Standby Display Setting.....	106
Clock Display Format	123
Standby time	37
Standby Voice Memo.....	351
Status Message.....	63
Still image (☛Image).....	
Style Theme.....	117
Sub Address.....	56
Submenu	31
Symbol	
Entering	365
List.....	400

T

Talking Voice Memo	351
TASK key	25
Template	198
Downloading.....	172
Read Template	198
Save Template	199
Terminal security code	126
Change Security Code	127
Timed pause	48
Timer.....	338
ToruCa.....	247
Auto-read.....	252
Check information	250
Create/delete folders	249
Deleting	251
Displaying.....	249
Downloading.....	172
Moving/copying	250
Obtaining	248
Searching	250

Setting	251
Sort	250
Sort Rule	251
ToruCa Alert	97
Transmit tone signals (DTMF)	47
Troubleshooting	410
TV (☛1Seg)	
TV key	25
TV program schedule	263
Two-key Shortcut	240

U

UIM (FOMA card)	
Functional differences	35
Inserting/removing	33
Operation restriction function	34
Register phonebook entries	81
Security code	34
Unblock PIN lock	129
Unsent mail (☛Mail)	
Unsent messages folder	207
URL	
Copying	174
Displaying	165
Entering	166
History	166
Last Visited URL	163
Register in phonebook	175
USB Mode Setting	305

V

Vibrator Setting	103
i-αpli	235
Priority of vibrator	104
Video Memo	351
Videophone	44
Brightness/color density	71
Call Option	54
Camera Setting	71
Change images (Videophone Image Setting)	74
Chara-den	69
Flicker adjustment	71
Frame	70
Make calls	45
Quality of outgoing/incoming images	70
Receive calls	58
Scene Mode/Effect	71
Screen settings	72
Send camera-off image	72
Send still image	72
Send tone signals	47
Settings	73
Settings during a call	73
Substitute image setting	74
Switch outgoing images	70
Switch to voice call	48
Zoom	72
Videophone Alert	96
Change images (Videophone Receiving)	112

Videophone Dialing (Call Image)	111
Video/i-motion	
Attach to mail	285
Capture	287
Custom Edit	287
Deleting	310
Edit by Size	288
Edit Ticker	288
Editing	287
Moving/copying	307
Play an album	308
Playing	284
Recording	150
Replay restriction	285
Set bookmark	285
Set to standby display	286
Settings	289
Sort	311
View/Edit Detail Info	308
Virus Scan Function	427
Auto-update Setting	427
Scan Version	429
Scanning Setting	427
Update Definition	428
Voice call (☛Phone)	
Voice Mail Service	372
Voice Memo	351
Voiceprint authentication	252

W

Warranty	421
Web To (from mail)	213
Web To (from site)	173
WORLD CALL	54
WORLD WING	35

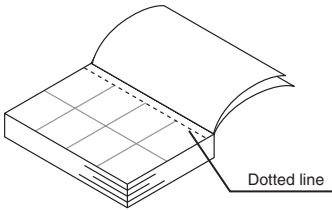
Others

1Seg	256
Activate 1Seg	259
Booking Program List	263
Broadcast storage area	256
Channel list	258
Channel search	260
Channel Setting	258
Confirm Settings	267
Data Broadcasting	264
Delete Storage Area	267
Display Image	267
Main/Sub sound	261
Mute	260
Pictograph	261
Program Guide	262
Reset Permission Display	267
Reset Settings	268
Setting	266
Sound Effect	267
Sound mode	261
Sound output	261
Still Image Recording	266
Subtitles	261
Switch sound	261
TV antenna	257
TV Link	265

TV screen	262
Unlock Key Lock	267
1Seg Backlight	266
1Seg OFF timer	261
1Seg viewing time	37
186/184 Call	53
5-touch Input Method	363
64K data communication	380

How to use Quick Manual

Use Quick Manual included in this manual as follows:

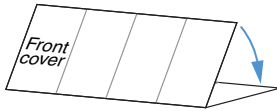


Cut along the dotted line.

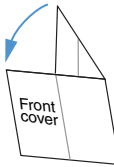
- Be careful not to hurt yourself when cutting.

Fold the sheet along the line so that the front cover is on top.

1



2



3



TV

- 1 **TV** (for over a second)
• Operations available during 1Seg viewing

Function	Operation
Switch a channel ¹	⇄
Select a channel by a direct key ¹	[1] [2] [3] [4] [5] [6] [7] [8] [9] [0] [*] [#]
Search for an available channel ¹	⇄ (for over a second)
Adjust the volume ¹	↑ ↓
Mute/cancel	[M]
Switch between the vertical/horizontal screen ¹	[V]
Zoom-in display of the horizontal screen ON/OFF	[Z] (for over a second)
Hide the display (Sound mode)	[S] (for over a second)
Display the program name ¹	[P]
Activate the program guide i-ppl	[G]

8

1 Mail	1 [9] 5 [2] Activate quick reply
1 [1] Inbox	1 [9] 5 [3] Quick reply template
1 [2] Compose message	1 [9] 6 Mail group
1 [3] Chat mail	1 [9] 7 Display settings
1 [4] Unsent messages	1 [9] 7 [1] Display priority
1 [5] Outbox	1 [9] 7 [2] Receive option
1 [6] Check new message	1 [9] 7 [3] Incoming msg. auto
1 [6] [1] i-mode message	1 [9] 7 [4] Attachment auto-play
1 [6] [2] SMS	1 [9] 7 [5] Message list
1 [6] [3] Receive option	1 [9] 7 [6] Only view
1 [6] [4] Message retrieval	1 [9] 8 Display new mail
1 [7] SMS	2 i-mode
1 [7] [1] Compose SMS	2 [1] Menu
1 [7] [2] Received SMS	2 [2] Bookmark
1 [7] [3] Sent SMS	2 [3] Go to location
1 [7] [4] SMS settings	2 [3] [1] Mail alert
1 [8] Read templates	2 [3] [2] Chat mail alert
1 [9] Mail settings	2 [3] [3] Enter URL
1 [9] [1] Mail alert	2 [3] [4] Manage certificate
1 [9] [2] Chat mail alert	2 [3] [5] URL history
1 [9] [3] Sort criteria	2 [3] [6] Last visited URL
1 [9] [4] Signature	2 [4] Screen memo
1 [9] [5] Reply setting	2 [5] i-mode message
1 [9] [5] [1] Reply format	

12

Function	Operation
Switch between the TV mode and Data broadcast mode	[G]
Record the still image ²	[TV]

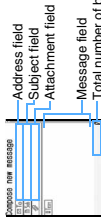
*1 Only in TV mode

*2 Invalid in the Data broadcast mode (data area expanded)

i-mode Mail

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

1 **[2]** **[2]**



9

2 [5] Message R&F	2 [8] [4] Skp password
2 [6] [1] MessageR	2 [8] [5] Image & Effect
2 [6] [2] MessageF	2 [8] [6] i-motion
2 [6] [3] Message settings	2 [8] [7] Host selection
2 [6] [3] [1] Auto-display	2 [9] Full Browser
2 [6] [3] [2] Message retrieval	2 [9] [1] Home
2 [6] [3] [3] Attachment auto-play	2 [9] [2] Bookmark
2 [6] [3] [4] i-Channel	2 [9] [3] Go to location
2 [6] [3] [5] i-Channel list	2 [9] [3] [1] Enter URL
2 [7] [2] i-Channel ticker	2 [9] [3] [2] i-appl shortcuts
2 [7] [3] Reset i-Channel	2 [9] [3] [3] Display history
2 [8] i-mode settings	2 [9] [4] Browser settings
2 [8] [1] i-mode shortcuts	2 [9] [4] [1] Home URL
2 [8] [2] Connection timeout	2 [9] [4] [2] Cookie set/delete
2 [8] [3] Display light	2 [9] [4] [3] Script setting
2 [8] [4] Certificate	2 [9] [4] [4] Display mode setting
2 [8] [4] [1] Manage certificate	2 [9] [4] [5] Image display
2 [8] [4] [2] Certificate download	2 [9] [4] [6] Access setting
2 [8] [4] [3] Certificate host	2 [9] [4] [7] Screen view setting

13

- 2 The address field **▶** Select an input method **▶** Enter or select address
- 3 The subject field **▶** Enter the subject
- 4 The message field **▶** Enter the message
- Composing Deco-mail: **[2]** Select a decoration method **▶** Enter characters

5 **[2]**

- Saving mail: **[3]**
- Auto-send: **[2]**

Attaching files

- 1 The attachment field on the mail composition screen **▶** Select an attachment type
- Shooting and attaching a still image: **Image** **▶** *Activate camera*
 - Recording and attaching video: **i-motion** **▶** *Activate camera*
 - Recording and attaching sound: **Record** **▶** *voice*

10

3 i-appl	4 [6] [3] Record voice memo
3 [1] Software list	4 [6] [4] Voice memos
3 [2] i-appl settings	4 [7] Mail logs
3 [2] [1] Sort software	4 [7] [1] Sent msg log
3 [2] [2] Auto start	4 [7] [2] Received msg log
3 [2] [3] Software info disp.	4 [8] Own number
3 [2] [4] Display light	5 Data Box
3 [2] [5] Vibrate effect	5 [1] My Picture
3 [2] [6] i-appl shortcuts	5 [2] Music
3 [3] Display history	5 [3] i-motion
4 Phonebook & Logs	5 [4] Melody
4 [1] Phonebook	5 [4] [1] IC lock(power-off)
4 [2] Phonebook new entry	5 [5] My Document
4 [3] Phonebook(UM)	5 [6] Chata-den
4 [4] Received calls	5 [7] Machi-chara
4 [5] Redial	5 [8] Kisekai Tool
4 [6] Ans Machine & voice memo	5 [9] Other
4 [6] [1] Answer machine	6 i-Link
4 [6] [2] Recorded messages	6 [1] Music player
4 [6] [3] Receive lr data	6 [2] Bar code reader

14

- 2 Select a location of saved file **▶** Select a file
- Removing attachment: Highlight the attachment field **▶** **[2]** **Y**²⁵

Receiving i-mode Mail

- 1 A mail is received
- The mail ring alert sounds, the Enter key lights/flashes and the reception result screen is displayed

- 2 **[1]** **▶** Select a folder **▶** Select a mail

Checking for i-mode Mail

1 **[2]** (for over a second)

Menu list

Press **[2]** and input the number of each item.
<Example> Displaying a sent mail **[2]** **[1]** **[5]**

11

6 [3] [2] Send all lr data	6 [9] [2] Synchronization log
6 [3] [3] Send all via IC	6 [9] [3] Sync setting
6 [3] [4] Save received data	7 Stationary
6 [3] [5] Data exchange settings	7 [1] Scheduler
6 [3] [6] USB mode settings	7 [2] Notepad
6 [4] TouCa	7 [3] Alarm clock
6 [5] IC card	7 [4] Calculator
6 [5] [1] IC card content	7 [5] Dictionaries
6 [5] [2] Lock/Unlock	8 Settings & MW services
6 [5] [3] Timed lock	8 [1] Alerts & Sounds
6 [5] [4] IC lock(power-off)	8 [1] [1] Set Sound
6 [5] [5] IC card lock	8 [1] [1] [1] Call ring alert
6 [6] microSD	8 [1] [1] [2] Mail/Msg ring alert
6 [7] Camera	8 [1] [1] [3] Alarm sound
6 [7] [1] Still camera	8 [1] [1] [4] System sound
6 [7] [2] Movie camera	8 [1] [1] [5] Charge alert
6 [8] Sound recorder	8 [1] [1] [6] Call session
6 [9] Data Center	8 [1] [2] Adjust volume
6 [9] [1] Access Data Center	8 [1] [2] [1] Call alert volume

15

Cut here

8 1 12 2	Mail/Msg alert
8 2 1 1 5	Info/calendar layout
8 1 12 3	Listen volume
8 1 12 4	Alarm volume
8 1 12 5	r-captl effect
8 1 2 6	sound
8 1 12 6	TouchA receive alert
8 2 1 3	Color & Action image
8 1 13 2	Vibrate alert/effect
8 1 13 1 1	Call whistle alert
8 1 13 3	Mail/Msg vibrate alert
8 1 13 5	Alarm vibrate
8 1 13 4	r-captl effect
8 1 13 1 4	Video phone image
8 1 14	Start menu
8 1 5	Set mute ring time
8 2 2	Display
8 2 1 1	Standby display
8 2 1 1 1	image/r-cptl
8 2 1 2	Clock format
8 2 1 3	Battery icon
8 2 1 4	Signal level icon
8 2 16	Indicator light
8 2 17	Font & Language

16

8 2 17 1	Font size
8 2 17 2	Selected language
8 2 18	Style theme
8 2 19	Mech-chara setting
8 3	Security & Locks
8 3 1 1	Lock
8 3 1 1 1	All lock
8 3 1 2	PM lock
8 3 1 4	Keypad dial lock
8 3 1 5	Key lock
8 3 1 6	Privacy mode
8 3 13	Secret mode
8 3 14	UIM
8 3 15	Change security code
8 3 16	Scanning function
8 3 16 1	Update
8 3 16 2	Set auto-update
8 3 16 3	Set scan
8 3 16 4	Version
8 3 17	Call & Answer
8 4 1 1	Sound & image
8 4 1 1 1	Outgoing call alert
8 4 1 2	Anonymous caller setting
8 4 13	Any key answer
8 4 14	Headset
8 4 14 1	Alert preference
8 4 14 2	Auto answer control
8 4 14 3	Headset key
8 4 14 4	Microphone
8 4 15 1	Speedial/caller
8 4 15 2	Unregistered caller
8 4 16	Make/Receive call mode
8 4 16 1	Priority comm
8 4 16 2	Pretext dialling
8 4 16 3	Sub address
8 4 16 4	Open answer
8 4 17 1	Call session
8 4 17 2	Noise reduction
8 4 17 3	Close settings

17

18

8 4 8	Self mode
8 5	Videophone & TouchA
8 5 1	Videophone
8 5 1 1	V-phone dialing
8 5 1 2	Videophone alert
8 5 1 3	Operation
8 5 1 4	Dispatch-on any act
8 5 1 5	Image setting
8 5 1 6	External device
8 5 1 7	Notify switchable mode
8 5 2	TouchA
8 5 2 1	TouchA alert
8 5 2 2	TouchA settings
8 5 2 3	TouchA auto-read
8 5 2 4	TouchA sort rule
8 6	Other
8 6 1	Clock
8 6 1 1	Date & time
8 6 1 2	Auto power ON
8 6 1 3	Auto power OFF
8 6 1 4	Clock display format
8 6 1 5	Alarm auto power ON
8 6 2	Other
8 6 2 1	Save word
8 6 2 2	DI dictionary
8 6 2 3	Rest prediction
8 6 2 4	Save phrase
8 6 2 5	Text input method
8 6 3	Font size
8 6 4	Software update
8 6 5	Quick start-up
8 6 6	Edit by slide
8 6 7 1	Info. & Reset
8 6 7 1 1	Call duration
8 6 7 2	Call cost
8 6 7 3	Memory status
8 6 7 4	Confirm
8 6 7 5	Battery level

19

8 6 7 6	Reset
8 6 7 7	Delete all data
8 7 1	Services
8 7 1 1	Voice Mail service
8 7 1 1 1	Voice Mail
8 7 1 2	Time/Vibration notification
8 7 1 3	Notify missed call
8 7 1 4	Hide Voice Mail icon
8 7 2	Call waiting/forward
8 7 2 1	Call waiting
8 7 2 2	Call forwarding
8 7 3 1	Create message
8 7 3 2	Set arrival act
8 7 3 3	Arrival call act
8 7 4	Caller ID
8 7 4 1	Caller ID notification
8 7 4 2	Caller ID request
8 7 5	OPTIONED
8 7 5 1 1	Area display setting
8 7 5 2	Start forwarding
8 7 5 3	Stop forwarding
8 7 5 4	Check twid setting
8 7 6	Other
8 7 6 1	Additional service
8 7 6 2	Remote control
8 7 6 3	Missed call
8 7 6 4	English guidance
8 7 6 5	Dual network
8 7 6 6	Service numbers
8 7 6 7	Multi number
8 7 6 8	Set arrival act
8 7 6 9	Arrival call act
8 7 7	Auto assist
8 7 7 1	Auto switch
8 7 7 2	Auto assist setting

*1 Available only when Privacy Mode Setting is made.
*2 When Camera/linked IC Card Lock Setting is set to Voice/Security, voiceprint authentication is required before entering the terminal security code.

Network services

Voice Mail Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

- ⑥ ③ ⑦ ①
- Perform the following operations:

Item	Operation procedure
Activate	① ① ① ➡ Yes ➡ Yes ➡ Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)
Deactivate	① ① ③ ➡ Yes
Play messages	When a new voice message arrives, ① ① is displayed on the standby display. ① ① ➡ Yes ➡ Follow the voice guidance

9 1 1 1	1Seg
9 1 1	Activate 1Seg
9 1 2	Picture effect
9 1 3	Booking program list
9 1 4	TVM
9 1 5	Channel setting
9 1 6	1Seg settings
9 1 7	1Seg backlight
9 1 6 1	Reset
9 1 6 2	permissionsDisp
9 1 6 3	Confirm settings
9 1 6 4	Reset settings
0 0	Own number

Key operations for functions

Start operation on the standby display.

Function	Operation procedure
Setting/canceling Silent Mode	⑥ (for over a second) or ③ (for over a second)
Speed Menu	⑥ (for over a second) or ⑥
Channel list	⑥ (for over a second)
Setting/canceling Self Mode	⑥ (for over a second) ➡ Yes
Setting/canceling Public mode (Driving mode)	③ (for over a second)
Data Box menu	⑥
Activate Still Camera	⑥ (for over a second)
I-mode menu	⑥
I-captl folder list	⑥ (for over a second)
Received Calls	⑥

Function	Operation procedure
Activating/canceling Privacy Mode*1	To activate: ⑥ (for over a second) To cancel: ⑥ (for over a second) ➡ Enter the terminal security code
Redial	⑥
Setting/canceling IC Card Lock	To set: ⑥ (for over a second) ➡ Yes To cancel: ⑥ (for over a second) ➡ Enter the terminal security code*2
Phonebook	⑥
Scheduler	⑥ (for over a second)
Mail menu	⑥ (for over a second)
Checking for I-mode Mail	⑥ (for over 2 seconds)
Power ON/OFF	⑥ (for over a second)
Setting/canceling Key Lock	⑥
New Task menu	⑥
Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu	⑥
Activate 1Seg	⑥ (for over a second)

20

21

22

23

Cut here

■ Call Waiting Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

● Activating/deactivating the service

- 1 or

● Answering another call

during a call

- Switching the other parties:

● Making another call

Enter phone number during a call

- Switching the other parties:

● Ending a call

to end another call

- Call resumption with on-hold person:

■ Call Forwarding Service

Separate application (free) is required.

- 1

2 Perform the following operations:

Item	Operation procedure
<i>Activate</i>	Enter the forwarding destination phone number (up to 26 digits) Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec) • Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook by pressing from the redial data by pressing , or from the received call history by pressing .
<i>Deactivate</i>	

■ Caller ID Request Service

Separate application is not required (free).

● Activating/deactivating the service

- 1 or

5 Speakerphone function ON

: During connecting to handsfree compatible device

6 Mail storage status in i-mode Center

: Status of unread mail

7 Unread Message R status

: Unread Message F status

8 i-appli/i-appli DX running

: i-appli standby display on

9 i-appli DX standby display on

: During SSL page display

10 Auto-send failure mail exists

: Auto-send mail exists

11 Secret Mode is set

: Secret Mode is set

12 i-appli Auto Start failed

: In OFFICED service area

■ Services available from the FOMA terminal

Service	Phone No.
Directory assistance (service/call charges apply) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104
Telegrams (charged)	115
Time (charged)	117
Weather (charged)	Area code +177
Police (emergency calls)	110
Fire and ambulance (emergency calls)	119
Emergency calls at sea	118
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charged)	171
Collect calls (service/call charges apply)	106

10 PIM Lock is set

: Connected to external device via the FOMA USB Cable

11 Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode

: Status of USB Mode Setting and microSD memory card

12 Reading the UIM

: IC Card Lock is set

13 Keypad Dial Lock is set

: Alarm Clock is set

14 Schedule alarm is set

: Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set at the same time

15 Software Update reserved

: Result of auto-update of the latest pattern definition (success/failure)

Reading display

■ Top of the display

- 1-4



1 Battery level icon

: Signal level icon

: Self Mode is set

: During data transfer

: In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection)

: In i-mode communication (during packet communication)

: During infrared communication

: Key Lock is set (in gray when Key Lock is temporarily released)

: Total call cost exceeds the limit

Emergency contact in case your phone is lost

Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)

* Omakase Lock is a pay service. Application is free if made at the same time as application for service suspension or during service suspension.

Setting/cancelling Omakase Lock

0120-524-360

Accepted for 24 hours

Other contact information

Phone number:

Phone number:

Phone number:

* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

Cut here

■ Bottom of the display

- 1-5



1 Missed calls

: Recorded messages

: Voice mail messages

: Unread mail

: Unread TouCa

: General silent mode is set

: Personalized silent mode is set

: Call alert volume is set to *silent*

: Vibrator for incoming voice call is set

: Call alert volume is set to *silent* and vibrator for incoming voice call is set

: Public mode (Driving mode) is set

: Answer Machine is set

: Recorded message storage space is full

Mobile phone etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, always be considerate of your environment and those around you.

Turn the power off in the following situations

In prohibited areas

Use of mobile phones in the following places is prohibited. You must turn off your FOMA terminal.

- Airplanes
- Hospitals

You must also turn the power off when in lobbies or waiting rooms of hospitals as there could be people in such areas who could be adversely affected by mobile phone signals.

While driving

Using your FOMA terminal while driving could cause an accident.

Stop the vehicle in a safe place before using the phone or use Public mode (Driving mode/power off).

On crowded trains or in other areas where there could be a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator

Operating a mobile phone could interfere with implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

When visiting live events, movie theaters, museums or other public places

The ringing of your phone and your telephone conversations could disturb others around you in quiet public places.

Be considerate of your location and those around you with respect to the volume of your speaking voice and your FOMA terminal's ring alert

When using a mobile phone in a restaurant, hotel lobby or other quiet places, always remember to lower your voice.

When using a mobile phone on the street, find a place that does not interfere with passing traffic.

Be considerate of privacy



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Functions convenient for public etiquette

You may select a mode to reject incoming calls, turn off all sounds generated by your FOMA terminal, etc. from many modes to keep from disturbing those around you.

● Silent Mode/Customize Silent Mode

Keypad sound, ring alerts and all other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are turned off (Silent Mode). ◀P105

The user is allowed to change Silent Mode operations (Customize Silent Mode). ◀P105

Even in Silent Mode, the shutter sound is heard while shooting.

● Public mode (Driving mode/power off)

When a call is received, an announcement informs the caller that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained from or that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off, and the call is then disconnected. ◀P64, P65

● Vibrator

When a call is received, the FOMA terminal vibrates instead of ringing. ◀P103

● Answer Machine

When you cannot answer a call, the caller can leave a brief message. ◀P66

You may also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

◀P372, P374

This printed matter is recyclable. Please recycle this manual when you no longer need it for reference purposes.

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of information materials.

From i-mode

iMenu ▶ 料金&お申込・設定(Charges & Applications/Setting) ▶
各種手続き(ドコモeサイト) (Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))
Packet communication charges free

From PC

**My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ▶ 各種手続き(ドコモeサイト)
(Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))**

- You will need your "network ID" to access e-site from i-mode.
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
- You will need your "DoCoMo ID/password" to access e-site from PC.
- If you do not have or you have forgotten your "network ID" or "DoCoMo ID/password", contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.
- DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

**General Inquiries
<DoCoMo Information Center>**

(In English)

 **0120-005-250** (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)



(No prefix) 151 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)



(No prefix) 113 (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)



0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.



Do not forget your cellular phone
... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy
and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION



Li-ion

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



Utilizing 100% post-consumer recycled paper pulp.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.



* 8 6 0 D 2 5 1 A *

'07.8 (Edition 1.1)

FOMA[®] D704i

Manual for Data Communication

Data communication	1
Before usage	1
Flow of setup for data communication	3
Connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC	4
Installation of the communication configuration file (USB driver)	5
Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software on Windows XP/ Windows 2000	6
Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software on Windows Vista	16
Communicating without using the FOMA PC configuration software	24
AT command	33

■ About Manual for Data Communication

In this manual, the important items which are needed for data communication by FOMA D704i and the method of installing “communication configuration file (USB driver) for D704i” and “FOMA PC configuration software” are explained.

A part of the operations or screens may differ depending on the environment.

Data communication

The data communication modes available from the FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained here.

- The FOMA terminal does not support fax communication or the Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be executed by connecting the FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA, "musea", "sigmarion II" or "sigmarion III". To use "musea" or "sigmarion II", update is required. For details on update, etc., visit the DoCoMo website.
- This FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.

Supported data communication via the FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal supports 3 communication modes: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.

These communications become available by installing the related software onto a PC from the attached CD-ROM, connecting the FOMA terminal to the PC and making required settings.

■ Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which make it suitable for high-speed exchange of relatively small amounts of data such as sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible. High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384 kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64 kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as DoCoMo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service. These are offered by the best-effort connection which allows transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion.

Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

■ 64K data communication

The 64K data communications allow data transfer/reception at stable communication rate of 64 kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which make it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. You need to use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication such as

DoCoMo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64K access points.

Note that communicating for long time will require high charges.

■ Data transfer

It is the mode of non-charged communication in which various data including the phonebook, mails and bookmarks are transferred/exchanged.

- Data can be transferred to another FOMA terminal, mobile phone or PC via the infrared communication as well.

Before usage

Operating environment

For data communication, the operating environment of PC is as follows:

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS*2	The Japanese version of Windows 2000, Windows XP or Windows Vista
Memory requirements	Windows 2000: 64 MB or more Windows XP: 128 MB or more Windows Vista: 512 MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required.

*2 The operation from OS upgrading is not covered by the warranty.

INFORMATION

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described above or by upgrading the OS and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for operation under such conditions.

When the warning screen appears

When the attached CD-ROM is inserted into the PC, the following warning screen may appear.

This warning is displayed according to the security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, but this will not cause a problem.

Click **は** (Yes).

- The screen shown below is for the case of using Windows XP. It may differ depending on the PC environment.



- For Windows Vista, when the attached CD-ROM is inserted into the PC, the auto play screen may appear.
Click *rundll32.exe* の実行 (Execute rundll32.exe).

Required devices

The following hardware and software are required in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC:

- FOMA USB Cable (optional) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA D704i"

INFORMATION

- Purchase a dedicated "FOMA USB Cable" or "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01" for a USB cable*1. A USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector does not fit.

*1 In this manual, FOMA USB Cable is used for explanation.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charge

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter called the provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera.

The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. It allows you to use broadband Internet connection service, etc. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service. The mopera service allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately. For details such as on charges, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS or DoPa access points.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the provider or network administrator of in-house LAN, etc. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication when using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, see "簡易操作マニュアル (Simple User's Manual)(FirstPassManual.pdf)" in the CD-ROM.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from the FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which may use a FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires an access point that supports FOMA 64K or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of data communication

- Administrator privilege
A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions. There must be at least 1 user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and software.

- **APN (Access Point Name)**
String to identify a provider, etc. to connect by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is "mopera.net" and mopera is "mopera.ne.jp".
- **cid (Context Identifier)**
The registration number when writing packet communication dialup connection (APN) information to the FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for the FOMA terminal.
By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" in cid3.

Flow of setup for data communication

The setup work needed to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:

- ① Install the communication configuration file ➡P5
- ② Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC ➡P4
- ③ Checking the communication configuration file ➡P5

Install the FOMA PC configuration software
 • Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P7
 • Windows Vista ➡P17

(Easy Setup)
Packet communication setup

- mopera U/mopera
 - Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P8
 - Windows Vista ➡P18
- Other providers
 - Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P9
 - Windows Vista ➡P19

(Easy Setup)
64K data communication setup

- mopera U/mopera
 - Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P11
 - Windows Vista ➡P20
- Other providers
 - Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P12
 - Windows Vista ➡P21

Execute communication

- Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P13
 - Windows Vista ➡P22
- Disconnect
- Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P13
 - Windows Vista ➡P22

Set up communications without using the FOMA PC configuration software ➡P24

Connect ➡P32/Disconnect ➡P33

Communication configuration file (USB driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC from the attached CD-ROM before connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC to perform data communication.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the attached CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication via connection between the FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

Before installation/uninstallation

- Installing/uninstalling the communication configuration file or the FOMA PC configuration software can only be performed by a user with administrator privileges. Attempts made by other users may result in errors. For Windows Vista, when the screen of ユーザーアカウント制御 (User account control) appears, click 許可 (Permit) or 続ける (Continue). For details on PC administrator privileges, refer to the instruction manual of the PC or contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running. If there is any active program, save and exit the program before operation.

Connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC

The connection should be made with the PC and the FOMA terminal both switched on.

- Be sure to install the communication configuration file (USB driver) before connection. ➡P5

Setting to Communication mode

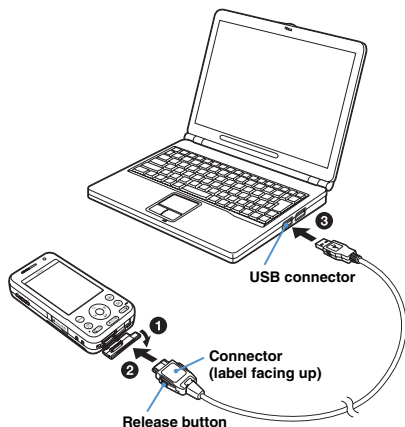
In case USB Mode Setting is set to *microSD mode* or *MTP mode*, set this to *Communication mode*.



Connecting to PC

Connect by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional).

- 1 Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal
- 2 Insert one end of the FOMA USB Cable into the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal until it clicks
- 3 Insert the other end of the FOMA USB Cable into the PC USB connector
 - When a PC and the FOMA terminal are connected, appears on the screen of the FOMA terminal. does not appear before installing the communication configuration file.
 - If you connect the FOMA terminal to a PC before installing the communication configuration file, the detecting wizard screen of new hardware will be displayed. In that case, remove the FOMA terminal and click キャンセル (Cancel) to exit the wizard.



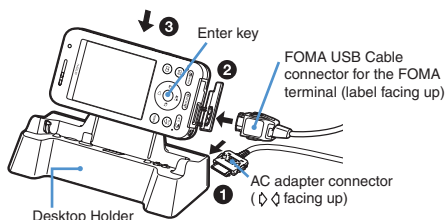
Removing FOMA USB Cable

Pull the connector for PC out from the side of PC. Be sure to press release buttons on both sides of the connector for the FOMA terminal. Forcing to pull it out may cause a malfunction.

Connecting while charging

The FOMA terminal can be connected while charging using the Desktop Holder (optional). However, charging time becomes longer.

- 1 Connect the Desktop Holder to the AC adapter
 - Plug the AC adapter into the wall outlet.
- 2 Connect the FOMA terminal and FOMA USB Cable
- 3 Along with the back of Desktop Holder, insert the FOMA terminal in the direction of the arrow 3 as shown in the figure
 - Check that the Enter key lights in red.



INFORMATION

- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable during data communication, or give shock to the FOMA terminal and Desktop Holder. It may cause the interruption of charging or data communication, malfunction or failure of PC or the FOMA terminal, or loss of data.
- Starting to charge during data communication may not complete charging. To complete charging, it is recommended that you end the data communication first, and then start charging.

Installation of the communication configuration file (USB driver)

Installing the communication configuration file

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ◀P3

- Perform Steps 1 to 5 first, and then connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.

Example For Windows XP

- Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC**
The *FOMA D704i* CD-ROM screen appears.



- For the *FOMA D704i* CD-ROM screen, the recommended operating environment is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later. In case your PC does not satisfy the recommended environment or when the *FOMA D704i* CD-ROM screen does not appear even though CD-ROM is set, operate in the following steps:

■ For Windows XP/Windows 2000:

- ① Click スタート (Start) and ファイル名を指定して実行 (Specify the file name and execute)
- ② Enter <CD-ROM ドライブ名 (Drive name)>:
¥USBDriver ¥D704i_USB_Driver ¥Win2k_XP ¥D704iin.exe in 名前 (Name) ▶ Click OK ▶ Got to Step 5

■ For Windows Vista:

- ① Click (Start), すべてのプログラム (All programs), アクセサリー (Accessory) and ファイル名を指定して実行 (Specify the file name and execute)
- ② For 名前, enter <CD-ROM ドライブ名>:
¥USBDriver ¥D704i_USB_Driver ¥WinVista32 ¥D704iin.exe ▶ Click OK ▶ Go to Step 5

- Click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data Link software, configuration software)**

- Click インストール (Installation) (Windows2000, WindowsXP) of D704i 通信設定ファイル (USB ドライバ) (D704i communication configuration file (USB driver))**

■ For Windows Vista:

- ① Click インストール (Windows Vista)

- Double-click D704iin (D704iin.exe)**

- Click インストール開始 (Start installing)**

A screen requesting to connect FOMA D704i to the PC appears.

- Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC ◀P4**

The communication configuration file is installed.
• Connect the FOMA terminal while the power is on.

- Click 終了**

- To return to the *FOMA D704i* CD-ROM screen, click 戻る (Return) of Microsoft Internet Explorer for Windows 2000 or Windows XP.
- Go to "Checking the communication configuration file", and check the name of the device installed.

INFORMATION

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When Windows rebooting is prompted on the screen, follow the instruction and reboot.
- If a PC and the FOMA terminal are connected before the communication configuration file is installed, another driver may be automatically installed. When this happens, performing the operation in Step 2 displays a message saying that the installed driver must be uninstalled. Uninstall the driver following instruction shown on the display and install the communication configuration file.

Checking the communication configuration file

When the PC does not detect the FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

Example For Windows XP

- Click スタート, コントロールパネル (Control panel), パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance) and システム (System)**

The システムのプロパティ (System properties) screen appears.

■ For Windows 2000:

- ① Click スタート, 設定(Setting) and コントロールパネル
- ② Double-click システム

■ For Windows Vista:

- ① Click (Start), コントロールパネル, システムとメンテナンス and デバイスマネージャ(Device manager) ▶ Go to Step 3

2 Click the ハードウェア(Hardware) tab ▶ Click デバイスマネージャ

The デバイスマネージャ screen appears.

3 Double-click each device type ▶ Check the name of the installed device

Check that all the device names described in the following list are shown.

Device type	Device name
USB (Universal Serial Bus) Controller	FOMA D704i
Port (COM and LPT)	• FOMA D704i Command Port (COMx)*1 • FOMA D704i OBEX Port (COMx)*1
Modem	FOMA D704i

*1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.

Uninstalling the communication configuration file

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ●P3

Before uninstalling, make sure that the FOMA terminal is removed from the PC.

Example For Windows XP

1 Click スタート, コントロールパネル and プログラムの追加と削除(Add/delete programs)

■ For Windows 2000:

- ① Click スタート, 設定 and コントロールパネル
- ② Double-click アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications)

■ For Windows Vista:

- ① Click (Start), コントロールパネル and プログラムのアンインストール(Uninstall the program)

2 Select FOMA D704i USB ▶ Click 変更と削除 (Update/delete)

■ For Windows 2000:

- ① Select FOMA D704i USB ▶ Click 変更と削除 (Update/delete)

■ For Windows Vista:

- ① Select FOMA D704i USB ▶ Click アンインストールと変更(Uninstall and change)

3 Check the name of program and click はい

The communication configuration file is uninstalled.

4 Click OK

Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software on Windows XP/Windows 2000

A number of settings are required when the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication. The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to easily perform the following settings:

■ Easy setup

Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication can be performed automatically by following the instructions in the guide.

■ Optimizing the communication settings

When using Windows XP or Windows 2000, optimize the settings in the PC before performing FOMA packet communication. Optimization of the communication settings is required to enable communication capability to maximum extent.

■ Dialup connection (APN) setup

Perform the dialup connection (APN) setup required for packet communication.

Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN in the FOMA terminal for each dialup connection in advance, and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number field of dialup connection. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1 to connect to mopera, and "mopera.net" (APN) for cid 3 to connect to mopera U, but the APN for connections to other providers and in-house LAN must be set.

Installing the FOMA PC configuration software

- Uninstall an old version of the FOMA PC configuration software, if already installed, before installing the FOMA PC configuration software (version 4.0.0). You can display the version from **メニュー (Menu) → バージョン情報 (Version information)** of the FOMA PC configuration software.
- If the following software (provided with the FOMA terminal released before this model) are installed, uninstall them in advance:
 - W-TCP environment configuration software
 - FOMA data communication configuration software
- Uninstall the FOMA PC configuration software in advance, if already installed, before installing the FOMA PC configuration software.
- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ➡ P3

Example For Windows XP

- Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC**
The **FOMA D704i CD-ROM** screen appears.



- For the **FOMA D704i CD-ROM** screen, the recommended operating environment is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later. In case your PC does not satisfy the recommended environment or when the **FOMA D704i CD-ROM** screen does not appear even though CD-ROM is set, operate in the following steps:
 - ① Click **スタート (Start)** and **ファイル名を指定して実行 (Specify the file name and execute)**
 - ② Enter **<CD-ROM ドライブ名 (Drive name)>: ¥FOMA_PCSET¥setup.4.0.0.exe** in **名前 (Name)** ▶ Click **OK** ▶ Go to Step 4

- Click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Datalink software, configuration software)**

- Click インストール (Installation) of FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software)**

When clicking **インストール (Installation)**, the warning screen shown below may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, but this will not cause a problem.

- **In case the screen of ファイルのダウンロード-セキュリティの警告 (Downloading file -security warning) is displayed**
Click **実行 (Execute)**.



- **In case of the screen of Internet Explorer - セキュリティの警告 (Security warning) is displayed**
Click **実行する (Execute)**.



- Click 次へ (Next)**

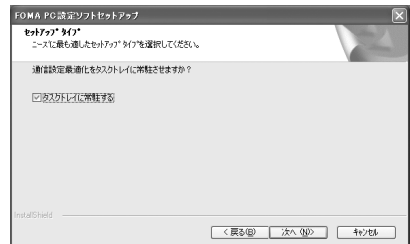
The FOMA PC configuration software license agreement appears.

- Read the content of the screen and click はい if you agree to the agreement**

- Select タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside in task tray) and click 次へ**

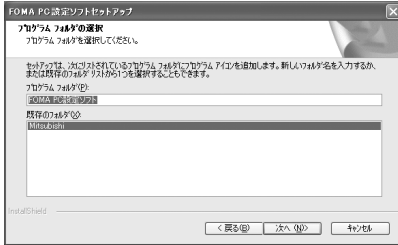
通信設定最適化 (Optimization of the communication settings) resides in the task tray after the setup.

- You can change the setting of resident software after the installation.



- Check the installation path and click 次へ**

8 Check the name of the program folder and click 次へ



9 Click 完了(Done)

FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software) is started up.

- Settings can be started from this screen.

INFORMATION

- When キャンセル or いいえ (No) is clicked during installation, the confirmation screen to cancel the installation appears. To continue the installation, click いいえ. To cancel, click はい and 完了.

Setting packet communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ◀P4

Starting the FOMA PC configuration software

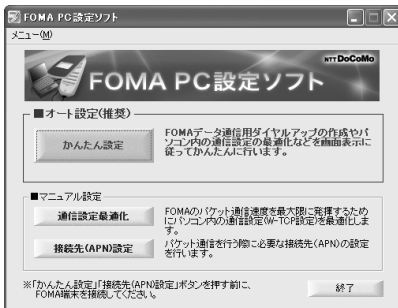
Example For Windows XP

1 Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, FOMA PC 設定ソフト and FOMA PC 設定ソフト

■ For Windows 2000:

- Click スタート, プログラム (Programs), FOMA PC 設定ソフト and FOMA PC 設定ソフト

The FOMA PC configuration software is started up.



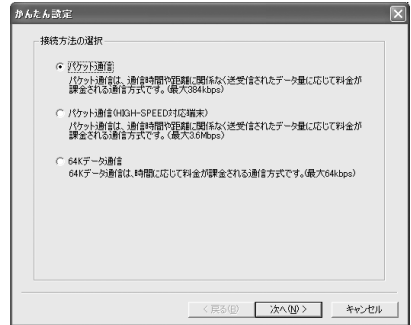
Using mopera U/mopera

- Using other providers ▶P9

Example For Windows XP

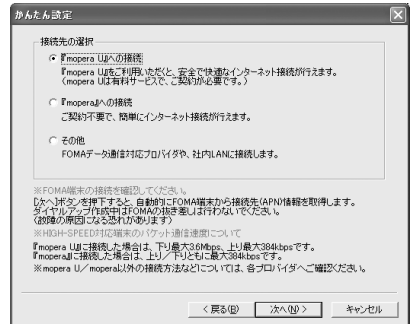
1 Start the FOMA PC configuration software ▶ Click かんたん設定 (Easy setup)

2 Select パケット通信 (Packet communication) ▶ Click 次へ



3 Select 『mopera U』への接続 (mopera U connection) or 『mopera』への接続 (mopera connection) ▶ Click 次へ

- When mopera U is selected, a confirmation message to agreement appears. If the subscription is completed, click はい.



4 Click OK on the FOMA 端末設定取得 (Get the FOMA terminal settings) screen

"Dialup connection (APN) information" is obtained from the FOMA terminal. Please wait.

5 Set any connection name and each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for 接続名(Connection name):
¥ / : * ? ! < > | " ' ~
- For 発信者番号通知(Caller ID Notification), select 186 を付加する (通知する) (Add 186 (notify)) or 設定しない (推奨) (Not set (recommended)).
You need to notify the caller ID to connect to mopera U or mopera.
- For 接続方式(Connection procedure), the optimum item is set automatically.

6 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The entry for ユーザID(User ID) or パスワード (Password) is not required for connection.
- If you select すべてのユーザー (All users) for 使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Select allowable user), all users that are allowed to login to Windows can access the connection.

7 Check that 最適化を行う (Optimize) is selected and click 次へ

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.

8 Check the settings and click 完了

9 Click OK

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click (よし) when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- If optimization of W-TCP setting has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ◀P13

Using other providers

- Using mopera U/mopera ◀P8

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 4 of “Using mopera U/ mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P8

- Select パケット通信 (Packet connection) for the connection procedure in Step 2.
- Select その他 (Others) in Step 3 for the dialup connection.

2 Enter any connection name ▶ Click 接続先 (APN) 設定(Set dialup connection (APN))

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for 接続名:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | " ' "
- For Caller ID Notification setup explanations, follow the instructions given by your provider.



■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

- Click 詳細情報の設定 (Set detail info) to display the IPアドレス(IP address) and ネームサーバー (Name server) setting screens.
- When dialup information such as address is required, register it based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Set the dialup connection (APN)

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" in cid3. Register a dialup connection (APN) for cid 2 or 4 to 10.

① Click 追加 (Add)

The 接続先 (APN) の追加 (Add dialup connection (APN)) screen appears.

② Set a dialup connection (APN) of your provider, etc., which supports the FOMA packet communication and the connection procedure ▶ Click OK

The display returns to the 接続先 (APN) 設定 screen.

- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be entered for 接続先 (APN).
- This terminal supports only PPP connection, so select PPP 接続 (PPP connection) for 接続方式 (Connection procedure). For the compatible connection procedure, inquire your provider.



4 Click OK

The display returns to the screen in Step 2. Dialup connection (APN) and the connection procedure set in Step 3 appear in 接続先 (APN) の選択 (Select dialup connection (APN)).

5 Check the dialup connection (APN) of 接続先 (APN) の選択 and click 次へ

6 Enter the user name in ユーザーID and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user ID and password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- If you select すべてのユーザー (all users) for ユーザーの選択 (Select user), all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.

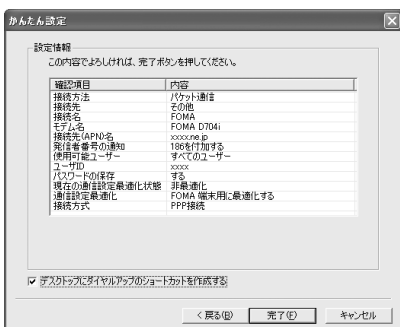


7 Check that 最適化を行う is selected and click 次へ

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click 完了



9 Click OK

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click **はい** when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- If optimization has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ◀P13

Setting 64K data communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ◀P4

Using moper U/mopera

- Using other providers ◀P12

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using moper U/ mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P8

- Select **64K データ通信** (64K data communication) in Step 2 for the connection procedure.
- Select **「mopera U」への接続** (mopera U connection) or **「mopera」への接続** (mopera connection) in Step 3.

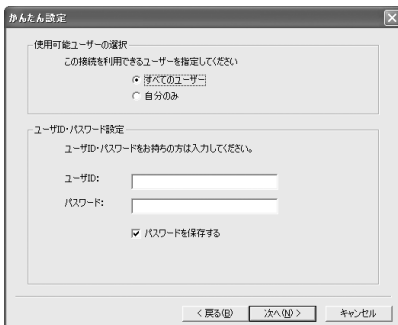
2 Set any connection name and each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for **接続名**:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | " ' "
- Check that **FOMA D704i** is set for **モデムの選択** (Modem selection).
- Select if caller ID is notified at dialup connection. Select **186を付加する (通知する)** (Caller ID Notification on) for moper U and mopera connection.

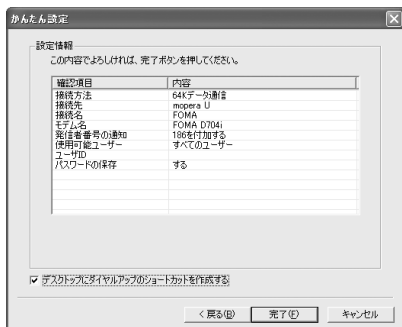


3 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The entry for **ユーザID** or **パスワード** is not required for connecting.
- If you select **すべてのユーザー** for **使用可能ユーザーの選択**, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.



4 Check the settings and click 完了



5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P13

Using other providers

- Using mopera U/mopera ◀P11

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U/ mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P8

- Select **64K データ通信** in Step 2 for the connection procedure.
- Select **その他** in Step 3 for the dialup connection.

2 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- Register the following items:
 - 接続名** : Optional
 - モデムの選択** : FOMA D704i
 - 電話番号** (Phone number) : Enter based on information given by provider, etc.
 - 発信者番号の通知** : Select following the instructions given by your provider.



■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

Click **詳細情報の設定** to display the **IP アドレス** and **ネームサーバー** setting screens.

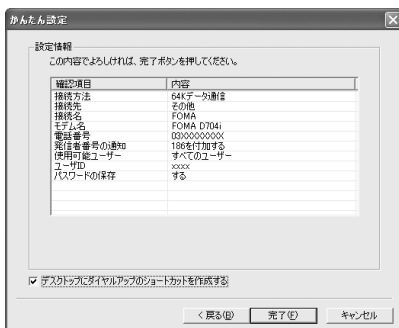
- When dialup information such as address is required, register it based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Enter the user ID in ユーザーID and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user ID and password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- If you select **すべてのユーザー** for **使用可能ユーザーの選択**, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.



4 Check the settings and click 完了



5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P13

Performing communication

Starting communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software and disconnection are explained here.

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P4

2 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



• The icon varies depending on the OS.

• When there is no connection icon made on desktop, start from the スタート menu.

■ Starting from the スタート menu of Windows XP:

- ① Click スタート, すべてのプログラム(All programs), アクセサリ (Accessories), 通信 (Communication), and ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)
- ② Double-click the dialup connection

■ Starting from the スタート menu of Windows 2000:

- ① Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)
- ② Double-click the dialup connection

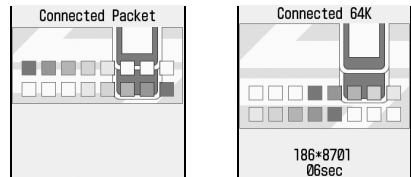
3 Check each item and click ダイヤル(Dial)

- When mopera U/mopera is selected, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required for connection.
- If required by the instructions of a subscribed provider, enter the user name and the password according to the input instruction information, and then click ダイヤル.
- The connection established screen may be displayed depending on the OS. Click OK.



■ FOMA terminal screen while communicating

The FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established:



INFORMATION

- The transmission speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- Data transmission is available only with the FOMA terminal that was connected when the connection icon was created.
- When connecting the FOMA terminal other than D704i, installation of the communication configuration file for your FOMA terminal is needed.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

Example For Windows XP

1 Click in the task tray

2 Click 切断(Disconnect)



Optimizing packet communication setup

Optimize the PC packet communication setup for FOMA network by means of "Optimization of the communication settings". "Optimization of the communication settings" is a TCP parameter tuning tool for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in the FOMA network. To enable communication capability of the FOMA terminal to maximum extent, this optimization of the communication settings is required.

For Windows XP

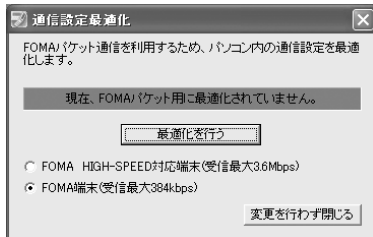
System optimization can be performed for each dialup connection.

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト(☛P8) ▶ Click 通信設定最適化

■ Starting from the task tray: Click 

2 Perform the following operations:

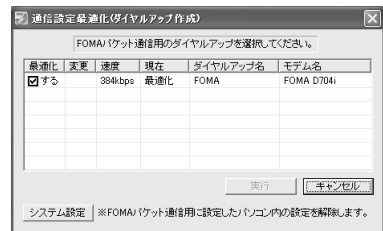
■ When the system has not been optimized:
The following screen is displayed.



① Select FOMA 端末(受信最大384kbps)
(FOMA terminal (Maximum reception:
384kbps)) and click 最適化を行う

② Select the dialup connection to be
optimized ▶ Click 実行(Execute)
Optimization of the system settings and
dialup settings are performed respectively.

■ When the system has been optimized:
The following screen is displayed. Change the
check box and click 実行(Execute) if changes
are to be made.



3 Reboot the PC following the instruction shown on the screen

• The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

For Windows 2000

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト(☛P8) ▶ Click 通信設定最適化

■ Starting from the task tray: Click 

2 Click 最適化を行う

3 Reboot the PC following the instruction shown on the screen

• The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Canceling optimization

• Cancel optimization in case of executing 64K data
communication or when communicating via other
than the FOMA terminal.

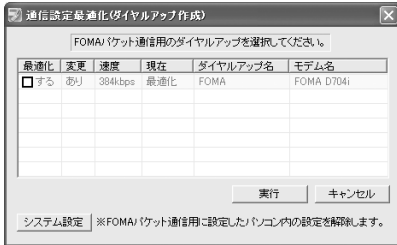
For Windows XP

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト(☛P8) ▶ Click 通信設定最適化

■ Starting from the task tray: Click 

2 Remove the check of the dialup connection to cancel optimization ▶ Click 実行

- When the system is optimized for 3.6Mbps, the dialup connection cannot be selected individually. Click システム設定 (System setting).



3 Click OK

For Windows 2000

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト (P8) ▶ Click 通信設定最適化

- Starting from the task tray: Click

2 Click 最適化を解除する (Cancel optimization)

3 Reboot the PC following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Setting dialup connections (APNs)

Set the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Up to 10 dialup connections (APNs) can be set, which are to be registered under registration numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for management.

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3.

- Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. P4
- For dialup connections (APNs) other than mopera U/mopera, inquire your provider or network administrator.

Example For Windows XP

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト (P8) ▶ Click 接続先 (APN) 設定

The FOMA 端末設定取得 screen appears.

2 Click OK

The FOMA terminal is accessed for reading the registered dialup connection (APN) information.

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings



- Adding dialup connections (APNs): Click 追加

- Editing or correcting registered dialup connections (APNs): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click 編集 (Edit)

- Deleting the registered dialup connections (APNs): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click 削除 (Delete)
 - The dialup connection registered in cid1 and cid3 cannot be deleted. (Selecting cid1 or cid3 and clicking 削除 do not actually delete, but return to the previous status.)

- Saving settings as file: Click ファイル (File) and 名前を付けて保存 (Save as...) or 上書き保存 (Overwrite)
 - Save the settings as a file to back up the dialup connection (APN) settings registered in the FOMA terminal or save the dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.

- Importing settings from file: Click ファイル and 開く (Open)
 - Import settings from a file to edit the dialup connection (APN) settings saved on the PC or write them to the FOMA terminal.

- Importing dialup connection (APN) information from the FOMA terminal: Click ファイル and FOMA 端末から設定を取得 (Import settings from the FOMA terminal)
Access manually to the FOMA terminal to import the registered dialup connection (APN) settings.

- Writing dialup connection (APN) information to the FOMA terminal: Click FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む (Write settings to the FOMA terminal)
The displayed dialup connection (APN) settings are written to the FOMA terminal.

■ Creating dialup connections:

- ① **Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN) ▶ Click ダイアルアップ作成 (Create dialup connection)**
The FOMA 端末設定書き込み (Write setting to the FOMA terminal) screen appears.
- ② **Click はい ▶ Click OK**
The パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 (Create dialup connection for packet communication) screen appears.
- ③ **Enter any connection name and select the way of notifying caller ID ▶ Click ユーザID・パスワードの設定 (Set User ID and password)**
- ④ **Enter the user ID in ユーザID and the password in パスワード ▶ Click OK**
 - Not required for mopera U/mopera for connection.
 - If you select **すべてのユーザー** for **使用可能ユーザーの選択**, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.
 - Some providers may request you to enter IP and DNS information settings. Should this be the case, click **詳細情報の設定** in the **パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成** screen, register the required information and click **OK**.
- ⑤ **Click OK ▶ Click OK**
- ⑥ **Click FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む**
A confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite.
- ⑦ **Click はい ▶ Click OK**

INFORMATION

- Since the dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in the FOMA terminal, re-register the APN when connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.).
- To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN to the FOMA terminal.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC configuration software

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ➡P3

Uninstall preparations

Right-click  in the task tray, and click **終了** (Do not reside) to terminate the optimization of the communication settings.

Uninstalling

Example For Windows XP

1 Click スタート, コントロールパネル and プログラムの追加と削除

■ For Windows 2000:

- ① Click スタート, 設定 and コントロールパネル
- ② Double-click アプリケーションの追加と削除

2 Select NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC configuration software) ▶ Click 削除

■ For Windows 2000:

- ① Select **NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト**
▶ Click **変更と削除**

3 Check that you have selected the correct program to delete and click はい

The uninstallation of the FOMA PC configuration software starts.

■ Canceling the optimization of communication settings:

A confirmation screen appears when the communication settings have been optimized.

- Usually, click **はい** and deactivate the optimization.
- Select whether to reboot immediately and click **完了** when Windows prompts you to reboot the PC.
- Canceling the optimization of communication settings is performed after the PC is rebooted.

4 Click 完了

Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software on Windows Vista

A number of settings are required when the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication. The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to easily perform the following settings:

■ Easy setup

Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication can be performed automatically by following the instructions in the guide.

■ Dialup connection (APN) setup

Perform the dialup connection (APN) setup required for packet communication.

Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN in the FOMA terminal for each dialup connection in advance, and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number field of dialup connection. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1 to connect to mopera, and "mopera.net" (APN) for cid 3 to connect to mopera U, but the APN for connections to other providers and in-house LAN must be set.

Installing the FOMA PC configuration software

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ●P3

1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC

The *FOMA D704i* CD-ROM screen appears.



- For the *FOMA D704i* CD-ROM screen, the recommended operating environment is Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later. In case your PC does not satisfy the recommended environment or when the *FOMA D704i* CD-ROM screen does not appear even though CD-ROM is set, operate in the following steps:

- Click (Start), すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ and ファイル名を指定して実行 (Specify the file name and execute)
- Enter <CD-ROM ドライブ名 (Drive name)>: *FOMA_PCSET *setup_4.0.0.exe in 名前 (Name) ▶ Click OK ▶ Go to Step 4

2 Click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data Link software, configuration software)

3 Click インストール (Installation) of FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software)

When clicking インストール (Installation), the warning screen shown below may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, but this will not cause a problem.

- In case the screen of ファイルのダウンロード-セキュリティの警告 (Downloading file - security warning) is displayed
Click 実行 (Execute).



4 Click 次へ

The FOMA PC configuration software license agreement appears.

5 Read the content of the screen and click はい if you agree to the agreement

6 Check the installation path and click 次へ

7 Check the name of the program folder and click 次へ



8 Click 完了 (Done)

FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software) is started up.

- Settings can be started from this screen.

INFORMATION

- When キャンセル or いいえ (No) is clicked during installation, the confirmation screen to cancel the installation appears. To continue the installation, click はい. To cancel, click はい and 完了.

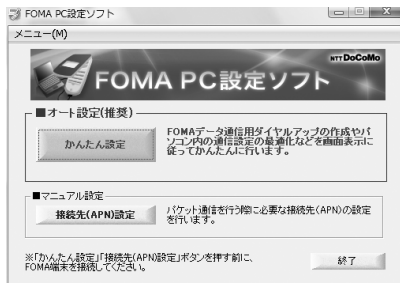
Setting packet communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ➡P4

Starting the FOMA PC configuration software

1 Click (Start), すべてのプログラム, FOMA PC 設定ソフト and FOMA PC 設定ソフト

The FOMA PC configuration software is started up.

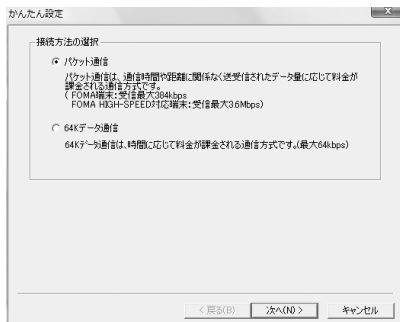


Using mopera U/mopera

- Using other providers ➡P19

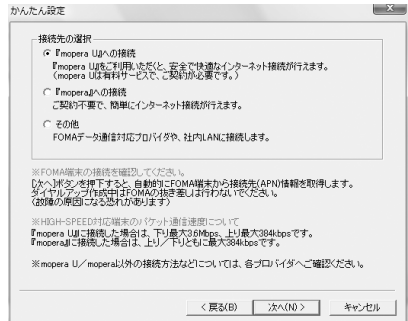
1 Start the FOMA PC configuration software ➡ Click かんたん設定 (Easy setup)

2 Select パケット通信(Packet communication) ➡ Click 次へ



3 Select 『mopera U』への接続(mopera U connection) or 『mopera』への接続(mopera connection) ➡ Click 次へ

- When mopera U is selected, a confirmation message to agreement appears. If the subscription is completed, click はい.

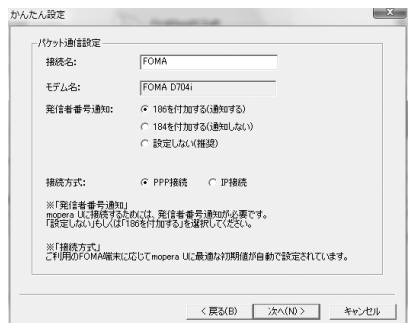


4 Click OK on the FOMA 端末設定取得(Get the FOMA terminal settings) screen

"Dialup connection (APN) information" is obtained from the FOMA terminal. Please wait.

5 Set any connection name and each item ➡ Click 次へ

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for 接続名:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | " ' "
 - For 発信者番号通知 (Caller ID Notification), select 186 を付加する (通知する) (Add 186 (notify)) or 設定しない (推奨) (Not set (recommended)).
- You need to notify the caller ID to connect to mopera U or mopera.
- For 接続方式 (Connection procedure), the optimum item is set.



6 Enter the user name in ユーザID and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- The entry for ユーザID (User ID) or パスワード (Password) is not required for connection.

7 Check the settings and click 完了

8 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P22

Using other providers

- Using mopera U/mopera ◀P18

1 Perform Steps 1 to 4 of “Using mopera U/ mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P18

- Select パケット通信 (Packet connection) for the connection procedure in Step 2.
- Select その他 (Others) in Step 3 for the dialup connection.

2 Enter any connection name ▶ Click 接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set dialup connection (APN))

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for 接続名:

¥ / : * ? ! < > | " ' `

- For Caller ID Notification setup explanations, follow the instructions given by your provider.

■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

Click 詳細情報の設定 (Set detail info) to display the IPアドレス (IP address) and ネームサーバー (Name server) setting screens.

- When dialup information such as address is required, register it based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Set the dialup connection (APN)

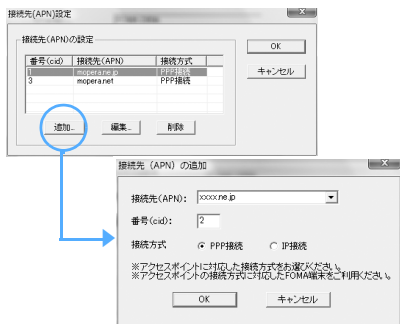
By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is registered in cid1, and “mopera.net” in cid3. Register a dialup connection (APN) for cid2 or 4 to 10.

① Click 追加 (Add)

The 接続先 (APN) の追加 (Add dialup connection (APN)) screen appears.

- ② Set a dialup connection (APN) of your provider, etc., which supports the FOMA packet communication and the connection procedure ▶ Click OK
- The display returns to the 接続先 (APN) 設定 screen.

- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be entered for 接続先 (APN).
- This terminal supports only PPP connection, so select PPP 接続 (PPP connection) for 接続方式 (Connection procedure). For the compatible connection procedure, inquire your provider.



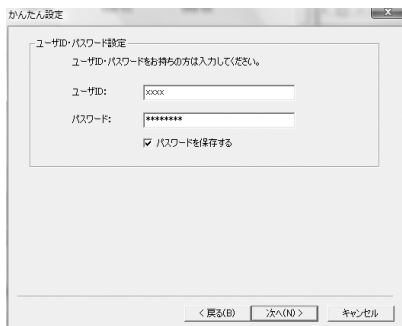
4 Click OK

The display returns to the screen in Step 2. Dialup connection (APN) and the connection procedure set in Step 3 appear in **接続先 (APN) の選択** (Select dialup connection (APN)).

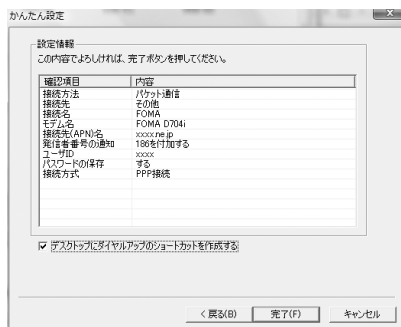
5 Check the dialup connection (APN) of 接続先 (APN) の選択 and click 次へ

6 Enter the user name in ユーザID and the password in パスワード Click 次へ

- Enter the user ID and password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.



7 Check the settings and click 完了



8 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P22

Setting 64K data communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ▶P4

Using mopera U/mopera

- Using other providers ▶P21

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U/mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ▶P18

- Select **64K データ通信** (64K data communication) in Step 2 for the connection procedure.
- Select **「mopera U」への接続** (mopera U connection) or **「mopera」への接続** (mopera connection) in Step 3.

2 Set any connection name and each item Click 次へ

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for **接続名**:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”
- Check that **FOMA D704i** is set for **モデムの選択** (Modem selection).

- Select if caller ID is notified at dialup connection. Select **186を付加する (通知する)** (Caller ID Notification on) for mopera U and mopera connection.

3 Enter the user name in ユーザID and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- The entry for ユーザID or パスワード is not required for connecting.

4 Check the settings and click 完了

5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P22

Using other providers

- Using mopera U/mopera ◀P20

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U/ mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P18

- Select **64K データ通信** in Step 2 for the connection procedure.
- Select **その他** in Step 3 for the dialup connection.

2 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- Register the following items:
 - ・ **接続名** : Optional
 - ・ **モデムの選択** : FOMA D704i
 - ・ **電話番号** (Phone number) : Enter based on information given by provider, etc.
 - ・ **発信者番号通知** (Caller ID Notification) : Select following the instructions given by your provider.

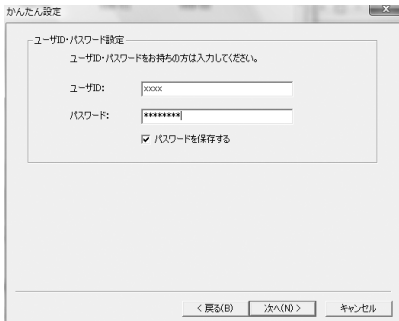
■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

Click **詳細情報の設定** to display the **IPアドレス** and **ネームサーバー** setting screens.

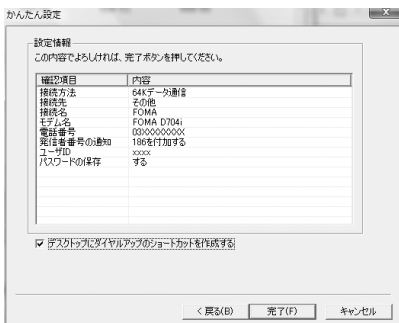
- When dialup information such as address is required, register it based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Enter the user name in ユーザID and the password in パスワード▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user ID and password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.



4 Check the settings and click 完了



5 Click OK

Performing communication

Starting communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software and disconnection are explained here.

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC ▶P4

2 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



- When there is no connection icon made on desktop, start from the スタート menu.

- ① Click (Start) and 接続先
- ② Double-click the dialup connection

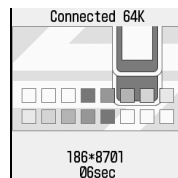
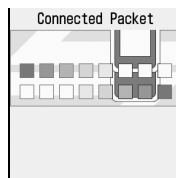
3 Check each item and click ダイアル(Dial)

- When mopera U/mopera is selected, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required for connection.
- If required by the instructions of a subscribed provider, enter the user name and the password according to the input instruction information, and then click ダイアル.



■ FOMA terminal screen while communicating

The FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established:



INFORMATION

- The transmission speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- Data transmission is available only with the FOMA terminal that was connected when the connection icon was created.
- When connecting the FOMA terminal other than D704i, installation of the communication configuration file for your FOMA terminal is needed.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

1 Click (Start) and 接続先

2 Select the connected dialup ▶ Click **切断** (Disconnect)



3 Click **閉じる** (Close)

Setting dialup connections (APNs)

Set the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Up to 10 dialup connections (APNs) can be set, which are to be registered under registration numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for management.

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3.

- Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ➡P4
- For dialup connections (APNs) other than mopera U/mopera, inquire your provider or network administrator.

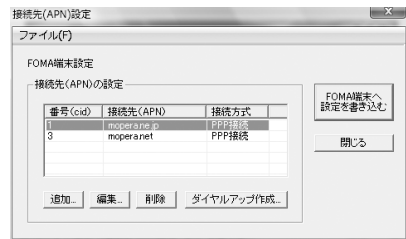
1 Start **FOMA PC 設定ソフト** (P18) ▶ Click **接続先 (APN) 設定**

The **FOMA 端末設定取得** screen appears.

2 Click **OK**

The FOMA terminal is accessed for reading the registered dialup connection (APN) information.

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings



■ Adding dialup connections (APNs): Click **追加**

■ Editing or correcting registered dialup connections (APNs): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click **編集** (Edit)

■ Deleting the registered dialup connections (APNs): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click **削除** (Delete)

- The dialup connection registered in cid1 and cid3 cannot be deleted. (Selecting cid1 or cid3 and clicking **削除** do not actually delete, but return to the previous status.)

■ Saving settings as file: Click **ファイル** (File) and **名前を付けて保存** (Save as...) or **上書き保存** (Overwrite)

- Save the settings as a file to back up the dialup connection (APN) settings registered in the FOMA terminal or save the dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.

■ Importing settings from file: Click **ファイル** and **開く** (Open)

- Import settings from a file to edit the dialup connection (APN) settings saved on the PC or write them to the FOMA terminal.

■ Importing dialup connection (APN) information from the FOMA terminal: Click **ファイル** and **FOMA 端末から設定を取得** (Import settings from the FOMA terminal)

Access manually to the FOMA terminal to import the registered dialup connection (APN) settings.

■ Writing dialup connection (APN) information to the FOMA terminal: Click **FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む** (Write settings to the FOMA terminal)

The displayed dialup connection (APN) settings are written to the FOMA terminal.

■ Creating dialup connections:

- ① **Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN) ▶ Click ダイアルアップ作成 (Create dialup connection)**
The *FOMA 端末設定書き込み* (Write setting to the FOMA terminal) screen appears.
- ② **Click はい ▶ Click OK**
The *パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成* (Create dialup connection for packet communication) screen appears.
- ③ **Enter any connection name and select the way of notifying caller ID ▶ Click ユーザID・パスワードの設定 (Set User ID and password)**
- ④ **Enter the user ID in ユーザID and the password in パスワード ▶ Click OK**
 - Not required for mopera U/mopera for connection.
 - Some providers may request you to enter IP and DNS information settings. Should this be the case, click *詳細情報の設定* in the *パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成* screen, register the required information and click *OK*.
- ⑤ **Click OK ▶ Click OK**
- ⑥ **Click FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む**
A confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite.
- ⑦ **Click はい ▶ Click OK**

INFORMATION

- Since the dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in the FOMA terminal, re-register the APN when connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.).
- To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN to the FOMA terminal.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC configuration software

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ◀P3

Uninstalling

- 1 **Click (Start) , コントロールパネル, プログラムのアンインストール**
- 2 **Select NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC configuration software) ▶ Click アンインストール**

3 Check that you have selected the correct program to delete and click はい

The uninstallation of the FOMA PC configuration software starts.

4 Click 完了

Communicating without using the FOMA PC configuration software

The method of dialup network setup for packet communication/64K data communication without using the FOMA PC configuration software is explained here.

Operation procedures for setup

- ① Install the communication configuration file ◀P5
- ② Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P4
- ③ Checking the communication configuration file ◀P5

Set the dialup connection (APN)*1 ◀P25
(Not required for 64K data communication and for packet communication via mopera U/mopera)

Set to show/hide caller ID ◀P26 (Set as required)

Other settings (AT commands)*1 ◀P33
(Set as required)

Dialup network setup

OS	Settings	
	Dialup connection	TCP/IP
Windows XP	P27	P28
Windows 2000	P28	P30
Windows Vista	P31	P31

- For details on settings, inquire your provider or network administrator.

Connect ◀P32/Disconnect ◀P33

*1 For Windows Vista, communication software is required to enter AT command.

INFORMATION

- When the message of 既定の Telnet プログラムにしますか? (Set the fixed Telnet program ?) appears in the process of the operation, click はい (Yes) or いいえ (No).
- When the screen of 所在地情報 (Location information) appears in the process of the operation, set the dial information of your location and click **OK**. The dial information you have set appears on the screen of 電話とモデムのオプション (Option of the phone and modem), so click **OK**.

Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication

Communication software to input AT commands is required for making settings. The method of setting using "HyperTerminal" that comes with Windows XP/Windows 2000 is explained here. Windows Vista does not support "HyperTerminal". In case of using Windows Vista, use the software supporting Windows Vista for setting (Follow the setting procedure of software which you use).

Default cid1: mopera.ne.jp
cid3: mopera.net
cid2, 4 to 10: not recorded

Example For Windows XP

- 1 **Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC ←P4**
- 2 **Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal).**
 - For Windows 2000, プログラム is displayed for すべてのプログラム.
- 3 **Enter any connection name in 名前 Click OK**



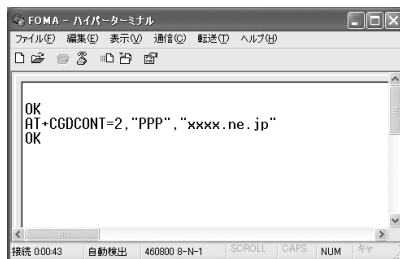
- 4 **Enter a fictional phone number (such as a zero (0)) for 電話番号, select FOMA D704i from 接続方法 (Connection procedure) Click OK**

- Since 市外局番 (Area code) does not effect dialup connection (APN) setting, it is not necessary to change.



- 5 **Click キャンセル when the connection screen appears**
- 6 **Enter the dialup connection (APN) Press**

- Enter in the format "AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,"PPP","APN".
- <cid> : Enter any number between 2 or 4 to 10.
- "PPP": Enter "PPP".
- "APN": Enter the dialup connection (APN) in quotation marks.



If **OK** is displayed, the dialup connection (APN) has now been set.

Resetting dialup connection (APN) settings:

AT+CGDCONT= Resets all cids.

- The settings are restored to the default settings for <cid> = 1 and 3, and the settings for <cid> = 2 or 4 to 10 are cleared.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid> Resets the specified cid.

- Checking dialup connection (APN) settings:

AT+CGDCONT? [↵]

- When nothing is displayed even if AT command is entered: ATE1 [↵]

• For details ◀P37

7 Check that OK is displayed and click ファイル and ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)

- After 現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか? (Connecting now. Disconnect?) appears, click はい.
- “XXX”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? (Save the connection named “XXX”?) or セッション“XXX”を保存しますか? (Save session “XXX”?) appears. Click いいえ.

Dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup connection (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers between cid1 to 10 in the FOMA terminal. By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is set for cid1 and “mopera.net” for cid3. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register the dialup connection (APN) for cid2 or 4 to 10.

- For the dialup connection (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook registration for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and the FOMA terminal phonebook entries is as follows:

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cids become the connection numbers of dialup connection setting.

Setting to show/hide caller ID

Take care when disclosing your caller ID since it is important information.

- Settings must be “show” for using mopera U/ mopera.

Default not set

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 5 of “Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” ◀P25

2 Set to show (186)/hide (184) caller ID during packet communication

Enter in the format “AT * DGPIR=<n>”.

AT * DGPIR=1 [↵]

When packet communication connection is established, “184” is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

AT * DGPIR=2 [↵]

When packet communication connection is established, “186” is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

- When nothing is displayed even if AT command is entered: ATE1 [↵]

• For details ◀P37

3 Check that OK is displayed and click ファイル and ハイパーターミナルの終了

- After 現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか? appears, click はい.
- “XXX”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? or セッション“XXX”を保存しますか? appears. Click いいえ.

Setting to show/hide caller ID by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append “186” (show) or “184” (hide) to the dialup connection number.

If “186” (show) or “184” (hide) is set by both the AT * DGPIR command and dialup network settings, the show/hide caller ID setting is as follows:

Setting made by AT * DGPIR command	Dialup network setting (<cid>=3)		
	Not set	Hide	Show
* 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.		

- To reset the show/hide setting made by the AT * DGPIR command to the default (not set), enter “AT * DGPIR=0”.

Setting dialup network for Windows XP

Setting the dialup connection

1 Click スタート、すべてのプログラム、アクセスサリ、通信 and ネットワーク接続
The ネットワーク接続 screen appears.

2 Click 新しい接続を作成する (Create new connection) in ネットワークタスク (Network task)
The 新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard) screen appears.

The 新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard) screen appears.

3 Click 次へ

A screen for selecting the type of network connection appears.

4 Select インターネットに接続する (Connect to Internet) ▶ Click 次へ

The setup screen appears.

5 Select 接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up connection manually) ▶ Click 次へ

The Internet connection screen appears.

6 Select ダイアルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use dialup modem to connect) ▶ Click 次へ

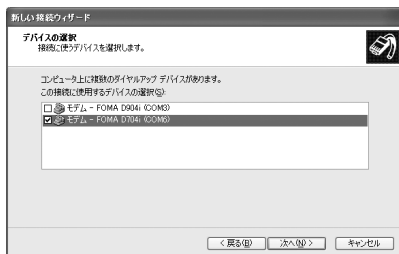
The device selection screen appears.

- If there is only one modem installed, the device selection screen is not displayed. Go to Step 8.

7 Select モデム - FOMA D704i (COMx)*1 (Modem: FOMA D704i (COMx)) ▶ Click 次へ

- Check that only モデム - FOMA D704i (COMx)*1 is selected.

*1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.

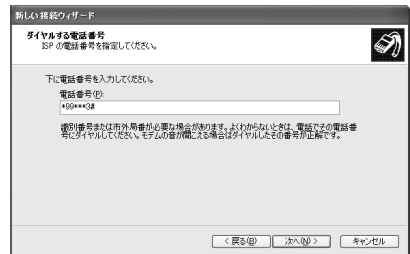


8 Enter any connection name in ISP名 (ISP name) ▶ Click 次へ



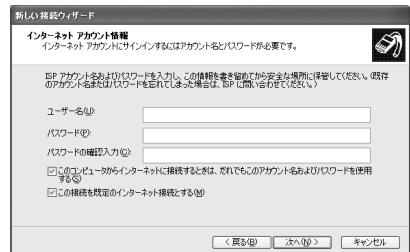
9 Enter the number of the dialup connection (one-byte) in 電話番号 ▶ Click 次へ

- For packet communication, enter " * 99 * * * <cid>#".
 - For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication" (P25). Enter " * 99 * * * 3#" for mopera U and " * 99 * * * 1#" for mopera.
- For 64K data communication, enter the dialup connection phone number.
 - Enter " * 8701" for mopera U and " * 9601" for mopera.



10 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- When the dialup connection is mopera U/ mopera, the entry for ユーザー名、パスワード and パスワードの確認入力 (Reenter the password) is not required for connection. Set other items as required.



11 Click 完了

12 Check the settings and click キャンセル

- Check the settings without connecting to the Internet immediately.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection ▶

Click ファイル and プロパティ (Properties)



2 Check the setting of each item in the 全般 (General) tab

- When multiple modems are installed in the PC, select モデム - FOMA D704i (COMx)*1 in 接続方法.
- Check that only モデム - FOMA D704i (COMx)*1 is selected.
*1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.
- Uncheck (☐) ダイアル情報を使う (Use dial information).



3 Click the ネットワーク (Network) tab ▶

Check the setting of each item

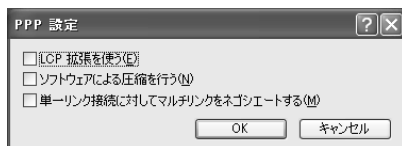
- Set PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet as 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dialup server to call).
- Select only インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)) in この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use these items for this connection). Since QoSパケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler) can not be changed, leave it as it is.



4 Click 設定

5 Uncheck (☐) all items and click OK

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



6 Click OK

Setting dialup network for Windows 2000

Setting the dialup connection

1 Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続

The ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen appears.

2 Double-click 新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection)

The ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) screen appears.

3 Click 次へ

A screen for selecting the type of network connection appears.

4 Select インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Use dialup connection to Internet) ▶ Click 次へ

The start screen of インターネット接続ウィザード (Internet connection wizard) appears.

5 Select インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Connect by setting the Internet connection manually or using local area network (LAN)) ▶ Click 次へ

The Internet connection setting selection screen appears.

6 Select 電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem) ▶ Click 次へ

The modem selection screen appears.

- This screen is not displayed if multiple modems are not installed. Go to Step 8.

7 Check that インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select modem to use for connection to Internet) is set to FOMA D704i and click 次へ

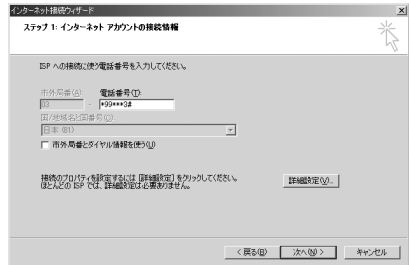
The Internet account connection information screen appears.

- If FOMA D704i is not set, set FOMA D704i.

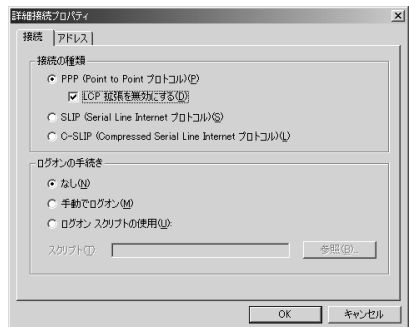
8 Enter the number of dialup connection (one-byte) in 電話番号 ▶ Click 詳細設定 (Detailed settings)

- Uncheck (☐) 市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information).
- For packet communication, enter " * 99 * * * <cid>#".
 - For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication" (●P25). Enter " * 99 * * * 3#" for mopera U and " * 99 * * * 1#" for mopera.

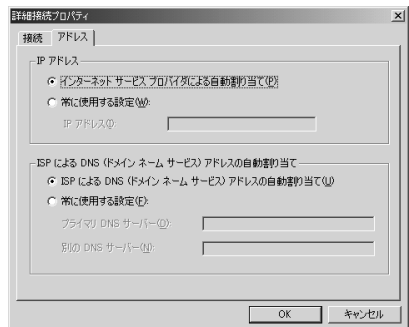
- For 64K data communication, enter the dialup connection phone number.
 - Enter " * 8701" for mopera U and " * 9601" for mopera.



9 Set each item in the 接続 tab as shown below



10 Click the アドレス (Address) tab ▶ Set each item as shown below



11 Click OK

The Internet account connection information screen reappears.

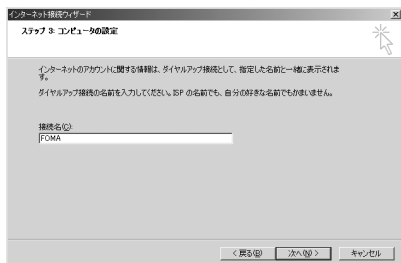
12 Click 次へ

The Internet account logon information screen appears.

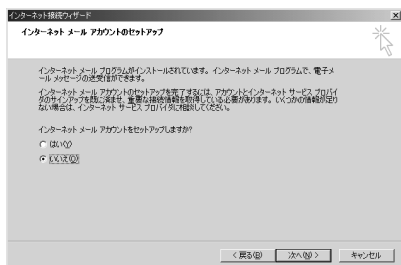
13 Enter the user name in ユーザー名 and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- When the dialup connection is moperla U/mopera, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required for connection. When a confirmation screen for no entry appears, click はい.

14 Enter any connection name in 接続名 ▶ Click 次へ



15 Select いいえ ▶ Click 次へ



16 Click 完了

The ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen reappears.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the icon of the created dialup connection ▶ Click ファイル and プロパティ



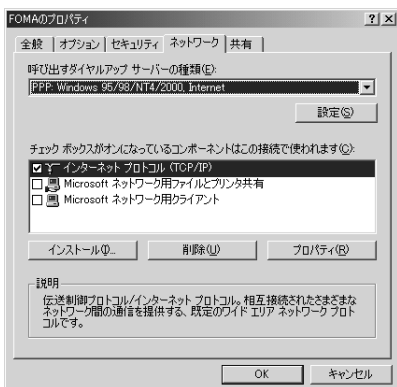
2 Check the setting of each item in the 全般 tab

- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select モデム - FOMA D704i (COMx)*1 in 接続の方法 (Connection procedure). When the modem is changed, all items in 電話番号 (Phone number) are initialized. Re-enter the dialup connection phone number in that case.
- Check that only モデム - FOMA D704i (COMx)*1 is selected.
- *1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.
- Uncheck (☐) ダイアル情報を使う (Use dialing information).



3 Click the ネットワーク tab ▶ Check the setting of each item

- Set PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet as 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Dial-up server type).
- Select only インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP) for component.



4 Click 設定

5 Uncheck all items (☐) and click OK

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



6 Click OK

Setting dialup network for Windows Vista

Setting dialup connections

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to PC ◀P4

2 Click (Start) and 接続先

3 Click 接続またはネットワークをセットアップします (Connect or set up network)

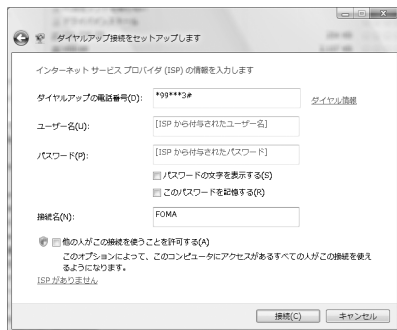
4 Select ダイアルアップ接続をセットアップします (Set up the dialup connection) ▶ click 次へ



- In case the message of どのモデムを使いますか? (Which modem do you use ?) appears:
Click FOMA D704i モデム

5 Set each item ▶ Click 接続

- Enter the dialup connection for **ダイアルアップの電話番号** (Dialup phone number).
 - For packet communication, enter * 99 * * * <cid> # .
For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication" (P25). For motopa U, enter * 99 * * * 3 # and * 99 * * * 1 # for motopa.
 - For 64K data communication, enter the dialup connection phone number.
For motopa U, enter * 8701 and * 9601 for motopa.
- In case the dialup connection is motopa U/ motopa, connecting is available without entering **ユーザー名** and **パスワード**.
- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for **接続名**:
¥ / : * ? < > |



6 When the message of FOMA に接続中... appears, click スキップ

- Perform only setting without connecting here.

7 On the screen of インターネット接続テストに失敗しました (Failed in the Internet connection test), click 接続をセットアップします (Set up the connection)

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Click (Start) and 接続先

2 Right-click the created dialup connection and click プロパティ

3 Check the setting of each item in the 全般 tab

- In case multiple modems are installed, select モデム - FOMA D704i (COMx)*1 of 接続の方法.
- Confirm that only モデム - FOMA D704i (COMx)*1 is checked.

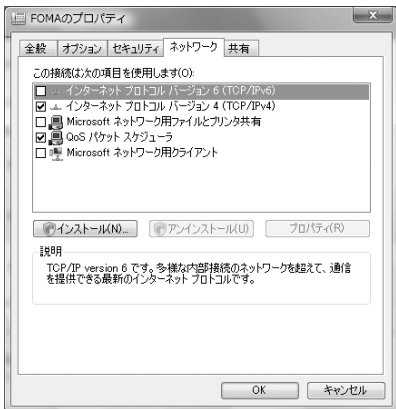
*1 x in COMx differs depending on the PC you use.

- Uncheck (☐) ダイアル情報を使う.



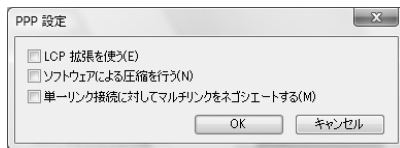
4 Click the ネットワーク tab ▶ Set each item

- Uncheck (☐) インターネットプロトコルバージョン6 (TCP/IP v6).
- In case the settings of IP and DNS information are specified by the provider, select インターネットプロトコルバージョン4 (TCP/IP v4), click プロパティ and set each information.
- Select QoS パッケージスケジューラ as required according to the instructions of a provider.



5 Click the オプション tab ▶ Click PPP 設定 (PPP setup)

6 Uncheck (☐) all items ▶ Click OK



7 Click OK

Connecting through dial-up

The method of dialup connection for packet communication/64K data communication is explained here.

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC ◀ P4

2 Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワーク接続

The ネットワーク接続 screen appears.

■ For Windows 2000:

- ① Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続

■ For Windows Vista:

- ① Click (Start) and 接続先

3 Double-click the dialup connection

4 Check each item and click ダイアル

- The number of dialup connection set for the dialup network is shown in ダイアル.
- When the dialup connection is mopera U/ mopera, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required for connection.
- The connection established screen may be displayed depending on the OS. Click OK.



Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

Example For Windows XP

1 Click in the task tray and 切断

■ For Windows 2000:

- 1 Click  in the task tray and 切断

■ For Windows Vista:

- 1 Click  (Start) and 接続先
- 2 Select the connected dialup ▶ Click 切断

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting the FOMA terminal functions from a PC. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

About the AT command

■ AT command input format

“AT” must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters. An input example is as follows:

ATD * 99 * * * 3# 

Command Parameter Press Enter key.

AT commands and their parameters (numbers or symbols) must be entered on a single line. Enter all the characters from the first character to the character just before  in a single line. Up to 160 characters (including “AT”) can be entered in each line.

■ AT command input mode

To operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands, the PC must be in the terminal mode. Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

- Offline mode

The FOMA terminal in standby status. Usually,

the FOMA terminal must be in this status to use AT commands to control it.

- Online data mode

The FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. If you enter AT commands when the FOMA terminal is performing communication, the received characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while the FOMA terminal is performing communication.

- Online command mode

AT commands allow you to operate the FOMA terminal even when the FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. This mode makes it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can be continued after the commands have finished executing.

Switching between the online data mode and online command mode

To switch the FOMA terminal from the online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures:

- Enter the “+++” command or the code set in the “S2” register.
- Turn the RS-232C*1 ER signal off when set in “AT&D1”.

To switch from the online command mode to the online data mode, enter “ATO .

*1 The USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

AT command list

- When AT commands are input, entering “¥” may cause “\” to appear depending on the font settings for the PC or communication software in use.
- If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.
- AT commands that can be used via the FOMA D704i Modem Port are described in this list.

*1 : Returns the setting to default with the AT&F command.

*2 : Stores the command setting into the FOMA terminal with the AT&W command and restores it with the ATZ command.

None : Indicates the AT command does not include any display command or test command.

[] : Indicates the parameter can be omitted.

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT		When this command is enabled, "OK" is displayed.					
	ex.	Enter	AT	Display	None	Test	None
AT%V		Shows the version of your FOMA terminal in the format of "Verx.xx".					
	ex.	Enter	AT%V	Display	None	Test	None
AT&C [n]		Selects the operational conditions of the circuit CD signal outgoing to DTE. n=0: The circuit CD signal is always on. (when parameter omitted) n=1: The circuit CD signal varies depending on the other party's modem. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&C1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&D [n]		Determines an action to be taken when the circuit ER signal coming from DTE changes from on to off in the online data mode. n=0: Ignores the ER signal condition (always on). (when parameter omitted) n=1: Switches the mode to the online command mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. n=2: Disconnects the circuit and switches the mode to the offline mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. (default)					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&D1	Display	None	Test
AT&E [n]		Selects type of speed display used when connection is made. This command is effective only when the ATX command is other than "n=0". n=0: Displays communication speed of wireless zone. n=1: Displays communication speed between PC and the FOMA terminal. (default)					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&E1	Display	None	Test
AT&F [0]		Resets all FOMA terminal state to the default. When executed while receiving a call, it resets the FOMA terminal state to the default without affecting the call. When executed during communication, the terminal state returns to default after it disconnects ("NO CARRIER" displayed) the communication.					
		ex.	Enter	AT&F0	Display	None	Test
AT&S [n]		Determines the control of the DR signal the FOMA terminal outputs. n=0: Always on. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: The DR signal turns on when the line is connected.					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&S0	Display	None	Test
AT&W [0]		Writes the current settings into the FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT&W0	Display	None	Test	None
AT*DANTE		Shows the signal strength (reception level) in the format of "*DANTE:m". m=0: Outside the service area. m=1 to 3: Number of antennas displayed on the FOMA terminal (m=1:0 or 1)					
	ex.	Enter	AT*DANTE	Display	AT*DANTE?	Test	AT*DANTE=?
AT*DGANSM=n		Specifies whether to reject or accept an incoming packet call. n=0: Sets both the incoming call rejection and the incoming call acceptance off. (default) n=1: Sets the incoming call rejection on. n=2: Sets the incoming call acceptance on.					
	ex.	Enter	AT*DGANSM=0	Display	AT*DGANSM?	Test	AT*DGANSM=?
AT*DGAPL=n [cid]		Specifies dialup connections (APNs) to accept incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with "+CGDCONT". n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call acceptance list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call acceptance list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.					
	ex.	Enter	AT*DGAPL=0,1	Display	AT*DGAPL?	Test	AT*DGAPL=?
AT*DGARL=n [cid]		Specifies dialup connections (APNs) to reject incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with "+CGDCONT". n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call rejection list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call rejection list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.					
	ex.	Enter	AT*DGARL=0,1	Display	AT*DGARL?	Test	AT*DGARL=?

Command		Description & Parameter				
AT+DGPiR=n		Specifies whether to notify the caller ID for packet communication. This specification is effective both for incoming and outgoing calls. n=0: The APN is used as it is when a packet communication is established. (default) n=1: Adds "184" to the APN when a packet communication is established. n=2: Adds "186" to the APN when a packet communication is established.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+DGPiR=0	Display	AT+DGPiR?	Test AT+DGPiR=?
AT+DRPW		Shows the level of power reception in the format of "+DRPW:m", where the value of m ranges from 0 to 75.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+DRPW	Display	None	Test AT+DRPW=?
+++		Changes the FOMA terminal mode from the online data to the online command. The duration of escape guard is fixed to 1 sec.				
	ex.	Enter	+++	Display	None	Test None
AT+CAOC		Displays last call cost.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CAOC	Display	AT+CAOC?	Test AT+CAOC=?
AT+CBC		Displays the FOMA terminal's battery level in the "+CBC:bcs,bcl" format. bcs=0: Powered by the battery pack bcs=1: Not powered by the battery pack bcs=2: Battery pack removed bcs=3: Power-supply error bcl=0: No battery remained or battery pack removed bcl=1 to 100: Battery remained				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CBC	Display	None	Test AT+CBC=?
AT+CBST=n,1,0		Sets the line to use (Setting of bearer service). n=116: 64K data communication (default) n=134: 64K videophone				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter AT+CBST=116,1,0	Display	AT+CBST?	Test AT+CBST=?
AT+CEER		Shows a disconnection reason of the previous communication. ●P39				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CEER	Display	None	Test AT+CEER=?
AT+CGDCONT		Specifies the APN for packet communication. ●P39				
AT+CGEQMIN		Specifies the criteria for judging whether to approve the QoS (Quality of Service) level provisioned by the network when the packet communication is established. ●P39				
AT+CGEQREQ		Specifies the QoS level requested to the network when transmission is performed during packet communication. ●P40				
AT+CGMR		Shows the version of your FOMA terminal with a 16-digit number.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGMR	Display	None	Test AT+CGMR=?
AT+CGREG= [n]		Determines whether to notify the network registration state. Either "inside the service area" or "outside the service area" is notified. n=0: Not notified. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Notified in the format of "+CGREG:n,stat". stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area (visitor)				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter AT+CGREG=1	Display	AT+CGREG?	Test AT+CGREG=?
AT+CGSN		Shows the manufacturer's serial number of the FOMA terminal.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGSN	Display	None	Test AT+CGSN=?
AT+CLIP= [n]		Specifies whether to show the caller ID of an incoming 64K data communication on the PC's screen. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CLIP?", it shows "+CLIP:n,m". m=0: The network setting that does not show caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=1: The network setting that shows caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=2: Unknown				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter AT+CLIP=0	Display	AT+CLIP?	Test AT+CLIP=?
AT+CLIR= [n]		Specifies whether to show your caller ID to the other party when you originate a 64K data communication. n=0: In accordance with the service agreement. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Does not notify the caller ID. n=2: Notifies the caller ID. (default) If you enter "AT+CLIR?", it shows "+CLIR:n,m". m=0: CLIR is not activated. (caller ID always notified) m=1: CLIR is activated. (caller ID always not notified) m=2: Unknown m=3: CLIR temporary mode (default for "not notified") m=4: CLIR temporary mode (default for "notified")				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIR=0	Display	AT+CLIR?	Test AT+CLIR=?

Command		Description & Parameter																												
AT+CMEE=[n]		Specifies the error report format of the FOMA terminal. ➤P39 n=0: Shows "ERROR". (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx". (xxxx=numbers) n=2: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx". (xxxx=characters)																												
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CMEE=0	Display	AT+CMEE?	Test AT+CMEE=?																								
AT+CNUM		Shows the Own Number data of the FOMA terminal in the format of "+CNUM:,"number",type". number: Phone number type=129: Does not show "+81". type=145: Shows "+81".																												
	ex.	Enter	AT+CNUM	Display	None	Test AT+CNUM=?																								
AT+COPS=n,2,oper		Sets search method for network operator to connect. n=0: Auto (Searches network automatically to connect.) (default) n=1: Manual (Connects to the network operator specified as oper.) n=2: Cancels (Disconnects) the connection with the operator. n=3: No mapping n=4: When you cannot connect to the operator specified as oper, search automatically to connect. oper: Sets PLMN Number in hexadecimal value.																												
	ex.	Enter	AT+COPS=1	Display	AT+COPS?	Test AT+COPS=?																								
AT+CPAS		Displays whether the FOMA terminal can send and receive AT commands to external devices in "+CPAS:n" format. n=0: Possible n=1: Impossible n=2: Unknown n=3: Possible and receiving n=4: Possible and communicating																												
	ex.	Enter	AT+CPAS	Display	None	Test AT+CPAS=?																								
AT+CPIN="pin" [, "newpin"]		Enters these codes when entry of PIN/PIN2 code or PUK is requested. Entry of "AT+CPIN?" displays the current status in the "+CPIN:code" format. Execute AT+CPIN="pin[, "newpin"] by specifying pin or newpin depending on the value of code as follows:																												
		<table><thead><tr><th>Code</th><th>Status</th><th>pin</th><th>newpin</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>READY</td><td>Entry of code not requested</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>SIM PIN</td><td>Entry of PIN code waited</td><td>PIN code</td><td>None</td></tr><tr><td>SIM PIN2</td><td>Entry of PIN2 code waited</td><td>PIN2 code</td><td>None</td></tr><tr><td>SIM PUK</td><td>PIN locked</td><td>PUK</td><td>New PIN code</td></tr><tr><td>SIM PUK2</td><td>PIN2 locked</td><td>PUK</td><td>New PIN2 code</td></tr></tbody></table>					Code	Status	pin	newpin	READY	Entry of code not requested			SIM PIN	Entry of PIN code waited	PIN code	None	SIM PIN2	Entry of PIN2 code waited	PIN2 code	None	SIM PUK	PIN locked	PUK	New PIN code	SIM PUK2	PIN2 locked	PUK	New PIN2 code
Code	Status	pin	newpin																											
READY	Entry of code not requested																													
SIM PIN	Entry of PIN code waited	PIN code	None																											
SIM PIN2	Entry of PIN2 code waited	PIN2 code	None																											
SIM PUK	PIN locked	PUK	New PIN code																											
SIM PUK2	PIN2 locked	PUK	New PIN2 code																											
	ex.	Enter	AT+CPIN="0000"	Display	AT+CPIN?	Test AT+CPIN=?																								
AT+CR= [n]		Specifies whether to display the communication type (packet communication or 64K data communication) before CONNECT is displayed, during line connection. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information in the format of "+CR:serv". serv=SYNC: 64K data communication serv=GPRS: Packet communication																												
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CR=0	Display	AT+CR?	Test AT+CR=?																								
AT+CRING= [n]		Specifies whether to use result codes of "+CRING:type" for incoming calls. n=0: Does not use the result code of "+CRING:type". (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the result code of "+CRING:type". The example of codes are as follows: Packet communication... +CRING:GPRS "PPP" ,,"mopera.net" 64K data communication... +CRING:SYNC																												
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CRING=0	Display	AT+CRING?	Test AT+CRING=?																								
AT+CREG= [n]		Specifies whether to show the "inside/outside the service area" information. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CREG?", it shows the information in the format of "+CREG:n,stat". stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area (visitor)																												
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CREG=0	Display	AT+CREG?	Test AT+CREG=?																								
AT+CUSD=n,"str"[,0]		Inquires and sets for additional service (USSD) of Network Services. n=0: Does not answer mid result. (default) n=1: Displays mid result in "+CUSD:m,"str",0" format. m=0: Information not requested m=1: Information requested str: Service code provided by DoCoMo																												
	ex.	Enter	AT+CUSD=1, " *148 *1 *0000#",0	Display	AT+CUSD?	Test AT+CUSD=?																								
AT+FCLASS=0		Sets communication type supported by the FOMA terminal (The setting is not changeable). Only data supported.																												
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+FCLASS=0	Display	AT+FCLASS?	Test AT+FCLASS=?																								

Command		Description & Parameter				
AT+GCAP		Displays the range of AT commands supported by the FOMA terminal in the "+GCAP: n,n,n" format. n+=CGSM: Supports GSM commands (including the case for supporting a part). n+=FCLASS: Supports +FCLASS commands. n+=W: Supports +W commands.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+GCAP	Display	None	Test AT+GCAP=?
AT+GMI		Shows the manufacturer's name of the FOMA terminal.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMI	Display	None	Test AT+GMI=?
AT+GMM		Shows the FOMA terminal name.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMM	Display	None	Test AT+GMM=?
AT+GMR		Shows the version of the FOMA terminal.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMR	Display	None	Test AT+GMR=?
AT+IFC= [n,[m]]		Specifies the local flow control between the PC and FOMA terminal. n is for setting the DCE-by-DTE control. n=0: Does not use the flow control. n=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. n=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) m is for setting the DTE-by-DCE control. If you omit this parameter, the same value as n is assumed. m=0: Does not use the flow control. m=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. m=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) If you omit both parameters, "AT+IFC=2,2" is assumed.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+IFC=2,2	Display	AT+IFC?	Test AT+IFC=?
AT+WS46= [22]		Specifies the radio network FOMA terminal uses to originate a call.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+WS46=22	Display	AT+WS46?	Test AT+WS46=?
ATA		Specifies how to handle incoming packet or 64K data communications. For incoming packet communications, you can specify the following: ATA184: Receives an incoming call without the caller ID displayed ATA186: Receives an incoming call with the caller ID displayed				
	ex.	Enter	ATA	Display	None	Test None
A/		Reexecutes the previous command.				
	ex.	Enter	A/	Display	None	Test None
ATD		Originates a packet or 64K data communication. · Packet communication: Enter "ATD * 99 * * * cid#". If you omit cid parameter, "cid=1" is assumed. When you enter it in the format starting with "ATD184 * 99", 184 (hide caller ID) is attached to the call outgoing to the APN specified with cid parameter (186 (show caller ID) is treated in the same manner). · 64K data communication: Enter it in the format of "ATD phone number". · Redialing: Enter in the format of "ATDL" or "ATDN".				
	ex.	Enter	ATD phone number	Display	None	Test None
ATE [n]		Echoes back the characters sent from the PC. n=0: Gives no echo back. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Gives echo back. (default)				
	ex.	Enter	ATE0	Display	None	Test None
ATH		Disconnects communication.				
	ex.	Enter	ATH	Display	None	Test None
ATI [n]		Shows the identification code. n=0: Shows "NTT DoCoMo". (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the model name of the FOMA terminal. n=2: Shows the version of the FOMA terminal.				
	ex.	Enter	ATI0	Display	None	Test None
ATO		Switches the mode from the online command to the online data.				
	ex.	Enter	ATO	Display	None	Test None
ATQ [n]		Specifies whether to show the result code on the PC. n=0: Shows the result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Does not show the result code.				
	ex.	Enter	ATQ0	Display	None	Test None
ATV [n]		Specifies whether to show the result with numeric codes or text messages. n=0: Shows the result with numeric codes. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the result with text messages. (default)				
	ex.	Enter	ATV1	Display	None	Test None
ATX [n]		Specifies whether to detect busy tone and dial tone, and whether to display the communication speed. n=0: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed not displayed. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=2: Busy tone not detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. n=3: Busy tone detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=4: Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. (default)				
	ex.	Enter	ATX1	Display	None	Test None

Command		Description & Parameter					
ATZ		Resets FOMA terminal settings to those stored in the non-volatile memory with the AT&W command. If you enter this command during receiving a packet or 64K data communication, the settings are reset without affecting the call reception. If you enter it during communication, it disconnects the communication first and resets the settings.					
	ex.	Enter	ATZ	Display	None	Test	None
ATS0= [n]		Specifies the number of ringing signals (RING) which triggers automatic call acceptance on the FOMA terminal. n=0: Does not accept calls automatically. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1 to 255					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS0=0	Display	ATS0?	Test
ATS2= [n]		Specifies an escape character. n=0 to 127 (43: Default 0: When parameter omitted 127: To disable the escape processing)					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS2=43	Display	ATS2?	Test
ATS3= [13]		Specifies a carriage return (CR) character that indicates the end of AT command's character string (the setting is not changeable). It is attached to the end of the echoed back command string and the result code.					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS3=13	Display	ATS3?	Test
ATS4= [10]		Specifies the line feed (LF) character (the setting is not changeable). It follows the CR character when the result code is displayed with text.					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS4=10	Display	ATS4?	Test
ATS5= [8]		Specifies a backspace (BS) character that deletes the last character in the input buffer while you are entering an AT command (the setting is not changeable).					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS5=8	Display	ATS5?	Test
ATS6= [n]		Specifies the pause period before dialing. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=2 to 10: 2 to 10 seconds. (5: default and when parameter omitted)					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS6=5	Display	ATS6?	Test
ATS8= [n]		Specifies the comma dialing function (pause time). This command sets the register but the pause time is fixed to 3 seconds. n=0 to 255: 0 to 255 seconds. (3: default 0: when parameter is omitted)					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS8=3	Display	ATS8?	Test
ATS10= [n]		Specifies the permissible delay time before automatic disconnection. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=1 to 255: in 1/10 seconds. (1: default and when parameter omitted)					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS10=1	Display	ATS10?	Test
ATS30= [n]		Specifies the time elapsed after the last data transmission to activate automatic disconnection. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 minutes. n=0: Does not disconnect. (default and when parameter omitted)					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS30=0	Display	ATS30?	Test
ATS103= [n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a destination sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: * (when parameter omitted) n=1: / (default) n=2: ¥					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS103=0	Display	ATS103?	Test
ATS104= [n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a caller sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: # (when parameter omitted) n=1: % (default) n=2: &					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS104=0	Display	ATS104?	Test
AT¥S		Shows the command settings and the contents of the S register.					
	ex.	Enter	AT¥S	Display	None	Test	None
AT¥V [n]		Selects whether to use the extended result code for connection. This command takes effect when the ATX command parameter is "n=1 to 4". n=0: Does not use the extended result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the extended result code.					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT¥V0	Display	None	Test

Disconnection reason list

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
26	APN is not present or is incorrect.
27	
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal is not subscribed to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection

■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	A call was made to the other party, but no response.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Reason
1	no connection to phone	The FOMA terminal is not connected.
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM (FOMA card) is set.
15	SIM wrong	A SIM other than UIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

■ Command name: AT+CGDCONT=[parameter]

Sets the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Format

AT+CGDCONT=[<cid>[, "PPP" [, "<APN>"]]]

Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid 1, and "mopera.net" in cid 3.

<APN>: Optional

Example of execution

The command used to register an APN named "abc" (when <cid>=2).

AT+CGDCONT=2, "PPP", "abc"

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGDCONT=

Clears all <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

Clears the specified <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGDCONT?

Displays the current setting values.

■ Command name: AT+CGEQMIN=[parameter]

Registers the criteria for judging whether to approve QoS provisioned by the network when PPP packet communication is established.

Format

AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid 1 and "mopera.net" in cid 3.

<Maximum bitrate UL>: None or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>: None or 384

For "Maximum bitrate UL" and "Maximum bitrate DL", the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between the FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. However, if "64" and "384" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.

Example of execution

- Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
- Command used to permit only 64kbps upload and 384 kbps download (when <cid>=4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,64,384
- Command used to permit 64 kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64

- (4) Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384 kbps download (when <cid>=6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQMIN=?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQMIN?

Displays the current settings.

■ **Command name: AT+CGEQRREQ=[parameter]**

Sets QoS requested to the network when transmission is performed during PPP packet communication.

Format

AT+CGEQRREQ=[<cid>]

Parameter description

Only commands that require connection at 64 kbps upload/384 kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each cid.

<cid>: 1 to 10

“mopera.ne.jp” is registered in cid 1, and
“mopera.net” in cid 3.

Example of execution

(when <cid>=2)

AT+CGEQRREQ=2

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQRREQ=

Returns all <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQRREQ=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQRREQ=?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQRREQ?

Displays the current settings.

Result codes

- When the ATV [n] command (P37) is set to “n=1”, the result code is displayed in the text display (default). When the command is set to “n=0”, the result code is displayed in the numeric display.

■ **Result codes**

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to remote device
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Completion of connection timed out
100	RESTRICTION	The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted

■ **Extended result code**

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and PC
5	CONNECT 1200	1,200 bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2,400 bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4,800 bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7,200 bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9,600 bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14,400 bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19,200 bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38,400 bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57,600 bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115,200 bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230,400 bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460,800 bps

INFORMATION

- To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C on PC, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC with a FOMA USB Cable (optional).

■ Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connected via 64K data communication
3	AV64K	AV (videophone) connected via [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected with packet communication

■ Display example of result codes

When “ATX 0” is set

Regardless of the settings of the AT¥V command (P38), only **CONNECT** is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 3#
CONNECT ("1" in numeric display)
```

When “ATX 1” is set

- When “ATX1”, “AT¥V0” is set (default)

Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format: **CONNECT** <speed between the FOMA terminal and PC>

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 3#
CONNECT 460800 ("1 21" in numeric display)
```

- When “ATX1”, “AT¥V1” is set*1

Upon completion of connection, the code is displayed in the following format:
CONNECT<speed between the FOMA terminal and PC><communication protocol><the dialup connection APN><upload top speed between the FOMA terminal and the wireless base station>/<download top speed between the FOMA terminal and the wireless base station>*2

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 3#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.net/
64/384 ("1 21 5" in numeric display)
```

Indicates that speed between the FOMA terminal and PC is 460,800 bps and the terminal is connected to mopera.net providing a maximum upload speed of 64 kbps and a maximum download speed of 384 kbps.

- *1 When “ATX1” and “AT¥V1” are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail.

It is recommended that this function be usually set to default, which is “ATX1” and “AT¥V0”.

- *2 When “AT¥V1” is set, <the dialup connection APN> and after that are displayed only when connected with packet communication.

Kuten Code List

• Some of the following may look different from the displayed ones.

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code	1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code	1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code
010	0	083	0	207	0
011	1		1		1
012	2		2		2
013	3		3		3
014	4		4		4
015	5		5		5
016	6		6		6
017	7		7		7
018	8		8		8
019	9		9		9
020		130	0	208	0
021		131	1	209	1
022		132	2	210	2
023		133	3	211	3
024		134	4	212	4
		135	5	213	5
026		136	6	214	6
027		137	7	215	7
028		138	8	216	8
029		139	9	217	9
				218	0
				219	1
				220	2
				221	3
				222	4
				223	5
				224	6
				225	7
				226	8
031		160	0	227	9
032		161	1	228	0
033		162	2	229	1
034		163	3	230	2
035		164	4	231	3
036		165	5	232	4
037		166	6		5
038		167	7		6
039		168	8		7
040		169	9		8
041		170	0		9
042					
043					
044					
045					
046					
047					
048					
050		171	0	232	0
051		172	1	233	1
052		173	2	234	2
053		174	3	235	3
054		175	4	236	4
055		176	5	237	5
056		177	6	238	6
057		178	7	239	7
058		179	8	240	8
		180	9	241	9
		181	0	242	0
		182	1	243	1
				244	2
				245	3
				246	4
				247	5
				248	6
				249	7
				250	8
				251	9
				252	0
				253	1
				254	2
				255	3
				256	4
				257	5
				258	6
				259	7
				260	8
				261	9
				262	0
				263	1
				264	2
				265	3
				266	4
					5
					6
					7
					8
					9
080		204	0	267	0
081		205	1	268	1
082		206	2	269	2

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code									1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code								
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
267	娉	梯	昨	咲	崎	崎	鷗	作	削	336	搜	漕	掃	擦	早	曹	巢	樓	樓	393	は								
268	娉	梯	昨	咲	崎	崎	鷗	作	削	337	漕	草	掃	擦	早	曹	巢	樓	樓	394	巴								
269	蛙	昨	昨	咲	崎	崎	鷗	作	削	338	霜	掃	擦	早	曹	巢	樓	樓	395	把									
270	鯉	察	察	咲	崎	崎	鷗	作	削	339	捉	掃	擦	早	曹	巢	樓	樓	396	霸									
271	鯉	察	察	咲	崎	崎	鷗	作	削	340	捉	掃	擦	早	曹	巢	樓	樓	397	把									
272	鯉	察	察	咲	崎	崎	鷗	作	削	341	捉	掃	擦	早	曹	巢	樓	樓	398	把									
273	し									342	た									399	は								
274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	343	他	多	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	400	波										
275	子	屍	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	344	杞	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	401	派										
276	施	屍	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	345	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	402	派										
277	紙	屍	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	346	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	403	派										
278	紙	屍	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	347	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	404	派										
279	紙	屍	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	348	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	405	派										
280	耳	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	349	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	406	派										
281	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	350	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	407	派										
282	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	351	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	408	派										
283	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	352	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	409	派										
284	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	353	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	410	派										
285	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	354	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	411	派										
286	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	355	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	412	派										
287	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	356	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	413	派										
288	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	357	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	414	派										
289	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	358	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	415	派										
290	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	359	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	416	派										
291	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	360	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	417	派										
292	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	361	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	418	派										
293	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	362	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	419	派										
294	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	363	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	420	派										
295	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	364	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	421	派										
296	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	365	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	422	派										
297	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	366	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	423	派										
298	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	367	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	424	派										
299	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	368	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	425	派										
300	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	369	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	426	派										
301	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	370	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	427	派										
302	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	371	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	428	派										
303	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	372	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	429	派										
304	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	373	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	430	派										
305	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	374	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	431	派										
306	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	375	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	432	派										
307	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	376	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	433	派										
308	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	377	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	434	派										
309	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	378	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	435	派										
310	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	379	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	436	派										
311	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	380	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	437	派										
312	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	381	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	438	派										
313	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	382	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	439	派										
314	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	383	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	440	派										
315	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	384	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	441	派										
316	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	385	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	442	派										
317	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	386	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	443	派										
318	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	387	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	444	派										
319	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	388	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	445	派										
320	軸	軸	司	史	嗣	仕	仔	伺	389	腔	舵	太	記	唯	妥	脩	打	446	派										
321	勢	姓	征	性	成	政	是	凄	制	386	謎	灘	捺	樹	那	内	乍	屈	440	蜜									
322	姓	性	成	政	是	星	聲	精	製	387	謎	灘	捺	樹	那	内	乍	屈	441	蜜									
323	正	性	性	成	政	聲	聲	精	製	388	軟	難	汝	二	尼	入	式	忍	442	夢									
324	西	誠	性	性	成	聲	聲	精	製	389	虹	廿	日	二	尼	入	式	忍	443	名									
325	腕	正	性	性	成	聲	聲	精	製	390	免	棉	綿	綿	綿	綿	綿	綿	444	免									
326	接	誠	性	性	成	聲	聲	精	製	391	祢	寧	葱	貓	熱	年	念	捻	445	孟									
327	按	誠	性	性	成	聲	聲	精	製	392	粘	粘	粘	粘	粘	粘	粘	粘	446	目									
328	蟬	誠	性	性	成	聲	聲	精	製	393	乃	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	447	矢									
329	扇	誠	性	性	成	聲	聲	精	製	394	乃	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	448	矢									
330	選	誠	性	性	成	聲	聲	精	製	395	乃	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	449	矢									
331	選	誠	性	性	成	聲	聲	精	製	396	乃	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	腦	450	矢									
332	曾	蘇	狙	疏	誅	唯	望	祖	措	397	蘇	狙	疏	誅	唯	望	祖	措	451	矢									
333	組	蘇	狙	疏	誅	唯	望	祖	措	398	蘇	狙	疏	誅	唯	望	祖	措	452	矢									
334	組	蘇	狙	疏	誅	唯	望	祖	措	399	蘇	狙	疏	誅	唯	望	祖	措	453	矢									
335	組	蘇	狙	疏	誅	唯	望	祖	措	400	蘇	狙	疏	誅	唯	望	祖	措	454	矢									

Next ►

